THE STORY OF OUR OWN LIFE'S POTENTIAL

“This book’s focus and unique organization promise an in-depth journey into the pivotal Hindu text and offer the interested reader a new perspective.”
—Bloomsbury Review

“The most arresting new Gita… a kind of postgraduate course in the cultural, metaphysical, and spiritual teachings inherent in this ancient treasure.”
—Yoga Journal

“This Gita is also unique in that its verse-by-verse commentary draws on other Hindu literature to more fully explore the characters of Arjuna and Krishna, as well as the relationship between them. This determination to study the Gita in the larger context of Hindu devotional writing distinguishes Swami Tripurari’s edition from the rest of the pack.”
—Publishers Weekly

“Swami Tripurari captures the intellectual and emotional components of the Bhagavad-gita in a way that makes for compelling and enlightening reading. Both new and experienced students of this classic text will find this edition rich and rewarding—a veritable world of unprecedented thought.”
—Steven J. Rosen, author of Krishna’s Song: A New Look at the Bhagavad-gita and founding editor of the Journal of Vaishnava Studies

Swami Tripurari unveils this hidden message in the spirit of the Gauḍiya Vedānta tradition. His commentary represents this lineage’s deep spiritual insight in a postmodern light by infusing the text with the subjective perspective of Kṛṣṇa as he sings the Gita. Bhagavad-gita: Its Feeling and Philosophy is a full-featured, traditional rendering, including the original Devanagari (Sanskrit) lettering, transliteration, word-for-word analysis, and English translation. While traditional in form and spirit, Swami B. V. Tripurari’s lucid commentary and contemporary spiritual insight make this edition of the Bhagavad-gita highly readable.

Swami’s commentary takes the reader from verse to verse, chapter to chapter, revealing the systematic nature of the Gita such that this timeless spiritual classic reads almost like a best-selling novel—the story of our own life’s potential to live in the light of God’s love.
Bhagavad Gita
Bhagavad Gita

its feeling and philosophy

SWAMI B. V. TRIPURARI
Other books by Swāmī B. V. Tripurāri:

Aesthetic Vedānta
Ancient Wisdom for Modern Ignorance
Form of Beauty
Gopāla-tāpanī Upaniṣad
Joy of Self
Rasa: Love Relationships in Transcendence
Śiksāṣṭakam of Śrī Caitanya
Śrī Guru-Paramparā
Tattva-sandarbha

For philosophical inquires contact:

Sri Caitanya Sangha
e-mail: sricaitanyasangha@swami.org
website: www.swamitripurari.com

To order this and other books contact:

Sri Caitanya Sangha
22001 Panorama
Philo, CA 95466
phone: 707-895-3052
e-mail: orders@swami.org
website: www.swami.org

© Swāmī B. V. Tripurāri 2010.
All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

12 11 10 5 6 7

In the service of my divine guardians, Srila A. C. Bhaktivedanta Swami Prabhupada and Srila B. R. Sridhara Deva Goswami Maharaja, this book is dedicated to Srila Bhaktisiddhanta Saraswati Thakura's spiritual great grandchildren, who are scattered throughout the globe. May they bring dignity and new light to his divine mission.
CONTENTS

abbreviations ...................... x
foreword ................................ xii
preface ................................. xv
introduction ........................... xix

CHAPTER ONE
विषादयोगः:
Viśāda-yoga: YOGA OF DESPAIR .......................................................... 1

CHAPTER TWO
सांख्ययोगः:
Śāṅkhya-yoga: YOGA OF ANALYSIS ................................................. 31

CHAPTER THREE
कर्मयोगः:
Karma-yoga: YOGA OF ACTION ......................................................... 93

CHAPTER FOUR
ज्ञानयोगः:
Jñāna-yoga: YOGA OF KNOWLEDGE ................................................. 129

CHAPTER FIVE
कर्मसन्न्यासयोगः:
Karma-Sannyāsa-yoga:
YOGA OF RENUNCIATION OF ACTION ............................................. 169

CHAPTER SIX
ध्यानयोगः:
Dhyāna-yoga: YOGA OF MEDITATION ................................................. 193
CHAPTER SEVEN
ज्ञानविज्ञानयोगः:
Jñāna-Vijnāna-yoga:
YOGA OF KNOWLEDGE AND REALIZATION ...............................225

CHAPTER EIGHT
तारकब्रह्मयोगः:
Tāraka-Brahma-yoga: YOGA OF ATTAINING THE ABSOLUTE......255

CHAPTER NINE
राजगुहयोगः:
Rāja-Guhya-yoga: YOGA OF HIDDEN TREASURE ..................283

CHAPTER TEN
विभूतियोगः:
Vibhūti-yoga: YOGA OF DIVINE MANIFESTATION .................323

CHAPTER ELEVEN
विश्वरूपदर्शनयोगः:
Viśva-rūpa-Darsana-yoga: YOGA OF THEOPHANY ...............357

CHAPTER TWELVE
भक्तियोगः:
Bhakti-yoga: YOGA OF DEVOTION .....................................395

CHAPTER THIRTEEN
प्रकृतिपुरुषविवेकयोगः:
Prakṛti-Puruṣa-Viveka-yoga:
YOGA OF DELIBERATION ON MATTER AND SPIRIT ..........415
Chapter Fourteen
गुणत्रयविभागयोगः
Guna-Traya-Vibhaga-yoga:
YOGA OF DISTINGUISHING THE THREE MODES OF NATURE ...... 441

Chapter Fifteen
पुरुषोत्तमयोगः
Puruṣottama-yoga: YOGA OF THE HIGHEST PERSON ..................................... 465

Chapter Sixteen
देवासुरसम्पदयोगः
Daivāsura-Sampada-yoga:
YOGA OF DISCERNING GODLY AND UNGODLY NATURES .......... 485

Chapter Seventeen
श्रद्धत्रयविभागयोगः
Sraddha-Traya-Vibhaga-yoga:
YOGA OF DISCERNING THREEFOLD FAITH ........................................ 503

Chapter Eighteen
मोक्षयोगः
Mokśa-yoga: YOGA OF FREEDOM .......................................................... 521

glossary ........................................ 581
index of verses .......................... 585
general index ........................... 597
### Abbreviations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Full Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ai. Å.</td>
<td>Aitareya-äranyaka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bg.</td>
<td>Bhagavad-gitā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Br.</td>
<td>Brhadāranyaka Upanişad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brs.</td>
<td>Bhakti-rasāmṛta-sindhu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Br. Sm.</td>
<td>Brahma-saṁhitā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bs.</td>
<td>Bhakti-sandarbha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cc.</td>
<td>Caitanya-caritāmṛta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ch. Up.</td>
<td>Chāndogya Upanişad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gt. Up.</td>
<td>Gopāla-tāpani Upanişad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ka. Up.</td>
<td>Kaṭha Upanişad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kk.</td>
<td>Krṣṇa-karṇāmṛta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ks.</td>
<td>Krṣṇa-sandarbha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MB.</td>
<td>Mahābhārata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pp.</td>
<td>Padma Pūrāṇa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ps.</td>
<td>Paramātmā-sandarbha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rg</td>
<td>Rg Veda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SB.</td>
<td>Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Śve. Up.</td>
<td>Śvetāsvatara Upanişad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tai. Br.</td>
<td>Taittiriya-brāhmaṇa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tai. Up.</td>
<td>Taittiriya Upanişad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ts.</td>
<td>Tattvā-sandarbha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Un.</td>
<td>Ujjvala-nilamani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vs.</td>
<td>Vedānta-sūtra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ya. Sm.</td>
<td>Yājñavalkya-smṛti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ys.</td>
<td>Yoga-sūtra</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
FOREWORD

THE BHAGAVAD-GИТА is one of the great classics not only of world religion but of world philosophy and the great tradition of yoga. If we had to choose a single book to represent the spiritual and cultural traditions of India, we would certainly have to choose the Gitā. A person who has not studied the Gitā has missed something significant in our global wisdom heritage. In fact, if we were to put together the monotheism of the Western world with the nontheistic karma-based meditation traditions of Buddhism and the Far East, we would come up with something like the Bhagavad-gitā, which combines theism with karma, rebirth, and self-realization and encompasses global religion and experiential spirituality.

The scope of the Gitā is enormous. It covers devotional mysticism, meditative insight, cosmic vision, practical psychology, and even social activism: the keys to all aspects of life, mind, and consciousness. In every generation over thousands of years, it has provided inspiration for thinkers, leaders, and yogīs in India. Much of the inspiration for India’s independence movement came from the study of the Gitā by such prominent figures as Gandhi, Tilak, and Aurobindo. The Gitā has been a key text for the great gurus of yoga who have come to the West, such as Paramahansa Yogananda and Śrīla Prabhupāda. Through gurus like these, the Gitā has provided unceasing and undiminishing inspiration to people all over the world.

The Gitā remains relevant today even though it was written before the time of Christ. Its instructions are clear, concise, logical, and scientific—not just appeals to faith, belief, personality, or culture. If you study the Gitā deeply and sincerely, its teachings can transform your life and awareness. That is why the Bhagavad-gitā remains one of the most popular books in the world today—a perennial bestseller.

A number of translations and interpretations of the Gitā exist. In India alone, literally thousands of commentaries on the text circulate. Because of the multi-faceted nature of its approach, the Gitā can be viewed from various angles, much like a brilliant gemstone. It can reflect, magnify, and enhance the light within us. Many great thinkers have looked to the Gitā for guidance and consolation, even though their worldviews or conceptions of divinity may differ from one another. Each philosophical system in the Hindu tradition has looked to the Gitā for light and produced a number of
commentaries that bring out the richness of the Gitā for people of diverse temperaments and inclinations.

Despite its broad appeal, the Gitā is not just a general work of practical wisdom for all of humanity; it contains specific teachings for followers of particular yoga paths, as many in the West are discovering through their study of the yoga tradition. These teachings focus on the relevance of the Gitā’s message for sādhana, or individual spiritual practice. The Gitā is a manual of self-realization and God-realization for those who are on the path, covering all the main yoga approaches: knowledge (jñāna), devotion (bhakti), and service (karma). The Gitā is arguably the prime textbook of the yoga tradition, being longer and more detailed than the Yoga-sūtras. In fact, to understand the Sūtras, which are often brief and obscure, one should study them along with the Gitā. Those wishing to become yoga teachers in the traditional sense of the term should avail themselves of the yogic insights of the Gitā.

Some traditions in India consider that Patañjali, the compiler of the Yoga-sūtras, was himself a follower of Kṛṣṇa. Patañjali is identified with Ananta, the great serpent of potential creative energy, on whom Viṣṇu reclines. Kṛṣṇa, the speaker of the Gitā, is the fullest expression of Viṣṇu manifest on earth—the pūrṇa avatārā. The Gitā addresses all the main topics of classical yoga, including the āyamas and niyamas, samādhi, meditation, concentration, pratyāhāra, and even a brief mention of āsana. The Gitā is said to be a yoga-śāstra and each of its chapters is said to relate to a particular yoga approach. Looking at the Gitā in light of yoga helps us to uncover the depths of its teachings.

Yet despite the growing popularity of the Gitā through the expansion of yoga in the West, including the many versions of the Gitā in the English language, few are able to probe the depth of its teaching or consider the original Sanskrit and its many traditional commentaries. Swāmī B.V. Tripurārī is one of the few writers to do so, and his version of the Gitā is an excellent vehicle for readers in the West to explore these roots. His translation and interpretation of the Gitā is clear, detailed, and true to the original meaning of the text. By explaining the Sanskrit, Swāmī Tripurārī helps readers understand the original text. Swami’s study of the Gitā is no mere quick analysis. It goes into depth, reflecting on the meaning of each word used and its subtle implications. He also brings in references to important Vaishnava teachers and a great tradition of Gitā analysis that is seldom given its proper due.
I have known Swāmī Tripurārī for more than twenty years. I used to write for his Clarion Call magazine, which was one of the most insightful and innovative publications of its time on Vedic issues. Strangely, however, it was only a year or two ago that I actually met him in person. Swāmī Tripurārī, though born an American, has the appearance, expression, and even mannerism of a seasoned Swāmī from India. He has been able to bridge both East and West in his own life and teachings. His Gitā reflects this sensitivity and attention as well.

Swāmī Tripurārī speaks of the Gitā as both philosophy and feeling. Today, philosophy is largely a bad word in the West, particularly in the United States. We don’t want theories. We want something practical, something to experience quickly—not something to contemplate over time. And most of what we call philosophy in our educational system has little relevance to our lives, reflecting rather the obscurities of science, linguistics, economics, or politics.

In the spiritual traditions of India, however, the term generally rendered as “philosophy” is darśana, which means a way of seeing. It is something someone has actually experienced, rather than simply a matter of speculation or conjecture. The ability to arrive at such an experience rests on a particular lifestyle, discipline, and spiritual practice. Such a philosophy is a distillation of wisdom that can guide us forward like a ray of light. We all need such philosophies to make our thought and perception meaningful and linked to the transcendent. In the philosophies, or darśanas, of India, feeling has always had an important role. Deep insight is not possible without a depth of feeling to sustain it. Truth, after all, is a matter of conviction and has a certain passion to it. Even the most abstract of India’s philosophers, the great nondualist Śaṅkara, composed some of the most beautiful Sanskrit devotional poetry.

Our higher mind (what is called buddhi in Sanskrit), which the Gitā emphasizes, is key to the practice of yoga. It brings together deep feeling and direct knowing like the two wings of a bird, lifting the mind to new levels. To grasp the real philosophy of the Gitā requires a consummate sense of feeling—the ability to feel the divine presence both in oneself and in the world as directly as one would feel the presence of a lover. Current academic approaches to the Gitā downplay the vitality and passion of the Gitā and turn it into little more than a fossil or museum piece. Attempts to secularize the Gitā by removing religion from it and making it into a kind of life-management strategy miss the deep devotion that the Gitā honors.
and requires (though such attempts can make the Gitā accessible to the nonreligious mind). Swāmī Tripurārī deftly navigates both of these poles and provides an alternative that shows both the rational and the devotional side of the text, which support, rather than contradict, one another.

Some people have the impression that the devotional traditions of India, the bhakti-yoga paths, are a kind of mindless emotionalism punctuated by unintelligible chants that brainwash people. Nothing could be further from the truth. The followers of bhakti-yoga have produced a vast tradition of philosophical texts, commentaries, and painstaking textual and logical analysis; clear principles of cosmology, psychology, and human behavior; and poignant comments on current affairs. This intellectually rigorous bhakti is what we find in the work of Swāmī Tripurārī. Besides a necessary commentary on the Gitā, his work is also a good introduction to the broader tradition of bhakti philosophy, showing that it is alive and well not only in India but also in the West. He quotes from and brings in the great tradition of Vaiṣnava philosophy, particularly as it is represented in the works of Śrīla Prabhupāda, India’s main teacher who brought this tradition to the West some decades ago, from whom Swāmī Tripurārī received special instruction. Both Śrīla Prabhupāda and Swāmī Tripurārī belong to the tradition of Caitanya Mahāprabhu (perhaps the greatest of all the devotional philosophers of the Gitā) and the great lineages of thinkers that have arisen from him.

Swāmī Tripurārī has published many books and articles on all aspects of the spiritual life over the last twenty-five years while directing a spiritual organization with global affiliations. His work deserves more attention, particularly as the subject of bhakti-yoga again emerges into the yoga community. His Gitā is probably his most important book. Swāmī Tripurārī’s commentary on the Gitā is an extensive and monumental work, an important addition to the literature on the Gitā. It opens ground for much new study and research, particularly in the realm of spiritual practice and yoga. Through Swāmī Tripurārī’s commentary, we can gain access not only to the Gitā but also to a vast tradition of devotional thought and practice that is based upon it. This can change our view of self, world, and divinity in fundamental and transformative ways.

—David Frawley
Santa Fe, New Mexico, March 2008
Early one morning in the spring of 1973, I was invited for the first time to accompany my spiritual master on a morning walk. As the sun rose on a sleeping Los Angeles, I climbed, wide-eyed at the prospect of intimate association with my guru, into a small white Toyota station wagon along with two of my Godbrothers and our Prabhupāda.

We drove to Cheviot Hills, one of two places where Prabhupāda would take his morning walk when in Los Angeles. He preferred Venice Beach, but variety has value. On this particular morning, the park was damp and the ground had just been aerated. After Prabhupāda indirectly let us know his preference for Venice Beach through his critique of the park, he spoke to us about the shortcomings of modern science. In the course of questioning the possibility of something arising out of nothing, the conversation itself dissipated and we walked in silence.

The little clumps of earth scattered all about appeared like stools to the uninformed, and I found myself questioning why we had brought Prabhupāda to this place. Were they stools? Prabhupāda broke the silence to ask this very question. Too embarrassed and ignorant to answer, I left it to the others, one of whom explained in brief the art of aerating the earth.

The silence continued, and I felt the need to absorb my mind in spiritual thoughts, lest it not take full advantage of the opportunity at hand. Crossing the field, as if influenced by a force beyond myself, I thought spontaneously of Vṛndāvana, Kṛṣṇa, and his cowherds and cows. Almost effortlessly my mind became absorbed in a sense of the pastoral setting of Vṛndāvana and Kṛṣṇa’s līlās of cowherding with his friends. Where were we really?

Clad in saffron robes, an elderly man of five feet four, no more, walked with an eternal youthfulness that questioned the apparent youth of those who walked beside him. With his head held high in absolute confidence, he challenged the metanarrative of modern science, making it seem as if scientific materialism could be crushed by a mere poke from his cane. His glance so captivating, benedicting, his eyes tinged with the ointment of love of Kṛṣṇa, our beloved Prabhupāda wanted the world to stop and just love Kṛṣṇa. He wanted us to be his instruments through which this would be accomplished.
Prabhupāda compellingly told us to write articles, publish them, and replace the prevailing paradigm with Kṛṣṇa’s message. Then someone mentioned my name and success in the field of distributing his books. Prabhupāda turned to me and said, “By distributing these books, you are doing a great service to Kṛṣṇa. He [Kṛṣṇa] wanted to say to everyone: sarva-dharmān parityajya mām ekaṁ saranāṁ vraja. He comes, therefore. So anyone who is doing the same service, he is recognized by Kṛṣṇa very nicely. That is stated in the Bhagavad-gītā: na ca tasmān manusyeṣu. In the human society, nobody is dearer than he who is helping preaching work.”

In the first words he ever spoke to me, Prabhupāda cited three verses from the Bhagavad-gītā, all from the eighteenth chapter. First he cited the conclusion of the Gītā: “Forgoing all religious injunctions, take exclusive refuge in me.” Then he cited Kṛṣṇa’s two verses of praise for those involved in disseminating this conclusion. The actual verses run thus: “One who explains this supreme secret to my devotees engages in the highest devotion to me. He will undoubtedly come to me. No one in this world is more dear to me than he is, nor will there ever be anyone on earth more dear to me.”

In his Gītā commentary, Prabhupāda elaborates on Kṛṣṇa’s words regarding those who explain his message: “Anyone, however, who tries sincerely to present Bhagavad-gītā as it is will advance in devotional activities and reach the pure devotional state of life. As a result of such pure devotion, he is sure to go back home, back to Godhead.” By the phrase “as it is,” which became the subtitle for Prabhupāda’s edition of the Gītā, Prabhupāda meant explaining the Bhagavad-gītā from a devotional perspective. Only one who loves Kṛṣṇa is privy to the deepest implications of his eloquent speech.

After Prabhupāda encouraged all of us to write and distribute books about Kṛṣṇa, one of my Godbrothers commented, “We are simply your puppets, Śrīla Prabhupāda. You’re giving us the books.” This did not seem to satisfy Śrīla Prabhupāda, and he made the following reference to the guru-paramparā: “No. We are all puppets of Kṛṣṇa. I am also a puppet. This is disciplic succession.” While he humbly gave all credit to his own guru and Kṛṣṇa for anything he had accomplished, he implied that becoming the instrument of guru and Kṛṣṇa had a dynamic application: it involved not merely circulating the books of one’s guru but writing books oneself as he had done. This was the example he set. While writing his own books, he considered that he was merely acting as a puppet of guru and Kṛṣṇa.
Becoming the puppet of one’s guru is about getting a spiritual life and thinking for oneself within the parameters of what is actually spiritual.

Looking back at that spring morning in Los Angeles’ Cheviot Hills as I myself turned fifty, I felt that my life would be incomplete if I did not author an edition of *Bhagavad-gítā* in contemporary language. Faithfully distributing that which another has drawn down from the infinite should in time bear the fruit of enabling such a distributor to draw down something himself. This is the fruit of the seed that Śrī Guru plants in the heart of the disciple. In the form of this edition of *Bhagavad-gítā*, I have been able to taste this fruit to some extent only by my spiritual master’s grace, and he sent several persons to assist me in this effort. I am grateful to all of them. May he bless them, and may Śrī Caitanya, who is none other than Rādhā-Kṛṣṇa combined, continue to bless the world with his doctrine of love of Godhead. May that blessing come in the form of devotional literature written from within the cultural context of devotees of Kṛṣṇa who are now taking birth all over the world.

Swāmī B. V. Tripurāri
INTRODUCTION

“YET ANOTHER EDITION of the Bhagavad-gitā, and yet another accompanying introduction that strains to justify it!” Let us deal with this world-weary sigh by doing nothing more than quoting the concluding words of Sañjaya, the Gītā’s narrator: “O King, recalling again and again this wonderful and sacred conversation between Kṛṣṇa and Arjuna, I am thrilled at every moment.” (Bg. 18.76) New insights into this unfathomable, divine conversation are always welcome.

The Song of God has been studied for centuries, lending itself to interpretations of all kinds: academic, ecological, psychological, sociological, political, and popular. Though its wisdom has been identified with the perennial philosophy, it speaks on many levels to its varied congregation, primarily about life’s ultimate necessity: self-realization within the context of God-realization.

Kṛṣṇa’s speech is said to be vāvadūka, which means that it is ambrosial and pleasing to the ears. Kṛṣṇa himself is described as satyavāk, because his words never prove to be false. In his conversation with Arjuna in the Bhagavad-gitā, Kṛṣṇa’s ambrosial speech and the truth of his message are apparent. It is no wonder that his words have been immortalized in human society, where he descends to express himself in the fullness of love.

Although some devotees have tried to establish the historicity of Kṛṣṇa’s appearance five thousand years ago, as well as events that are said to have taken place at that time—such as the Gītā’s Kurukṣetra War—they have not made much progress in documenting physical evidence. Where devotees have succeeded is in recording their own extraordinary mystical experiences of Kṛṣṇa, and the theological and philosophical ramifications of these experiences are a spiritual reality that human society must reckon with.

Kṛṣṇa represents the love life of the Absolute. While Buddha taught wisdom leading to the cessation of suffering and Christ salvation through love, Kṛṣṇa is God in love, living in eternity with his devotees. Devotees of Kṛṣṇa embody five basic types of love: passive adoration (sānta-rasa), servitude (dāśya-rasa), friendship (sakhya-rasa), parental affection (vātsalya-rasa), and romantic love (mādhurya-rasa). These five basic expressions of devotional love (bhakti-rasa) may also overlap, and each has its own
subdivisions. Arjuna of the Gītā loves Kṛṣṇa as a friend with an admixture of servitude. His friendly relationship with Kṛṣṇa is called pura-sambandhi and is specific to Kṛṣṇa’s city līlā (divine play), as opposed to Kṛṣṇa’s more intimate, pastoral Vraja līlā. Among all of Kṛṣṇa’s city friends, Arjuna is most prominent.

Before coming to the big city of Mathurā and later establishing his capital at Dwārakā, Kṛṣṇa was raised in Vraja. The setting of Vraja represents the beauty of simplicity, the beauty of the natural environment. Kṛṣṇa’s father was a herdsman, and Kṛṣṇa himself a cowherder. Decorated with ornaments from the forest—its flowers, leaves, and multicolored clays—and crowned with the conjuror’s peacock plume, this Kṛṣṇa, his only weapon the flute, is said to be Kṛṣṇa in his fullness, svayam bhagavān. He is God when God wants to be himself, relaxing in the company of his intimate devotees, forgetful of even his own Godhood to facilitate this intimacy. This Kṛṣṇa is the connoisseur of love yet subjugated by his lover Rādhā.¹

In the language of India’s aestheticians, Vraja Kṛṣṇa, subjugated by Rādhā’s love, is the most perfect (pūrṇatama) dhīra-lalita nāyaka² and, as such, is in no mood to speak Upaniṣadic wisdom.

Kṛṣṇa of the Gītā, while the same person as Kṛṣṇa of Vraja, is in a very different mood. As is the case with all of his moods, his emotional makeup in his Bhagavad-gītā līlā is relative to the nature of his accompanying devotees’ love. Once he leaves Vraja on his mission to establish dharma,³ Kṛṣṇa is surrounded by devotees who have a greater awareness of his Godhood. This sense distances them from him slightly, introducing formalities into their dealings not found in his relationships with the devotees of Vraja. In the city, Kṛṣṇa, the village adolescent, matures into eternal youthfulness. He becomes a judicious prince—peaceful, humble, and wise. In the aesthetic language of Bharata Muni,⁴ he is the perfect

1. Rādhā is Kṛṣṇa’s primal sakti. She is the shine of the Kṛṣṇa sun. He is the supreme object of love and she is the abode of supreme love. As all avatāras of Godhead issue from Kṛṣṇa, similarly all of their counterwhole consorts emanate from Rādhā and partially represent her.

2. There are four basic hero (nāyaka) types in classical Indian drama and poetry. The dhīra-lalita nāyaka is described in Brs. (2.1.230) thus: “a person who is very cunning and always youthful, expert in joking and without anxiety, and always subjugated by his girlfriends is called dhīra-lalita nāyaka.” In secular drama and poetry, Cupid is considered the ideal dhīra-lalita nāyaka.

3. Here dharma refers to the avatāra’s mission to establish scriptural codes. See Bg. 4.7–8.

4. Bharata Muni is considered to be the founder of Indian aesthetic theory, the legendary author of Nāṭya-sāstra.
It is this Kṛṣṇa who speaks Gitopaniṣad, the Bhagavad-gitā.

From the Bhagavad-gitā, we come to know of Kṛṣṇa’s divinity. In the light of this knowledge, his village life takes on new meaning. The informal simplicity of the Vraja lilā is like a black backdrop that causes the valuable jewel of Kṛṣṇa to shine that much more. God’s acting like a human to the extent that he falls in love, as does Kṛṣṇa with Rādhā, is indeed a sweet and charming expression of his divinity, one that gives us a clue as to how to approach him such that he becomes easily accessible to us. When the Absolute is overcome by love, he manifests a transcendental need that arises not from inadequacy but from the fullness of love. The nature of love is such that it causes one to feel both full and in need of sharing one’s fullness. Kṛṣṇa becomes most accessible to anyone acquainted with his inner necessity to share his love. This is the sacred secret of the Upaniṣads to which Śrī Gitā ultimately points. While establishing the general principles of dharma, Kṛṣṇa reveals the glory of prema-dharma, the dharma of love itself.

This edition of the Bhagavad-gitā follows the tradition of Gauḍīya Vedānta. It is the Gauḍīyas, disciples of Śrī Caitanya, who first conceived of explaining the Upaniṣadic subject matter in the language of aesthetics. Drawing on the Taittirīya Upaniṣad’s dictum raso vai saḥ (the Absolute is aesthetic rapture), Rūpa Gosvāmī proceeded to elaborate on the heart of the Absolute, indeed, on its love life. He envisioned the Absolute as the perfect lover, the irresistible Kṛṣṇa of the sacred literature, and explained Kṛṣṇa’s complexities with startling insight. To date, no one has even attempted to tell us more about the personality of Godhead.

Since Kṛṣṇa of Vraja is the origin of God’s incarnations, the feature of Godhead in which all others are included, the Gauḍīyas have mostly written about him. Their commentaries on the Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam are well known, as are many of their original compositions. However, they have also written on the Upaniṣads, where the love sports of Kṛṣṇa are, if at all present, well concealed.

Baladeva Vidyābhūṣana wrote Govinda-bhāṣya, the Gauḍīya commentary on the Vedānta-sūtras of Bādarāyaṇa Vyāsa, in which he seeks to demonstrate the concordance of śruti—the Upaniṣads—with Gauḍīya

5. The dhira-praśānta nāyaka is described in Brs. 2.1.232 thus: “Peaceful, tolerant of miseries, judicious, and humble, such is the dhira-praśānta nāyaka.”

6. This term refers to the love exhibited in Kṛṣṇa’s Vraja lilā.
Bhagavad-gita

theology. He also wrote a commentary on the Bhagavad-gitā, as did his predecessor, Viśvanātha Cakravarti Ṭhākura. Before them, Kṛṣṇadāsa Kavirāja Goswāmī cited the Gitā more than thirty times in his classic, Caitanya-caritāmṛta, and his predecessor Śiva Goswāmī cited it profusely in his seminal Sat-sandarbha. Evidently, dhīra-praśānta Kṛṣṇa of the Gitā is quite relevant to devotees of dhīra-lalita Kṛṣṇa!

Viśvanātha Cakravarti was the first in the Gauḍīya lineage to write an entire commentary on the Gitā. He is most well known for his highly esoteric explanations of the inner significance of Kṛṣṇa’s līlās of love with the gopīs of Vraja. Yet it would seem that he found it important to remind us that gopi-Kṛṣṇa is, after all, God, even when suppressing this aspect of himself for the sake of his intimate līlās. We must first understand the metaphysical truth (tattva) concerning Kṛṣṇa as the source of the world and all souls before we forget the world and lose ourselves in divine love of Kṛṣṇa. Among the sacred texts of the Hindus, no book is better suited to give this teaching than the Bhagavad-gitā.

Known also as Gitopaniṣad due to its having been spoken directly by God himself,7 Bhagavad-gitā is the essence of the Upaniṣads. If one wants to understand the entirety of the thousands of verses in the Upaniṣadic canon, one need only understand the seven hundred verses of the Bhagavad-gitā. While the Upaniṣads are often thought to be more philosophical than religious, it is significant that this balance is reversed in the Gitopaniṣad. It posits a religio-philosophical metanarrative in which a mystical life of direct spiritual experience emerges. Perhaps the most significant thing about the Gitā is its inclusive nature, in which no particular doctrine is condemned but each finds its place in a hierarchy of spiritual practices and transcendence. Worship of God is never transcended in the Gitā. It takes the form of unalloyed devotion, surpassing even knowledge of both the soul and the Godhood of Godhead. It thus brings us to the door of Vraja bhakti.

Popular understanding holds that the Upaniṣads reveal a formless, impersonal Absolute, approached through the wisdom of introspection, as opposed to religious ritual. In this view, devotion can be useful, but it is ultimately dispensed with. By popular understanding, I am referring to the Adwaita Vedānta of Śaṅkara and those who hold neo-Adwaitin views. Acceptance of Śaṅkara’s basic understanding of Hindu sacred literature is so widespread that many make no distinction between the two. They think

7. The Upaniṣads are thought to have issued directly from God.
that the Adwaitin doctrine of Śaṅkara is Vedānta, unaware of the fact that Adwaita Vedānta is only one strand of Vedānta philosophy, one that differs radically from the other principal schools.8

Of the five devotional schools, that of the Gauḍīyas is the most recent, and thus has the distinct advantage of being able to draw on the devotional wealth that came before it. The host of commentators in the devotional schools of Vedānta that followed Śaṅkara have all vociferously refuted his doctrines—doctrines that include dispensing with God, the individual soul, and the world, as well as subjugating devotion to knowledge, all in the name of nonduality. While the devotional commentators may have subtle theological differences that demarcate their particular schools of Vedānta, they are in sufficient agreement with one another to unanimously oppose these doctrines of Śaṅkara.

Among the devotional commentaries of the Gītā, Rāmānuja’s is the first and thus the most influential. It has made significant inroads in academic circles. Rāmānuja’s commentary is brilliant in its demonstration of the congruity of the Gītā’s many paths and the post-liberated nature of devotion. In some places I have cited Rāmānuja’s commentary or followed his sense of the text. This is in keeping with Jiva Gosvāmī’s policy of acknowledging venerable Vaiṣṇavas, as discussed in his Tattva-sandarbha. I have cited Śrīdhara Swāmī’s Subodhini in the same spirit.

Viṣvanātha Cakravartī Ṭhākura and Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa have referred to Rāmānuja but seem more influenced by Śrīdhara Swāmī, whose commentary they often follow closely. This attests to the influence of Śrīdhara Swāmī on the Gauḍīya school, already well documented in the case of Śrimad-Bhāgavatam.9

Also relevant to the present work is Adwaitin Madhusūdana Saraswatī’s Gūḍhārtha-dipikā commentary on Bhagavad-gītā,10 which Viṣvanātha Cakravartī cites numerous times. In the interest of substantiating the plausibility of the Gauḍīya understanding of the Gitā, I have cited Madhusūdana Saraswatī’s commentary in places. As neo-Adwaitins may think the Gauḍīya rendering forced in places, it will be useful for them to know that such a highly renowned scholar and guru of the Adwaita lineage is often

8. Viṣiṣṭādvaita, Dvaita, Dvaitādvaita, Suddhādvaita, and Acintya-bhedabheda.  
10. Madhusūdana Saraswatī was a junior contemporary of Śrī Caitanya yet never met him. It is apparent that he was influenced by Gauḍīya Vedānta enough to regard it as a viable alternative to Adwaita, the doctrine of his own choice.
supportive of the Gauḍīya interpretations of the flow of Śrī Gītā’s verse and its emphasis on devotion.

The commentaries of Viśvanātha Cakravartī Ṭhākura and Baladeva Vidyābhūṣāna in the Gauḍīya lineage are, in comparison to Rāmānuja’s commentary, far less known. True to their devotion to the sweet Kṛṣṇa of Vraja, their explanation of the Gītā brings a charm to the text that Rāmānuja’s does not; moreover, they place greater emphasis on devotion, both in terms of its power to afford the highest salvation and in its magnanimity in extending itself to the lowest section of society. I have cited these two principal Gauḍīya commentators throughout, and naturally I am primarily indebted to them. Although Śrī Viśvanātha and Baladeva Vidyābhūṣāna occasionally differ, their differences remain within the parameters of the lineage’s devotional conclusions (siddhānta). These two have elaborately demonstrated from their knowledge of Sanskrit and the entire corpus of sacred literature instances in which some verses can take on a special meaning that is hidden from the vision of those whose eyes have not been tinged with the salve of love of Kṛṣṇa.

Perhaps Gauḍīya commentators appear to go out on a limb more than anywhere else when they find Vraja Kṛṣṇa speaking in the Gītā. According to Gauḍīya theology, the dhīra-praśānta Kṛṣṇa of the Gītā is not preoccupied with Vraja and the love of the gopīs. As much as the dhīra-lalita Kṛṣṇa of Vraja is in no mood for an Upaniṣadic discourse, dhīra-praśānta Kṛṣṇa of Dwārakā is typically not in the mood of Vraja bhakti. However, careful study of the Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam in conjunction with the Padma and Hariwaṅsa Purāṇas reveals that the prince of the Gītā does occasionally think of Vraja, as he did in Kurukṣetra during his first visit to this sacred place.

According to Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam (1.11.9), Kṛṣṇa returned to Mathurā to kill Dantavakra before the Gītā was spoken. Padma Purāṇa reveals that he then went from Mathurā to Vraja Dhāma. After remaining in Vraja for two months, he transferred all of his Vraja devotees to his unmanifest eternal līlā of Goloka. According to Viśvanātha Cakravartī’s comments on the Padma Purāṇa, Kṛṣṇa himself went in a nearly complete (pūrṇa-kalpa-prakāśa) manifestation to Goloka. In another, most complete (pūrṇatama-prakāśa) plenary manifestation, he remained per-

11. Viśvanātha Cakravartī hears Kṛṣṇa speaking of rāgānuga-bhaktī in Bg. 10.9. Bhaktiviṇoda Ṭhākura and several other modern commentators follow his lead in their commentaries.
petually enjoying in Vraja, invisible to material eyes. In yet another plenary manifestation (pūrṇa-prakāśa), he mounted his chariot and returned alone to Dwārakā.

Following his return, Kṛṣṇa spoke Bhagavad-gītā. This prince of Dwārakā no doubt thought of the highest devotion of his Vraja devotees from time to time while speaking of devotion to Arjuna. Indeed, as mentioned earlier, the entire lilā of Dwārakā is not unrelated to Vraja. Kṛṣṇa went to Dwārakā for the sake of protecting his Vraja devotees. As Sanātana Goswāmi finds Dwārakā’s prince calling out Rādhā’s name in his sleep in his Brhad-Bhāgavatāmṛta (1.6.51–52), Gauḍiya commentators have heard him speak of Vraja bhakti by reading between the lines of his song to Arjuna. Indeed, even within the embrace of his principal queen of Dwārakā, prince Kṛṣṇa thinks of Vraja and Rādhā’s love. Umāpati Dhara, quoted in Rūpa Goswāmi’s Padyāvali (371) and Ujjvala-nilāmāni (14.184), prays thus: “In his palace in Dwārakā, on the sparkling, gem-strewn shores of the ocean, Kṛṣṇa’s body shivered with ecstasy in the tight embrace of none other than Rukminī. Yet his mind recalled the fragrance of the love he had enjoyed with Rādhā in the reeds by the banks of the black Yamunā waters, and he fainted. May that faint protect you always.”

Ultimately, the theological resolution to the apparent contradiction in which Vraja bhakti issues from the lips of the prince of Dwārakā lies in the power of bhakti itself. Devotees see Kṛṣṇa in everyone and everything by the force of their love for him. Śrī Caitanya is said to have made the statement, mora mana vrndāvana: “My mind is Vṛndāvana (Vraja).” He saw all rivers as the Vraja’s Yamunā, all mountains as its Govardhana. In the majestic Jagannātha Deity of Śrīdhāma Puri, he saw Vraja’s sweet dhīra-lalita Kṛṣṇa, flute in hands, head adorned with peacock feather. In consideration of this, it is hardly a stretch for his devotees to hear Vraja Kṛṣṇa, the dhīra-lalita of Rādhā, in princely Kṛṣṇa’s words. The gap is further narrowed by the fact that on the battleground of sacred Kurukṣetra, long before he spoke the Gīta to Arjuna, Kṛṣṇa met with Rādhā and the gopīs after a long and painful period of separation. Setting foot again in that holy place for the purpose of instructing Arjuna, prince Kṛṣṇa was no doubt influenced by that memory. Thus in the midst of his discourse to Arjuna on comparative religion, in which bhakti effortlessly rises to the top as the cream of the milk

14. See SB. 10.78.
of religion, it is natural for Arjuna’s charioteer to steer the conversation in the direction of Vraja and the highest expression of devotion.

The idea that the spiritual emotion (bhāva) of the Gauḍīya commentators brings their interpretation of the Gitā to the pitch of Vraja bhakti is charming. The feeling that prejudices their vision is by no means a blemish. After all, it is feeling for the Gitā and love of Kṛṣṇa that the text seeks to arouse in its reader. Their feeling for Kṛṣṇa, arising out of a firm philosophical and scriptural foundation, is the most valuable thing one can hope to experience in the course of studying Bhagavad-gitā. In feeling their emotion, readers will also get the feel of the Gitā, and thus feeling for Kṛṣṇa.

After the time of Baladeva Vidyābhūṣana, who passed from the world in the mid-eighteenth century, the Bhagavad-gitā became somewhat neglected in the Gauḍīya school until the time of Bhaktivinoda Ṭhākura, the great revivalist of the tradition in the late nineteenth century. Ṭhākura Bhaktivinoda published two different Bengali editions of the Gitā based on the two great Sanskrit commentaries that came before him.

Bhaktivinoda Ṭhākura’s son and successor, Śrīla Bhaktisiddhānta Saraswati, continued the Ṭhākura’s preaching mission and recognized the necessity of translating the Gitā into English. Of his disciples, Bhakti Hriday Bon Mahārāja was the first to publish a translation and commentary in the Gauḍīya spirit. His translation, The Geeta as a Chaitanyaite Reads It, is based on Viṣṇuṭa Cakravartī’s commentary. Bon Mahārāja’s commentary was followed by Bhakti Pradīpa Tīrtha Mahārāja’s English edition. The most influential Gauḍīya Vaiṣṇava edition was written by my own spiritual master, Śrīla A.C. Bhaktivedanta Swami Prabhupāda, whose Bhagavad-gitā As It Is has sold more copies than any other edition to date. Śrīla Prabhupāda’s translation is dedicated to Baladeva Vidyābhūṣana. His indebtedness to Baladeva is clear throughout his English purports. My ṣikṣā-guru, B.R. Śrīdhara Deva Goswāmi, also published a translation of the Gitā based on Viṣṇuṭa Cakravartī’s commentary, in which he reveals the underlying esoteric understanding of Vraja bhakti.

In the present edition, I have adopted a more literal translation of the original Sanskrit text, keeping the Gauḍīya purport confined to the commentary. I have also taken pains to demonstrate the congruity of the Gitā, its natural flow from verse to verse, which has not been a focus of other modern Gauḍīya commentators. I have occasionally cited references to the Gitā from the Sat-sandarbha of Jīva Goswāmi and Caitanya-caritāmṛta of Kṛṣṇadāsa Kavirāja Goswāmi, both of which precede the earliest Gauḍīya
Bhagavad-gītā commentary, and I have also cited a number of Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa’s references to the Gītā in his Govinda-bhāṣya commentary on Vedānta-sūtra. The language is contemporary, and as much as possible I have tried to bring home the relevance of the Gītā, and the Gauḍīya import in particular, for the times in which we live. In all of this, I hope that this edition will serve as a meaningful contribution for the Gauḍīya lineage, an indicator of its vitality at the beginning of the twenty-first century.

While I am hopeful that both practitioners and casual readers will find this edition helpful, I initially undertook this work for my own edification and purification. In this, I feel that my work has been a success, as it has given rise in me to real feeling for the Gītā, Kṛṣṇa, and Arjuna. It is this feeling that I have attempted to weave into the text. May its careful study awaken spiritual sentiment in its readers as well, for it is this feeling that does not allow one to tire from hearing Kṛṣṇa’s ambrosial words, edition after edition, thrilled at every moment.
Chapter One

विषादयोगः:
Viśāda-yoga

YOGA OF DESPAIR

Text 1

धृतराष्ट्र उवाच
धर्मशैव कृष्णशीर्षा समस्तेन युयुस्तवः।
मामकं पाण्डवमेव किमकुर्वत सन्तु स।

Dhṛtarāṣṭra uvāca
dharma-kṣetre kuru-kṣetre samavetā yuyutsavah/
māmakāḥ pāṇḍavāḥ caiva kim akurvata sañjaya//

Dhṛtarāṣṭraḥ uvāca—Dhṛtarāṣṭra said; dharma-kṣetre—in the sacred field; kuru-kṣetre—at Kurukṣetra; samavetā—assembled; yuyutsavah—eager to fight; māmakāḥ—mine (my sons); pāṇḍavāḥ—the sons of Pāṇḍu; ca—and; eva—certainly; kim—what; akurvata—they did; sañjaya—O Sañjaya.

Dhṛtarāṣṭra said: O Sañjaya, what did my sons and the sons of Pāṇḍu do as they assembled at sacred Kurukṣetra, eager to fight?

The Bhagavad-gītā appears in the “Bhiṣma-parva” of the Hindu scripture Mahābhārata. Its seven hundred verses make up only one chapter in the world’s longest epic. Amid romance, political intrigue, and war, dharma, the path of righteousness, is woven throughout the fabric of Mahābhārata. The Bhagavad-gītā brings to light the very essence of this dharma: prema-dharma, the dharma of love.

The first chapter of the Gītā introduces the reader to the historical setting in which Krṣṇa and Arjuna’s sacred conversation, which constitutes the balance of the Gītā, will take place. Chariots are drawn in military array and war is now inevitable. The fratricidal clash that the Mahābhārata has been leading to is beyond stopping—the sons of Dhṛtarāṣṭra led by
Duryodhana are on one side, the sons of Dhṛtarāṣṭra’s deceased brother, Pāṇḍu, led by Yudhiṣṭhīra on the other. Dhṛtarāṣṭra was blind from birth, yet the sage Vyāsa offered to give him eyes to witness the battle. How unsightly the battle was to be is clear from Dhṛtarāṣṭra’s refusal of Vyāsa’s offer. Indeed, Dhṛtarāṣṭra, his attachment for Duryodhana blinding him to justice, was instrumental in this unfortunate turn of events. Had his sense of justice not been overruled by material attachment for his son, the battle might have been avoided. As overtly unbecoming as Dhṛtarāṣṭra’s role was, it gave Kṛṣṇa the opportunity to speak about the nature of attachment, its consequences, detachment, knowledge, and ultimately love of God.

From the great evil of a fratricidal war based on selfish desire, the greatest good emerges. The Bhagavad-gītā takes us on a religious and spiritual journey from selfishness to selflessness in love of God. Through an exhaustive comparative analysis, Kṛṣṇa brings his disciple and dear friend Arjuna, one of the sons of Mahārāja Pāṇḍu, to the path of devotion.

Pāṇḍu’s eldest son, Yudhiṣṭhīra, was the rightful heir to the throne. Because Dhṛtarāṣṭra was blind, he was not chosen to be the king. It is said that the father is born again as his son. Accordingly, Dhṛtarāṣṭra desired that his son Duryodhana assume the throne, rather than the eldest son of Pāṇḍu. One meaning of the name Dhṛtarāṣṭra is “he by whom the kingdom is held.” As this name indicates, Dhṛtarāṣṭra tried to hold the kingdom for himself. His attachment to his son fueled Duryodhana’s enmity toward the Pāṇḍavas, by which Duryodhana lived up to his infamous name. In this verse, the fire of Duryodhana’s enmity is about to burst into the blaze of a full-scale war. Dhṛtarāṣṭra, aware of his own part in the fracas yet too attached to stop his son, is anxious to know what is happening as the armies assemble.

Vyāsa blessed his disciple, Sañjaya, that even though not personally present on the battlefield, he would mystically know every nuance of the war, including the minds of those involved. At Vyāsa’s request, Sañjaya, whose name indicates that he was all (sam) victorious (jaya) and thus master of his own mind and senses, agreed to narrate the events to the blind and aging Dhṛtarāṣṭra from within the palace compound.

Knowing well that dharma was on the side of the Pāṇḍavas, Dhṛtarāṣṭra refers to the battlefield in terms of its sacred heritage. The earliest refer-

1. One meaning of the name Duryodhana is “dirty fighter.” In the Mahābhārata, āṣrama-vāśika, chapter one, Duryodhana is described as a partial incarnation of Kali (the personification of evil who presides over the present age—Kali-yuga).
2. See MB. Bhīṣma-parva 2.4.
ences to the sacredness of Kurukṣetra are found in the Jābāla Upaniṣad and the Satapatha-sūtri. According to Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam, avatāra Parasurāma performed sacrifices at Kurukṣetra. Its sacredness brought Kṛṣṇa’s father, Vasudeva, there during the solar eclipse. Vasudeva also performed sacrifices in Kurukṣetra on that occasion. As we shall see, the extent of its sacredness exceeds these well-known histories.

In this verse Dhṛtarāṣṭra’s voice is filled with doubt. He realized there was little hope that his sons would prevail. “Perhaps,” he thought, “the piety of the Pāṇḍavas combined with the influence of Kurukṣetra will cause the Pāṇḍavas to walk away from the battle giving victory to Duryodhana by default.” However, the Pāṇḍavas were more than pious. They were intimate devotees of Kṛṣṇa and thus transcendentalists of the highest order. Moreover, Kurukṣetra was far more sacred than Dhṛtarāṣṭra realized. Its sanctity is brought out by the devotional mystics of the Gauḍīya Vaiṣṇava tradition in their commentaries on Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam.

Jīva Goswāmī details the chronology of events leading to Kṛṣṇa’s first coming to Kurukṣetra in his treatise on the Bhāgavatam, Kṛṣṇa-sandarbha. At the age of fifty Kṛṣṇa came to Kurukṣetra with his royal entourage from Dwārakā. The secret purpose of this pilgrimage was to meet with the villagers and in particular the cowherd girls (gopīs) of Vraja, the rural setting of his youth. He wanted to assure the Vraja devotees that he loved them and that, although he was living outside of Vraja in high society, he was thinking of them constantly. After Kṛṣṇa had killed the evil king Kaṁsa, he feared that those who sought to avenge his death would cause havoc in Vraja, whose residents were unequipped to deal with a military invasion. As Kṛṣṇa established dharma throughout the land, he did so with his Vraja devotees in mind. In separation from him for over one hundred years, with only one brief and somewhat awkward meeting here at Kurukṣetra, his devotees of Vraja never swayed in their love for him. Separation made their hearts grow fonder, in the same way that it made Kṛṣṇa’s heart grow fonder for them. Now more than fifty years after his brief meeting with them at Kurukṣetra, Kṛṣṇa was once again setting foot in this holy place, and he was reminded of his previous meeting here with the gopīs.

When Kṛṣṇa met previously with the inhabitants of Vraja at Kurukṣetra, he had a private meeting with the gopīs, who loved him more than their own lives. How great must their necessity have been at that time. They were again with Kṛṣṇa, yet he was in princely dress. His peacock feather crown had been replaced with royal jewels, his sweetness covered.
by majesty. He invited them to join him, but owing to the circumstances they could not.

They loved Kṛṣṇa the cowherd, but now in Kurukṣetra he appeared before them as a prince. He used to herd cows barefoot in the forests of Vraja, but now he was riding an elephant. He used to hold a flute in his two hands, but as a prince he sometimes appeared four-handed. The gopīs could not join him in the big city of Dwārakā. Being simple village girls they did not know how to act in high society, nor were they interested in being his queens. They longed for the full-moon nights of Vraja and the Kṛṣṇa who was fully theirs in paramour love. Without the forests of Vraja, the river Yamunā, Kṛṣṇa’s friends and cows, all of which created an atmosphere conducive to the highest love, the gopīs could not be satisfied even in Kṛṣṇa's presence. They did not go with him to be members of his royal assembly, but in effect he went with them, promising them that he would soon return to Vraja and telling them that in the meantime they should know that he was theirs alone. Although he physically returned to Dwārakā, his heart went with the gopīs to Vraja. Here in this place, Kurukṣetra, Kṛṣṇa admitted that Rādhā’s devotion to him had conquered him. This is the height of dharma: Śrī Rādhā’s love (prema-dharma).

What is dharma? It is that by which God is pleased. So pleased Kṛṣṇa was by the gopīs’ devotion that he bowed to it. Although the paramour (parakiya) love of the gopīs for Kṛṣṇa is in reality a mystic illusion owing to the fact that they are his potencies (saktis) and thus belong (svakiya) to him alone, it nonetheless brings the greatest rapture to Kṛṣṇa. As dharma consists of that which is pleasing to God and is judged by the measure of his pleasure, Rādhā’s paramour love constitutes the highest dharma. Thus this mystic illusion of her paramour relationship with Kṛṣṇa is quite real, and the devotion of the Vraja gopīs is the full expression of dharma, the height of aesthetic rapture. The queen of this rapture is Rādhā, and accordingly, service to her is most pleasing to Kṛṣṇa. How great was her necessity at Kurukṣetra! She came so close to reuniting with Kṛṣṇa but could not. Value is determined by necessity. At the hour of Rādhā’s greatest necessity, even the most insignificant service rendered to her draws immense remuneration. Such is the value of devotion to Rādhā at Kurukṣetra.

3. See SB. 10.82.44. This verse is cited three times in Cc., wherein its most esoteric significance is revealed. See also the Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam commentaries of Śanātana Gosvāmī and Viśvanātha Cakravartī Thākura.

4. See SB. 1.2.13.
As he pondered the king’s question, Sañjaya collected himself to answer Dhṛtarāṣṭra. He knew that Kṛṣṇa would speak about dharma from beginning to end. Thus Kurukṣetra is dharma-kṣetra, the field of moral and spiritual values. Anyone who stands here must take a stand on matters good and evil, spiritual and material.

In replying to Dhṛtarāṣṭra’s query concerning the outcome of the meeting between his son Duryodhana and the Pāṇḍavas, Sañjaya wanted to let him know that there was considerable cause for concern, even though Duryodhana was politically astute. He thus indicated that the military arrangement of the Pāṇḍavas was formidable.

Text 2

Sañjaya said: After seeing the battle formation of the Pāṇḍavas’ army, prince Duryodhana approached his guru and spoke the following words:

Madhusūdana Sarasvati says that the word tu (but) implies the superiority of the Pāṇḍavas. The words abravīt (spoke) and vacanam (words) placed together appear redundant. However, this usage indicates that Duryodhana’s speech, although brief, was possessed of more than one meaning.

Text 3
Behold, O master, the strength of the Pāṇḍavas’ military formation, wisely arranged by Drupada’s son, your disciple.

Duryodhana was wise for approaching his martial guru, Droṇācārya, at a time of great necessity, yet more politically wise than spiritually. Here his tenor is filled with sarcasm. Although he approached his guru in form, the spirit of his approach was to instruct. He approached Droṇa to induce him to fight harder for his cause by mentioning that the Pāṇḍavas’ army was arranged expertly by the son of Droṇa’s old enemy. Duryodhana considered that his teacher, Droṇa, was to an extent the cause of his difficulty, for it was Droṇa who out of impartiality had instructed Dhṛṣṭadyumna in military science and now it was Dhṛṣṭadyumna who arranged the military formation of those who opposed him.

Dhṛṣṭadyumna was Drupada’s son. He was born out of Drupada’s desire for revenge against Droṇa. After Droṇa sent his best student, Arjuna, to capture Drupada for breaking his word of honor, Drupada performed a sacrifice to get a son who would kill Droṇa. Dhṛṣṭadyumna was that son. Droṇa knew this, yet he did not hesitate to instruct him in military science, owing to his commitment to his dharma as a teacher over concern for his personal safety. At the outset of the battle, Duryodhana proved himself to be well versed in politics and diplomacy. In form he was competent to lead, but he lacked spiritual substance. Substance aside, artful was his speech and its implications far-reaching. Knowing that Dhṛṣṭadyumna alone might not be considered sufficient cause for concern, he pointed out other prominent members of the opposition, mentioning those who might trouble Droṇa, who along with others was only circumstantially on the side of Duryodhana.

Text 4

अत्र शुरु महेश्वरास्म भीमाजुर्जुनस्म युधिः।
युयुधानो विराटक्र द्रूपद्ध महरथः। ||४४||

atra sūrā mahēśvāsā bhīma-jurjuna-samā yudhi/
yuyudhāno virātaś ca drupadaś ca mahā-rathah//
Yoga of Despair

Among the Pāṇḍavas’ soldiers are heroes and archers equal in prowess to Bhima and Arjuna and fighters like Yuyudhāna, Virāṭa, and the great warrior Drupada.

Text 5

Dhrṣṭaketu, Cekitāna, the valorous Kāśirāja, Purujit, Kuntiboja, and the bull among men, Śaibya, are all here.

Text 6

The mighty Yudhāmanyu, the valorous Uttamaujā, Subhadrā’s son, and the sons of Draupadi are all great warriors.
He mentions Arjuna only by way of comparison, taking emphasis off him personally because he is dear to Drona. Drona will rise to fight against those of prowess like Arjuna, but fighting personally with Arjuna is nothing for Drona to be inspired about. Duryodhana also betrays his own fears by mentioning Bhima. Bhima vowed to personally kill every one of Dhrtarastra’s one hundred sons with his own hands, and he was quite capable of doing so.

After Duryodhana finishes naming prominent warriors in the Pndavas’ army, he will have to bolster his own courage by naming the great warriors in his own ranks. As he does so, he will also have to address Drona’s reaction to everything he has already said. As a brhmana (priest/teacher), Drona understands Duryodhana’s underlying fear and naturally thinks, “If you are so fearful of the enemy, why not make a treaty with him and avoid the fight? What is the need for such eagerness to fight?” Drona did not appreciate the underlying sarcasm of his disciple, thus Duryodhana will also have to make up for his sarcasm and speak respectfully to Dronacarya in the course of bolstering his own confidence.

Text 7

asmkam tu visist ye tan nibodha dvijottama/ nayaka mama saimasya samjnartham tan bravimi tel/

asmkam—our; tu—but; visisth—distinguished; ye—who; tan—them; nibodha—be informed; dvija-uttama—O best of the twice-born; nayakah—leaders; mama—my; saimasya—of the army; samjna-artham—for information; tan—them; bravimi—I tell; te—you.

O best of the twice-born, let me tell you the distinguished leaders of our army.

Texts 8–9

bhavan bhikshu karman karman samiti rasa/ abhavrma vibhakram sampratisthaya ca II.81

anvane ca bahva: pura madaras vyakjyayita: / nanaaksya-praparca: sarva yudhavishartha: II.91
bhavān bhīṣmaś ca karṇaś ca kṛpaś ca samitiñjayaḥ/
asватthāmā vikarṇaś ca saumadattis tathaiva ca//
anye ca bahavaḥ sūrā mad-arthe tyakta-jīvitāḥ/
nānā-sastra-praharaṇāḥ sarve yuddha-viśāradāḥ/

Your good self, Bhīṣma, Karṇa, Kṛpa, who is always victorious in battle, 
Aśvatthāmā, Vikarṇa, the son of Somadatta, as well as many other heroes, 
skilled in battle and well-equipped, are all ready to lay down their lives for my sake.

Here Duryodhana says that his warriors are prepared to die for him. When someone utters the truth unwittingly, it is said that Saraswatī, the goddess of speech and wisdom, speaks through him. That is the case here, for what Duryodhana says will undoubtedly come true: his warriors will all die for him, as will he himself. Kṛṣṇa will tell Arjuna (Bg. 11.33), “They are already put to death by my arrangement,” confirming the inevitability of their demise.

Duryodhana knows that Karṇa has vowed not to fight until Bhīṣma is killed. Duryodhana nevertheless mentions Karṇa after Bhīṣma to remind Karṇa that should Bhīṣma be defeated, he will be relying on Karṇa to bring him victory. Kṛpa and Aśvatthāmā are related to Droṇācārya as his brother-in-law and son, respectively. Mentioning them will certainly encourage Droṇācārya. Duryodhana gives Kṛpa the epithet “ever victorious in battle” (samitiñjaya) to make up for the fact that he mentioned him after Karṇa. As for Vikarṇa, he is not in the same class as the rest of the warriors mentioned. Duryodhana has mentioned him along with the others to flatter him. The battle has not yet begun, and he could still switch sides without deviating from the principles of a warrior. Duryodhana knows that there is a chance that he will do so, for he was the lone objector in Duryodhana’s ranks to the insults hurled at the Pāṇḍavas’ wife, Draupadi, insults that fueled the Pāṇḍavas’ fury.
Our strength is immeasurable, guarded as it is by Bhīṣma, whereas their force, guarded by Bhima, is limited.

Expertise in social etiquette is the ornament of cultured people. However, just as looks can deceive, so can words for those who do not understand their intent. Duryodhana certainly has every appearance of a cultured gentleman. Although Duryodhana addressed Droṇa with flattering words, the spirit of his address is denigrating. The veiled spirit of Duryodhana's address is that Droṇa, being a brāhmaṇa, is not fit for battle. In text 8 Duryodhana praises Bhīṣma only after first praising Droṇa. Although Bhīṣma is senior, Droṇa is Duryodhana's guru. Droṇa is a brāhmaṇa, whereas Bhīṣma is of the warrior caste. Had he addressed Bhīṣma first, Droṇa might have taken offense, but Bhīṣma, although senior, would bow to the etiquette of respecting a brāhmaṇa over a kṣatriya (warrior).

While Duryodhana praises Bhīṣma, he also expresses doubts about him. Bhīṣma is certainly the greatest fighter on the battlefield, and thus Duryodhana's army has immeasurable strength when fortified by Bhīṣma's presence. However, the word aparyāptam (immeasurable) can be taken in two ways—immeasurably extensive or uncertain—and ācāryas like Viśvanātha Cakravartī Ṭhākura and Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa have rendered verse 10 differently because of these two meanings. Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa understands aparyāptam to indicate the strength of Duryodhana's army because of the military capability of Bhīṣma. Viśvanātha Cakravartī, on the other hand, understands aparyāptam to indicate the potential weakness of Duryodhana's army: Bhīṣma's commitment to Duryodhana is questionable owing to his affinity for the Pāṇḍavas, for whom he acted as a foster grandfather.
Outwardly Duryodhana’s army is fortified by the strength of Bhīṣma, yet under scrutiny Bhīṣma is in a position of potential compromise, and this may weaken Duryodhana’s army. The word abhirakṣitam in this verse can also imply, “Watch out for Bhīṣma; we cannot be entirely sure of his commitment.” Duryodhana wants to rally Bhīṣma and at the same time alert others to the reality of the sympathies that might compromise his resolve to fight.

Bhīma is no doubt the most powerful of the Pāṇḍava warriors and in this sense their leader, although not officially so. However, he is no match for Bhīṣma, around whom Duryodhana’s army must rally, both because of Bhīṣma’s military might and because of his sentiment for the Pāṇḍavas. The army must both encourage Bhīṣma to express his military prowess and discourage him from expressing his parental affection.

Text 11

ayaneṣu ca sarveṣu yathā-bhāgam avasthitāḥ/
bhīṣmam evābhiraṅkṣantu bhavantaḥ sarve eva hi/

ayaneṣu—in the battle stations; ca—also; sarveṣu—in all; yathā-bhāgam—each in his respective place; avasthitāḥ—situated; bhīṣmam—Bhīṣma; eva—certainly; abhirakṣantu—must support; bhavantaḥ—you; sarve—all; eva hi—certainly.

Throughout the battle all of you must support Bhīṣma from your battle stations.

Duryodhana’s command that the troops rally around and protect Bhīṣma is intelligent, for it is well known that if Bhīṣma dies they will lose. After Duryodhana mentions Bhīṣma, the grandsire of the Pāṇḍavas responds.

Text 12

tasya sañjanayan harṣan kuru-vṛddhaḥ pitāmahah/
simha-nādāṁ vinadyoccaiḥ śaṅkham dadhmau pratāpavan/
Bringing joy to Duryodhana, Bhīṣma, the seasoned grandsire of the Kuru family, roaring like a lion, blew his conch triumphantly.

Thereafter the Kuru army's conches, drums, cymbals, and bugles all sounded together in a tumultuous uproar.

Bhīṣma’s response encourages Duryodhana, whose guru, Droṇa, had remained silent out of indifference toward his disciple. However, although Bhīṣma’s roar and bugling of the conch encourages Duryodhana, it has no effect on the confident Påṇḍavas.
On the other side, Mādhava and the son of Pāṇḍu, standing on a great, swift chariot yoked to white horses, blew their divine conches.

This is the first time Kṛṣṇa is mentioned in the text of the Gitā. The name Mādhava carries with it the implication that Arjuna, who is also introduced in this verse, will be victorious, as Mādhava is often rendered “husband of the Goddess of fortune.” The syllable mā indicates the Goddess and dhava means husband. The epithet Mādhava is particularly sweet. Mad is the Sanskrit root from which madhu (honey) is derived. It also indicates intoxicated passion and madness (mada). In Caitanya-caritāmṛta, Kṛṣṇadāsa Kavirāja Goswāmi uses the term mādhurya (sweet) in characterizing śṛṅgāra rasa, the sacred aesthetic rapture of conjugal love that drove Śrī Caitanya to spiritual madness. Within the appellation Mādhava both Kṛṣṇa and his consort Rādhā reside, for there is no meaning to the husband of the Goddess of fortune without the Goddess herself. Mādhava also means spring. Later in chapter 10 Kṛṣṇa identifies himself with spring, the season of love. Herein Sañjaya indicates that the Gitā is ultimately a doctrine of divine love that reaches its zenith in Rādhā’s love for Mādhava.

The chariot of Arjuna is singled out here. Although all of the warriors were also seated on chariots, Arjuna’s chariot stands out in comparison because it was a gift he received from Agni, the god of fire. It is thought to be invincible in the plane of mortals. The fact that Kṛṣṇa was driving it only added to its invincibility.

Text 15

पाण्डुजन्य हृषीकेशो देवदत्तं धनञ्जयः।
पीण्डू देवस्तो महाश्रमं भीमकर्माः कुकुटदेवः॥ १५॥

पाण्डुजन्यम् ह्रशीकेषो देवदत्तम् धनन्त्यायह॥
पौण्ड्रम दद्हमौ महास्तक्षम् भिमकर्माः व्रकुटदाराः॥

pāṇcajanyam hrṣikeyo devadattam dhanañjayah/
pauñdram dadhmau maha-sankham bhima-karmā vrkodorah/

pāṇcajanyam—the conch named Pāṇcajanya; hrṣikeya—Lord of the senses; devadattam—the conch named Devadatta; dhanañjaya—Dhanañjaya (conqueror of wealth); pauñdram—the conch named Pauṇḍra; dadhmau—blew; mahā-sankham—the great conch; bhima-karmā—tremendous feats; vrkā-udarah—wolf-bellied, of great appetite (Bhīma).

Kṛṣṇa, the Lord of the senses, blew his conch Pāṇcajanya; Arjuna, the winner of treasure, blew his, the Devadatta; while Bhima of great
appetite and prodigious accomplishments sounded forth his great conch, Paunḍra.

Although Kṛṣṇa himself was a powerful warrior, he had vowed not to fight in the battle. Instead he agreed to be the charioteer of Arjuna. Nonetheless, the power of his presence on the battlefield is not to be underestimated. Here Kṛṣṇa is addressed as Hṛṣikeśa, which indicates that he is the controller of the senses and will thus factor significantly into the outcome of the battle. Conquering one’s sensual appetite is a prerequisite to fully understanding and entering into the sacred conjugal love implied in the name Mādhava, which was invoked in the previous verse.

Dhanañjaya refers to the capacity to gather wealth, an ability that Arjuna demonstrated during the great sacrifice preceding Yudhiṣṭhira’s coronation. The name also implies that Arjuna has the capacity to gather the wealth of love of God in the instructions he will receive from Kṛṣṇa.

Text 16

anantavijayam rājā kuntī-putro yudhiṣṭhirah/
nakulā sahadevas ca sughoṣa-manipuspakau//
ananta-vijaya—conch named Ananta-vijaya; rājā—the king; kunti-putrah—the son of Kunti; yudhiṣṭhirah—Yudhiṣṭhira; nakula—Nakula; sahadevah—Sahadeva; ca—and; sughoṣa-manipuspakau—the conches named Sughoṣa and Manipuspaka.

Yudhiṣṭhira, son of Kunti, blew the Ananta-vijaya; Nakula and Sahadeva blew the Sughoṣa and Manipuspaka, respectively.

Yudhiṣṭhira is the eldest of the Pāṇḍavas. His name means one who is unshaken (sthira) in battle (yudhi).

Texts 17–18

Yudhiṣṭhira, son of Kunti, blew the Ananta-vijaya; Nakula and Sahadeva blew the Sughoṣa and Manipuspaka, respectively.
kāsyaś ca parameṣvāsaḥ śikhaṇḍi ca mahā-rathaḥ/
dhrṣṭadyumno virāṭas ca sātyakiś cāparājitaḥ//

The paramount archer the king of Kāśī; ca—and; parama-īsu-āsah—the paramount archer; śikhaṇḍi—Śikhaṇḍi; ca—also; mahā-rathaḥ—the great warrior; dhrṣṭadyumnah—Dhrṣṭadyumna; virāṭaḥ—Virāṭa; ca—also; sātyakiḥ—Sāt-yaki; ca—and; aparājitaḥ—who is invincible; drupadaḥ—Drupada; draupadeyāḥ—the sons of Draupadī; ca—also; sarvasaḥ—all; prthivi-pate—O earthly lord; saubhadraḥ—the son of Subhadrā; ca—also; mahā-bāhuḥ—mighty-armed; śaṅkhān—conchshells; dadhmuh—blew; prthak prthak—each.

Dhṛtarāṣṭra is at best an earthly king, but Kṛṣṇa and Arjuna ride a celestial chariot given by the fire god, Agni. As their conchshells are divine, so too are they. It is well known that when Kṛṣṇa went to the gates of hell to retrieve his guru’s son, he blew his mighty conch and stopped all the suffering therein. The Skanda Purāṇa, Avanti-khaṇḍa, describes some of the details of this event thus: “The hell known as Asipatra-vana lost the sharp, sword-like leaves on its trees, and the hell named Raurava became free of its ruru beasts. The Bhairava hell lost its fearfulness, and all cooking (of people) stopped in the Kumbhipāka hell. Their sinful reactions eradicated, all the inhabitants of hell attained liberation and entered the spiritual world.”

Kṛṣṇa’s conchshell heralds victory for the pious Pāṇḍavas. Its sound terrifies the heart of Duryodhana, whereas the Pāṇḍavas remain undisturbed after hearing the conches of Bhīṣma and his army. Pure hearts know no fear. Even the conchshells of the Pāṇḍavas are feared in battle, not to speak of the Pāṇḍavas themselves.
The uproarious sound reverberated through the sky and earth and sent fear into the hearts of Dhṛtarāṣṭra’s sons.

Then, O king, the son of Pāṇḍu, who carries the banner of Hanumān, having looked over the army of Dhṛtarāṣṭra’s sons in battle array, raised his bow in preparation as weapons were readied and spoke the following words to Kṛṣṇa, the master of the senses.

At this point the sacred conversation between Kṛṣṇa and Arjuna is about to begin. Victory is with Arjuna and with those who reach his conclusion: surrender to Hṛṣikeśa, Kṛṣṇa, the master of the senses. The flag of Hanumān, the monkey servant of Rāma, implies his presence on Arjuna’s chariot, which further insures Arjuna’s victory. Sañjaya’s reference to Kṛṣṇa as Hṛṣikeśa indicates that he is the master of the senses, while the senses are the masters of this world. Thus he who is the master of the
senses is the Lord of the earth, on whose side there will be victory over illusion.

Texts 21–23

Arjuna uvāca
senayo ubhayor madhye ratham sthāpayya me ’cyuta/
yāvad etān nirikṣe ’ham yoddhu-kāmān avasthitān/
kair mayā saha yoddhavyam asmin rana-samudyaye/
yotsyamānān avekṣe ’ham ya ete ’tra samāgatāh/
dhārtarāstraśrya durbuddher yuddhe priya-cikirśavah/

Arjuna said: O infallible one, draw my chariot between the two armies so that I may see who has assembled here in fighting spirit and with whom I must contend in this battle. Let me see those who have come here with a desire to please the evil-minded son of Dhrātarāṣṭra.

Battle is no doubt the object of delight for a warrior like Arjuna. However, here Arjuna indicates that while he is a great warrior, he has doubts about this war. It is not bringing him joy at the onset. He raises his bow, but his hesitation betrays his reservations.

Here Arjuna addresses Kṛṣṇa as the infallible one and indeed he is so, but why is the infallible one driving the chariot of Arjuna? All are fallible
in this world, however mighty they may appear. Kṛṣṇa’s assuming the post of chariot driver and taking these orders from his devotee Arjuna, actions that seem contradictory to the notion that he holds a position of infallibility, imply that his infallible status is otherworldly. Chariot driver he may appear to be, but more he is Arjuna’s friend, and Kṛṣṇa will never fail him. He has become Arjuna’s driver out of affection for him. Of all of Kṛṣṇa’s qualities, his affection for his devotees is foremost.

In the very first utterance of Arjuna, the conclusion of this sacred conversation is revealed: the infallible Godhead, Kṛṣṇa, is subordinated by the love of his devotees. Love of Kṛṣṇa conquers the source of all material benedictions and eternal life. Under its influence, the infallible becomes fallible; however, Kṛṣṇa’s fallibility in relation to pure love demonstrates his infallibility for those who love him. Kṛṣṇa never fails his devotee.

Texts 24–25

Sañjaya uvāca

एवम् उक्तो हृषिकेशो गुडङ्केशन्यान भारतः।

सेनयोऽभयोर्मयवः स्थायित्वम् रथोत्तमम्॥२४॥

भीष्मद्रोणप्रमुखः सत्वेशा च महीक्षिताम्।

उवाच पार्थ पश्चेतान् समवेतान् कुरुनिन्तः॥२५॥

sañjaya uvāca

evam ukto hṛṣikeśo gudākeśena bhārata/

senayor ubhayor madhye sthāpayitvā rathottamam//

bhīṣma-drona-pramukhataḥ sarveśām ca mahi-kṣitām/

uvāca pārtha paśyayitān samavetān kurūn iti//

sañjaya uvāca—Sañjaya said; evam—thus; uktaḥ—having been addressed; hṛṣikeśah—master of the senses; gudākeśena—by Arjuna, the conqueror of sleep; bhārata—O descendant of Bharata; senayoh—of the armies; ubhayoh—of both; madhye—between; sthāpayitvā—stopping; ratha-uttamam—the best of chariots; bhīṣma—Bhīṣma; drona—Drona; pramukhataḥ—in front of; sarveśām—of all; ca—also; mahi-kṣitām—of the rulers of the world; uvāca—said; pārtha—O son of Prthū; paśya—just see; etān—these; samavetān—assembled; kurūn—the Kuru; iti—thus.

Sañjaya said: O Dhṛtarāṣṭra, Hṛṣikeśa, having been ordered by Gudākeśa, pulled the best of chariots between the two armies, stopping it in
front of Bhīṣma and Droṇa in the midst of the other rulers of the world. Kṛṣṇa said: Just see, Pārtha, all of the Kurus assembled here.

Kṛṣṇa’s irony implies in jest, “What is the use of just looking at the enemy?” Kṛṣṇa chuckled at the plight of Arjuna, detecting a reluctance in Arjuna that he himself had caused. Arjuna was known for having conquered sleep (gudākeśa), but now Kṛṣṇa begins to put him into a mystic sleep of divine illusion and apparent material attachment so that this conversation can take place. As Hṛṣikesa (the master of the senses), Kṛṣṇa will awaken Arjuna from the illusion of a life centered on the interaction between the senses and sense objects. He does so by teaching him how to control his senses, which gives rise to knowledge of the self and God and the dynamic union of the two in love.

Kṛṣṇa stops in front of Bhīṣma and Droṇa who personify Arjuna’s attachment. He stresses this attachment by describing all of the soldiers as one family, the Kurus. Attachments must be retired if one is to conquer God in love. Thus the opening lines of Arjuna and Kṛṣṇa span the entire spectrum of spiritual life, from material attachment to love of God.

Text 26

\[
tatāpaśyat sthitān pārthāḥ pitṛn atha pitāmahān/
ācāryān mātulān bhrātṛn putrān pautrān sakhīṁs tathā/
svaśurān suhṛdaṁ caiva senayor ubhayor api/\
\]

tatra—there; apaśyat—he saw; sthitān—standing; pārthāḥ—Arjuna; pitṛn—fathers; atha—and then; pitāmahān—grandfathers; ācāryān—teachers; mātulān—maternal uncles; bhrātṛn—brothers; putrān—sons; pautrān—grandsons; sakhīṁs—friends; tathā—as well; svaśurān—in-laws; suhṛdaṁ—companions; ca—also; eva—certainly; senayor—of the armies; ubhayor—of both parties; api—including.

There Pārtha saw among both parties fathers, grandfathers, teachers, maternal uncles, brothers, sons, grandsons, as well as friends. He saw in-laws and companions on both sides and thus thought deeply about all of his relatives assembled therein.
When the son of Kunti, Arjuna, saw all his kinsmen, he was overcome with great compassion. Filled with despair, he began to speak.

Arjuna uvāca

Arjuna said; drṣṭvā—seeing; imam—this; sva-janam—own people; krṣṇa—O Kṛṣṇa; yuyutsum—preparing to fight; samuṇḍhatam—present; sidanti—quivering; mama—my; gātrāṇi—limbs; mukham—mouth; ca—also; pariśusyati—is drying up; veṣṭih—trembling; ca—also; śarīre—in the body; me—my; roma-harṣaḥ—bristling of hair; ca—also; jāyate—is taking place; gāndivaḥ—the bow of Arjuna; sramaṁ—slipping; hastāḥ—from the hand; tvak—skin; ca—also; eva—certainly; pariśusyate—is burn-
Arjuna said: O Kṛṣṇa, seeing my own relatives preparing to fight with one another, my limbs are quivering and my body trembles. My mouth is drying up and my hair is bristling. My bow, Gāṇḍīva, is slipping from my hand and my skin burns. I am unable to keep my composure and feel as though I am losing my mind. O Keśava, I can see only misfortune ahead.

Madhusūdana Sarasvatī comments that the use of the name Kṛṣṇa here indicates that Arjuna is calling upon Kṛṣṇa as “the one who has the power to remove the sorrow of his devotees…being of the nature of eternal bliss.”

Although Arjuna’s love has the power to subordinate Kṛṣṇa, Kṛṣṇa’s acceptance of a subordinate role does not change his position as God. The love that such devotees possess is the gift of God, bestowed upon those who desire nothing more. From within the compact of that love, Kṛṣṇa bewilders Arjuna to think in terms of lesser concepts, such as material gain, dharma, and liberation. Still, the good heart of Arjuna shines forth even as he exemplifies the plight of an illusioned being. Remembering the prowess of Kṛṣṇa when he killed Keśi, the last demon that Kṛṣṇa killed in Vraja before he ventured to Mathurā, Arjuna, while expressing doubts, demonstrates his confidence in Kṛṣṇa’s ability to destroy them. Arjuna spoke with humility, as Keśi, the mad horse who attacked Kṛṣṇa in Vraja, represents false pride.

The great warrior Arjuna is brought to tears at the thought of fighting with his relatives. Such is the power of material attachment. Humbled, he takes shelter of his friend Kṛṣṇa. After expressing his reservations about fighting, Arjuna next makes an elaborate attempt to rationalize his material attachments in the name of dharma, decency, scripture, and compassion. While his arguments have value unto themselves, in the present context they are symptomatic of his delusion.

Text 31

न च श्रेणोऽनुपरस्यां हन्या मृत्युजनमात्रे ।
न कं क्षे विजयं कृणं न च राज्यं सुखानि च ॥३१॥

na ca śreyo ‘nupasyāṁ hatvā sva-janam āhave/
na kāṅkṣe vijayaṁ kṛṣṇa na ca rājyaṁ sukhāni ca/
O Kṛṣṇa, I do not see how any good can come from killing my relatives in battle. I have no desire for victory, a kingdom, or the pleasure derived from attaining these things.

Here Arjuna invokes the holy name of Kṛṣṇa as he begins to rationalize why he should not fight. Kṛṣṇa and his name are one and the same, yet the holy name of Kṛṣṇa is a more compassionate manifestation of himself. By invoking Kṛṣṇa’s name in this and the previous verse, Arjuna implies that Kṛṣṇa’s name alone can remove all of his sorrows arising from material attachment.

Texts 32–35

kim no rājyena govinda kim bhogaiṁ jīvitena vā/
yeśāṁ arthe kāṇksitam no rājyam bhogaiṁ sukhāṁ ca//
ta ime ’vasthitā yuddhe prāṇāṁs tyaktvā dhanāṁ ca/
ācāryāḥ pitaraḥ putraḥ prātāṁ tathaiva ca pitāmahāḥ//
mātulāḥ svaśūrāḥ pauruśāḥ sāyāṁ sambandhinās tathā//
etān na hantum icchāmi ghnato ’pi madhusūdana//
apī triālokāya-rājyasya hetoh kim nu mahi-kṛte/
nihartya dhārta-rāstrān naḥ kā pritiḥ syāj janārdana//

kim—what; naḥ—by us; rājyena—with kingdom; govinda—O Govinda, Lord of the cowherds who gives pleasure to the senses; kim—what; bhogaiṁ—with pleasures; jīvitena—living; vā—either; yeśāṁ—of whom; arthe—for the sake; kāṇksitam—desired; naḥ—to us; rājyam—kingdom; bhogaiṁ—material enjoy-
O Govinda, what are kingdom and happiness to us, when those with whom we might desire to enjoy these things—teachers, fathers, sons, grandfathers, maternal uncles, fathers-in-law, grandsons, brothers-in-law, and other brethren—are standing here ready to fight, risking their own kingdoms, happiness, wealth, and lives? I have no desire to kill even those bent on killing me, O Madhusūdana. O Janārdana, I am not prepared to fight with the sons of Dhṛtarāṣṭra even for the sovereignty of the three worlds, much less an earthly kingdom.
O Mādhava, by killing these aggressors we will incur only sin. It is not appropriate for us to kill Dhṛtarāṣṭra’s sons along with our friends. How can one be happy after destroying one’s family?

Although according to artha-śāstra, the Vedic political science, one can kill aggressors without incurring a reaction, this does not apply in this situation, for it is against the dharma-śāstra, or religious codes, to kill one’s guru or elders. If in legal decisions the political and religious codes differ, the religious codes are to be given preference. The rule is that when two smṛtis conflict in worldly matters, reason prevails. However, the moral and religious code (dharma-śāstra) is more authoritative than that of political science (artha-śāstra).

Arjuna is certainly well versed in dharma. He also knows that in the battle not only will the aggressors, the sons of Dhṛtarāṣṭra, be killed, but others will as well. Thus he asks Mādhava, the bringer of good fortune, not to bring him misfortune by encouraging him in acts he understands to be irreligious.

Before Kṛṣṇa can question Arjuna as to why Bhīṣma and Drona, who certainly understood dharma, were nonetheless willing to fight, Arjuna answers him in the next verse. In doing so he stresses the importance of taking pride in family tradition, as this helps one to avoid capriciousness.

5. See Ya. Sm. 2.21.
O Janārdana, although others gathered here, being overwhelmed by greed for a kingdom, are blind to the faults of destroying the dynasty or deceiving friends, why should we, who know better, engage in this battle?

With the destruction of the dynasty, tradition is destroyed and remaining family members will be overpowered by irreligious practice.
Text 40

Adharmābhībhavāt kṛṣṇa pradusṣyanti kula-strīyah/
strīṣu duṣṭāsu vārṣneya jāyate varṇa-saṅkarah//

adharmā—irreligion; abhībhavāt—having increased; kṛṣṇa—O Kṛṣṇa; pradusṣyanti—become corrupted; kula-strīyah—women of the family; strīṣu duṣṭāsu—women being corrupted; vārṣneya—O descendant of Vṛṣṇi; jāyate—is produced; varṇa-saṅkarah—unwanted children.

O Kṛṣṇa, when irreligion increases, women are taken advantage of. From the corruption of women, O descendant of Vṛṣṇi, arises inappropriate mixing, producing unwanted children.

Although it is certainly true that when irreligion increases women can be taken advantage of, it is also true women can take advantage of men. Inappropriate mixing between men and women often does produce unwanted children. This section of the Gitā extols the virtues of family life, which is a vital component of a healthy society.

The argument raised here by Arjuna is one of many arguments he raises in this chapter based on religious—but nonetheless material—considerations. He raises them to justify not doing Kṛṣṇa’s bidding. Kṛṣṇa refutes all of these arguments when he takes the discussion to the level of the soul in the second chapter. However, Kṛṣṇa expresses his own concern for family values in chapter 3 (Bg. 3.24).

Text 41

Sankarō narakāyaiva kula-ghanānāṁ kulasya ca/
patanti pitaro hy esāṁ lupta-pīṇḍodaka-kriyāḥ//

sankarāḥ—mixing; narakāya—to hell; eva—certainly; kula-ghanānāṁ—of those who are killers of the family; kulasya—of the family; ca—also; patanti—fall; pitarāḥ—forefathers; hi—certainly; esāṁ—of them; lupta—stopped; pīṇḍa—mouthful of rice; udaka—water; kriyāḥ—oblations.
Such inappropriate mixing sends the dynasty and its destroyers to hell. Even the ancestors fall, being deprived of oblations of rice and water.

Text 42

dośair etaiḥ kula-ghnānāṃ varṇa-sāṅkara-kārakaiḥ/
    utsādyante jāti-dharmāḥ kula-dharmāḥ ca sāsvatāḥ//

dośaiḥ—by such faults; etaiḥ—by these; kula-ghnānāṃ—of the destroyers of the family; varṇa-sāṅkara—unwanted children; kārakaiḥ—which are causes; utsādyante—are destroyed; jāti-dharmāḥ—caste duties; kula-dharmāḥ—family traditions; ca—also; sāsvatāḥ—long-standing.

Inappropriate mixing destroys social norms and long-standing family traditions.

Text 43

utsanna-kula-dharmānāṃ manusyaṇān janārdana/
    narake niyatam vāsā bhavatīry anuśūrma//

utsanna-kula-dharmānāṃ—of those whose family traditions have been destroyed; manusyaṇām—of men; janārdana—O Janārdana; narake—in hell; niyatam—always; vāsā—residence; bhavati—it is; itī—thus; anuśūrma—we have heard from reliable sources.

O Janārdana, I have heard from reliable sources that those whose family traditions and values have been lost live indefinitely in hell.

Text 44

aho bata mahat-pāpaṁ kartuṁ vyavasīta vayam/
    yad rājya-sukha-lohena hantuṁ sva-janam udyatāḥ//

aho bata mahat-pāpaṁ kartuṁ vyavasīta vayam/
    yad rājya-sukha-lohena hantuṁ sva-janam udyatāḥ//
Alas! How has it happened that we are prepared to commit such a great evil as killing our own kinsmen out of greed for royal pleasures?

It would be better for the sons of Dhṛtarāṣṭra, weapons in hand, to kill me in battle unarmed and unresisting.

Although Arjuna reasons that shunning the war would not stop the opposition from fighting, his conviction to avoid the battle remains firm.
Sañjaya said: Having spoken thus, Arjuna sat down on his chariot and cast aside his bow and arrows, his heart overcome with grief.

Arjuna’s grief is rooted in material attachment. His rationale for not fighting, which begins with verse 28 and concludes with verse 45, is a product of his attachment, and this attachment is what Kṛṣṇa wants him to slay. Arjuna’s attachment is so powerful that it has caused this otherwise great warrior to cast aside his weapons.

Arjuna’s material identity is a product of his attachment to his family members. Slaying them, he sees no prospect in life because his sense of self is dependent on their existence. Because this fleeting superficial identity changes as the people and things one considers one’s own prove to be otherwise, the material ego must be dismantled for one’s authentic self to emerge. Kṛṣṇa wants Arjuna to know his eternal self that outlives his identity based on his present attachments. All spiritual practitioners are first and foremost faced with this challenge. Thus the importance of dismantling the material ego is brought to light here in the first chapter. Although the Bhagavad-gītā is about slaying one’s material attachments, most people who read it skip over this important step and argue about the significance of the balance of the text. It should be understood, however, that spiritual life requires that we slay our material ego. From then on, like a boat that has pulled up its anchor, we can successfully sail the sea of our spiritual potential.
Sañjaya said: To Arjuna, who was thus overcome with pity and had tears filling his downcast eyes in despair, Madhusūdana began to speak.

The previous chapter is called viśāda-yoga. Viśāda is the condition of distress. The symptoms of Arjuna’s distress (visidantam) in the form of downcast eyes filled with tears (aṣrū-pūrnākulekṣaṇam) are described in this verse in the course of introducing Kṛṣṇa’s speech. The grammatical arrangement in this verse indicates that Arjuna’s despair is external and thus possible to remove. Kṛṣṇa’s instructions in this chapter, by which he seeks to remove Arjuna’s despair, constitute a sūtra-like summary of the Gîtā’s contents.

When Arjuna dropped his bow at the end of the previous chapter, Dhṛtarāṣṭra’s heart leaped. The old king thought, “Despite Sañjaya’s subtle inferences to the contrary, it appears that I was right. The piety of the Pāṇḍavas and that of Kurukṣetra have combined to grant victory to my son by
default. Arjuna will not fight, and Duryodhana will be the king without shooting an arrow!” Sensing his false hopes, Sañjaya continues his narration, relating how Kṛṣṇa, whom he addresses here as Madhusūdana, begins to speak. He refers to Kṛṣṇa by this name to indicate to Dhīrārāstra that just as Kṛṣṇa had long before slain the demon Madhu, so now he would slay the demonlike doubts of Arjuna. Free from doubt, Arjuna will fight and be victorious. Although Arjuna’s reluctance to fight appears to be supported by valid and even religious concerns, Kṛṣṇa thinks otherwise, as does Sañjaya, comparing Arjuna’s doubts to demons.

Text 2

śrī-bhagavān uvāca
kutas tvā kaśmalam idam viśame samupasthitam/ anārya-juṣṭam asvargyam akīrti-karam arjuna//

śrī-bhagavān uvāca—the Lord of Śrī said; kutah—from where; tvā—to you; kaśmalam—faintheartedness; idam—this; viśame—at the hour of danger; samupasthitam—arrived; anārya—not Aryan; juṣṭam—befitting; asvargyam—which does not lead to heaven; akīrti—infamy; karam—the cause of; arjuna—O Arjuna.

The Lord of Śrī said: Arjuna, from where has this faintheartedness come at the hour of fighting? It is not befitting a man of your character, an Āryan. It does not lead to heaven or a good reputation.

As Kṛṣṇa utters his first words of this chapter, the Gitā refers to him as Śrī Bhagavān. Śrī indicates the Goddess of fortune, and Bhagavān the Supreme God who is possessed of all opulence. There is no meaning to Bhagavān without Śrī, for the Absolute devoid of sakti is not Bhagavān but nirviśeṣa brahman, pure undifferentiated consciousness devoid of form, lilā, and so on—the spiritual halo of Bhagavān.

Śrī indicates the sakti of Godhead, in relation with which Brahman, the Absolute, is known as paraṁ brahman, or Bhagavān, the Supreme Person. According to the Upaniṣads, Brahman is possessed of innumerable saktis: parāśya saktir vividhaiva śrūyate (Śve. Up. 6.8). The saktis, or potencies, of
Brahman are simultaneously one and different from him, as light and heat are one with and different from fire. Gaudīya Vedānta posits three principal potencies of the Absolute: primary (śvarūpa-śaktī), intermediate (taṭastha or jīva-śaktī), and secondary (māyā-śaktī). The primary śaktī of God is that by which he conducts his personal affairs. This śaktī is alluded to in the fourth chapter of the Gitā in relation to the descent of Godhead to the world of our experience (Bg. 4.6). The predominant manifestation of this śaktī is Śri, who is the fountainhead of all of Bhagavān’s innumerable saktīs. She is the śaktī by which he himself feels blessed—the Blessed Lord. The intermediate saktī consists of the individual souls, and the secondary saktī is the material influence. These two saktīs are introduced in chapter 7 and discussed in greater detail in chapter 13.¹

Jīva Goswāmī has defined Bhagavān as bhajaniya-guṇa-viśiṣṭa, “He whose nature is such that whoever comes in touch with him cannot resist feeling moved to worship and adore his charming personality.”² This explanation is in line with Parāśara Muni’s definition, but it emphasizes Kṛṣṇa himself, as opposed to a general conception of Bhagavān. Parāśara Muni says that he who possesses all opulences in full—wealth, strength, beauty, fame, knowledge, and renunciation—is known as Bhagavān.³

According to Jīva Goswāmī, the word Bhagavān is derived from “Bhagāvavān.” Śri Jīva says that the a in the syllable va is elided enabling the two v’s to join and become a single letter. Thus Bhagāvavān becomes Bhagavān. It means he who possesses (van) bha, ga, and va. Bha represents bhartā, which implies the power to nourish or maintain. Kṛṣṇa possesses the power to maintain and nourish his devotees. Ga stands for gamayayitā. It means he who has the power to grant love of God or bring God’s devotees to his abode. Va stands for the verb vas, which means to reside. Bhagavān is he in whom everything resides, and he who resides in the hearts of his devotees.⁴

Here Kṛṣṇa addresses Arjuna by his given name. The name Arjuna means white, spotless, or pure. Kṛṣṇa addresses his friend and disciple-to-be by name to further emphasize that his reservation to fight is unbecoming for one so pure as to go by the name Arjuna.

---

¹. See Bg. 7.4–5 and 13.1.1.
². This is the explanation/translation of Swāmī B. R. Śrīdharā.
³. This verse can be found in Veda Vyāsa’s Viṣṇu Purāṇa (6.5.47), although it has been attributed to Parāśara Muni, the father of Vyāsa.
⁴. See Bs. 3.
In this verse Kṛṣṇa dismisses all of Arjuna’s reservations thus far. Sañjaya described the basis of Arjuna’s reservations as “brimming with compassion.” (Bg. 1.27) Here Kṛṣṇa dismisses this entire basis, asking Arjuna, “from where has this faintheartedness come?” Kṛṣṇa calls Arjuna’s symptoms of fear “faintheartedness” (kaśmālam). In response to Arjuna’s five-verse speech about winning and losing kingdoms and nobility (Bg. 1.31–35), Kṛṣṇa tells Arjuna that while speaking about that which is noble, his speech is not befitting a noble person (anāryam). To Arjuna’s five verses concerning not acting disgracefully (Bg. 1.36–40), Kṛṣṇa replies that he has attracted infamy (akīrtikaram), and to Arjuna’s concerns about attaining heaven (Bg. 1.41–45), Kṛṣṇa tells him his speech will not lead him there (asvargyam). Arjuna is thus shattered by Kṛṣṇa’s opening remarks, which are followed by Kṛṣṇa’s remedial measures.

Text 3

klaibyaṁ mā sma gamāḥ pārthā naitat tvayi upapadyate/
kṣudraṁ hṛdaya-daurbalyam tyaktvotiṣṭha paramātapa/

klaibyaṁ—impotency; mā—do not; gamāḥ—undergo; pārthā—O son of Pṛthā; na—not; etat—this; tvayi—in you; upapadyate—is becoming; kṣudraṁ—petty; hṛdaya—heart; daurbalyam—weakness; tyaktvā—giving up; uttiṣṭha—stand up; param-tapa—O chastiser of enemies.

Therefore, O son of Pṛthā, do not yield to impotency for it is not becoming. O chastiser of enemies, cast off this petty weakness of heart. Stand up and fight.

Kṛṣṇa began speaking to Arjuna by reminding him of his maternal family in order to draw out family affection from him so that his instructions for all souls could be revealed through the instrument of his devotee. Here Kṛṣṇa again reminds Arjuna that he is the son of Pṛthā, but this time with the purpose of drawing his attention to the fact that as Pṛthā’s son his father is Indra, the king of heaven and a powerful warrior. A great warrior like Arjuna should not yield to impotency, which is superficial and springs from weakness of heart. Material conditioning has no roots. The foundation of existence is consciousness. Casting off the weakheartedness of material
conditioning, one treads the path of dharma. Although Arjuna is crushed, owing to his warrior spirit he makes a feeble attempt to rebut Kṛṣṇa in the following verse.

Text 4

अर्जुन उवाच
कथं भीष्ममह संख्ये द्रोणम च मधुसूदनन।
हयुभि: प्रतियोत्स्यामि पूजाहरिमुंदन ॥

Arjuna uvāca

katham bhīṣmam ahām sankhye dronam ca madhusūdana/

isubhiḥ pratiyotsyāmi pūjārhaṃ ari-sūdana//

arjunaḥ uvāca—Arjuna said; katham—how; bhīṣmam—Bhīṣma; ahām—I; sankhye—in battle; dronam—Drona; ca—also; madhu-sūdana—O killer of Madhu; isubhiḥ—with arrows; pratiyotsyāmi—shall attack; pūjā-arhau—those who are worshippable; ari-sūdana—O killer of the enemies.

Arjuna said: O killer of the Madhu demon, how can I kill in battle Bhīṣma and Drona? How can I use arrows against these two worshippable men, O killer of enemies?

Here two names of Kṛṣṇa are used which seem redundant. Madhusūdana indicates that Kṛṣṇa is a killer of enemies, such as the Madhu demon. The name Arisūdana at the end of the verse also means killer of enemies. However, Madhu in Madhusūdana could be confused with the Madhu patriarch of the Yadu dynasty. Thus Arisūdana is used to clear any confusion.

Arjuna addresses Kṛṣṇa in terms of Kṛṣṇa’s wrath against his own enemies. By doing so, Arjuna contrasts Kṛṣṇa’s own actions with that which Kṛṣṇa expects of him: killing his gurus! Drona and Bhīṣma are worthy of Arjuna’s worship, yet Arjuna is expected to throw arrows at them rather than flowers? “You kill your enemies,” reasoned Arjuna, “but when have you killed your friends and teachers? Would you ever think of doing so? You call my reluctance weakness of heart?”

Kṛṣṇa thought, “Well, if you don’t kill them, how will you live? After all you are a warrior and this battle, welcome or not, has come to your doorstep. What else are you going to do?”

Arjuna demonstrates just how opposed to fighting his relatives he is. He tells Kṛṣṇa he would rather live the life of a beggar than fight. Begging is not
the prescribed duty of a warrior. According to the socioreligious system of
the Gitā, a warrior’s begging for his sustenance would be contrary to dharma.
Warriors are to give in charity, never beg. However, Arjuna preferred beg-
gging over killing his relatives. He reasoned, “Should I maintain my body
by killing my guru (Droṇa)?”

Text 5

It is better to live in this world as a beggar than to live at the cost of the
lives of my venerable elders. If these respectable elders are killed, the
spoils will be tainted with blood.

Great souls are to be excused for apparent flaws in character. Here Arjuna
has compared Bhīṣma and Droṇa to the sun, which remains pure even after
touching impure things. Indeed, the sun purifies even urine. Combining
hi with mahā-anubhāvān (himahānubhāvān) we get: “those who have power
(anubhāva) like that of the destroyer (hi) of the cold (mahā).” Adding hi
to mahā we get himahā (the sun).

In this verse the meter of the Gitā changes for the first time from anuṣṭubh
to tristubh, also known commonly as the kṣatriya meter. This change of meter,
which lasts for four verses, indicates the heightened emotion of Arjuna.

5. See SB. 10.33.29.
I no longer know which is better, conquering or being conquered. If I kill the sons of Dhrūtarāṣṭra, who are standing before me, I shall not care to live.

Here Arjuna’s bewilderment peaks. He does not know what to do. However, in the midst of this bewilderment, he expresses a conviction that material life is futile. Whether he wins or loses, he sees no prospect. Thus he demonstrates his eligibility (adhikāra) for approaching a guru.

In the first chapter, Arjuna also demonstrates his qualification for sitting at the feet of the guru. In verse 31 Arjuna exhibits knowledge of difference between the permanent and the impermanent by stating that he sees no ultimate good (śreyah) in killing; in verses 32 and 35 he demonstrates dispassion for material gain, both in this life and in the next; in verse 43 he shows an understanding of the difference between the body and soul when he acknowledges the soul’s potential plight in hell; in verse 32 he displays both internal (sama) and external (dama) control; he exhibits an absence of greed in verse 38 and shows tolerance in verse 46. Tracing the underlying eligibility of Arjuna, Madhusūdana Sarasvatī sees the first chapter’s purpose as indicating the discipline necessary for discipleship.

Appropriately, Arjuna submits to his extraordinary friend, Kṛṣṇa, asking for God’s intervention in the form of Śrī Guru. Thus he lays the foundation
for Kṛṣṇa’s speech, for God speaks directly only to those who realize that
if we are to make a comprehensive solution to the material predicament,
there is no other real shelter in this world than him.

**Text 7**

The word **kārpaṇyam**, “covered by the material ego,” in this verse is the
abstract form of **kṛpaṇa**. One who leaves the world mentally unable to part
with his possessions is considered a miser who remains falsely identified
with matter.

In the midst of his confusion, Arjuna himself understands the reality
of what Kṛṣṇa has indicated. He admits his weakness of heart. He knows
that as long as a person thinks he knows, he cannot know the truth. Yet
as qualified as Arjuna is, manifesting the disposition of an ideal disciple,
Kṛṣṇa does not reply right away. He tests Arjuna’s resolve rather than im-
mediately accepting him as his disciple. Kṛṣṇa hesitates as if to say, “What
can I say? You have already given so many logical arguments and have
cited the scripture as well. What need does such a learned person have for
a guru? What will a guru do for you on the battlefield? Furthermore, we
are just friends. If you want a guru, you should approach someone else. If you want to remove your distress, just fight.” Sensing this, Arjuna speaks strongly as to the futility of fighting, reiterating his conviction to accept Kṛṣṇa as his guru.

Text 8

न हि प्रपाद्यांि ममापनुष्या-  
चच्छोकमुच्छोषणामिन्दृष्ट्याणाम।
अबायय भूमाबसपन्नमूिः
राज्यं सुरगाणामिपि चाधिपत्यम्॥८॥

na hi prapaśyāmi mamāpanudyād
yac chokam ucchośaṇam indriyāṇām/
avāpya bhūmaṃ asapatanam ṛddham
rājyaṃ surāṇām api cādhipatyam/।

na—not; hi—certainly; prapaśyāmi—I see; mama—my; apanudyāt—it could remove; yat—which; śokam—grief; ucchośaṇam—drying up; indriyāṇām—of the senses; avāpya—gaining; bhūmau—on the earth; asapatanam—uncontested; ṛddham—prosperous; rājya—kingdom; surāṇām—of the gods; api—even; ca—also; ādhipatyam—sovereignty.

Even if I were to gain the entire earth as an uncontested kingdom or sovereignty in heaven, I do not see how I could remove the grief that is drying up the power of my senses.

Text 9

सञ्जया उवाच  
एवमुक्त्या ह्रशीकेशः गुडळिकनः परन्त्यः।
न योत्स्य इति गोविन्दस्म नृणिः व्रूणाः ह ॥९॥

sañjaya uvāca
evan uktvā hrṣīkeśam gudākeśah parantapah/
na yotsya iti govindam uktvā tūṣnim babhūva ha//

sañjayah uvāca—Sañjaya said; evam—thus; uktvā—speaking; hrṣīkeśam—to Hṛṣīkeśa; gudākeśah—Arjuna, the conqueror of sleep; parantapah—the chastiser of the enemies; na yotsye—I shall not fight; iti—thus; govindam—to Govinda; uktva—speaking; tūṣnim—silent; babhūva—became; ha—certainly.
Sañjaya said: Then Gu∂åkeṣa said to Hṛṣikeṣa, “O Govinda! I shall not fight,” and fell silent.

In Arjuna’s refusal to fight, he further places himself in Kṛṣṇa’s hands. Having accepted Kṛṣṇa as his guru, he unknowingly speaks the truth when he says he will not fight. Although he will ultimately engage in the battle, he will do so only as an instrument in the hands of Kṛṣṇa, who is known as Hṛṣikeṣa, controller of the senses. In consideration of this, Arjuna himself will not fight. Thus Gu∂åkeṣa, the conqueror of sleep (Arjuna), put himself in the hands of Govinda, who being the source of the Vedas (vindati gam) is omniscient and thereby capable of awakening all souls to their highest prospect. Through all of these epithets, Sañjaya is hinting to Dhṛtarāṣṭra that Kṛṣṇa will inspire Arjuna to fight, and thus there is no hope for Dhṛtarāṣṭra’s sons.

Text 10

tam uvāca hṛṣikeṣah prahasann iva bhārata/
    senayor ubhayor madhye viśidantam idam vacah//

tam—to him; uvāca—said; hṛṣikeṣah—Hṛṣikeṣa; prahasan—smiling; iva—like that; bhārata—O Dhṛtarāṣṭra, descendant of Bharata; senayoh—of the armies; ubhayoh—of both; madhye—in the middle; viśidantam—to the sorrowful one; idam—this; vacah—word.

O King, in the midst of both armies, Hṛṣikeṣa, smiling, spoke these words to the sorrowful Arjuna.

Kṛṣṇa smiles to encourage Arjuna. As Kṛṣṇa prepared to speak grave topics, he sought to make light of the situation that so overwhelmed Arjuna. The preceptor similarly makes light of the task at hand in the beginning by allowing us to believe that perfection is almost within our grasp, when in fact it may be lifetimes away. Kṛṣṇa’s smile further indicates his affection for Arjuna, who remains his friend even as he becomes his disciple. In the Gauḍīya tradition, the disciple sees the guru as a dearmost friend. The guru teaches the disciple like a friendly elder. Here Kṛṣṇa’s smile indicates the union of friendship and servitude that characterizes Arjuna’s love for him.
Viśvanātha Cakravartī comments that because Arjuna has at this point become Kṛṣṇa’s disciple, Kṛṣṇa merely smiles and refrains from chiding him as he did earlier.

Although Kṛṣṇa’s speech is directed to Arjuna, it is spoken in the midst of everyone assembled (senayor ubhayor madhye), and is therefore a universal message for all to hear. Responding to Arjuna’s appeal, Kṛṣṇa begins to speak to him in Upaniṣadic language, which is appropriate when speaking to those who have understood the conclusion of religious injunctions. Arjuna has demonstrated even in his apparent confusion that he is well versed in the religious codes. He has surpassed inquiry into religious life (dharma-jijñāsā) and is now at least ready to hear about spiritual life (brahma-jijñāsā). He knows well the futility of pursuing enduring happiness in this world even when one’s efforts are in concert with the religious injunctions. If one somehow or other, either by religious adherence or association with a saint, reaches this point in life, one is qualified to hear Vedānta, the conclusion of the sacred literature, through which one can touch the soul.

The Upaniṣads are known as śruti, that which is to be heard, having been spoken by God himself for our benefit. As Kṛṣṇa begins to speak, Sañjaya refers to him as Bhagavān, God, and thus the song of God, Śrī Gitopaniṣad, begins.

**Text 11**

*śrī-bhagavān uvāca*

_aṣocyān anvaśocas tvam prajñā-vādāms ca bhāṣase/

gatāśūn agatāśūṁs ca nāmuśocanti panditāḥ//*

*śrī-bhagavān uvāca*—the Lord of Śrī said; _aṣocyān—not worthy of lamentation; anvaśocah—you have lamented; tvam—you; _prajñā-vādān—learned words; _ca—also; _bhāṣase—you speak; _gata—lost; _asūn—life; _agata—not lost; _asūn—life; _ca—also; _na—never; _anuśocanti—lament; _panditāḥ—the wise.

_The Lord of Śrī said: While speaking learned words, you lament for those not worthy of lamentation. The wise lament neither for the living nor the dead._
In *Paramāṭma-sandarbha*, Jīva Goswāmī points out the parallelism between this verse and Kṛṣṇa’s concluding verse in chapter 18 (Bg. 18.66). These two verses mark the beginning and end of Kṛṣṇa’s instructions to Arjuna, and thus one can surmise the essence of the entire text from them. In both verses Kṛṣṇa instructs, “Don’t lament, don’t worry” (*na anusocanti/mā śucah*). Mental energy expended on worrying would be better spent in remembering Bhagavān, our maintainer and protector and the perfect object of love.

One may question why remorse for the loss of loved ones is not deemed appropriate, for such behavior is seen even in great souls. Kṛṣṇa anticipates that Arjuna might argue in this direction in the face of the strong possibility that his dear ones will depart, and he says they should not be lamented for. Knowledgeable persons (*pañcitāḥ*) know that the departed have merely gone elsewhere, as they do even in embodied life. Although great persons are seen to lament at times, this is merely the expression of their manifest (*prārabdha*) *karma* exhausting itself, while they themselves know better and remain situated in knowledge of the nature of the self. The manifest *karma* of great souls expires without diminishing their greatness. Although lamentation may be unavoidable, great souls teach us to pass through it without identifying with it. When we witness the passing of our good and bad *karma* without reacting to it, we progress in spiritual life.

In this verse spiritual education begins appropriately with the first letter in the Sanskrit alphabet, *a* (*aśocyan*), requiring Kṛṣṇa to contract his smile in pronouncing it as he soberly explains the ABCs of spiritual life. He tells Arjuna that he should not lament for the gross or subtle body, as they have no life or permanence, nor should he lament for the soul, which although worthy of affection, does not die. Kṛṣṇa will refute Arjuna’s arguments from the religious scriptures (*dharma-śāstra*) by citing scripture dealing with experiential spiritual life (*jñāna-śāstra*, the *Upaniṣads*). Thus after first dismissing Arjuna’s questions, Kṛṣṇa brings the discussion to a higher level in the next nineteen verses, after which he will digress and actually address Arjuna’s socioreligious concerns.

**Text 12**

\[na tv evāhaṁ jātu nāsam na tvāṁ neme janādhipāḥ/\]
\[na caiva na bhavisyāmah sarve vayam atah param//\]
Never was there a time when I did not exist, nor you, nor all these kings. Nor shall any of us cease to exist in the future.

Here Kṛṣṇa implies that there are two types of souls: God himself and the living beings, such as Arjuna and the other kings assembled. Kṛṣṇa informs us that the soul’s individuality exists in all three phases of time—past, present, and future—as well as in the liberated status beyond the influence of time. Employing the technique of Nyāya, Kṛṣṇa says that the self is not a product of time. It has no prāg-abhāva, or nonexistence prior to its manifestation. Conversely, Kṛṣṇa declares that the soul is not subject to the nonexistence brought about by destruction.

Bhaktivedanta Swami Prabhupāda comments that the individuality stressed in this verse is not relative to material embodiment. Previous to this verse Kṛṣṇa told Arjuna about the shortcomings of embodied material life, whereas in this verse he begins his discourse on the soul. Furthermore, were Kṛṣṇa merely speaking about an apparent individuality resulting from material embodiment, he would not have mentioned himself along with Arjuna and the other assembled kings. Here Kṛṣṇa affirms his own individuality, and he is not a materially conditioned soul. Thus in his opening words regarding the soul, Kṛṣṇa begins to lay the foundation for eternal devotion, for the eternal individuality of the self and God is required for reciprocal dealings in loving devotional union.

Arjuna might question how it is that the self can be different from the body when experience appears to indicate that when the body dies, so too does the soul. Kṛṣṇa addresses this misperception with the following example from our common experience.

Text 13

Debehino 'smin yathā dehe kaumāraṁ yauvanam jarā/
tathā dehāntara-prāptir dhīras tatra na muhyati||13||
dehinah—the embodied soul; asmin—in this; yathā—as; dehe—in the body; kaumāram—childhood; yauvanam—adulthood; jarā—old age; tathā—similarly; deha-antara—another body; prāptih—acquiring; dhīraḥ—the wise; tatra—about this; na—never; muhyati—is deluded.

Just as the embodied soul experiences changes of body, such as childhood, adulthood, and old age, so similarly it will acquire another body after death. Wise persons are not deluded about this change.

In this verse, the word dehinah is singular. However, Kṛṣṇa is not saying that there is only one soul appearing to be embodied as many, but rather a particular class of souls, those presently deluded in material life. Were this not so, it would contradict the plural usage in the previous verse (sarve vayam). Although Kṛṣṇa is clearly speaking about the soul in these verses, Madhusūdana Sarasvatī offers an interpretation in an effort to establish Adwaita Vedānta, in which he says that sarve vayam (all of us) in verse 12 refers to the “multiplicity of [material] bodies previously mentioned (Kṛṣṇa, Arjuna, and the other kings—aham, tvam, janāḍhipāḥ).” This forced reading contradicts the explicit teaching in the Gītā as to the eternity of Kṛṣṇa’s form.

It is the individual soul in every body that remains constant amidst changing bodies. Were the self the body, it would not remember the changes from childhood to youth to old age mentioned in this verse, for each of these bodies is different, and an impression formed in one person cannot produce recollection in another. Thus the recollection of different bodies that we experience is a result of being different from them and changeless ourselves.

Kṛṣṇa implies that no one laments when a child’s body is replaced by an adult body. Nor do they cry when an adult body changes into an old-age body. Even if some do lament in this latter case, Bhiṣma and Droṇa, upon dying in battle, will get young bodies. Therefore, either from the material or spiritual point of view, Arjuna has no cause to lament. Even so, Arjuna’s mind is disturbed due to its being attached to sense objects in the form of his relatives’ bodies. Thus Kṛṣṇa next distinguishes the self from the subtle mental/emotional body.

Text 14

मात्रास्यप्रकृति कौन्तेय दिलोपमामृतःखदानं।
आयपायपायज्ञन्यायायात्मनिभावं भावत। ॥ १४॥
mātṛa-sparśās tu kaunteya śitosna-sukha-duḥkha-dāh/
āgamāpāyino ’nityās tāṁs titikṣasva bhārata//

mātṛa-sparśāḥ—contact with sense objects; tu—only; kaunteya—O son of Kunti; sīta—cold; uṣṇa—heat; sukhā—happiness; duḥkha—pain; dāh—giving; āgama—coming; apāyinaḥ—going; anityāḥ—temporary; tāṁ—them; titikṣasva—must learn to tolerate; bhārata—O descendant of Bharata.

O son of Kunti, happiness and distress are temporary experiences that arise from sense perception. Heat, cold, pleasure, and pain come and go, and you must learn to tolerate them, O descendant of Bharata.

Because the self is the witness of the many changes of the mind, such as happiness and distress, it must be different from them and changeless, for an entity subject to change cannot be a witness of that change. As the self is different from the gross body, so too is it different from the subtle body, which consists of various fluctuating states of the mind.

The experiences of happiness and distress differ from those of heat and cold inasmuch as heat and cold can be either enjoyable or distressful, whereas happiness and distress remain the same. First Kṛṣṇa speaks regarding the macrocosmic and then the microcosmic level of experience. All of these experiences are relative to the mind’s marriage to the senses and their perception of sense objects. That which is at one time hot may be cold at another. That which brings happiness may later be the cause of distress. These mental perceptions create a world in which the self lives without knowledge of itself, the world of the mind. The first step out of this small world is theoretical knowledge followed by the cultivation of stoic tolerance.

Tolerance is a virtue that is required no matter how one lives, yet its virtues are certainly greater when based on the bigger picture of life described in the sacred literature. The world of the mind is a small world. What is good for one may be experienced as bad for another; one person’s happiness is another’s sadness. Ultimate reality is bigger than the mind, and this is what the sacred literature informs us about. The beginning of realizing and living in this bigger picture beyond the duality of sense perception is tolerance. By addressing Arjuna in terms of both sides of his noble family heritage (Kaunteya and Bhārata), Kṛṣṇa strongly suggested that Arjuna should take the noble path of tolerance in relation to dualities, knowing them to be mere fluctuations of the mind. Kṛṣṇa goes on to describe tolerance in greater detail.
Text 15

Indeed, one who tolerates these dualities of sense perception, such a wise person to whom happiness and unhappiness are thus the same, is eligible for eternal life of self-realization, O best among men.

For the first time in this great treatise Krishna mentions self-realization, which takes one beyond material happiness and distress. Material happiness invariably turns to unhappiness in its absence. Thus one should tolerate both happiness and distress knowing them ultimately to be one and the same. From a world of apparent variety one must learn to identify with the underlying unity.

Text 16

That which is subject to change is not eternal or ultimately real. That which is real is neither temporary nor subject to change. It cannot be destroyed. This is the conclusion the seers of truth reached after deliberating on both.
Here Kṛṣṇa cites the vision of the seers (tattva-darśi). He does so in appropriately abstract Upaniṣadic language. Their vision is revelation concerning that which is real and that which is unreal.

The spirit of this verse is that Kṛṣṇa is chiding Arjuna for not being a seer himself. Indeed, Arjuna is confused by this verse. Thus in the following verse Kṛṣṇa gives him practical examples of what he means by the real and unreal. First in verse 17, Kṛṣṇa explains that the self that pervades the body is real and not subject to change. Then in text 18, Kṛṣṇa explains that the destructible material body is an example of what is not ultimately real.

Text 17

अविनाशि न निद्रिष्टं येन सर्वनिर्मितं नतम्।
विनाशमययः स्या कर्तम् करतूमहि॥ १७॥

avīnāśi tu tad viddhi yena sarvam idam tatam/
vināśam avyayasyaśya na kaścit kartum arhati//

You should know that which pervades all to be indestructible. No one can bring about the destruction of the imperishable being.

In this verse, Krṣṇa rejects the idea that consciousness is momentary. It is not here today and gone tomorrow. Thus it cannot be denied, for denial itself is an act of consciousness. The self is of the nature of consciousness, and it pervades the entire body. It also projects itself beyond the body and into other material objects with which it identifies. Thus one develops attachment to the body and its extensions in the form of material objects and other embodied persons. When we project ourselves into a material object, we then identify with it, considering it to be ours. The sense that something is ours is a result of our soul, our actual self, projecting itself into that object. Being unaware of the nature of the self, we misconstrue our material possessions, into which we have projected ourselves, to be of value without realizing that their value lies in the fact that we ourselves are within them. Thus it is the self that holds enduring value. It is the self
that is dear to one in all circumstances, while material objects and our destructible bodies only appear to be so.

**Text 18**

Only the bodies inhabited by the eternal, indestructible, and immeasurable soul are said to be subject to destruction. Therefore get up and fight, O descendant of Bharata!

The plural bodies (ime dehā) in this verse refer to the physical and subtle mental bodies mentioned in verses 13 and 14, respectively. According to the śruti (uktāh), both of these are subject to destruction (antavantaḥ). The embodied soul, on the other hand, is indestructible (anāśināh).

Kṛṣṇa describes the soul as immeasurable (aprameyasya), yet it is mentioned elsewhere that the individual soul is one ten-thousandth the size of the tip of a hair (Śve. Up. 5.9). However, these two statements are not contradictory, for no one can measure one ten-thousandth of the tip of a hair. The Upaniṣadic measurement of the soul is not to be taken literally. Furthermore, aprameyasya refers to the soul’s being incomprehensible. It cannot be measured in our mind due to its being beyond mind rather than a product of it. Māyā (illusion) also means to measure. The soul cannot be measured with the limited instrument of the mind. Thus it is implied here that it can only be known through scripture or revelation.

The soul being immeasurable and indestructible, Arjuna has nothing to fear. Therefore (tasmād) he should not desist from battle, but rather follow his dharma. Without performing one’s dharma, the difficult subject matter Kṛṣṇa is explaining cannot be easily understood. Commitment to performing one’s dharma is also a form of knowledge. It purifies the heart, enabling one to understand practically the nature of the self. In general terms, Kṛṣṇa’s
order to fight here means to perform one’s own dharma, which for Arjuna was to act as a warrior.

At this point Arjuna is left with the thought that although he should not grieve for anyone lost in the battle, the sins arising from killing others will still be his. There is no rule that says one will be free from the sin of killing another as long as he does not grieve for their loss. Thus Kṛṣṇa addresses this issue in the next verse, echoing the Kaṭha Upaniṣad (2.19).

Text 19

Both one who thinks that the soul is the slayer and one who thinks that the soul is slain are confused. The soul neither slays nor is slain.

As Kṛṣṇa instructs Arjuna, he addresses the erroneous notion that the self is an independent doer, as well as the idea that the self is destructible, which are held by the Nyāya schools of Gautama and Carvaka Muni’s materialism, respectively.

Next Kṛṣṇa states why the soul is neither the agent nor object of killing. He does so by restating another mantra from the Kaṭha Upaniṣad (1.2.18).

Text 20

Both one who thinks that the soul is the slayer and one who thinks that the soul is slain are confused. The soul neither slays nor is slain.
The soul neither is born nor does it ever die. Nor being will it ever cease to be. Unborn, eternal, not subject to decay, primeval, it is not slain when the body is slain.

The soul can be neither the agent nor the object of the act of killing, for it is changeless. It does not undergo the sixfold transformations of birth, growth, maturation, mutation, decay, and death. The logic of this verse is as follows: The soul is not born and does not die. This is so because the soul has never been nonexistent, nor has it become existent at some point in time. Therefore, the soul is eternal.

This idea that the soul does not undergo transformation is indicated by the words purāṇah and sāsvataḥ. Because the soul exists forever (sāsvataḥ) it never decays, and because it is primeval (purāṇah) it has not grown into a new state, nor has it matured or mutated.

Having advanced his proposition, Kṛṣṇa next seeks to prove it.

Text 21

वेदविनाशिनं नित्यम् ये पार्श्वमय्यायम्।
कथं स पुरुषं पार्थं कं गातयायति हन्ति कम् ||२१||

c-commands; avināśinam—indestructible; nityam—eternal; yah—one who; enam—this; ajam—birthless; avayam—imperishable; katham—how; sa—that; puruṣah—person; pārtha—O Pārtha (Arjuna); kam—who; ghātayati-causes to be slain; hanti—slays; kam—who.

How can one who knows this indestructible, eternal, birthless, imperishable nature of the self cause anyone to be slain? Whom does he slay?

In spite of Kṛṣṇa’s logic, Arjuna fears that although he may not be the cause of anyone’s death, he will be the cause of others changing their bodies. Kṛṣṇa replies to this doubt in the next verse.
Text 22

Just as one dons new garments after discarding old ones, similarly, the self in embodied consciousness accepts new bodies after discarding the worn-out ones.

Krṣṇa replies to Arjuna that the changing of bodies is inevitable in this world. Moreover, he indicates that for elders such as Bhīṣma this may be a cause of rejoicing rather than sorrow, for no one laments on giving up an old garment in exchange for a new one. The word aparāni (others) implies an improvement, whereas jīrṇi (worn out) indicates something that has passed its usefulness. The word saṃyāti indicates an attainment such as that which Bhīṣma is due: a heavenly body resulting from his righteous life, now that the current one had been worn out in the discharge of his religious duty.

Arjuna next wonders how the soul within the body is not affected by the destruction of the body, as one within a burning house is injured when the house burns. Krṣṇa answers his doubt in the following verse.

Text 23

naināṁ chhindanti śastrāṇi naināṁ dahati pāvakah/
na caināṁ kledayanṭy āpo na śosayati mārutah//
na—never; enam—this; chindanti—can pierce; şastrāni—weapons; na—never; enam—this; dahati—burns; pāvakah—fire; na—never; ca—also; enam—this; kledayanti—moisten; āpah—waters; na—never; śoṣayati—dries; mārutah—wind.

The self cannot be pierced by weapons, burned by fire, moistened by water, or withered by wind.

As Kṛṣṇa speaks he gestures to Arjuna’s arsenal of arrows, which include not only sharp arrows that cut, but others that harness the powers of fire, water, and wind through the use of mantra. None of these weapons can harm the soul, nor protect the body from its destiny of destruction. Kṛṣṇa next states why these weapons cannot destroy the soul and how it is that the soul is not susceptible to destruction by them.

Text 24

Surely the self is indivisible, unburnable, insoluble, and cannot be dried up. It is eternal, all-pervading, changeless, unmoving, and primeval.

Since the soul is indivisible (acchedyah), it cannot be cut. It cannot be burnt because it is unburnable (adāhyah). The soul cannot be moistened by water because it is insoluble (akledyah), nor can it be withered by wind because it cannot be dried up (açoṣyah). Thus the effects stated in the previous verse are by-products of the soul’s qualities mentioned in this one.

The second half of this verse explains why the soul is not subject to the effects of the above-mentioned weapons. Because it is eternal (nityah), all-pervading (sarva-gatah), changeless (sthānuh), unmoving (acalah), and primeval (sanātanah), it is not subject to any transformation whatsoever. Something subject to action causes a result of that action, such as produc-
tion, acquisition, transformation, and change of condition. Being eternal the soul is not produced. Since it is all-pervading it cannot be acquired. Being changeless it is not transformed, and being unmoving it is not subject to any change of condition. For emphasis, the word *eva* (surely) is intended to modify all of the soul’s qualities mentioned in this verse.

Jīva Goswāmī explains the word *sarva-gataḥ* as meaning “dependent (gataḥ) on God, who is everything (sarva).” (Ps. 34) Everything is but God and his energies. One who is aware of this and thus depends exclusively on God in all circumstances experiences all-pervasiveness through dependence on the person who is all-pervasive.

**Text 25**

अव्यक्तो यम अचिन्त्यो यम अविकार्यो यम उच्यते /
तस्मात् एवं विदित्वायनं नानूसोचितम् अर्हसि //२५//

*avyakto 'yam acintyo 'yam avikāryo 'yam ucyate/
  tasmāt evam viditvānām nānusocitum arhasi//*

avyaktah—invisible; ayam—this; acintyah—inconceivable; ayam—this; avikāryah—immutable; ayam—this; ucyate—is said; tasmāt—therefore; evam—like this; viditvā—knowing; enam—this; na—not; anusocitum—to mourn; arhasi—should.

*It is said that the self is invisible, inconceivable, and unchangeable. Knowing this, you should not mourn for the body.*

Here Kṛṣṇa repeats himself for emphasis. The subject of the soul is difficult to comprehend, and thus Kṛṣṇa speaks of its nature again and again invoking various words to describe it. This time he supports what he has said thus far referring to scriptural authority, as implied by the use of the word *ucyate*.

This verse concludes Kṛṣṇa’s description of the soul with the word *tasmāt* (therefore). Because the soul is as Kṛṣṇa has described, Arjuna’s lamentation is not appropriate once he understands its nature (*viditvā*). Next Kṛṣṇa states that even if for argument’s sake one accepts the soul to be noneternal, still one should not lament for it.

**Text 26**

अथ चैनं नित्यजातं नित्यं वा मन्यसे मृत्युं /
  नथापि ती महावाहो तेन सोचिततम्यसि //२६//
atra cainam nitya-jātām nityam vā manyase mṛtam/
tathāpi tvam māhā-bāho nainam sōcitum arhāsi//

atha—if; ca—and; enam—this; nitya-jātam—continually born; nityam—
continually; vā—either; manyase—you think; mṛtam—dead; tathaapi—
still; tvam—you; māhā-bāho—O mighty-armed one; na—not; enam—this;
sōcitum—to mourn; arhasi—should.

O mighty-armed one, even if you think that the self is continually born
and continually dies, you still have no reason to lament for it.

Having spoken strongly about the ultimacy of consciousness in accordance
with the sacred literature, here Kṛṣṇa changes direction (atha ca), accept-
ing for argument’s sake the notion that consciousness itself is ephemeral.
Kṛṣṇa cites atheistic and Buddhist philosophy, in which consciousness is
considered noneternal. Buddhists do not believe in the existence of a self.
They believe that consciousness is a product of conditions and thus changes
from moment to moment. Materialists such as Carvaka Muni consider the
self to be the body, which, though enduring for some time, is born, dies,
and changes at every moment. In a cynical tone, Kṛṣṇa reasons that even
if the noble and mighty Arjuna is so foolish as to succumb to such under-
standings, still he should fight.

Text 27

jātasya hi dhruvo mṛtyur dhruvam janma mṛtasya ca/
tasmād aparihārye 'rthe na tvam sōcitum arhāsi//

jātasya—of the born; hi—certainly; dhruvah—certain; mṛtyuh—death;
dhruvam—certain; janma—birth; mṛtasya—of the dead; ca—also; tasmāt—
therefore; aparihārye—of that which is inevitable; arthe—in a matter;
na—not; tvam—you; sōcitum—to lament; arhāsi—should.

Death is certain for all who take birth. Birth is just as certain for
all who die. Therefore, do not lament in matters like this, which are
unavoidable.
Text 28

O descendant of Bharata, all beings are unmanifest in their beginning, manifest in their middle period, and again unmanifest at their end. Thus there is no cause for lamentation.

Previous to the last two verses, Kṛṣṇa argues that one should not lament for the imperishable soul. Here he argues that one should not lament for the loss of the body either, for it is always existing in terms of its elemental constituents, although in an unmanifest condition before and after the body actually manifests during the period of a lifetime. Thus the body has a name and form only in the middle stage during its connection with the soul.

Text 29

āścaryā-vat paśyati kaścid enam
    āścaryā-vad vadati tathaiva cānyah/
āścaryā-vac cainam anyah śrnoti
    śrutvāpy enam veda na caiva kaścit//

āścaryā-vat—as awesome; paśyati—sees; kaścit—someone; enam—this; āścaryā-vat—as awesome; vadati—speaks; tatha—thus; eva—certainly; ca—also; anyah—another; āścaryā-vat—as awesome; ca—also; enam—this; anyah—another; śrnoti—hears; śrutvā—having heard; api—even; enam—this; veda—knows; na—never; ca—and; eva—certainly; kaścit—someone.
Some see the self as being a wonder, others proclaim it to be a wonder, while still others hear of it as a wonder. Yet even after hearing about it, none can fathom it.

In this verse Kṛṣṇa explains the difficulty in understanding the position of the soul. In doing so he sympathizes to some extent with Arjuna’s plight. Beginning with verse 31, he will shift his emphasis from the wisdom of the soul to the proper understanding of dharma.

Text 30

dehi nityam avadhyaḥ yaṁ dehe sarvasya bhārata/
tasmāt sarvāṁ bhūtāṁ na tvam socitum arhasi//

dehi—the embodied; nityam—eternal; avadhyaḥ—indestructible; ayam—this; dehe—in the body; sarvasya—of everyone; bhārata—O descendant of Bharata; tasmāt—therefore; sarvāṁ—all; bhūtāṁ—beings; na—not; tvam—you; socitum—to lament; arhasi—should.

O descendant of Bharata, this self embodied in every being is eternal and indestructible. Therefore you should not lament for anyone.

Having analyzed the nature of the self in relation to the body by contrasting the two, Kṛṣṇa concludes his Upaniṣadic discourse, which was intended to give Arjuna a spiritual conceptual framework from which to view his dilemma. Although he did so, he knew that Arjuna was not capable at this point of fully digesting this knowledge and its implications. Furthermore, although Kṛṣṇa insisted that Arjuna fight on the basis of insights into the nature of the self, knowledge of the eternal self curbs the impetus to act in a world that does not endure. Desiring to take Arjuna back to his practical reality, Kṛṣṇa directly addresses the concerns Arjuna had voiced earlier and argues that he should engage in battle despite his attachments and reservations.

Text 31

śrāddhāmṛtyo ‘su vikarṇa-mukhāṁśe

śraddhaḥ yuddha-rūpyo ‘syaḥ śrutimprayat na vinatrante ||۲۱||
sva-dharmam api cāveksya na vikampitum arhasi/
   dharmyād dhi yuddhāc chreyo 'nyat ksatriyasya na vidyate//

sva-dharmam—one’s own dharma; api—also; ca—indeed; aveksya—considering; na—never; vikampitum—to hesitate; arhasi—you should; dharmyāt—for dharma; hi—indeed; yuddhāt—than fighting; śreyah—better; anyat—any other; ksatriyasya—of the warrior; na—not; vidyate—exist.

In consideration of your dharma as a warrior, you should not hesitate, for there is nothing more righteous for a warrior than to fight for dharma itself.

Here Kṛṣṇa is replying to Arjuna’s earlier plea that dharma-sāstra supersedes artha-sāstra, and thus he should not kill his superiors even though they are aggressors. Kṛṣṇa says that although superiors should not be killed, if they are killed in the course of fighting for dharma, there is no fault.

Text 32

यद्यच्छयाः चोपपन्नं स्वर्गद्वारामप्रवेशम्।
   सुखिनह क्षत्रियः पार्था लाभन्ते युद्धम इद्रसम॥३२॥

yadṛcchayā copapannam svarga-dvāram apavyātam/
   sukhinah ksatriyāḥ pārtha labhante yuddham idṛsam//

yadṛcchayā—by good fortune; ca—also; upapannam—happened; svarga—heaven; dvāram—door; apavyātam—wide open; sukhinah—very happy; ksatriyāḥ—the warriors; pārtha—O Pārtha; labhante—they achieve; yuddham—war; idṛsam—like this.

O Pārtha, warriors who get such an opportunity for battle by good fortune rejoice, for this opens the gates of heaven for them.

With this and the previous verse, Kṛṣṇa intimates to Arjuna that not only those interested in eternal life and love of God should follow his guidance but even those who desire material benefit or heaven.

Although previously Arjuna had thought that by fighting he would be engaged in an unrighteous activity, here Kṛṣṇa acting in the capacity of his guru tells him otherwise. He tells him he would incur an unrighteous
reaction by not fighting. After telling Arjuna why he should fight from the angle of religious life, Kṛṣṇa tells him what will happen if he desists.

Text 33

atha cet tvam imam dharmyam saṅgrāmam na kariṣyasi/
tataḥ sva-dharmam kīrtim ca hitvā pāpam avāpsyasi//

atha cet—however, if; tvam—you; imam—this; dharmyam—religious; saṅgrāmam—fight; na—not; kariṣyasi—perform; tataḥ—then; sva-dharmam—own dharma; kīrtim—reputation; ca—also; hitvā—losing; pāpam—evil; avāpsyasi—will incur.

However, if you do not fight this righteous war, having avoided your own dharma as a warrior, you will incur evil and lose your good reputation.

Well aware of Arjuna’s warrior ego, Kṛṣṇa pinches his pride. Here he tells him that Bhīṣma and Droṇa will not think that he had left the battle out of compassion, but rather out of cowardice. Should Arjuna think that even if great people like Bhīṣma and Droṇa belittled him, at least his direct enemies, the sons of Dhṛtarāṣṭra, would appreciate his compassion, Kṛṣṇa addresses this misconception in the next three verses.

Text 34

akīrtim caṇī bhūtāni kathayiṣyanti te ’vyayām/
sambhāvitasya cākīrtir maraṇād atiricyate//

akīrtim—infamy; ca—and; api—also; bhūtāni—people; kathayiṣyanti—will speak; te—of you; avyayām—always; sambhāvitasya—of a respectable person; ca—and; akīrtih—dishonor; maraṇāt—than death; atiricyate—becomes more.

People will always speak of your infamy, and for a respectable person, dishonor is worse than death.
Text 35

bhayaḍaḥ ranād uparataṁ mamsyante tvāṁ mahā-rathāḥ/
yeṣaṁ ca tvam bahu-mato bhūtvā yāsyasi lāghavam//

bhayaṭ—out of fear; ranāṭ—from the battle; uparataṁ—ceased; mamsyante—they will consider; tvāṁ—you; mahā-rathāḥ—the great warriors; yeṣaṁ—of whom; ca—also; tvāṁ—you; bahu-mataḥ—in high esteem; bhūtvā—having been; yāsyasi—you will go; lāghavam—decreased in value.

The great warriors will think that you have left the battle out of fear and thus those who once held you in high esteem will no longer take you seriously.

Text 36

avācy-a-vādāṁ ca bahūṁ vādisyanti tavāhitāḥ/
nindantas tava sāmarthyam tato duḥkhataram nu kim//

avācy—a—not to be spoken; vādāṁ—words; ca—also; bahūṁ—many; vādisyanti—will speak; tava—your; ahitāḥ—enemies; nindantas—while decrying; tava—your; sāmarthyam—ability; tataḥ—than that; duḥkha-taram—more painful; nu—indeed; kim—what.

Your enemies will speak the unspeakable of you, decrying your ability. What could be more painful than that?

Here Kṛṣṇa informs Arjuna that not even his enemies will praise him for not fighting. In verses 31 through 36 Kṛṣṇa has explained the words akīrti and asvargya (“infamy” and “not leading to heaven”), with which he had characterized Arjuna’s reluctance to fight in the second verse of this chapter.

Text 37

Here Kṛṣṇa informs Arjuna that not even his enemies will praise him for not fighting. In verses 31 through 36 Kṛṣṇa has explained the words akīrti and asvargya (“infamy” and “not leading to heaven”), with which he had characterized Arjuna’s reluctance to fight in the second verse of this chapter.
O son of Kunti, either you will die in battle and go to heaven, or having won the battle you will enjoy the earth. Therefore stand with resolve and fight.

Krṣṇa declares that even if Arjuna loses the battle he will gain through fighting. In other words, heavenly gain in the case of defeat and earthly kingdom in the case of victory are side benefits of desireless adherence to dharma. This is also stated in the Āpastamba-dharma-sūtras (1.20.3), “Just as when a mango tree is grown for fruit, shade and fragrance follow naturally, so too when dharma is practiced for its own sake, other desirable ends follow as a consequence.”

Text 38

Considering pleasure and pain, gain and loss, victory and defeat to be equal, prepare yourself for battle without fear of incurring sin.

The equanimity stressed in this verse (same kṛtvā) is the same as that which is used in verse 48 to define yoga (samaḥ, samatvam). Thus by encouraging Arjuna to fight, Krṣṇa is actually instructing Arjuna in yoga.

Having dismissed Arjuna’s arguments at the beginning of his speech, Krṣṇa now addresses them directly. Yet his confused disciple is thinking,
“Even if no sin will be incurred from righteous action, how can you advise me to fight after telling me that enlightened persons are nondoers? Indeed, your instruction appears contradictory. You simultaneously advocate that I become a nondoer, stressing that only the ignorant think that one slays or is slain (Bg. 2.19), and that I fight and reap the fruit of righteous action” (Bg. 2.37). This is the seed of Arjuna’s doubt regarding Kṛṣṇa’s simultaneous advocacy of knowledge and action that flowers at the onset of the next chapter.

After a moment of silence Kṛṣṇa continues to explain the notion of enlightened work, without which Arjuna is neither able to realize the self nor the relationship between knowledge and action on the spiritual path. In the midst of doing so, Kṛṣṇa also indirectly speaks of the virtue of bhakti, which he ultimately wants Arjuna to embrace.

Text 39

सा तेशभिषिता सांख्ये बुध्यागि न्विमा शुष्गे।
बुध्या युक्तो यवा पार्थ कर्मचन्द्र प्रहासयसि। ॥३९॥

eṣā te 'bhuhītā sāṅkhya buddhir yoge tv imām śṛṇu/
buddhyā yokto yayā pārtha karma-bandhaṁ prahāsyasi//

I have spoken to you of how to use wisdom in sāṅkhya, now hear about wisdom in yoga. With this wisdom, Arjuna, you will free yourself from the bondage resulting from karma.

Sāṅkhya has been explained in verses 12 through 30. Here it does not refer to the Sāṅkhya philosophy of Kapila, one of the six darśanas of India. It is used in a generic sense in reference to the analytical study of phenomena and the introspection that sheds light on the soul. Madhusūdana Saraswatī says that sāṅkhya means “that in which the reality of the Supreme Self is fully presented.” Viśvanātha Cakravartī Thākura defines sāṅkhya as that which perfectly (sam) explains (khyā) or illuminates the nature of an object.

However, there is similarity between the Sāṅkhya philosophy of Kapila and that which is introduced by Kṛṣṇa in this verse. Kapila’s Sāṅkhya begins
with an analysis of matter, but with the goal of discriminating between matter and spirit. Such discrimination is at the heart of what Kṛṣṇa intends here by the use of the word sāνkhya.

Just as it is important to distinguish the word sāνkhya in this verse from Kapila’s philosophical system, it is also important to distinguish the word yoga in this verse from the yoga system of Patañjali. Both of these two schools of thought are distinct from that which Kṛṣṇa teaches in the Bhagavad-gītā. There is, however, considerable overlap between the systems of Patañjali and that which is considered yoga in the schools of Vedānta represented in the Gitā.

Later in the Gitā the word sāνkhya is associated with knowledge (jñāna), while yoga is associated with karma. Jñāna is further associated with renunciation, and yoga with bhakti. This is how bhakti, karma, and yoga are connected as if in a continuum. Yoga in this sense can be translated as “engagement.” It implies the positive notion of union, whereas sāνkhya denotes separation and discrimination, which bear negative connotations. Kṛṣṇa has encouraged Arjuna to separate himself from the negativity of material identification through proper discrimination. Now he begins to encourage him to engage in the positive action of uniting himself with God.

One who knows the self to be of the same nature as that of the Absolute is not bound to perform any duty. This will be further explained later (Bg. 3.17). However, here Kṛṣṇa realizes that Arjuna is not capable of assimilating knowledge of the self without undergoing actions that will purify his heart, for he is absorbed in worldly concerns, even though religious in nature. Thus he advises him to engage in yoga. Here the word yoga implies the spirit of yoga: selflessness and sacrifice, the mother of love. While action in relation to sense objects with a view to enjoy them gives rise to karmic bondage, one cannot artificially divorce oneself from action itself. Indeed, as we shall see, such artificiality in yoga is condemned. In its stead Kṛṣṇa recommends proper action in the spirit of detachment. He tells Arjuna that by acting in yoga he will free himself from the bondage of karma and realize the self that is intellectually understood through the introspection involved in sāνkhya. The detached spirit of this yoga was characterized in the previous verse.

With the introduction of yoga in this verse, the Gitā begins to speak about experiential spiritual life in practice. Beginning here and extending over the next four chapters, Kṛṣṇa explains gradual steps on the ladder of yoga, from the yoga of selfless action (nīśkāma-karma-yoga), to the yoga of
knowledge (jñāna-yoga),\textsuperscript{6} to the yoga of meditation (dhyāna/aṣṭāṅga-yoga), and culminating in the yoga of love (bhakti-yoga).

From this point until the end of chapter 6, Kṛṣṇa instructs Arjuna about the ideal, well-integrated, enlightened person he wants him to be: a dutiful person whose action is informed by knowledge, who realizes the fruit of such action in the form of inner wisdom and develops spiritual emotions for God—a devotee of Kṛṣṇa. As this section begins, Kṛṣṇa speaks covertly about bhakti and overtly about nīṣkāma-karma-yoga. He then informs Arjuna that at this time he is only eligible for nīṣkāma-karma-yoga. In this way, Kṛṣṇa instructs us through Arjuna that what is achieved through nīṣkāma-karma-yoga is concomitant to bhakti-yoga proper. Through the practice of the yoga of selfless action, one’s heart is purified and knowledge begins to manifest. Knowledge of the self will not manifest in a heart cluttered by material attachment, and inner wisdom in which the spiritual self is realized is included within mature bhakti-yoga.

Kṛṣṇa repeatedly advises Arjuna that nīṣkāma-karma-yoga is the best course of action for him at this time, and eventually he declares its mature stage to be synonymous with jñāna-yoga. As knowledge manifests through nīṣkāma-karma-yoga, one situated in knowledge becomes qualified to practice meditation. While the fruit of nīṣkāma-karma-yoga is knowledge of the Brahmān feature of the Absolute, the focus of meditation in dhyāna-yoga is the Paramātma feature of God. As one realizes this feature of God one can progress to worship of the Bhagavān feature of the Absolute. This worship in yoga is bhakti, the final step on the ladder of yoga discussed in the first six chapters of the Gītā.

Although Kṛṣṇa advises Arjuna to practice nīṣkāma-karma-yoga throughout the first six chapters, he also implies that he ultimately wants Arjuna to practice bhakti-yoga. Kṛṣṇa makes this abundantly clear at the end of the sixth chapter. Kṛṣṇa takes Arjuna up the ladder of yoga to illustrate the glory of bhakti. This glory of bhakti is twofold. Bhakti continues after one is liberated from material existence, whereas the other forms of yoga do not. Only when the heart has been purified, knowledge of the self has manifested, and one attains perfection in meditation does mature bhakti manifest. This glory of bhakti is brought out in the Gītā’s first six chapters. The second glory of bhakti is the generosity and independence by which she extends herself to whomever she chooses, even those whose hearts are

\textsuperscript{6} In the Gītā the yoga of knowledge is referred to variously as sāṃkhya-yoga, karma-sannyāsa, and jñāna-yoga.
cluttered with material desire. She does so through the medium of Kṛṣṇa’s realized devotees, who awaken faith in her efficacy. Those who tread the path of bhakti as a result of her generosity will gradually develop detachment, knowledge, and mental absorption in God, maturing gradually into bhakti proper, the liberated yoga.

Here Kṛṣṇa eulogizes the practice of yoga in general by stating its fruit: karma-bandham prahāsyasi. Viśvanātha Cakravartī Thākura comments that while the word yoga in this verse refers to selfless action in which the fruit of one’s efforts are offered to God, a stage prior to bhakti, yoga also implies bhakti itself consisting of hearing and chanting about God. Viśvanātha Cakravartī senses that bhakti is implied here because bhakti is both the means to transcendental life as well as continued engagement in devotional life beyond the influence of material nature. Later in verse 45 of this chapter Kṛṣṇa implores Arjuna to attain this condition (nistraiguṇya) through the yoga practice that he is encouraging him to engage in here.

Text 40

In the practice of this dharma no effort is wasted, nor is one’s progress ever diminished. Even the slightest practice of this discipline protects one from great danger.

Kṛṣṇa secures Arjuna’s attention by first glorifying that which he wants him to ultimately engage in, bhakti. Kṛṣṇa also wants Arjuna to fight. At this point he wants him to do so because he is by nature a warrior, but he wants him to fight with knowledge of the self and thus detached from the fruits of his effort, offering them to God. This type of niskāma-karma-yoga will lead him to bhakti.
Acting with the wisdom of yoga in devotion may look like ordinary religious action (dharma) that is enjoined in the Vedas as a means for material advancement, but it is quite different in terms of its motive and result. When one works according to the scripture, motivated by the prospect of enjoying the fruit of one’s labor, such work is troublesome. If even one small item is neglected in such ritualistic performance, one will not get the desired result. If everything is done correctly, the resulting gain will be lost in time. Even if one works selflessly within the realm of karma, one may not get the desired result if something is left undone or the work is improperly performed. There is also the possibility of incurring unwanted reactions within the execution of niskäma-karma-yoga, should one’s duties be improperly performed. In contrast, bhakti-yoga-dharma even if imperfectly performed produces a positive result that is never lost under the influence of time. This is discussed further in the thirty-first verse of chapter 9.

Text 41

O joy of the Kuru dynasty, on this path one must be resolute in purpose with one’s intelligence fixed. Indeed, those who are irresolute are endlessly distracted by other thoughts.

Here Kṛṣṇa chastens Arjuna’s mind to do his bidding alone, speaking affectionately to his disciple. As a reference to bhakti this verse points to the stage of niṣṭhā, in which one’s intelligence is fixed in spiritual pursuit as a result of hearing about God regularly and serving his devotees. At this stage one is fixed in consideration of his iṣṭa devata (personal Deity). Viṣvanātha Cakravartī Ṭhākura says that intelligence fixed on the advice of

7. See SB. 1.2.18.
one’s guru regarding the cultivation of bhakti is vyavasāyātmikā buddhi. He has equated attaining the grace of the guru with adherence to the spiritual practices he outlines.

The word hi (indeed) conveys the sense that it is well known that those troubled by worldly thoughts are not peaceful, for their thoughts lack the certainty that arises from self-realization and its pursuit. Kṛṣṇa speaks further about such people in the following three verses to stress bhakti by way of contrast.

Texts 42–43

Such people of meager intelligence proclaim that the flowery words of the Vedas are all in all. They take delight in the letter of the Vedic law, saying there is nothing more than this. They are full of desires for opulence and material enjoyment and think that attaining heaven or a good birth in the next life is desirable. Thus they remain attached to ritualistic performance.

Text 44
Too attached to material opulence and sense enjoyment, their minds are stolen away, and resolute insight in samādhi is not forthcoming.

Śrīdhara Swāmī comments that samādhi is single-minded concentration leading to consciousness of God. Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa defines samādhi as that condition in which correct understanding of the self is perfectly achieved. Arjuna asks Kṛṣṇa about the state of samādhi later in this chapter (Bg. 2.54). Kṛṣṇa answers him in the concluding section of this chapter (Bg. 2.55–72). Absorption (samādhi) in sacrifices leading to Brahman are discussed in chapter 4 (Bg. 4.24–29), and yoga-samādhi and its basic varieties are discussed at length in chapter 6.

The Vedas deal mainly with life within the jurisdiction of the three guṇas. Arjuna, you should transcend these guṇas, becoming indifferent to material dualities, fixed in truth, free from concerns for acquisition and comfort, and established in the self.

Kṛṣṇa’s secondary potency, known variously as prakṛti, māyā-śakti, and so on, is discussed throughout the Gitā. It consists of the three influences
known as the *gunas*. The vast majority of the *Vedas* deal with fruitive action under the influence of the *gunas* in the pursuit of religious life and heavenly attainment. The smaller and concluding portion deals with self-realization and experiential spiritual life, which involves transcending material dualities and freedom from concerns for one's maintenance through acquaintance with the self-sustaining nature of the soul in the self-surrender of devotion.

*Kṛṣṇa's* use of the word *sattva* does not indicate that one should become situated in *sattva-guṇa* (the material influence of goodness), for in the first line of this verse he speaks of transcending all three *gunas*. *Sattva-guṇa* begets knowledge, whereas *bhakti* gives birth to transcendental experience. The words *nitya-sattva-sthāḥ* imply remaining always in the association of devotees, who have been characterized in the *Bhāgavata* as truthful (*sat*).

In his comments on this verse, Viśvanātha Cakravartī Ṣhākura stresses the futility of the paths of *jñāna* and *karma* in terms of transcending the *gunas*. Citing numerous verses from the *Śrimad-Bhāgavatam’s Uddhava-gītā* that correspond with this verse, Cakravartī Ṣhākura offers considerable evidence that only *bhakti* has the power to deliver one from the *gunas* and situate one in transcendence. Such *bhakti* is *niryoga-kṣema*, free from the concerns for acquisition (yoga) and maintenance (kṣema). The full sense of what it means to be free from concerns for acquisition and comfort is related in the twenty-second verse of chapter 9 in reference to *bhakti-yoga*. Any necessity *Kṛṣṇa’s* devotees might have for these two is seen to by *Kṛṣṇa* himself.

**Text 46**

\[ yāvān artha udāpāne sarvataḥ samplutodake/ \\
\text{tāvān sarvesu vedesu brāhmaṇasya vijānataḥ}/ \]

*yāvān—as much; arthaḥ—purpose; udā— in a well of water; sarvataḥ—in all respects; sampluta-udāke—in a great reservoir of water; tāvān—similarly; sarvesu—in all; vedesu—scriptures; brāhmaṇasya—of the brāhmaṇa; vijānataḥ—who knows. \]

8. See Bg. 14.5 for an explanation of the *gunas*. 
All purposes that are fulfilled by a well and more can be served by a reservoir of water. Similarly, all the purposes of the scripture can be served by a brāhmaṇa who knows their purpose.

In the preceding verses Kṛṣṇa differentiates between those sections of the scripture that advocate material advancement and those that advocate spiritual progress. He also criticizes those who do not understand the purpose of the Vedas and thus take their statements about material advancement out of context. The sections of the Vedas dealing with material advancement, which make up the greater balance of the text, are for the general populace who are full of material desires. The rituals prescribed therein seek to regulate desires bringing about religious life. Furthermore, they awaken faith in their words in those who practice the enjoined rituals. The real fruit of this subsequent faith in the scripture is that in time it causes people to look more deeply into the scripture, wherein they will learn about experiential spiritual life, as opposed to religious life. Kṛṣṇa wants Arjuna to come to experiential spiritual life.

In encouraging him along the lines of experiential spiritual life in devotion, Kṛṣṇa also prepares him for that which he (representing a beginner on the spiritual path) is presently eligible to practice: niskāma-karma-yoga. Kṛṣṇa indirectly informs Arjuna in this verse that such pursuit will not leave him bereft of the fruit of his action, even though it involves sacrificing this fruit. Thus he offers an example to help Arjuna understand. Arjuna will gain the fruits of his work even while sacrificing them, for that which he will gain by this course includes within it that which is sacrificed, just as the amount of water in a small pond is contained within a large lake. One who realizes God experiences all the bliss available through Vedic ritual and more.

Although the Vedas offer many things to their adherents, their real fruit is bhakti. Kṛṣṇa indicates this here. A well may dry up and its water may not be sweet. To drink from it one must hoist up the water with considerable effort after having labored to find the well in the first place. Paths other than bhakti are compared to wells. Bhakti on the other hand is oceanic in its outreach and depth of spiritual possibility, and whatever one can attain through other paths can be attained on the path of bhakti with less effort.

In the next verse Kṛṣṇa abruptly informs Arjuna of his level of eligibility for spiritual practice, telling him to act in battle in accordance with his acquired nature. The apparent lack of connection between this verse and
the next causes some confusion in Arjuna, giving rise to his question in the beginning of the next chapter.

Text 47

Karmaneyadvikaranente phalesu kadacanam

Ma karma-karman ne samapradvayam

Karman — in prescribed duties; eva — only; adhikarah — eligibility; te — of you; mā — never; phalesu — in the fruits; kadācana — at any time; mā — never; karma-phala — fruit of action; hetuh — cause; bhūh — become; mā — never; te — of you; saṅgah — attachment; astu — there should be; akarmanī — in not doing prescribed duties.

You are only eligible to act in terms of your acquired nature as a warrior. You are not entitled to the fruits of your action. You should neither be motivated to act by the hope of enjoying the fruits of your action, nor become attached to not acting at all!

In Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam (11.21.2) it is mentioned that “virtue constitutes acting in accordance with one’s level of eligibility and acting beyond that which one is qualified for is vice.” Much of the Gītā is contingent on this point. Here Kṛṣṇa says that those who are not eligible for bhakti or jñāna should engage in niṣkāma-karma-yoga. Should Arjuna question the value of work performed for which there is no fruit to be enjoyed and thus lean towards inaction, Kṛṣṇa tells him that attachment to inaction is also inappropriate. He stresses this point to underscore the importance of action. Arjuna is to act within the socioreligious structure of society with the spirit of detachment, offering the fruits of his work to God.

The practice of niṣkāma-karma-yoga in the strict sense advocated in the Gītā would be practically impossible to implement in the modern world. It arises out of a socioreligious culture governed by scriptural canon in which society is divided fourfold in terms of both occupational and religious orders. Men and women are further divided, and numerous rules governing all spheres of human activity are mandated for all sections of society. The practice of niṣkāma-karma-yoga involves strictly adhering to the rules and duties governing one’s particular socioreligious classification while
cultivating detachment from the fruit of one’s work. Thus the Gitā speaks of prescribed duties and Arjuna’s warrior status is repeatedly mentioned.

However, the spirit of niskāma-karma-yoga is selfless action in the spirit of sacrifice. Many have adopted this principle in an attempt to apply niskāma-karma-yoga to the modern world. Although the modern world does not prescribe social and religious duties for everyone from birth, we nonetheless do have duties to perform, and these duties will likely conform with our status within the guṇas. Such duties should be performed responsibly, without attachment to the results. This no doubt has merit. However, one can remain in stride with the Gitā both in spirit and in terms of the letter of its law of love by embracing the generosity of bhakti. Faith in the efficacy of bhakti leads to mature bhakti, and this relieves one from obligations to the socioreligious order the Gitā speaks of, as well as any other social order.

Text 48

Perform your duty fixed in the yoga of action, abandoning all attachment to success or failure, O winner of wealth. Such equanimity of mind is what is meant by yoga.

Here Kṛṣṇa helps Arjuna to understand the practical application of his instructions. While working in the spirit of glorifying God, one should be equipoised (samo bhūtvā), neither overly elated upon acquiring success nor dejected in failure. Kṛṣṇa defines yoga in this verse as equanimity of mind (samatvam). It is this spirit of action that he means by yoga, not merely action. Thus there is no contradiction when he describes yoga as action and yoga as being equipoised. While previously in verse 38 Kṛṣṇa spoke of equanimity in the midst of battle, here he speaks in a broader sense of performing all actions with equanimity of mind.
Text 49

O winner of wealth, action motivated by the desire to enjoy the results of one’s work is far inferior to disciplined intelligence. Take refuge in wisdom. Those whose actions are motivated by the desire to enjoy the fruits of action for themselves are miserly.

With a hint of sarcasm Kṛṣṇa addresses Arjuna as Dhanañjaya, winner of wealth. In doing so he appeals to his wealth of heart and implores him not to be miserly. The śruti (Br. 3.8.10) defines a miser as one who departs from this world without knowing the Absolute, thus remaining in saṃsāra. Arjuna was well known for having acquired vast wealth. Here Kṛṣṇa says that such acquisition is by far inferior (dūrena hy āvaram) to the acquisition of inner wealth. Kṛṣṇa tells Arjuna to take shelter of wisdom.

Here buddhi-yoga refers to the disciplined intelligence required for the execution of nīskāma-karma-yoga. Having spoken of the inferiority and foolishness of action devoid of yogic wisdom, Kṛṣṇa speaks next of the power in the wisdom of yoga.

Text 50

buddhi-yukto jahātiha ubhe sukṛta-duṣkṛte/
sasmād yogāya yujyasva yogaṁ karmasu kauśalam//
One whose intelligence is disciplined to act in this way rids himself of both good and bad karma. Therefore devote yourself to yoga, the art of work.

In this verse Kṛṣṇa chides Arjuna for his reluctance to fight with his relatives. Arjuna is not adroit in his reticence to fight. Yoga is the art of work because although it is action, it destroys the results of both evil and pious action. Good karma does not destroy bad karma, but the act of yoga destroys good and bad karma.

In verse 39 of this chapter Kṛṣṇa began speaking about yoga. Therein he spoke of it in terms of practice as opposed to theory. He taught that yoga is a spiritual exercise that involves control and integration. In verses 48 through 50 he also spoke of yoga in terms of its involving control and the integration of intelligence or introspection and action. In verse 48 he also defined yoga as equanimity of mind, and here in this verse he further defines it as the art of or skill in performing work that results in freedom from karmic reaction.

Should Arjuna question the value of forgoing pious acts, Kṛṣṇa next speaks of the attainment of yoga, by which piety and impiety are transcended.

**Text 51**

कर्म-जन्म बुद्धियुक्ताः हि फलं नयनत्या मनीषिणः।
जन्मवर्गविनिमुक्ताः पदं गच्छन्त्यानामयम्॥२५॥

karma-jam buddhi-yuktā hi phalam tyaktvā maniṣinah/
janma-bandha-vinirmuktāḥ padam gacchanty anāmayam/

karma-jam—born of action; buddhi-yuktā—those established in yogic wisdom; hi—certainly; phalam—fruit; tyaktvā—renouncing; maniṣinah—the wise; janma-bandha—from the bondage of rebirth; vinirmuktāḥ—released; padam—abode; gacchanti—they attain; anāmayam—without anxiety.

Those established in yogic wisdom, the wise who have renounced the fruits of action and are thus released from the bondage of rebirth, attain that abode that is without anxiety.

Here Kṛṣṇa answers the question Arjuna raised in verse 7, wherein he asks what is best for him (sreyah). After release from samsāra there is still something to attain: Kṛṣṇa’s abode. It will be attained through devotion
after one is free from distraction, both worldly and scriptural. Through karma-yoga one attains self-knowledge (jñāna) and then through bhakti one attains the abode of God. Here Kṛṣṇa, while speaking overtly about attaining spiritual knowledge of the self through karma-yoga, also hints at bhakti. Knowledge of the soul leads to knowledge of God, which determines the function of the soul in eternity.

Winthrop Sargeant renders the last two padas of this verse as “free from the bondage of rebirth, [they] go to that place that is free from pain.” Janmabhanda-vinirmuktā (liberated from repeated birth) and padam gacchanty anāmayam (they go to the place of no anxiety) indicate two distinct aspects of devotional liberation: release from the negative influence of saṁsāra and attainment of positive standing in the liberated realm of devotion (Vaikuṇṭha), muktir hitvānyathā-rūpaṁ svarūpaṇa vyavasthītiḥ.9 As Arjuna wonders when he will attain the goal mentioned in this verse, Kṛṣṇa answers.

Text 52–53

When your intellect emerges from the thicket of delusion, you shall become disgusted with all that has been heard and all that is to be heard. Thereafter, when your intellect is fixed and not perplexed by scriptural injunctions, you shall attain yoga-samādhi.

9. See ŚB. 2.10.6.
In *Bhāgavata-sandarbha* (82), Jīva Goswāmī cites verse 52 as an explanation of the word *nirgrantha* (beyond scripture) found in the famous *ātmārāma* verse of the *Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam* (1.7.10). This *Bhāgavata* verse describes why the liberated Śukadeva was attracted to serve Kṛṣṇa in a post-liberated status—why he studied the *Bhāgavata* even though he was beyond scripture. The *Bhāgavata* explains that “such is the nature of the qualities of Hari.” It is Hari’s [Kṛṣṇa’s] qualities and *līlās* that the *Bhāgavata* is centered on. Their nature is such that liberated souls become attracted to them and thus to the study, and more, the relishing of *Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam*.

Relative to the flow of the *Gītā*, Kṛṣṇa speaks of not being perplexed by the Vedic doctrine of fruitive work (*karma-kānda*). He stresses that fixing one’s intelligence in spiritual pursuit will only come about when one is no longer bewildered by this doctrine, thinking it to be the sum and substance of the Vedic advocacy. Only by such fixed intelligence can one realize *yoga*.

Having heard about that abode that lies beyond religious life, the spirit of the scripture that underlies the scripture’s words, Arjuna thoughtfully inquired about those in this world who have attained that destination. Herein Arjuna asks a fourfold question to which Kṛṣṇa replies by describing overtly those in knowledge and covertly his devotees.

**Text 54**

अर्जुन उवाच
स्थिताप्रज्ञasya का bhāṣā samādhi-sthasya keśavā/
स्थिताधिधृः किं प्रभाषेत kिं धितय kim अषिता vrajeta kim//

**Arjuna asked:** What, O Keśava, are the characteristics of one who is accomplished in meditation and steady in intelligence? How does such a steady person speak? How does he sit? How does he move?
In asking Kṛṣṇa how the realized soul speaks (prabhāṣeta), Arjuna wants to know how he reacts to others. Sitting (āśīta) implies how the realized soul withdraws from worldliness, while his movement (vrajeta) involves the manner in which he interacts with the world.

As Kṛṣṇa answers Arjuna’s first question concerning the symptoms of a self-realized soul, he speaks in general about the nature of those aloof from worldly responsibilities, the pure-hearted devotees he alluded to earlier in verse 51. Such persons of inner attainment experience the fruit of the yoga of action in devotion to God. Outwardly, however, Kṛṣṇa speaks of realization of Brahman,10 that aspect of himself attained by karma-yogīs who have awakened self-knowledge.

The section of the Gītā beginning with the next verse continues through the end of this chapter. In this important division of the text Kṛṣṇa describes the ideal person he ultimately wants Arjuna to become. He will elaborate on this section throughout the next four chapters, unpacking all that is contained herein.

Text 55

śrī-bhagavān uvāca

prajahāti yadā kāmān sarvān pārtha mano-gatān/
ātmany evātmanā tuṣṭah sthita-prajñās tadocyate//

śrī-bhagavān uvāca—the Lord of Śrī said; prajahāti—renounces; yadā—when; kāmān—desires; sarvān—all; pārtha—O Pārtha; manah-gatān—born of the mind; ātmanī—in the self; eva—certainly; ātmanā—by the self; tuṣṭah—satisfied; sthita-prajñāḥ—of steady insight; tadā—at that time; ucyate—is said.

The Lord of Śrī said: O Pārtha, one who, having renounced all desires born of the mind, is satisfied in the self and by the self, is said to be one whose insight is steady.

10. Brahman refers to undifferentiated consciousness, which is compared to the halo of God. Both this feature of Godhead and that of the indwelling guide, Paramātmā, are aspects of Bhagavān, God himself.
Krṣṇa answers Arjuna’s questions by explaining the status of the *jīvanmukta*, one who is liberated in this life. *Jīvanmukti* is the penultimate stage of realization. It is followed by *videha-mukti*, or the liberation that occurs upon the demise of the realized soul’s body.

According to Rāmānujācārya, Krṣṇa’s answers appear to be a description of four stages of inner development, beginning with the highest stage and descending to the beginning stage—from *samādhi* (trance) to *pratyāhāra* (withdrawal of the senses from their objects). In the highest stage of *samādhi* all material desires have been uprooted with no possibility of revival. In the next to highest stage, the seeds of one’s material tendencies have not yet been destroyed. They exist in the form of subtle hankerings and unconscious predispositions. The sage in this stage engages in eliminating them through repeated contemplation of the self and God. In doing so, he consciously controls anger, attachment, fear, and the like. Beneath this stage the sage’s mind is not yet mastered. He must practice indifference to the elation and depression of the mind. Lastly, the entry level to enlightened life involves controlling one’s senses, even when the mind is uncontrolled. While the two stages above this one involve a mental culture, this beginning stage involves merely the outward control of the senses.

Madhusūdana Sarasvatī sees this section as a description of *samādhi* and coming out of *samādhi* owing to the influence of one’s manifest (*prārabdha*) karma. In his understanding, the subsequent verses that describe the sage’s talking, sitting, and walking represent his coming out of *samādhi*.

In this verse Krṣṇa speaks of contentment (*tuṣṭah*) in the midst of renouncing desire. When desire born of the mind is renounced, the fact that one exhibits contentment is not contradictory because in this state the self finds contentment not in the mind but in the self itself. Mental desires can be renounced because they are not intrinsic to the self, whereas desire itself cannot be, being the very makeup of the self, which is a unit of will.

Krṣṇa next describes how a *jīvanmukta* speaks, or responds to the world, answering the second part of Arjuna’s question.

**Text 56**

दुःख्येश्व अनुविन्यमाना: सुक्षेप विगन्तस्यः।

वितारणार्थकः स्वयंप्रियिनिरूपयते॥५.६॥

`duḥkheṣv anudvigna-manāḥ suksesu vigata-spṛhah/
   vita-rāga-bhaya-krodhaḥ sthita-dhir munir ucyate//`
Amid suffering and happiness his mind is neither deluded nor delighted. He who is free from desire and whose passion, fear, and anger have subsided is said to be a sage of steady mind.

Here suffering (duḥkhesu) refers to the three miseries: ādhyātmika (miseries arising from one’s own body or mind), ādhibhautika (miseries arising from others), and ādhidaivika (miseries from natural disturbances). The ātman’s experience of both sorrow and happiness are a result of his prārabdha-karma. In the case of the unalloyed devotee, however, it is due to God’s special arrangement.

According to the Padma Purāṇa, karma appears in various stages of development. Karma acquired over lifetimes is stored in an unmanifest stage known as aprārabdha-karma. When this stock of karmic reactions begins to manifest it is called kūta. From the stage of kūta, karma develops into a seedlike stage known as bija. This seed stage of karma appears as one’s predisposition and desire. When the seed stage of karma blossoms and actually manifests in our life, this is called prārabdha-karma. Once this karma has blossomed, it must bear its fruit. Although karma in its earlier stages of development can be destroyed by spiritual practice, one’s prārabdha-karma must play itself out. One who has attained knowledge of the self witnesses the expiration of his prārabdha-karma, remaining unattached in the midst of the happiness and distress that it brings about.

In this verse we learn that the prārabdha-karma experiences of sorrow and happiness continue for the realized soul. However, we also learn that the realized soul is not overwhelmed by delusion arising from sorrow that produces lamentation, nor is he overwhelmed by a sense of delight arising from happiness causing him to hanker for its recurrence. Both the experiences of sorrow and happiness alone are the result of prārabdha-karma, not the indulgence in lamentation and hankering that unenlightened souls are involved with. This indulgence on the part of the unenlightened is what perpetuates their karmic involvement. It is their unenlightened response to their prārabdha-karma. Because the realized soul is merely witnessing the expiration of his prārabdha-karma, he does not indulge in lamentation and
hankering and further implicate himself in the karmic circle. His ability to forgo such indulgence is not a mental adjustment, but a result of his realized knowledge of the true position of the self.

The devotee’s status with regard to prärabdha-karma is slightly different from that of the self-realized jñāni. Bhakti has the power to change one’s prärabdha-karma in this life.\(^\text{11}\) It uproots the foundation of ignorance that underlies all karma, but it also places one under the charge of God for the purpose of doing his bidding in this world. The unalloyed devotee is not concerned with liberation. His concern lies only in God’s service. Having destroyed his karma in the order of aprärabdha, kūta, and bija, God arranges for him to remain in this world as long as he sees fit, be it for the remainder of this life or for several lives. He does so by preserving his devotee’s prärabdha-karma and infusing him with divine sakti. When God desires to take his devotee from the world, no longer able to bear the pain of separation from him, he distributes his devotee’s pious prärabdha-karma to those who love him and any impious prärabdha-karma to those who oppose him. This is the opinion of Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa, as explained in his Vedānta-sūtra commentary (4.1.15–18).

Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa’s remarks are in keeping with the sūtras. They do not, however, stress the efficacy of bhakti in removing prärabdha-karma, as other ācāryas’ comments have. Baladeva speaks more of the power of knowledge born of bhakti than he does the power of bhakti itself.

The Gauḍīya position on the bodily status of a devotee is stated by Śrī Caitanya himself thus: “A devotee’s body should never be thought of as material. It is transcendental and made of spiritual substance. At the time of initiation, when the devotee offers himself to God, God makes the devotee equal to himself. He makes the devotee’s body spiritual like his own so that the devotee can engage in the service of his lotus feet.” (Cc. Antya 4.191–193)

Speaking of the spiritual nature of the devotee’s body, Sanātana Goswāmī recounts Śiva’s explanation to Nārada in Brhad-bhāgavatāmṛta (1.3.60–61). Therein, Śiva speaks of his own experience, stating that he feels no necessity of citing scriptural evidence in support of his opinion. Śiva says that owing to their drinking the nectar of devotion to Kṛṣṇa, devotees’ bodies become transformed into something spiritual, just as when drinking certain potions one’s body becomes transformed.

---

\(^\text{11}\) See Brs. 1.1.17–26.
The scriptural example of Dhruva Mahārāja is noteworthy. In the Bhāgavatam it is described how Dhruva left the material world and entered the spiritual abode of Viṣṇu in his selfsame body. Visvanātha Cakravartī comments that this pastime of Dhruva was revealed by God just to stress the spiritual position of the devotee’s body. Although this is not the norm, we should nevertheless learn to appreciate that even the bodies of practicing devotees take on a spiritual quality in proportion to their absorption in devotional practice. The practitioner’s body is thus both material and spiritual at the same time, and eventually it is completely spiritualized—its apparent death a divine illusion. As such, the form of the departed devotee who has attained prema is itself an eternal object of veneration. Other than the devotee, no one—not the jñāni, yogī, or any other transcendentalist’s body—is completely free from material qualities. This is the opinion of Visvanātha Cakravartī,12 who supports his position with Kṛṣṇa’s words to Uddhava in Śrimad-Bhāgavatam (11.25.26). Therein Kṛṣṇa tells Uddhava that one who has taken shelter of him in devotion is free from all material qualities, nirguṇo mad-apāśrayaḥ.

**Text 57**

yah sarvatrānabhisnehas tat tat prāpya subhāśubham/
naṁbhinandati na dveši tasya prajñā pratiśhitā//

yah—one who; sarvatra—everywhere; anabhisneham—without affection; tat—that; tat—that; prāpya—upon attaining; suḥa—pleasant; aśubham—unpleasant; na—neither; abhinandati—praises; na—nor; dveši—dislikes; tasya—his; prajñā—wisdom; pratiśhitā—firm.

**One who is free from all material affection, who upon attaining that which is pleasant or unpleasant neither praises nor disapproves, stands firm in wisdom.**

Here Kṛṣṇa describes the jīvanmukta’s speech. Free from all material affection (anabhisneham), he is full with love of God. His praise is for God alone, and he does not hate anything.

12. See his commentary on SB. 10.29.10.
Next Kṛṣṇa addresses the third part of Arjuna’s question, regarding the manner in which a person of steady wisdom sits, or withdraws from the world.

**Text 58**

\[
yadā samharate cāyaṁ kūrmo ’ṅgāniva sarvaśah/
   indriyāṁ indriyārthebhyaṁ tasya prajñā pratiḥśitā//
\]

\[
yadā—when; samharate—withdraws; ca—and; ayam—he; kūrma—tortoise; angāni—limbs; iva—like; sarvaśah—altogether; indriyāni—senses; indriya-arthebhyaṁ—from the sense objects; tasya—his; prajñā—wisdom; pratiḥśitā—firm.
\]

And when he completely withdraws his senses from their objects, like a tortoise draws its limbs within its shell, his wisdom stands firm.

While informing Arjuna of the nature of the enlightened, Kṛṣṇa simultaneously articulates the proper course of action to reach enlightened life. Thus he continues in the following verse in response to Arjuna’s mental question: “What is the difference between one who withdraws his senses from their objects out of sickness or even out of laziness and one who does so in pursuit of enlightened consciousness?”

**Text 59**

\[
viśayā vinivartante nirāhārasya dehinah/
   rasa-varjam raso ’py asya param dṛṣṭvā nivartate//
\]

\[
viṣayāḥ—sense objects; vinivartante—they turn away; nirāhārasya—of one who is fasting; dehinah—the embodied; rasa-varjam—except for the taste; rasaḥ—the taste; api—however; asya—his; param—the Supreme; dṛṣṭvā—by seeing; nivartate—loses.
\]

One embodied may fast from feeding the senses, turning away from their objects, but the taste for those objects remains. However, one who does
the same in the course of experiencing a higher taste derived from seeing God loses the very taste for sense objects as well. Thus he remains fixed.

Here Kṛṣṇa advocates the pramāṇa, or valid evidence, of experience above all other forms of evidence. Feeling rules our life. This is both our misfortune and good fortune. When this feeling or taste takes one in the direction of animality, one’s spiritual life is spoiled. One should be guided by evidence from scripture away from the bestial life of sense indulgence. While scripture sheds light on reality, applying oneself in accordance with its dictates affords one experience. One drop of such experience is more confirming than an ocean of scriptural mandates. At the same time, spiritual experience conforms with that which is described in the scripture, limited though scriptural language is in terms of describing it. Indeed, it is said that spiritual feeling, bhāva or rasa, in the school of Vraja bhakti takes one beyond the reach of scripture.13

The word param in this verse indicates the Supreme. One who develops a taste (dṛṣṭvā) for the Supreme (param) is able to forgo the taste for sense indulgence. Viśvanātha Cakravartī comments that here Kṛṣṇa is saying that the experience of the self alone is not sufficient to retire the taste for material life. Direct experience of God is required.

As for the power of the senses, Kṛṣṇa next advises Arjuna not to underestimate them.

Text 60

yatato hy api kaunteya puruṣasya vipaścitaḥ/
indriyāni pramāṭhīni haranti prasabham manah//

yatataḥ—of the striving; hi—certainly; api—even; kaunteya—O son of Kunti; puruṣasya—of a man; vipaścitaḥ—of discrimination; indriyāni—the senses; pramāṭhīni—disturbing; haranti—carry away; prasabham—forcibly; manah—the mind.

Indeed, O son of Kunti, the senses are so strong that they can forcibly carry away the mind of even a discriminating person.

13. See SB. 10.47.61.
In this verse Kṛṣṇa hints at the weakness of the path of jñāna-yoga when it lacks the support of bhakti. Bhakti offers spiritual engagement for the senses, whereas the jñānī must forgo all sensual activity.

Next Kṛṣṇa underscores that which he has implied all along (bhakti) by mentioning himself as the appropriate focal point of yoga. In doing so, he identifies himself with the Brahman and Paramātmā features of the Absolute.

**Text 61**

\[
tāni sarvāṇi samyamya yukta āsita mat-paraṁ/ 
vaśe hi yasyendriyāṇi tasya prajñā pratiṣṭhitā//
\]

\[
tāni—these; sarvāṇi—all; samyamya—restraining; yukta—disciplined; āsita—should sit; mat-paraṁ—with me as the highest object; vaśe—in subjugation; hi—certainly; yasya—one whose; indriyāṇi—senses; tasya—his; prajñā—wisdom; pratiṣṭhitā—steady.
\]

**Restraining the senses and disciplining oneself, one should sit fixing one’s consciousness on me. Such a person is known to be steady in wisdom.**

The first half of this verse speaks of practice, the second half speaks of perfection. This sitting procedure and other such attendant practices of meditation (dhyāna) will be elaborated on in the sixth chapter. Here Kṛṣṇa concludes his answer to Arjuna’s question regarding how the enlightened sit.

Madhusūdana Sarasvatī acknowledges that Kṛṣṇa says here he is “the Supreme (paraṁ), the most excellent goal to be attained. That is to say, he (the enlightened one) should be absolutely devoted to me.” As thieves are subdued by one who takes shelter of a powerful king and ultimately submit to the one who has come under the king’s shelter, so the senses are subdued and ultimately submit to the soul who takes shelter of Kṛṣṇa. Thus in the matter of controlling the senses the most important element is fixing one’s consciousness on Kṛṣṇa. Although one has to control one’s senses to do this, having done so even to a limited degree one can quickly become successful due to the power of the object of devotion, Kṛṣṇa himself, on
whom the senses are focused. Thus arbitrary focal points for meditation are not encouraged in the Gîtå.

For emphasis, to restate his points regarding the path to proper discrimination and enlightened intelligence, Kṛṣṇa continues by stating the reverse sequence of events that leads to the loss of one’s power of discrimination. While the sthita-prajña is able to control his senses because his mind is controlled, what happens when the mind is left uncontrolled is described next.

Text 62–63

When one contemplates the sense objects, attachment for them is born. From attachment, desire is born; from desire, frustration; and from frustration, delusion. When one is deluded, memory is lost; with the loss of memory, the power of discrimination is destroyed; with the destruction of discrimination, one’s own self is lost.

The self is lost for one who succumbs to the contemplation of sense objects. The real work of yoga is in curbing the mind from such contemplation. If the mind is controlled, one can be peaceful, even when physical circumstances are disturbing. If the physical circumstances are in order but the mind is not peaceful, one cannot be happy.
When the mind contemplates sense objects (dhyāyato viśayān), fondness for them and attachment (saṅghah) to them follow. Thinking the sense objects to be in our interest, we hanker (kāmah) for them. When their acquisition is obstructed by something, frustration and anger (krodhah) appear. This anger is directed toward that which thwarts our efforts to acquire sense objects. From anger, delusion (sāmohah) develops, and under its influence one does not know what is to be done and what is not to be done. This is followed by loss of memory (smṛti-vibhramah), in which condition one goes astray from that which is taught in the scripture and instructed by the spiritual preceptor. Thus naturally one does not get the proper understanding and certainty that are characteristic of buddhi. Certainty about the nature of ultimate reality does not arise in one who has been dragged down into the maelstrom of desire and destruction. Even if such certainty were to somehow arise, it would not remain constant and thus would not bear the fruit of liberation. Hence, one’s self is lost (prānasyañi).

Kṛṣṇa next begins to answer the fourth part of Arjuna’s question regarding the way in which an enlightened person “walks,” or interacts with the world. Such a person’s mind is controlled while his senses are interacting with sense objects.

**Text 64**

रागद्वेषवियुक्ताः [he who is free from attachment and aversion],
आत्मवशयाख्यातिः [self-controlled],
विśयायिः [among sense objects],
caran/ [moving].

**rāga—attachment; dveṣa—aversion; viyuktaḥ—by one who has become free; tu—however; viśayāḥ—sense objects; indriyaiḥ—by the senses; caran—moving; ātma-vaśyaḥ—by self-control; vidheya-ātmaḥ—one who is controlled by the self; prasādam—grace; adhigacchati—attains.**

**However, even while moving among the sense objects, the self-controlled one who is free from attachment and aversion, bringing his self under the jurisdiction of God, attains God’s grace.**

Kṛṣṇa differentiates the person he speaks of in this verse from the person described in the previous verse by the word tu (however). The enlightened soul can have healthy interaction with sense objects because his mind is...
controlled and thus free from attachment (rāga) and aversion (dvesa). When the senses are under the influence of attachment and repulsion for sense objects, interaction with sense objects is a source of misery. Attachment eventually bears the fruit of suffering at the inevitable loss of desirable sense objects, and repulsion for undesirable sense objects is directly a source of suffering when we are in touch with them. When one whose mind is controlled understands the nature of attachment and repulsion, interaction with sense objects is not a cause of suffering. The enlightened soul interacts with sense objects knowing the proprietorship of God. Thus he attains serenity (prasādam), the result of attaining which is discussed in the following verse.

Text 65

For the pure-minded, all suffering ceases. Without a doubt, he who has attained purity of mind soon develops steadfast intelligence.

Here and in the previous verse the word prasāde (serenity) also means “grace,” which implies theistic intervention. Without the intervention of God in one’s life true serenity is not possible.

Text 66

naasti buddhir ayuktasya na cāyuktasya bhāvanā/
na cābhāvayataḥ sāntir aśāntasya kutaḥ sukhām//

na asti—there is; buddhiḥ—intelligence; ayuktasya—of one who is not connected; na—not; ca—and; ayuktasya—of one who is not connected;
Unless one is disciplined in yoga, one cannot have clear intelligence. Unless one is so disciplined, one cannot engage in meditation. Without meditation, there is no peace, and how can one have happiness without peace?

As we have seen in verse 61 of this chapter, here Kṛṣṇa is again speaking of fixing the mind on himself. Those whose senses are uncontrolled cannot have knowledge and thus they cannot fix their mind and intelligence on Kṛṣṇa. Such persons cannot have peace, and without peace of mind there is no question of real happiness.

People think happiness comes from sense indulgence, but it is not true. Happiness can only come after controlling the senses. When the senses are controlled, the mind becomes pure, and then one can think of God with steady intelligence and engage in meditation. Only by such meditation in devotion can one attain enlightened life and real happiness. Kṛṣṇa next illustrates his point by citing an example. He wants to demonstrate how failure to concentrate one’s mind on him results in spiritual disaster.

Text 67

indriyāṁ hi caratāṁ yan mano anuvidiyate/
tad asya harati praṇāṁ vāyur nāvam ivāmbhasi//

indriyāṁ—of the senses; hi—certainly; caratāṁ—of roving; yat—which; manah—the mind; anuvidiyate—is guided; tat—that; asya—he; harati—takes away; praṇāṁ—intelligence; vāyuh—wind; nāvam—a ship; iva—like; ambhasi—on the water.

Whichever of the roving senses the mind runs after, that sense carries away one’s intelligence, just as the wind carries away a ship on water.

This verse states that if the demands of even one of the senses is pursued, such pursuit steals away one’s hopes for enlightenment. All commentators
have understood it in this way. Accordingly, yat in this verse has been rendered “whichever.” Whichever of the wandering senses the mind runs after, this one sense carries away one’s intelligence. How much more is this the case if the mind runs after all of the senses! This understanding of the verse is further evidenced by the following verse in which Kṛṣṇa says that only complete withdrawal of the senses brings about enlightenment.

Text 68

Therefore, O mighty-armed, one who completely withdraws his senses from sense objects is fixed in wisdom.

Here Kṛṣṇa reasons that he who is mighty-armed (mahā-bāho) in battle should also be so with regard to controlling the senses. One who completely withdraws his senses in the manner described in the preceding verses becomes spiritually powerful. Sarvaśah (all, completely) in this verse is used to include the mind along with the senses. Here Kṛṣṇa speaks about the need of the practitioner.

In response to this verse Arjuna has a doubt. Why is it that we never see anyone in this world who fits the above description? In reply Kṛṣṇa explains the experience of the more accomplished transcendentalist.

Text 69

yā niśā sarva-bhūtānāṁ tasya jāgarti samy ami

yasyaḥ jāgratiḥ bhūtānāṁ sā niśā paśyato muneḥ
which; jāgratī—are awake; bhūtāni—sentient beings; sā—that; nīsā—night; paśyataḥ—for the introspective; muneh—for the sage.

That which is night for all sentient beings is like day for one whose senses are controlled. That which is the time of awakening for a sentient being is like the night for the introspective sage who sees.

Since we never see anyone in this world whose senses are not functioning on some level, how can the complete sensual withdrawal mentioned in the previous verse be possible? Śrīdhara Swāmī raises this question in his introductory remarks to the present verse. Here Kṛṣṇa explains more clearly the experience of the enlightened soul. He sees, and so on, but his seeing is different than that of the ordinary person. Just as an owl sees during the night and is blind during the daylight hours, so also one who has realized God sees only God and his service in this world and not the objects of sense enjoyment.

Because the enlightened soul remains neutral in relation to happiness and distress he appears to be asleep. In reality he is awake to the true nature of these polar opposites, and thus he alone in this world is alert. Others, while awake to happiness and distress—their lives centered on attaining the former and avoiding the latter—are asleep to the underlying reality of life.

Text 70

āpūryamānam acala-pratiṣṭham samudram āpah praviṣanti yadvat/
tadvat kāmā yam praviṣanti sarve sa sāntim āpnoti na kāma-kāmī//

āpūryamānam—being filled; acala-pratiṣṭham—remaining still; samudram—the ocean; āpah—waters; praviṣanti—enter; yadvat—as; tadvat—so; kāmāh—desires; yam—whom; praviṣanti—enter; sarve—all; saḥ—that person; sāntim—peace; āpnoti—achieves; na—not; kāma-kāmī—one who desires to fulfill desires.

As the ocean remains still even while rivers enter into it, he who remains unmoved in spite of all desires attains peace, not he who strives to fulfill such desires.
Text 71

A person who has abandoned all desires for sense indulgence acts free from desire. Indifferent to proprietorship and free from egotism, he attains peace.

Here Kṛṣṇa concludes his answer to the fourth part of Arjuna's first principal question, as to how the enlightened move in this world. Next he makes a concluding remark indicating further the goal of spiritual life.

Text 72

O Pārtha, having attained this divine state one is not deluded; if one is fixed in this consciousness even at the moment of death, one attains Brahman and the cessation of all suffering.

Having attained enlightenment, there can be no recurrence of ignorance (vimuhyati). Here Kṛṣṇa describes the enlightened condition as brahma-nirvāṇa. The word nirvāṇa is distinctly Buddhist, although it is also found in some of the later Upaniṣads. Here Kṛṣṇa includes it within Brahman.
Literally *nirvāṇa* means to “blow out,” as one does a candle to extinguish its light. The word has a negative connotation, and thus Buddhism has sometimes been considered a negative form of spirituality. It is negative, however, in a positive way. Its goal is to negate the suffering that it considers the world to consist of.

Cessation of suffering is also concomitant to the goal of the *Gītā*, and thus all that is included in *nirvāṇa* is within Kṛṣṇa’s general conception of enlightenment. Brahman is, as will become apparent in later chapters, an aspect of Kṛṣṇa. It is not the complete expression of divinity, which is Bhagavān Kṛṣṇa himself. At this point in the *Gītā*, Kṛṣṇa has not entirely revealed everything that the fully enlightened state of God consciousness includes, although he has hinted at it (Bg. 2.59, 2.61, 2.64).

In the next chapter Kṛṣṇa will elaborate on dutiful action and action informed by knowledge, and in chapter 4 he will discuss the wisdom that is the fruit of such informed action. In chapter 5 Kṛṣṇa uses the word *nirvāṇa* three times (Bg. 5.24–26) in the course of elaborating on the enlightened condition of *samādhi* that he has explained in this concluding section of chapter 2 (Bg. 2.55–72). In each of these verses Kṛṣṇa calls the enlightened condition *brahma-nirvāṇa*. However, he ends chapter 5 by placing realization of himself within the equation of enlightenment (Bg. 5.29) when he says that the peace of enlightenment (*sāntih*) is attained quickly by acknowledging himself as the ideal of the *jñānis* (Brahman), the *yogīs* (Paramātmā), and his devotees (Bhagavān).

In chapter 6, which involves an extended discussion of the spiritual practices of *yoga* that lead to enlightenment, Kṛṣṇa elaborates further on the enlightened condition by including realization of the Paramātmā feature of the Absolute within it, *paramātmā samāhitaḥ* (Bg. 6.7). In the same section of chapter 6 (Bg. 6.15), he reveals that the enlightened state of yogic attainment includes the supremely peaceful cessation of material existence in Brahman (*sāntīṃ nirvāṇa-paramām*), which is contained within realization of his person (*mat-saṃsthām/Bhagavān*). He concludes chapter 6 by calling the *yoga* of devotion (*bhakti*) the highest expression of *yoga*. This is the *yoga* that corresponds with the *Gītā*’s full sense of enlightenment—God-realization. Thus within this concluding section of chapter 2, Kṛṣṇa’s description of the enlightened person refers ultimately to his devotee.
Chapter Three

कर्मयोगः

Karma-yoga:

Yoga of Action

Text 1

अर्जुन उवाच

ज्यायसी चेत्त कर्माणि मता बुधिक्षणार्दन।

तनं किं कर्मणि घोरे मा नियोजयसि केशव॥९॥

arjuna uvāca

jyāyasi cet karmanas te matā buddhir janārdana/

tat kim karmani ghore mām niyojayasi keśava//

arjunah uvāca—Arjuna said; jyāyasi—better; cet—if; karmanah—than action; te—your; matā—opinion; buddhiḥ—intelligence; janārdana—O Janārdana; tat—then; kim—why; karmani—in action; ghore—horrible; mām—me; niyojayasi—you are engaging; keśava—O Keśava.

If in your opinion, O Janārdana, knowledge is superior to action, then why, O Keśava, are you engaging me in this horrible action?

Arjuna's confusion with regard to Kṛṣṇa's apparent simultaneous advocacy of action and knowledge appears in seed form in the previous chapter. In verse 38 of chapter 2 Kṛṣṇa tells Arjuna to fight after having explained to him the wisdom of the soul and the fact that no one kills or is killed. Arjuna’s doubt is addressed in the subsequent verse, but not such that it is removed. Indeed, Kṛṣṇa’s apparent advocacy of bhakti therein only adds to Arjuna’s confusion. At the onset of chapter 3 the seed of Arjuna’s lingering doubt blossoms in the first two verses.

Arjuna’s question arises from the fact that first and foremost he is a devotee of Kṛṣṇa, and thus has no interest in either the path of action or knowledge. Although his awareness of his status as a devotee has been
somewhat suppressed by Kṛṣṇa’s arrangement, giving rise to apparent ignorance, it has not been lost, and therefore it surfaces here as it does in other places throughout the Gitā. Thus here Arjuna addresses Kṛṣṇa as Janārdana. By this address he says to Kṛṣṇa, “O you who are petitioned (ardana) by all persons (jana) for the fulfillment of their desires, I too pray to you that I might know what is best for me.” Viśvanātha Cakravartī adds that the epithet Janārdana has another meaning. Arjuna intimates that Kṛṣṇa makes his friends (jana) suffer (ardana) by giving them painful orders of this type. However, by then addressing him as Kesava, Arjuna immediately admits that no living being can ignore Kṛṣṇa’s desire, for even Brahmā (ka) and Śiva (iṣa) are under his thrall (va, from vaṣa).

Arjuna wonders why Kṛṣṇa has urged him to engage in such an unpalatable action as killing his relatives and even his gurus if knowledge is superior to action. He says, *tat kiṁ karmārṇi ghore mām,* “Then why are you engaging me in this horrible action?” implying through the word mām (me), “who am your devotee and thus not even interested in the path of knowledge, much less that of karma.”

Madhusūdana Sarasvatī also acknowledges Arjuna’s underlying devotional sentiment. He hears him saying, “O Kesava, Lord of all, it does not befit you who are the fulfiller of all desires to deceive me, a devotee, who has approached you as the sole refuge.” Thus Arjuna wonders that if jñāna, or knowledge of the self, is the ideal, and more so bhakti, why should he engage in battle as Kṛṣṇa has instructed him?

Kṛṣṇa’s response to Arjuna’s confusion beginning with the third verse of this chapter is an elaboration on the efficacy of niṣkama-karma-yoga, the principal subject of this chapter.

**Text 2**

vyāmiśreṇeva vākyena buddhim mohayasiṁva me/
    tad ekam vada niścitaṁ yena śreyo 'ham āpnuyām//

vyāmiśreṇa—by equivocal; iva—like; vākyena—with speech; buddhim—intelligence; mohayasi—you are confusing; iva—like; me—my; tat—therefore; ekam—one; vada—tell; niścitaṁ—without doubt; yena—by which; śreyah—the highest good; aham—I; āpnuyām—should attain.
With speech that seems equivocal, you have confused my intelligence. Therefore, please tell me clearly by which path I will attain the highest good.

Here Arjuna qualifies his question in the previous verse by stating that he finds no fault in Kṛṣṇa. It is not Kṛṣṇa’s instructions that are faulty or confusing; they only seem (iva) so to Arjuna, who submissively asks for clarification.

In the previous verse we saw that Arjuna is predisposed toward devotion such that the paths of action and knowledge are unattractive to him. Here, however, his question is centered on eligibility. It seems contradictory for a person to be eligible for action and knowledge at the same time: If a person is not eligible for the path of knowledge, he must tread the path of action until he acquires the requisite purity of heart which makes him eligible for contemplative life. If a person is eligible for contemplative life, he has nothing to do with the path of action. As Kṛṣṇa will gradually reveal in this chapter, while knowledge is the goal of the path of action, it must be attained through the path of action and not prematurely adopted through an intellectual sleight of hand. The solution to Arjuna’s dilemma lies in understanding the secret of inaction within action that is the heart of karma-yoga and ultimately in treading the path of devotion.

In speaking about action in knowledge and knowledge itself, Kṛṣṇa is subtly advocating one thing: devotion to himself as it is cultured by persons in developmental stages from karma-yoga, for those whose minds are not yet pure, to jñāna-yoga, for those whose hearts are free from material desire. However, at this point in his discourse, Kṛṣṇa overtly emphasizes only self-realization actuated through karma-yoga and fructifying in jñāna-yoga.

Kṛṣṇa looks lovingly at Arjuna, who is so pure as to be intimately involved with Kṛṣṇa as his dear friend, yet by Kṛṣṇa’s arrangement has been placed in a mystical illusion so that Kṛṣṇa could speak to human society through his dearmost friend. Kṛṣṇa thought, “Arjuna is thinking that I have talked about two different things, but in fact I have spoken only about one thing approached by different persons in different stages of devotional culture. Arjuna’s real interest is in pure devotion, not karma or jñāna, but I have only spoken about that indirectly, emphasizing for now detached work culminating in knowledge. Being my devotee, it is no wonder that he is hesitating.”
Text 3

The Lord of Śri said: O sinless one, as I have explained previously, in this world there is a twofold basis of devotion, that of knowledge for contemplatives and action for yogis.

The word niṣṭhā in this verse literally means steadiness, basis, or attachment. It is in the singular, for Kṛṣṇa is speaking about only one type of steadiness. This steadiness is derived from the controlled mind and knowledge of the self, which underlies a life of devotion proper. The jñāni achieves this through contemplation and the karma-yogi approaches it through detached action. Rūpa Goswāmī has used the term niṣṭhā to refer to steadiness in devotion, and in Winthrop Sargeant’s translation of this verse, niṣṭhā is rendered as “twofold basis (of devotion).” This fits well with the direction in which Kṛṣṇa is taking Arjuna. One who is steady in detached action attains steadiness of mind. One who is steady in mind attains steadiness in knowledge, and one steady in knowledge can attain devotion proper. If one expects to attain devotion proper, one must in due course control the mind and acquire knowledge of the self.

Indicating that in his present condition Arjuna was not suited for a life of contemplation, Kṛṣṇa advises him further regarding the relative superiority of karma-yoga over jñāna-yoga. The sense in which the word yoga is joined with both jñāna and karma is this: jñāna is yoga because through knowledge one is united with the Absolute. Karma is yoga because through detached action one’s mind becomes purified and thus the possibility of attaining knowledge of the self arises. Without a purified mind, one cannot assume
to be qualified for contemplative life. Kṛṣṇa thus stresses that the desired purity arises out of proper action.

Text 4

Not merely by abstaining from prescribed action can one attain the state beyond action, nor by renunciation alone can one attain perfection.

There can be no result without a cause. Therefore Kṛṣṇa says that abstaining from prescribed duties (anārambhāt), which are the cause of purification and subsequently the self-knowledge that delivers one from karmic action, will not bring the desired result of self-knowledge. As for renunciation (sannyāsa) without prior purification, such artificial renunciation is fruitless.

Beginning with this verse Kṛṣṇa elaborates over the next six verses on the necessity of purification through action. Unless one’s heart is pure, one should engage in karma-yoga, for knowledge will not arise from artificial renunciation in an impure heart. Action in accordance with scriptural injunctions brings about purification of the heart. This is especially so when scripturally enjoined action is performed without attachment to enjoying the result for oneself—niṣkāma-karma-yoga.
is forced to do; hi—certainly; avaśah—against will; karma—work; sarvah—all; prakṛti-jaiḥ—born of the material nature; guṇaiḥ—by the guṇas.

Indeed, no one, even for the twinkling of an eye, remains free from action. All people are forced to act even against their own will under the influence of the guṇas born of material nature.

Owing to lack of purification, which manifests in the form of material desire, common persons are forced to act under the influence of the guṇas of material nature. Such persons cannot artificially take to monastic life, for material nature will force them to act contrary to that which is appropriate for monasticism. To enter contemplative life, one must be sufficiently situated in the material guṇa of sattva through acts of purification. Although sattva is also a material influence, it begets knowledge (see Bg. 14.6).

Text 6

कर्मेन्द्रियाणि समयम् य आस्ते मनसा स्मरन्।
हृद्यार्थान्तिवृत्ताः मिथ्याचारः स उच्यते॥६॥

karmendriyāṇi samyamya ya āste manasa śmaraḥ/
indriya-arthān vimūḍhātmā mithyācāraḥ sa ucyate//

karma-indriyāṇi—the five working sense organs; samyamya—restraining; yah—one who; āste—sits; manasa—by the mind; śmaraḥ—remembering; indriya-arthān—sense objects; vimūḍha—deluded; ātmā—self; saḥ—he; mithyā-ācāraḥ—hypocrite; ucyate—is called.

A person who sits restraining his working senses while contemplating sense objects deludes himself and is called a hypocrite.

Should a person renounce artificially and by force restrain his senses from contact with sense objects, his mind will nevertheless continue to contemplate those sense objects.

Text 7

यस्य त्व इंद्रियाणि मनसा नियम्यार्भोतेः कुञ्जुन।
कर्मेन्द्रियाहः कर्मयोगमस्तकः स विषयायते॥७॥

yas tv indriyāṇi manasa niyamya arbhate 'ṛjuna/
karmendriyaiḥ karma-yogam asaktaḥ sa viṣayate//
However, one who begins to control the senses by the mind, O Arjuna, and without attachment engages his working senses in karma-yoga is superior.

Kṛṣṇa’s advocacy of pure action over artificial renunciation should appeal to those inspired by the concept of enlightened activism. Social activism is a rudimentary form of selfless action, and although in today’s world it is not embarked on in consideration of scriptural mandates, it does embrace the spirit of scriptural law. Although monasticism is superior in that it is possible only after one has been sufficiently purified from material desire, it is not superior for those unqualified for it. One person’s food is another’s poison. Lack of appreciation for the monastic order stems primarily from the fact that unqualified persons have adopted it as a means to circumvent the actual work involved in purifying the heart.

Text 8

नियतं कुर्म कर्म त्वं कर्म ज्यायो हाकर्मयं।
सरीरयात्रापि च ते न प्रसिद्धेतकर्मयं॥

niyataṁ kuru karma tvam karma jyāyo hy akarmaṁ/
 sarīra-yātrāpi ca te na prasiddhyed akarmaṁ//

niyataṁ—prescribed; kuru—do; karma—action; tvam—you; karma—work; jyāyah—better; hi—certainly; akarmaṁ—than inaction; sarīra—body; yātrā—maintenance; āpi—even; ca—also; te—your; na—not; prasiddhyet—should be accomplished; akarmaṁ—without action.

Perform your prescribed duty, for doing so is better than inaction. One cannot even maintain one’s body without action.

Even contemplatives must act to gather the needs of their bodies. In saying this, Kṛṣṇa drives his point home: Arjuna should act (in this case fight) and not withdraw to a contemplative life. He is a warrior and should not adopt begging, the ordained activity of monastics, for his livelihood.
Other than action performed for the purpose of sacrifice, all action in this world is binding. Act in sacrifice for the satisfaction of God, O son of Kunti, without being attached to enjoying the results.

With this verse Kṛṣṇa concludes his instruction on selfless karma-yoga. He says that action is binding unless it is performed as an act of sacrifice. It is said, yajño vai viṣṇuh, “Viṣṇu himself is sacrifice.” Baladeva Vidyābhūṣāna comments further, “One can only worship the Lord in sacrifice with goods that have been acquired honestly; then one's material needs can be met as a by-product of such sacrifices.”

At the onset of this chapter, Arjuna considered that if knowledge is better than action, why should he act in battle? After Kṛṣṇa’s emphatic answer and clear advocacy of selfless action as the prerequisite to knowledge, Arjuna, humbled, mentally questions his eligibility even for a life of karma-yoga. After all, even this is not for the common person. Addressing this in the following seven verses, Kṛṣṇa describes the course for those not yet qualified to engage in selfless action.
Having created humanity along with sacrifice, the progenitor said at the beginning of creation, “By this (sacrifice) you shall attain all things; may such sacrifice be your wish-fulfilling cow of plenty.”

Here, as well as in the following two verses, Kṛṣṇa quotes the progenitor (prajāpatiḥ), whom Baladeva Vidyābhūṣṭa identifies with Viṣṇu based on śruti references and Viśvanātha Cakravartī Ṭḥākura identifies with Brahmā.

In this section Kṛṣṇa speaks about the duty of those who remain attached to the fruits of their work, as well as about the principle of sacrifice and its efficacy. Those who cannot live a life of karma-yoga should regularly perform religious sacrifices in conjunction with important events such as marriage and childbirth. In this way, their desires will be fulfilled by the cosmic arrangement, and they will have acknowledged their dependence on God and regulated their senses accordingly.

Here Kṛṣṇa speaks of the proper way to approach the Vedic rituals, the abuse of which he condemned earlier when first speaking to Arjuna of the Vedas and their rituals (Bg. 2.42–46). Those who are not qualified to practice karma-yoga must begin to regulate their senses by performing acts of sacrifice, thereby acknowledging the cosmic order. Indeed, they must embrace sacrifice itself as the way of progressive life and honor the various manifestations of the divine in nature.

**Text 11**

-devān bhāvayatānena te devā bhāvayantu vah/
parasparam bhāvayantah śreyah param avāpsyathal/

devān—gods; bhāvayata—may you please; anena—by this; te—they; devāh—gods; bhāvayantu—will please; vah—you; parasparam—mutually; bhāvayantah—pleasing; śreyah—good; param—greatest; avāpsyatha—you will attain.

By sacrifice you will satisfy the gods, who in turn will satisfy you. By this mutual arrangement, you shall attain the greatest good.
The gods include the deities that preside over the senses. For each of our sensual functions there is a corresponding aspect of nature that the senses’ functions depend on. The personification of these aspects of nature are the gods under discussion. They represent the conscious principle behind all the functions of nature. For example, our eyes are not independent in their capacity to afford us vision. They depend on light, the source of which is the sun. The sacrifice mentioned in this verse refers to acknowledging our dependence on these presiding deities. This helps us realize that we are not independent, but rather part of an interdependent system in which humanity and nature flourish in the culture of God consciousness. This gradual culture leads to the ultimate good for all concerned.

Text 12

\text{The gods, nourished by sacrifice, will certainly bestow the fulfillment of your desires. However, one who enjoys the gods’ natural gifts without acknowledging the gods themselves is a thief.}

False proprietorship is the basic misconception of our material lives. If we do not acknowledge our indebtedness to others, we are criminals. The debt incurred from enjoying the bounty of nature must be acknowledged and repaid. This is the principle of sacrifice. In our everyday modern experience we must acknowledge the municipality for our supply of heat, light, water, and so on. If we do not do so by paying our monthly bills, we break the law. Similarly, there is a cosmic order that must be acknowledged by human society.

Text 13
The saintly, who even while eating perform sacrifice by offering food and then eating the remnants, are released from all evil. The wicked, who cook only for themselves, eat only impurities.

Here Kṛṣṇa cites the common act of eating as an example of how far-reaching the principle of sacrifice is for human society. The very act of eating should be one of sacrifice. Enjoyment is truly only that which is the fruit of sacrifice.

The act of “saying grace” before one’s meals is the heart of Kṛṣṇa’s instruction in this verse. In the strict Vedic sense this verse refers to the means by which the householder is freed from evil acts performed inadvertently. Five types of sacrifice are enjoined for the householder that absolve him from evils committed through five everyday household accessories essential to the householder: the pestle, grinder, oven, water pot, and broom. It is said that on account of these five items the householder does not attain heaven, for their use in household life causes harm to other living beings (insects, etc.). Thus by performing the five sacrifices one counteracts the sins inadvertently committed through these five items. Central to these sacrifices is the offering of food to the gods in the vaiśvadeva-yajña.

Taking this verse beyond the scope of the Vedic law to the heart of the principle of sacrifice, Bhaktivedanta Swami Prabhupāda comments that the devotees, who are truly saintly people, are freed from all sins merely by the act of offering all of their food to Kṛṣṇa and partaking of the remnants.

Kṛṣṇa next further explains the system that calls for sacrifice on the part of humanity, thereby connecting humanity with divinity.
Annāt—from food; bhavanti—subsist; bhūtāni—beings; parjanyāt—from the rain cloud; anna—food; sambhavāḥ—product; yajñāt—becomes possible; parjanyaḥ—rain cloud; yajñāḥ—sacrifice; karma—prescribed duties; samudbhavāḥ—born of.

Humanity subsists on food, and food is a product of rain. Rain in turn is a product of sacrifice, and sacrifice is born of prescribed duties and ritual.

Ritual and prescribed duties originate from the sacred literature (Vedas), and the sacred literature arises from the imperishable Absolute. Therefore, the all-pervading Absolute is eternally situated in acts of sacrifice.

In verses 15 and 16 Kṛṣṇa says that it is sacrifice that makes the world go round. While we often hear that love keeps the world turning on its axis, we do not stop to think that love arises out of sacrifice. Without such introspection one often mistakes selfishness for love, the result of which is that one goes around in confusion as to what the world is really all about.

When food is eaten and transformed into blood and blood into semen, the reproduction of the different species becomes possible. Food is dependent on rain. All of this is understandable to modern society. The idea that rain is produced through sacrifice is not apparent. According to Madhusudana Sarasvatī this science is detailed in the aṣṭādhyāyi-kāṇḍa of the Satapatha-Brāhmaṇa, in the section containing six questions in the form of a dialogue.
between Janaka and Yajñavalkya. Otherwise, it is common knowledge that through sacrifice one gains. It should be clear that sacrifice is enjoined in scripture. Scripture (the Veda) is an expression of the Absolute and is that by which the Absolute can be known. It has no human origin, and it is eternally situated in acts of sacrifice.

**Text 16**

एवं प्रवर्तितं चक्रं नानुवर्तयतीह याः।
अत्रायुरिन्द्रियारंगमो मोघं पार्थं स जीवति॥ १६॥

evam pravartitam cakram nānuvartayatiha yah/
aghāyur indriyārāmo mogham pārtha sa jīvati//

**My dear Pārtha, one who in human life does not acknowledge this cycle lives irresponsibly for sense pleasure and thus in vain.**

This section beginning with verse 10 and ending with this verse is not merely a mandate for ritualistic offerings to the gods, a magical technique of bargaining with supernatural powers for one’s maintenance. Those who think that this is all that Kṛṣṇa is saying miss the deeper implication of his words. In this section Kṛṣṇa advocates sacrifice not as a means, but as the end itself, for he has said that life both begins with sacrifice and is thenceforth meant for further sacrifice. The bounty of life is not a product of chance. It is a result of detached action. Getting is a result of giving; and moreover, giving is getting. Life really consists of effectively and actively surrendering one’s own power and resources to a supernatural, personal source.

He who does not follow the system described here as a cycle or wheel (cakra) of life would be better off dead, for he would then have the opportunity to do so in the next life. Although he enjoys through the senses and is thus obliged to participate in religious sacrificial rites, he does not do so. His life is most certainly spent in vain.

Kṛṣṇa next contrasts those who are obliged to observe religious injunctions for purification with those who are already purified. In doing so, he
elaborates in two verses on the position of the self-satisfied soul, who has no need to engage in purificatory sacrificial rituals.

Text 17

One who takes pleasure in the self, whose satisfaction is derived from the self, and who is content in the self alone has no need to perform duties.

Text 18

He has nothing to gain by acting and nothing to lose by not acting. He needs no one for any purpose.

One who is atma-ratih derives pleasure from the self alone. He has no obligatory work to perform, nor is he dependent on others, either humans or gods. Such a person is in perfect harmony with the aforementioned cosmic order. Having sacrificed his material ego altogether he eventually transcends it.

Arjuna’s position is such that he is neither overly attached to material acquisition and thereby in need of petitioning the gods, nor qualified to
Yoga of action

take up a life of contemplation. His eligibility for spiritual progress lies in between these two paths. Therefore, after having described the course for both the attached person and the one in knowledge, Kṛṣṇa next concludes that Arjuna should perform selfless karma-yoga, continuing to drive this point home to his disciple. He advises Arjuna on how he can attain the state of God consciousness he has just described in verses 17 and 18 by engaging in nīśkāma-karma-yoga.

Text 19

Therefore, without attachment to the fruits of your work, constantly engage in your duty as a warrior, for by acting without attachment one attains God consciousness.

Arjuna wonders if there are any examples of persons who attained God consciousness by karma-yoga. Thus Kṛṣṇa next cites the example of other warriors who attained success through action.

Text 20

Therefore, without attachment to the fruits of your work, constantly engage in your duty as a warrior, for by acting without attachment one attains God consciousness.

Arjuna wonders if there are any examples of persons who attained God consciousness by karma-yoga. Thus Kṛṣṇa next cites the example of other warriors who attained success through action.
Janaka and other kings attained perfection by proper action alone. Thus, in consideration of the people in general, you should take to proper action.

Here Kṛṣṇa offers still another reason in support of detached action over contemplative life: setting an example for others. A great person like Arjuna certainly does have some obligation to the masses with regard to his personal example. Kṛṣṇa cites the example of Janaka and others, who were warriors like Arjuna. They were successful by means of detached action rather than renunciation of action altogether. Whether one is a seeker of knowledge or situated in knowledge, Kṛṣṇa advises that one should set a proper example.

Text 21

यददायकर्ति श्रेष्ठस्तद्वेकर्तं जनः।
स यत् प्रमाणं कुमे लोकगत्वनुवर्तिः॥२१॥

yad yad ācarati śreṣṭhaḥ tat tat evetaro janaḥ/
    sa yat pramāṇam kurute lokas tat anuvartate//

yat yat—whatever; ācarati—does; śreṣṭhāḥ—best; tat—that; tat—that;
evā—certainly; itarāḥ—the other; janaḥ—person; saḥ—he; yat—whichever;
pramāṇam—standard; kurute—perform; lokah—all the world; tat—that;
anuvartate—follows in the footsteps.

Whatever a great man does, the world follows. Whatever standards he sets, the world pursues.

Kṛṣṇadāsa Kavirāja Gosvāmī cites this verse in Caitanya-caritāmṛta. Gauḍiya Vaiṣṇavas consider Śrī Caitanya to be Kṛṣṇa himself, who in desiring others to love him in the intimacy of Vraja bhakti realized that only he could bestow this love, and that to explain it to others, he had to personally practice it. Thus he reasoned, “Unless a person practices devotional service himself, he cannot teach it to others. This conclusion is indeed confirmed throughout the Gitā and the Bhāgavatam.” (Cc. Ādi 3.21) While Kṛṣṇa’s expansions and incarnations can certainly establish religious principles, only he can bestow Vraja bhakti. Desiring to do so, he descends as Śrī Caitanya, assuming the form of a devotee of himself.

1. See Cc. Ādi 3.25 and Madhya 17.178. Bg. 3.24 and 4.7–8 are also cited in support of the same point.
The word *yat* (whatever) in this verse implies that common people follow a great person’s example, be it scripturally ordained or otherwise. Common people cannot discriminate between that which is scripturally sanctioned and that which is not. Therefore, they are not able to dismiss what a great person might do that is not sanctioned by scripture and accept scripturally enjoined actions as the proper course of action. Thus they are in need of a proper example, and great souls, although above scripture themselves, should set this example.

As Kṛṣṇa further implores Arjuna to set an example for others, in the next three verses he cites his own standard in this regard.

Text 22

\[
\text{na me pārthāsti kartavyam triśu lokasya kiñcanā/}
\]

\[
nānavāptam avāptavyam vartā eva ca karmāṇi/\]

"O son of Pṛthā, there is no work that I need to perform in all the three worlds, nor is there anything to be attained by me. In spite of this, I nevertheless perform prescribed duties."

Kṛṣṇa addresses Arjuna as Pṛthā, and thus in terms of their common family heritage. Kṛṣṇa and Arjuna are cousins. Kṛṣṇa speaks in a very endearing voice to his cousin brother as if to say, “You were born in a pure warrior family as I was, and thus we are very similar. Therefore you should behave as I do.”

In this and the following two verses, Kṛṣṇa explains the nature of his conduct.

Text 23

\[
\text{यद्य हां न बासेय जातु कर्मण्यनिदर्भं/}
\]

\[
\text{मम कर्मानुवचनं मनुष्यम: पाठ्य सर्वस:॥२३॥}
\]
For if I should fail to engage in proper action, O Pārtha, people would follow my footsteps in every way.

Text 24

If I did not act properly, the world would perish and I would be the cause of social chaos, thereby ruining the population.

This is not Vraja Kṛṣṇa speaking here! Although he can do no wrong, Kṛṣṇa certainly appears to set a poor example in his affairs with the gopīs. Thus after hearing of Vraja Kṛṣṇa’s rāsa dance with others’ wives, Mahārāja Parīkṣit asked Śukadeva how the very support of dharma, Kṛṣṇa himself, could act out of character,² apparently contradicting what he says in this verse. Śukadeva answered by explaining that great persons (īśvarāḥ) can do what others cannot. They act without selfish motive and are thus not implicated in karmic reaction by their seemingly material activities. Furthermore, from an ontological point of view, Kṛṣṇa was the husband/maintainer of the husbands of the gopīs, for he resides in the hearts of all.³ Everyone

². ŚB. 10.33.26–28
³. ŚB. 10.33.35
belongs to Kṛṣṇa, but not everyone acknowledges this. The gopīs of Kṛṣṇa līlā exemplify for us the acknowledgment of this principle to the extreme. We are to learn from them the ideal life of devotion to God that Bhagavad-gītā points to in its concluding words. The gopīs were Kṛṣṇa’s most surrendered devotees, and his union with them, while appearing inappropriate on the surface, was in fact most appropriate.

Kṛṣṇa is easier to understand as the prince and statesman of the Bhagavad-gītā than he is in his līlā of divine love with the gopīs. However, readers should understand that Kṛṣṇa’s noble and majestic character (aśvārya) brought out in this verse is not absent in his Vraja līlā. It lies beneath the surface of that līlā and is foundational to it, for were Vraja Kṛṣṇa not God himself, the very support of dharma, his līlā with the gopīs would hold little charm for us. It is only because he is God that his most humanlike līlā is so sweet (mādhurya). This point is central to Gauḍīya Vedānta.

For the pleasure of his devotees like the gopīs, Kṛṣṇa may violate the scripture, otherwise not. To please Kṛṣṇa’s devotees is the essence of scriptural adherence. Scripture tells us that the criterion for evaluating the perfection of action is the extent to which it pleases God, saṁsiddhir hari-ṭosanam (SB. 1.2.13), and there is nothing that pleases Kṛṣṇa more than the pleasure of his devotees. However, under scrutiny Kṛṣṇa does not violate scripture, nor would this be pleasing to his devotees.

Arjuna’s concern for keeping the social order intact, which was voiced in chapter 1, is addressed here by Kṛṣṇa. He says that he acts with this in mind. Previous commentators have given this verse a narrow interpretation: Kṛṣṇa’s concern for the social order means the conservation of caste within the traditional varṇāśrama socioreligious system.4

Ironically, concern for an improved social order today involves a breaking down of what are considered artificial boundaries, such as race, sex, religion, and so on. An improved world order is thought to be one in which people relate to one another based on what they have in common as human beings, a vision that transcends material differences. This is the spirit of the essential message of the Gītā as well, wherein the common tie between all humanity—even all species—is their common spiritual essence. It is in pursuit of realizing this common ground that the Gītā stresses adherence to its social order, but since the likelihood of reestablishing this socioreligious system in the modern world is slight, it may be best to stress the essential message

4. See Bg. 4.13.
of the Gitā, which is to elevate the understanding of humanity’s common bond from one that is species-centered to one that is based in spirituality. In doing so, the spirit behind the Gitā’s concern for preserving the social order can also be stressed by emphasizing the importance of social morality in general and avoiding the watering down of values, understanding these concerns as the religious and moral underpinnings of a spiritual reality.

Most of the world’s religions contain a kind of socially oriented teaching that validates social activism. These teachings are rarely seen as the means to enlightenment itself, but are certainly not seen as being opposed to it. Devotees who, like Arjuna, are not ready to take up a life of renunciation can perhaps find in these teachings models of a contemporary social framework in support of enlightened life. Vaiṣṇavas share many of the values inherent in the environmental movement, vegetarian and animal protection movements, certain aspects of liberal social thought, and various other related types of activism, and there is no reason why karma-yoga to promote these values would militate against a Vaiṣṇava’s gradual advancement. Indeed, since Kṛṣṇa himself speaks in favor of these values, working to promote them could be considered pleasing to God in the most general sense, as is adherence to the prescribed duties of varṇāśrama dharma. Selflessness, renunciation of the fruits of one’s work, knowledge of an underlying spiritual purpose of all things, and the desire to please God are the basic principles that, when combined with a culture of devotion to God, lead one gradually to the supreme destination.

Text 25

saktāḥ karmany avidvāṁso yathā kurvanti bhārataḥ/
  kuryād vidvāṁs tathāsaktāś cikirṣuḥ loka-saṅgraham//

saktāḥ—attached; karmanī—in prescribed duties; avidvāṁsaḥ—the unwise; yathā—as; kurvanti—they do; bhārataḥ—O descendant of Bharata; kuryāt—he must do; vidvān—the wise; tathā—so; asaktāḥ—without attachment; cikirṣuḥ—desiring to do; loka-saṅgraham—uplifting the world.

O scion of Bharata, as those who are unwise act out of attachment for the results of their action, so the wise should act without attachment for the sake of uplifting the world.
The name Bhārata indicates one devoted (rata) to knowledge (bhā). Arjuna is thus characterized as one so devoted, who should not act out of attachment but for the sake of uplifting others by his example.

**Text 26**

na buddhi-bhedam janayed ajñānām karma-saṅginām/
joṣayet sarva-karmāṇi vidvān yuktah samācaraṇaḥ/

na—not; buddhi-bhedam—disruption of intelligence; janayet—he should cause; ajñānām—of the ignorant; karma-saṅginām—who are attached to frutitive work; joṣayet—he should cause to delight; sarva—all; karmāṇī—duties; vidvān—the wise; yuktah—engaged; samācaraṇaḥ—practicing.

The wise should not unsettle the minds of the ignorant who are attached to frutitive work. They should make them delight in all prescribed duties while acting themselves with discipline.

Truth must be revealed in installments relative to the eligibility of the student. This is a general principle observed in all spheres of learning. Thus restrictions on who is privileged to study the Upaniṣads is not a social bias but observance of a universal principle. Although loving God is everyone’s right, persons are eligible to do so in consideration of the extent of their material conditioning.

The stricture in this verse applies primarily to the jñāni. He should not encourage the ignorant to give up work. Although devotees are also bound to observe the principle described in this verse, this does not mean that they are forbidden to encourage the ignorant to engage in Kṛṣṇa’s service. Such service will not disturb the minds of the ignorant inasmuch as it can be dovetailed with one’s karmic propensity. Bhakti does not require that a person first purify his heart by another means before engaging in it. However, devotees must teach the ignorant about devotion and engage people in bhakti in consideration of the level of their eligibility. Beginners on the path of bhakti should engage in congregational hearing and chanting about Kṛṣṇa, whereas advanced devotees can sit in solitude meditating on Kṛṣṇa’s līlās with an undisturbed mind. However, such advanced devotees should also set an example for beginners to emulate.
Here Kṛṣṇa says that those in knowledge should not encourage the ignorant to give up prescribed duties in the name of self-realization when they are unqualified to do so. This will only disturb their minds. Instead such persons should be encouraged to engage in scripturally enjoined work. Indeed, the self-realized soul should encourage this to the extent of setting an example himself.

Kṛṣṇa next describes in two verses what the action of the unenlightened and enlightened person consists of.

Text 27

prakṛteḥ kriyāmāṇāni guṇāiḥ karmāṇi sarvaśah/
ahaṅkāra-vimūḍhātmā kartāham iti manyate//

prakṛteḥ—of material nature; kriyāmāṇāni—being performed; guṇāiḥ—by the modes; karmāṇi—actions; sarvaśah—entirely; ahaṅkāra-vimūḍha—bewildered by egotism; ātmā—self; kartā—doer; aham—I; iti—thus; manyate—he thinks.

All actions are performed by the guṇas. One who misidentifies with the body in false ego imagines “I am the doer.”

In this verse Kṛṣṇa describes the bewilderment of the ignorant, who identify themselves with the body and mind. In ignorance, people think themselves to be independent in their action, seeing themselves as the agents of action. If they are enlightened, they can understand the nature of action: whence it arises and how it can be harnessed to bring about emancipation. The functions of the body are the movements of material nature, whereas the soul is the nondoeer. Without this understanding, ignorant people do not realize that they are embodied souls and that their physical actions and thoughts are not really their own—not the movement of their self, but movement under the influence of material nature, overseen by God.

While this verse stresses the difference between spirit and matter, the former being a witness to the action of the latter, the Gitā’s message is not entirely dualistic, and thus this verse understood in the context of the entire Gitā cannot be equated with Sāṁkhya philosophy, which maintains complete dualism of matter and spirit. Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa points out
that the individual soul is a factor in action, although only one among others. He cites Bhagavad-gītā 18.14 where Kṛṣṇa says as much himself. Material nature acts only as a result of contact with spirit, both God and the individual soul. Thus the soul is not without its influence over actions of the body. The limited sense in which the soul also acts is brought out in the following verse wherein we learn that rather than becoming attached to the senses and sense objects, one can do otherwise.

Text 28

तत्त्वविदिः महाबोधो गुणकर्मविभागयोः। ।
गुणं गुणेण बर्तन्ते हि मनः न सज्जते ॥२८॥

tattva-vit tu mahā-bāho guṇa-karma-vibhāgayoḥ/
guṇa guneṣu vartanta iti matvā na sajjate//

tattva-vit—the knower of the truth; tu—however; mahā-bāho—O mighty-armed one; guṇa-karma-vibhāgayoḥ—in the two spheres of guṇa and action; guṇāḥ—the guṇas; guneṣu—in the guṇas; vartante—they engage; iti—thus; matvā—thinking; na—never; sajjate—becomes attached.

However, O mighty-armed one, one who knows the truth concerning the two spheres, action and the guṇas, and thus thinks that only the guṇas interact with one another, remains unattached.

In this verse Kṛṣṇa distinguishes the enlightened from the unenlightened. The enlightened understand the influence of material nature’s guṇas and the actions they cause the body to perform (karma). The word vibhāga in this verse can also be understood to indicate the soul. It is that which is categorically different from guṇa and karma by virtue of its being the revealer of all that is insentient within the realm of guṇa and karma.5 The enlightened know not only guṇa and karma, they also know the soul. Here the soul is described as a nondoer. It is, however, a doer in terms of being the only initiator of action through its desire. The soul as doer/nondoer will be further explained in chapter 5.

One who is in full knowledge of the influence of the three guṇas and material nature in relation to the gods, senses, sense objects, and so on, knows that in all action only the senses interact with the sense objects,

5. Madhusūdana Sarasватi explains guṇa-karma-vibhāgayoḥ as a samāhāra-dvandva in the collective singular.
while the soul remains aloof. The bewildered soul suffers and enjoys vicari-
ously through his identification with material nature.

In the next verse Kṛṣṇa explains the logical conclusion of the previ-
ous two verses. It is also the conclusion of the theme that began with
verse 26.

Text 29

prakṛteṁ gūṇa-sammūdhāṁ sajjante gūṇa-karmasu/
tān akṛtsna-vidāṁ mandaṁ kṛtsna-vin na vicālayet//

prakṛteḥ—of material nature; gūṇa-sammūdhāḥ—deluded by the gūnas;
sajjante—they are attached; gūṇa-karmasū—in material activities; tān—
those; akṛtsna-vidāḥ—not knowing entirely; mandaṁ—fools; kṛtsna-vit—the
knower; na—not; vicālayet—should disturb.

Those deluded by the influence of material nature are attached to the
senses and sense objects. The wise should not disturb these foolish
people, whose knowledge is incomplete.

Although the futility of attached work is a reality, merely advising the ig-
norant of this without engaging them in detached action will not be useful.

Text 30

mayi sarvāṁi karmāṁi sannyasyāṁdhyāṁcetasā/
nirāsir nirmamoh bhūtvā yudhyasva vigata-jvarah//

mayi—unto me; sarvāṁi—all; karmāṁi—actions; sannyasya—giving up;
adhyātmā-cetasā—in knowledge of the Supersoul; nirāsīḥ—without desire;
nirmamah—without selfishness; bhūtvā—being; yudhyasva—fight; vigata-
jvarah—without grief.

Offering all of one’s actions unto me in knowledge of the indwelling
Supersoul, free from desire, selfishness, and grief, fight!
This is the remedy for the material fever of the soul. Jvaraḥ means fever, and the fever for sense enjoyment brings only grief to the soul. Under its influence the soul is delirious. In addition to selfless action Kṛṣṇa adds dedication to God to the remedial measures required to treat this fever. Kṛṣṇa implores Arjuna to fight not only in knowledge of the fact that he is not the enjoyer and that action is carried out by material nature, but also in devotion to the indwelling guide (Paramātmā), who is a partial manifestation of himself. B. R. Śridhara Deva Goswāmī glosses adhyātma-cetasā as “with the understanding, ‘All my actions are under the control of the indwelling Lord.’”

However, Kṛṣṇa is not telling Arjuna to act out of love for him, and thus at this point he implores him to engage in nisākāma-karma-yoga more so than bhakti. Arjuna should fight because he is a warrior. He should do so without attachment to the results for the sake of purifying his heart and thereby gaining knowledge of the self. The results of his actions should be offered unto Kṛṣṇa, laying a foundation for devotion. The immediate result of this course of action is liberation.

Text 31

Yoga of action 117

3.31

Persons who constantly practice this, my own doctrine, with full faith and without envy are also released from karmic reactions.

The positive result of nisākāma-karma-yoga is liberation. The paths of selfless action and knowledge beget liberation when mixed with devotion. The word nityam has a twofold meaning—constant and eternal. Thus Kṛṣṇa is saying that his path should be constantly practiced and it is itself eternal, being enjoined in the scripture. Its use also indicates that a person will
be liberated if he is fixed in his spiritual objective, free from envy, and faithful. The word śraddhā implies faith in scripture and thus a descending path involving revelation. This path is for a person free from envy of the preceptor. Those who decry this path are discussed next.

**Text 32**

नेत्रमयो नानुतिष्ठनि ये पतम्।
सर्वज्ञास्मात्मानविद्या नायानान्यानम्।

ये त्व एतद्भयसूयान्तो नानुतिष्ठानि मे मतम्।
सर्वज्ञास्मात्मानविद्या नायानान्यानम्।

**Text 33**

सद्वेद्व चेतनेन्तन्त्रानि।
प्रकृति यान्ति पूर्तानि स्त्राये।

सद्वेद्व चेतनेन्तन्त्रानि।
प्रकृति यान्ति पूर्तानि स्त्राये।

**Translation**

However, those who out of envy of my doctrine do not practice it are deluded and bereft of knowledge. Know that such people have lost their minds and are deprived of the goal of life.

Finding fault in something that is good for you can be an expression of envy. The result of harboring this envy is that one becomes bereft of knowledge and thus deluded. Why do people act in this way? It is difficult to overcome one’s acquired nature.

Even wise people act according to the nature they have acquired in this world. People follow their acquired nature. What will repression accomplish?
Here Kṛṣṇa further stresses the path of selfless action by stating that even the wise, jñānis, act in accordance with their natures. If this is so for the wise, how much more is this true for those in ignorance? Thus repressing one’s nature is very difficult and often counterproductive. This being so, the question arises as to the value of scriptural injunctions. If everyone is induced to follow his own nature as if by force, what is the value of scriptural proscriptions and prohibitions? This is answered in the following verse.

**Text 34**

\[\text{Indriyasya indriyasyārthe rāga-dveṣau vyavasthitau/}
\[\text{tayor na vaṣam āgacchet tau hy asya pariśpanthinau//}
\]

indriyasya—of each of the senses; indriyasya arthe—in relation to their objects; rāga-dveṣau—attachment and aversion; vyavasthitau—seated; tayoh—of them; na—never; vaṣam—control; āgacchet—one should come; tau—those; hi—certainly; asya—his; pariśpanthinau—two enemies.

*Attachment and aversion in relation to the sense objects are deeply rooted in the senses. One should not come under the control of these two, for they are one’s enemies.*

Overcoming one’s karmically acquired nature is possible with the help of scripture. The sacred literature takes our nature into consideration by recommending appropriate action. Contemplation of sense objects produces attachment and aversion. The unhappy result of this is that one comes under their sway. However, scripture reveals the fact that the so-called desirable and undesirable sense objects are not really so. The ignorance that underlies the sense of an object’s being desirable or otherwise is exposed through theoretical knowledge acquired from scripture. It is removed by scripturally guided action. Thus Arjuna is next advised to follow scripture and work in accordance with his own socioreligious duties as a warrior.

**Text 35**

\[\text{Śṛṇaṣṭu śvetām bhūṣitaḥ: parāṃśūl śvetūṣṇitān।}
\[\text{śvetām nīratam śṛṇaḥ: parāṃśūṁ bhāvaḥ। ||35||}
\]
śreyān sva-dharmo viguṇah para-dharmāt su-anuṣṭhitāt/
sva-dharmane nidhanam śreyah para-dharmo bhayāvahah//
śreyān—better; sva-dharma—duties according to one’s own nature; vi-
gunah—faulty; para-dharmāt—than another’s duties; su-anuṣṭhitāt—per-
fectedly executed; sva-dharme—in one’s prescribed duties; nidhanam—de-
struction; śreyah—better; para-dharmāḥ—duties prescribed for others; bhaya-āvahah—inverting peril.

One should act in accordance with one’s own nature, even though in
doing so one may appear faulty. This course of action is better than en-
gaging in any other duties, however well you might attend to them. It is
better to die engaged in accordance with one’s own nature, for others’
duties invite peril.

Verses 30 through 35 are a covert advocacy of bhakti, which, as B. R. Śríd-
harā Deva Goswāmī says, “is the eternal superexcellent natural function of
the soul.” In the words of Śrī Caitanya, the jīva soul is the eternal servant
of Kṛṣṇa, jīvera ‘svarūpa’ haya—krṣnera ‘nitya-dāsa’ (Cc. Mad. 20.108). This
is ultimately what Kṛṣṇa has in mind for Arjuna, and niśkāma-karma-yoga,
in which the fruit of one’s work is offered to Kṛṣṇa, is similar to bhakti. In
verse 30, Kṛṣṇa introduces himself into the equation of selfless work as the
one to whom one’s actions should be dedicated (mayi sarvāṅi karmānī).
His commanding Arjuna to fight only overtly appears to be a directive in
consideration of Arjuna’s warrior nature. Covertly, Kṛṣṇa commands Arjuna
to act in accordance with his soul’s interest in terms of an eternal loving
relationship with him. In verse 31, Kṛṣṇa describes the path he wants Ar-
juna to tread as his own (me matam), a path that is eternal and arises out
of faith (śraddhā), devoid of envy (anasūya) of himself. Again in verse 32
Kṛṣṇa identifies this path as his own (me matam). In verse 33, Kṛṣṇa subtly
plays down the path of jñāna (jñānavān api).

In the present verse, Kṛṣṇa says that pure devotion is the natural func-
tion of the soul. Even if acting in the soul’s interest appears inappropriate
from the vantage point of socioreligious considerations, it is far superior to
mere moral conformity. In the pursuit of the soul’s eternal interest, even
death is auspicious. In contrast, pursuance of any interest other than one’s
spiritual interest is perilous, however perfectly it is pursued.6

6. In this connection, B. R. Śrīdhara Deva Goswāmī cites SB. 11.2.37.
Looking at these verses in light of bhakti, one can find parallels between this verse and the Gîtâ’s conclusion (Bg. 18.66). The Gîtâ concludes by telling us that abandoning socioreligious concerns and surrendering to Kṛṣṇa himself is the essence of all dharma—prema-dharma. Here he covertly says the same thing: “You should act in accordance with your own nature (as a devotee), even though in doing so you may appear faulty (for neglecting worldly concerns). This course of action is better than engaging in any other duties, however well you might attend to them. It would be better to die acting in accordance with your own (eternal) nature, for other duties invite peril (of continued birth and death).”

The customary interpretation of this verse renders it a socioreligious instruction of relative value, in apparent contradiction with the Gîtâ’s conclusion. However, there need not be any contradiction for truth is administered in installments. Understanding this verse in terms of niskäma-karma-yoga sheds further light on the importance of scripture. Kṛṣṇa told Arjuna not to think that he could perform another’s duty to avoid fighting. Scripture is to be followed. Baladeva Vidyabhūṣana says that just as one sees with eyes and not other senses, we learn about religion from scripture. Doing another’s duty or acting against one’s own nature will disturb the socioreligious order.

With this Kṛṣṇa stops as if he is getting ahead of himself in his instructions to Arjuna. As Kṛṣṇa pauses collecting himself to continue his emphasis on karma-yoga, Arjuna asks a pertinent question. He wants to know what it is that causes one to act contrary to scripture even after gaining knowledge of it.

Text 36

**arjuna uvåca**

atha kena prayukto ’yam pāpam carati pūruṣaḥ/
anicchann api vāṣṭeya balād iva niyojitah//

**arjunah uvāca**—Arjuna said; **atha**—then; **kena**—by what; **prayuktah**—forced; **ayam**—one; **pāpam**—evil; **carati**—does; **pūruṣah**—a man; **anicchan**—without desiring; **api**—although; **vāṣṭeya**—O descendant of Vṛṣṇi; **balād**—by force; **iva**—as if; **niyojitah**—engaged.
Arjuna said: By what influence then, O descendant of Vṛṣṇi, does one act improperly, as if forced to do so against his own will?

Previously Kṛṣṇa explained that delusion is caused by contemplating sense objects. He also attributed delusion to the influence of the guṇas. Is there any other cause of delusion, eradicating which all others are done away with at the same time? These questions are at the heart of Arjuna’s present inquiry.

Text 37

The Lord of Śrī said: This force is lust, born of rajo-guṇa. It eventually transforms into anger. It is insatiable like a great fire and very injurious. Know this to be the enemy.

Kṛṣṇa says that the force that impels one to act contrary to scripturally guided intelligence is desire (kāma), the lust for material enjoyment. This lust resides within the heart like a cancer, and it is very subtle and difficult to uproot. It is born of the material guṇa of passion (rajas). When desire is obstructed, it turns to anger, a manifestation of the material guṇa of ignorance (tamas).

It is said in Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam (9.19.13) that all the paddy, barley, gold, cattle, and women in the world are not enough to satisfy one man (suffering from kāma). Therefore one should resort to desirelessness. Because kāma is so powerful (mahāśanah) and very injurious (mahāpāpmā), it cannot be subjugated by anything less than the most comprehensive treatment.

In dealing with enemies it is said that one should first seek conciliation, then try bribery. If this is unsuccessful, one should attempt to sow dissen-
sion in the ranks of the enemy. If this fails, one must resort to punishment. Punishment of \textit{kāma} is best accomplished by invoking the help of the transcendental Kāmadeva,\textsuperscript{7} Kṛṣṇa, who proceeds to instruct Arjuna how to conquer \textit{kāma} from the next verse to the end of the chapter.

\textbf{Text 38}

\begin{quote}
dbhūmenāvriyate vahnir yathādarśo malena ca/
yatholbenāv®to garbhas tathā tenedam åv®tam//
\end{quote}

\textit{dbhūmena}—by smoke; \textit{āvriyate}—is covered; \textit{vahni}—fire; \textit{yathā}—as; \textit{ādarśa}—mirror; \textit{malena}—by dust; \textit{ca}—also; \textit{yathā}—as; \textit{ulbena}—by the womb; \textit{āv®}—covered; \textit{garbha}—embryo; \textit{tathā}—so; \textit{tena}—by that lust; \textit{idam}—this; \textit{āv®tam}—covered.

\textbf{As a fire is covered by smoke, a mirror by dust, and an embryo by the womb, so one’s proper understanding is covered by inordinate desire.}

In this verse Kṛṣṇa gives an example to illustrate the different degrees to which intelligence is covered by \textit{kāma}. Smoke represents one who in spite of \textit{kāma}’s influence can continue to engage in spiritual practice, as fire is not extinguished by smoke. Dust covering the mirror represents one who can understand the necessity to engage in spiritual practice, but nonetheless cannot act practically in this regard, as a dusty mirror does not give a reflection. The womb covering the embryo represents one who cannot even theoretically understand the problem of \textit{kāma}, as the embryo within the womb cannot see the light of day. These three examples—fire covered by smoke, the mirror covered by dust, and the embryo covered by membrane—represent the influence of the three modes of material nature, \textit{sattva}, \textit{rajas}, and \textit{tamas}.

\textbf{Text 39}

\begin{quote}
ākūraṁ jñāmāte jñāno nityāvaṁśe
kāmāyate kāntim tāmāraṁātmane ca
\end{quote}

\textsuperscript{7} Kāmadeva is the god (\textit{deva}) of \textit{kāma}. This god is Cupid, but Kṛṣṇa is also known as Kāmadeva, the transcendental Cupid. His \textit{rāsa-līlā} is thus referred to by Śrīdharā Swāmī as \textit{kāma-vijaya}, the conquest of Cupid.
O son of Kuntî, even the understanding of the wise contemplative is obscured by this perpetual enemy in the form of lust, which has an appetite like fire.

For the wise, the desire that inevitably leads to sorrow is recognized as an enemy even while the object of desire is being experienced. Thus the wise know that kāma is a constant enemy (nitya-vairīṇā). Those who are not wise enjoy desire when it brings fruit and regret its sorrowful consequences only afterward. Thus the ignorant do not understand that kāma is a constant enemy. The wise who understand kāma to be a constant and powerful enemy resort to whatever means necessary to destroy it. So also should the unwise, for this kāma burns like fire and is never satiated by feeding it with the fuel of sense enjoyment. This example is given here to help the unwise understand the nature of the enemy known as kāma. Kṛṣṇa cites another example in the following verse.

Text 40

It is seated in the senses, mind, and intelligence. From there it influences the embodied soul, bewildering him and covering his knowledge.
In this verse Kṛṣṇa identifies kāma’s haunts: the body consisting of sense organs, both perceiving and acting, the mental realm, and the faculty of judgment, intellect. From these strategic points, kāma acts to cover one’s discriminating wisdom. First it must be routed out of the senses.

**Text 41**

तस्मात्विनितियाण्वादिनिविज्ञानानासनम् ॥४४॥

tasmāt tvam indriyāṇy ādau niyamya bharatāraṇabhā/
pāpmānam prajahi hy enam jñāna-vijñāna-nāsanam//

tasmā—therefore; tvam—you; indriyāṇi—senses; ādau—at the outset; niyamya—by regulating; bharatāraṇabhā—O best of the Bhāratas; pāpma- nam—devil; prajahi—kill; hi—certainly; enam—this; jñāna—knowledge; vijñāna—self-realization; nāsanam—the destroyer.

*Therefore, O best of the Bhāratas, at the very outset regulate your senses and kill this devil that destroys knowledge and self-realization.*

By curbing the sensual outlets for kāma, one also effectively routs it out of the mind and intellect, because both the mind and intellect must be involved in the effort to control the senses. When the sensual outlets are effectively curbed, kāma is left with no means to express itself. Thus it gradually leaves the mind and intellect altogether. By engaging these senses in the service of Godhead one acquires a higher taste,⁸ and thus inner hankering is also destroyed. Although senses, mind, and intellect were mentioned separately in text 40, all three of them are implied in this verse by mention of the senses.

Kṛṣṇa next describes the material hierarchy leading to the soul to further implore Arjuna to follow his instructions.

**Text 42**

हिन्दूराणि परगणयाहिन्दूराणाभ्यः परं मनः ।

मनसस्य परा बुद्धिः बुद्धः परस्तस्म मः ||४२॥

8. See Bg. 2.59.
It is said that senses are superior to the sense objects, the mind is superior to the senses, and moreover, the intellect is superior to the mind. Superior even to the intellect is the self.

In this verse Kṛṣṇa outlines the material hierarchy and then touches the soul. The authorities he refers to are either the wise or the śruti. They say that the senses are superior to the sense objects. This also means that the senses are superior to the body, as the actual senses are situated in the subtle body with their external representation appearing in the gross body. Superior to the senses is the mind, which is subordinate to the intellect. This is the material hierarchy.

The word sah in this verse means “this” or “he.” It refers to either kāma itself, the individual soul, or God. If we understand the word sah as a reference to kāma, the principal subject of this section, such a rendering serves to stress the power of desire. It can corrupt all; it is the all-powerful enemy of the soul. Without underestimating the power of kāma, however, a more plausible rendering of sah here is the individual soul. Above the intellect is the soul, a unit of consciousness. By knowing oneself as a unit of consciousness one can conquer over kāma. This is confirmed in the next verse.
Thus, knowing oneself to be superior to the intellect, control the mind with intellect. In this way, O mighty-armed one, destroy the unconquerable enemy in the form of desire.

Here Kṛṣṇa emphasizes the strength of the soul, one’s self. The self is superior to all three of the seats of lust—senses, mind, and intellect. Being theoretically aware of one’s own position as a pure soul, one can begin to differentiate oneself from the sensual, mental, and intellectual planes of experience and thus rise above lust. The awakened soul is in a position to direct his intellect. Later in chapter 10 (Bg. 10.10) Kṛṣṇa reveals himself to be the source of divine intelligence in the awakened soul. However, at this point in the Gitā he is restraining himself from saying too much too soon, as he gradually builds his case for bhakti.
Chapter Four

ज्ञानयोग:

Jñāna-yoga

YOGA OF KNOWLEDGE

Text 1

śri-bhagavān uvāca
imam vivasvate yogam proktavān... (Verse 1.2)

śri-bhagavān uvāca—the Lord of Śrī said; imam—this; vivasvate—to Vivasvān; yogam—yoga; proktavān—explained; aham—I; avayayam—imperishable; vivasvān—Vivasvān; manave—to Manu; prāha—spoke; manuḥ—Manu; ikṣvākave—to Ikṣvāku; abraviḥ—imparted.

The Lord of Śrī said: I explained this imperishable science of yoga to Vivasvān. Vivasvān spoke it to Manu, and Manu in turn imparted it to Ikṣvāku.

In this chapter Kṛṣṇa explains how through karma-yoga one attains jñāna and eligibility for jñāna-yoga. Here the word jñāna conveys much more than merely the theoretical knowledge that informs the action of the karma-yogi, causing him to act with the spirit of detachment—jñāna is insight or wisdom into the nature of nondual consciousness. It gradually awakens in the heart that is free from selfish desire. While the previous chapter stressed karma-yoga and this chapter stresses jñāna-yoga, it will become clear in chapter 5 that Kṛṣṇa’s teaching to Arjuna advocates an integration of the two, and in his conclusion to chapter 6 he makes it clear that this integration culminates in the spiritually emotional life of bhakti.
To further convince Arjuna about the value of this science of *yoga*, here Kṛṣṇa speaks of the doctrine’s historical legacy: how it came to the world and through whom it has been disseminated. In doing so, he mentions his own involvement in its dissemination, extending into the far distant past.

In the course of explaining the history of the science of *yoga*, Kṛṣṇa will introduce the principle of divine descent, the *avatāra*. In so doing, he will explain to Arjuna things about himself that are foundational to *bhakti*-yoga.

Śaṅkara comments that it is the goal and not the path of *yoga* that is imperishable (*avyayam*). However, Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa says that the path of *yoga* itself is imperishable because it is the essential meaning of the *Vedas* and it unfailingly delivers the supreme goal. As *karma*-yoga it consistently delivers its fruit of inner wisdom. When the fruit of *karma*-yoga in the form of self-knowledge ripens and one acts in devotion to God, this liberated yogic action is *bhakti*.

**Text 2**

> evam paramparā-prāptam imam rājarṣayo viduḥ/
> sa kāleneha mahatā yogo naṣṭāḥ parantapa/
> 
> evam—thus; *paramparā*—through disciplic succession; *prāptam*—obtained; *imam*—this; *rājarṣayaḥ*—saintly kings; *viduḥ*—they knew; *saḥ*—it; *kāle-nā*—under the influence of time; *iha*—here, on earth; *mahatā*—extended; *yogah*—*yoga*; *naṣṭāḥ*—lost; *parantapa*—O Arjuna, conqueror of the enemy.

O conqueror of the enemy, visionary kings thus obtained this knowledge through disciplic succession. At present, under the influence of extended time here on earth, this teaching of yoga has been obscured.

As Kṛṣṇa prepares to explain the principle of the *avatāra*, or divine descent, he introduces another important principle, that of *guru-paramparā*, or disciplic succession. The two are intertwined. Kṛṣṇa says that he inaugurates the divine lineage through which knowledge of himself is then revealed by his devotees appearing in that lineage. He also says that under the influence of time this lineage can become broken, thus requiring that it be resurrected. Kṛṣṇa himself becomes involved in revitalizing the lineage during his descent, as described in text three. Later in the *Gītā*, Kṛṣṇa identifies
time, described here as the influence under which the essential message of the lineage is obscured, with himself. Thus the hand of God is as much involved in obscuring the lineage as it is in establishing it.

As circumstances and social considerations change over time, the need arises to re-explain the spirit of the lineage relevant to time and circumstances. That which is essential in the message must be separated from that which is relative. In delivering the principle the details must be altered. This is the task of great souls.

The mystery of guru-paramparā is that while it suggests conformity to a lineage dating into antiquity, at the same time its spirit is that of nonconformity. Becoming a member, one conforms with the Absolute, the supreme nonconformist, who is absolutely independent. To be in the guru-paramparā, one must sometimes leave what appears to be the lineage. One must distinguish between the form and substance of the tradition. Thus we find the most prominent members of the lineage are involved in renovation of the tradition, revealing its truth in a way relevant to time and circumstance, such that often those who are members in form only cannot appreciate them. To recognize reformers of the mission, practitioners themselves must also become essence seekers on a deeper level and thus remain vital in their practice. Failure to do so involves a break from the tradition despite superficial adherence to its external symbols.

In pursuit of the spirit of the lineage, the practitioner must take note of this verse, both with regard to recognizing the work of great souls when it outwardly appears to be different in detail from previous teachers and with regard to their own practicing life. The spirit of the teaching is not as much obscured for the practitioner at a particular time as it is continuously. We glimpse the true meaning of the teaching only to lose sight of it again, being distracted by material conditioning under the influence of the mind and senses due to our external, sensual orientation in life. We tend to gravitate toward the outer body of the message rather than to its heartbeat. The message is more than the cultural trappings in which it is presented. It answers to a sense of urgency in the soul striving for self-perfection. The spirit with which one initially embraces the lineage may over time become suppressed, as the practitioner settles for pat answers to the problems of life, rather than taking up the challenge of applying those answers in progressive spiritual life. Thus there is an ongoing need to resurrect the spirit of the teaching, not only in terms of revitalizing its message generation after generation, but also in our everyday life of spiritual practice.
When one representative passes the torch to another, this is the formal institution of *guru-paramparā* (“from one to another”). However, its essence is that in bearing the torch the current link sheds new light. At the same time, renovators of the tradition must be distinguished from renegades of the tradition. The scriptural canon can help us to some extent in this task. Renovators justify their innovations with scriptural references, yet they also dynamically revise the scripture itself.¹

Renovators of the tradition cite those scriptures that they feel are essential, and in this way they support their innovations. However, not everyone will necessarily agree with their particular interpretations. Thus more important than their ability to cite scripture (which even the devil can do) is their ability to make their vision credible by dint of their obvious spiritual power.

The illustrious members of the *guru-paramparā* are kings of the world in the sense that they have conquered their own minds and senses, and these two—the mind and senses—rule everyday life on earth. In this verse Kṛṣṇa uses the word *rājarṣi* to describe the prominent members of the *guru-paramparā*. Although he is literally referring to the kings mentioned in the previous verse,² anyone representing the *guru-paramparā* is both a king and a seer (*rājarṣi*).

---

**Text 3**

sa evāyaṁ mayā te 'dya yogaḥ proktah purātanaḥ/
bhaktaḥ 'si me sakhā ceti rahasyam hy etad uttamam//

saḥ—it; eva—certainly; ayam—this; mayā—by me; te—to you; adya—today; yogah—the teaching of yoga; proktah—imparted; purātanaḥ—ancient; bhaktah—devotee; asi—you are; me—my; sakhā—friend; ca—and; iti—therefore; rahasyam—secret; hi—indeed; etat—this; uttamam—supreme.

---

¹. See Śrī Jīva Goswāmī’s argument in his *Tattva-sandarbha* for dismissing various texts in search of the flawless *pramāṇa* (*Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam*). In the Gitā itself, we find that Arjuna has quoted scripture while Kṛṣṇa rejects his citations, calling his attention to higher principles. The conclusion of scripture brings one to a point beyond “what has been heard and what is to be heard.”

². Vivasvān (the sun god), Manu (the father of humanity), and Ikṣvāku (Manu’s son, a powerful earthly king).
Yoga of knowledge 1334.4

It is this very same ancient teaching of yoga that I am teaching you today. It is the ultimate secret, but I tell it to you because you are my trusted devotee and friend.

Kṛṣṇa privileges Arjuna with this secret knowledge because of their mutual friendship and Arjuna’s devotion to him. In the humility natural to a devotee of Kṛṣṇa, Arjuna did not consider himself to have the stature of great kings and gods, much less a spiritual visionary. However, in actuality true devotees of Kṛṣṇa, what to speak of his friends, are much greater than either kings or gods, and they set the standard for saintliness.

Kṛṣṇa begins to introduce the qualifications of Arjuna in verse 2 by addressing him as Parantapa, destroyer of enemies. Here it indicates his sense control, as in the case of his well-known indifference towards the heavenly damsels Urvaṣī. Kṛṣṇa then reveals that the transmission of spiritual knowledge from guru to disciple requires that the disciple understand the heart of the guru, as in talks between friends in the language of love. By using the words rahasyam and uttamaṁ, Kṛṣṇa indicates that karma-yoga, as he is teaching it, culminates in bhakti, the supreme secret. In this verse the word bhakti (bhakto) appears for the first time in the Gîtā. Arjuna’s devotion is his principal qualification for understanding the mystery of the Gîtā.

As much as Kṛṣṇa’s introductory statements regarding the history and dissemination of his teaching are intended to solidify Arjuna’s conviction, the first verse of this chapter also causes further confusion in Arjuna’s mind. In questioning it, Arjuna enables Kṛṣṇa to explain the nature of his descent.

Text 4

अर्जुन उवाच
अपरं भवतो जन्म परं जन्म विभवतः।
कथमेन्द्रियानीयां त्वमादृ तृत्तीयन्ति।।४॥

arjuna uvāca
aparam ṛva varo janma param janma vivasvatah/
katham etad vijñāyāṁ tvam ādau proktvān iti//

3. Urvaṣī was very eager to have an affair with Arjuna, whom she considered the strongest human being. She met him and expressed her desires, but Arjuna sustained his impeccable character by closing his eyes before her and addressing her as mother of the Kuru dynasty.
4. See Bg. 9.2, rāja-guhyam.
Arjuna said: You took birth long after Vivasvān was born. How then am I to understand that you instructed him previously?

Although the historical legacy of the doctrine of yoga is itself impressive, Kṛṣṇa’s alleged involvement in it is bewildering to Arjuna. Arjuna, in confusion as to how Kṛṣṇa, who was standing before him, could have taught this art of work to the ancient sun god, conjectures thus: “If Kṛṣṇa taught this to the sun god, it certainly testifies to his own divinity, for it is improper for humans to instruct gods, and unusual for them to remember their previous lives.”

By asking about Kṛṣṇa’s apparent recent human birth in contrast with the ancient celestial birth of the sun god at the dawn of creation, Arjuna has paved the way for Kṛṣṇa to enlighten him about the divine nature of his appearance in this world. In this way, he is inching a discussion centered on self-realization in the direction of God-realization. Although this discussion of the avatāra is tangential to the topic at hand, it is foundational to devotion, the central theme of Kṛṣṇa’s discourse.

What Kṛṣṇa has said about his instructing the sun god previously is humanly impossible. If Kṛṣṇa taught the sun god in another body, he could not remember it in his present human body. Neither could Kṛṣṇa have taught the sun god in his present body at the dawn of creation due to its apparent human and temporal nature. Thus the teaching of the Gītā as to the omniscient and eternal nature of Kṛṣṇa’s humanlike form is introduced by Arjuna’s question. Although Arjuna knows that Kṛṣṇa is God, his friendship with him sometimes covers that knowledge. Furthermore, according to Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa, only Kṛṣṇa knows his own nature. Thus Kṛṣṇa explains his omniscience in verse 5 and his eternality in verse 6.

Text 5

श्रीभगवानुवाच
वृहस्पतिमपि जन्मानि तत् चार्कुण।
नान्यं वेदं सब्यं न तत् वेदं परम्परम् ||५||
The Lord of Śrī said: Arjuna, both of us have passed through many births. I know all of them, whereas you, subduer of enemies, do not.

Kṛṣṇa addresses his disciple in this verse as “Arjuna” because he considers that Arjuna’s question betrays the ignorance of a tree. Kṛṣṇa considers him to be covered with ignorance like the well-known arjuna tree, albeit by Kṛṣṇa’s own divine arrangement. Here Arjuna represents all illusioned jīva souls, who are ignorant of the nature and background of their own birth, and more so that of others.

By addressing Arjuna as Parantapa (slayer of enemies) Kṛṣṇa indicates that Arjuna has become further deluded. He is seeing in terms of illusory differences and thus thinking he has enemies to destroy and friends to protect. Madhusūdana Sarasvatī comments that through these two addresses, Arjuna and Parantapa, the twofold nature of māyā-çakti is explained: āvarañātmikā (initial covering) and prakṣeptātmikā (distorting influence). The thoughts and actions of one covered by ignorance are distorted. The address “Arjuna” indicates that māyā covers the soul with ignorance, and the name “Parantapa” indicates that the soul’s subsequent thoughts and actions make for a distorted reality.

Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa says that verses 5 through 14 contain the seeds of chapters 7 through 12, wherein Kṛṣṇa speaks directly about himself, his opulences, and devotion to himself. A gentleman does not initiate discussion about his own glory without being asked, and thus Arjuna has asked an appropriate question in order that Kṛṣṇa can begin to do so and the world can benefit from hearing him speak about himself. Parantapa also means one who gives to others. Thus we learn of Kṛṣṇa’s omniscience in

5. See ŚB. 10.10 for a description of the ignorance of the arjuna tree in Kṛṣṇa līlā. It is a deciduous tree found throughout India. Its bark has been used in Ayurvedic medicine for over three centuries, primarily as a cardiac tonic.
this verse and next his eternality, and for this we are eternally indebted to Arjuna who has given Kṛṣṇa the opportunity to enlighten us in this regard.

Text 6

ajo ’pi sann avyayātmā bhūtānām iśvaro ’pi san/
prakṛtim svām adhiśṭhāya sambhavāmy ātma-māyayā\

Although I myself am birthless and by nature imperishable, and although I am the controller of all beings, nevertheless, remaining in control of my material energy, I manifest by my own inner power.

The latter part of this verse can also read “nevertheless, being situated (adhiśṭhāya) in my own form (prakṛtim svām).” In this rendering, prakṛti refers not to Kṛṣṇa’s material energy, but rather to his own identity or nature. Śrīdhara Swāmī says, “Resorting to my own prakṛti which is made of suddha-sattva (transcendence),” implying the divine nature of Kṛṣṇa’s form. Rāmānuja concurs, as does Jiva Goswāmī in his Kṛṣṇa-sandarbha (105). In either case the purport is the same: Kṛṣṇa’s form and descent are not tinged with material qualities, for he descends in a spiritual form under the influence of his primary śakti.

Madhusūdana Saraswati offers a different purport to the above translation in conformance with Adwaita-vāda. At the same time, he acknowledges that “others, however, do not admit that there is a relationship of a body and possessor of the body in the case of the Supreme Lord, but that he is Vāsudeva, eternal, omnipresent, existence-knowledge-bliss through and through, full, unconditioned, and the Supreme Self. He is himself that body, and it is not anything material or made of māyā.” Showing regard for this Vaiṣṇava interpretation, he makes no effort to refute it.

In accordance with Vaiṣṇava theology this verse as rendered above clearly distinguishes Kṛṣṇa’s secondary śakti (prakṛti, material nature), which he controls, from his own inner nature, or primary śakti (ātma-māyayā), which
he allows himself to come under the influence of. Kṛṣṇa’s primary sakti, by which the affairs of the avatāra are carried out, is introduced for the first time in this verse.

Kṛṣṇa’s primary sakti is mentioned again in chapter 9 with regard to his unalloyed devotees coming under its influence (Bg. 9.13). This sakti enables God in his appearance in the material world to be in the world but not of it. As the influence of Kṛṣṇa’s secondary sakti is deluding, the influence of his primary sakti is enlightening. However, this primary sakti also deludes in a positive sense in the course of bringing a soul to the zenith of enlightened life. It does so by suppressing the knowledge of Kṛṣṇa’s Godhood in the interest of intimate loving dealings between Kṛṣṇa and the liberated jīva soul. It makes Kṛṣṇa appear humanlike in spite of his Godhood. In order that the finite soul might intimately associate with the infinite, the infinite appears finite even while remaining infinite. This takes place under the influence of Kṛṣṇa’s primary sakti. Although Kṛṣṇa says that he has passed through many births, here he qualifies this statement by explaining that he is at the same time birthless, for birth takes place under the jurisdiction of the material energy whereas his appearance is not under her jurisdiction.

The birth of Kṛṣṇa is a complex subject. He is born, but he is not born. Kṛṣṇa has already taught that all souls are unborn (Bg. 2.20), while they appear to undergo birth when identified with material bodies. In order to distinguish himself from the jīva souls, Kṛṣṇa says further that his form and nature are imperishable (avyayātmā). Even though he is birthless, and even though his nature and form are imperishable, he appears to take birth. Yet his appearance is not a product of piety or impiety, the force of karma carrying one into a future life. This is so because even though he takes birth as if he were one of the living beings, he remains the controller of the destiny (karma) of all living beings (bhūtānām iṣvarāḥ). Kṛṣṇa appears in the world of our experience just as the sun appears to take birth at sunrise. He appears by his own influence, as an act of mercy (ātma-māyayā). Another meaning of the word māyā is mercy.

Before Arjuna could ask, “If you are birthless and imperishable, when and why would you choose to appear in this world of birth and death?” Kṛṣṇa answers in the following two verses.

Text 7

यत्रा यदा हि धर्मयमा ग्यातिरीत्वति भारत ।
अभ्युद्यनमध्यस्य तदन्मानं सुनामायथम्।७॥
Whenever, O descendant of Bharata, dharma is diminished and unrighteousness is on the rise, at that time I myself manifest.

To say that unrighteousness precedes Kṛṣṇa’s appearance does not imply that his appearance is caused by it. Kṛṣṇa continues his explanation in the following verse to clarify that the time of his appearance is a time of unrighteousness, yet he himself comes to destroy it.

For the protection of the saintly and the destruction of evil doers, as well as for the purpose of establishing dharma, I manifest in every age.
dealings with his devotees. Viśvanātha Cakravarti points out that Kṛṣṇa’s apparent punishment of the unrighteous is in fact an act of mercy because the final result of this punishment is liberation. However, it is worth mentioning that the specific type of liberation (sāyujya-mukti) attained by the unrighteous through Kṛṣṇa’s chastisement is undesirable for the devotees.

The unrighteous who are killed by Kṛṣṇa experience not only the death of their gross material body, but the demise of their subtle body as well. The subtle body carries the soul from one gross body to another. The subtle body consisting of a state of mind is the basis of the gross body one acquires in the next life. When the subtle body of the unrighteous person is destroyed, that person’s attitude toward Kṛṣṇa immediately changes, for his opposition to Kṛṣṇa was a product of his subtle body—his unrighteous disposition. On the demise of the subtle body, his hostility toward Kṛṣṇa is transformed into love for Kṛṣṇa. Thus at the moment of death he sees Kṛṣṇa as the greatest object of affection. His liberation is not directly a result of being killed by Kṛṣṇa, but rather a result of his newfound love for him. This is the opinion of Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa voiced in his Govinda Bhāṣya commentary on Vedānta-sūtra.

Having explained the nature of his descent, Kṛṣṇa next explains the result of understanding it.

Text 9

janma karma ca me divyam evam yo vetti tattvataṁ/
tyaktvā deham punar janma naiti mām eti so ‘rjuna//

janma—birth; karma—activities; ca—and; me—my; divyam—divine; evam—thus; yah—one who; vetti—knows; tattvataṁ—truly; tyaktvā—on giving up; deham—body; punah—again; janma—birth; na—not; eti—goes; mām—me; eti—comes (to); saḥ—he; arjuna—O Arjuna.

One who truly understands the divine nature of my birth and activities is not reborn upon giving up his body but comes to me, O Arjuna.

Liberation is not easily attained, yet it is possible to attain it simply by understanding and accepting with faith what Kṛṣṇa has said about his appearance and activities. They are divyam, divine and transcendental.
Rāmānuja and the Gauḍīya commentators are of one mind in saying that here *divyam* means transcendental, not merely celestial. Śrīdhara Swāmī says *divyam* indicates that Kṛṣṇa’s activities are supernatural and impossible for anyone other than God.

Jīva Goswāmī has cited this verse in his *Bhagavat-sandarbha* (48), wherein a lengthy discussion of *Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam* 8.3.8 takes place. In this section of *Bhāgavatam*, Gajendra prays for the one who is formless, nameless, and without qualities or attributes—the Absolute—to descend. In response to his prayers, Viṣṇu appears replete with form, name, qualities, and attributes. Jīva Goswāmī thus concludes that Viṣṇu is formless in the sense that his form is not material. He is birthless in the sense that his appearance in the world is not a material birth. Similarly, his qualities and activities are all transcendental. Jīva Goswāmī has presented overwhelming evidence from various scriptures to support this point of view. As stated in the *Vedas* (*Puruṣa-bodhini Upaniṣad*), eko devo nitya-lilāmurakto bhakta-vyāpi hṛday antarātmā: “The one Godhead eternally sports in many diverse transcendental forms in relation to his devotees.” Many other quotes are also given in the *Laghu-bhāgavatāmṛta* by Rūpa Goswāmī, establishing the eternal nature of Kṛṣṇa’s birth and activities.

In this verse the word *tattvataḥ* implies faith in what Kṛṣṇa has said in verses seven, eight, and nine. Faith in Kṛṣṇa’s words amounts to knowing Kṛṣṇa. Such faith does not require any logical argument as proof. The word *tattvataḥ* also means in truth, and truth is of the nature of Brahman. Indeed, later in the Gītā (Bg. 17.23) the sacred syllable *tat* is considered to indicate Brahman. Thus Kṛṣṇa says that one who knows him to be Brahman attains Brahman. Such a person attains *para-brahman*, Śrī Kṛṣṇa himself. Here Kṛṣṇa explains that not taking birth again (*punar janma na*), which is tantamount to liberation, means attaining him. Attaining Kṛṣṇa is true liberation. Baladeva Vidyābhūṣāṇa cites the *Śvetāsvatara Upaniṣad* (6.15): “Only by knowing him can one cross over death. There is no other path than this for liberation.”

*Bhakti* is mentioned in this chapter in verses 3 and 11. Kṛṣṇa’s own divinity is also introduced in this section, and the integration of the individual soul and God is mentioned later in verse 35. However, these themes, *bhakti* and the Gītā’s theology, are not fully explained until we reach the second set of six chapters (Bg. 7–12). Because this chapter deals with inner wisdom (*jñāna*), knowledge is still emphasized over *bhakti*. 
Free from attachment, fear, and anger, with mind absorbed in thinking of me and taking refuge in me, many persons in the past were purified by the fire of knowledge and attained me.

Here tapasā (austerity) also means knowledge. From austerity, knowledge develops. One deals with the pain of voluntary austerity through philosophy. It is also an austerity to try to understand the inconceivable nature of Kṛṣṇa’s appearance. Those who have done so have attained the knowledge by which Kṛṣṇa is attained. Viśvanātha Cakravartī Ṭhākura also gives a novel interpretation of the words jñāna-tapasā: the suffering that a devotee undergoes on hearing misleading information regarding Kṛṣṇa’s appearance and activities, which burns his heart like the venom of a snake. By remaining faithful to the conception Kṛṣṇa presents here, the devotee becomes purified and attains Kṛṣṇa. In keeping with this interpretation, Viśvanātha Cakravartī also takes vīta-rāga-bhaya-krodhā to mean that the devotee does not show affection, fear, or anger to people who express such erroneous understandings of God’s nature and pastimes. This is possible because he takes shelter of Kṛṣṇa and constantly engages in glorifying him.

Cultivating the proper understanding of Kṛṣṇa is a powerful spiritual practice. In spite of all that he has taught thus far concerning karma-yoga, Kṛṣṇa says here that simply hearing about him, his appearance and activities (līlā), is sufficient to bring about one’s liberation, and more, love of God. Viśvanātha Cakravartī understands mad-bhāvam āgatāḥ (attained my state of being) in this verse to mean that purified persons have “attained love for me.” Here Kṛṣṇa says that many persons in the past have experienced this. This is the path taken by his devotees. Knowledge of the nature of Kṛṣṇa’s
transcendental lilā is much higher than mere knowledge of the difference between the self and matter. As confirmed in this verse, those who understand Kṛṣṇa’s birth and activities in truth are free from attachment, fear, and anger. Their minds are absorbed in thinking of him. They take refuge in Kṛṣṇa and are purified by the fire of knowledge. All of this is involved in attaining him, and it constitutes the foundation of understanding Kṛṣṇa.

Madhusūdana Sarasvatī says that after attaining the status of jivanmukta, persons can develop an affectionate attitude toward Kṛṣṇa called rati (love). However, although he says this, he teaches that this rati, through which the jivanmukta relishes Kṛṣṇa lilā, does not extend into videha-mukti (final release). This is in sharp contrast to Vaishnavism, where the jivanmukta experiences rati for Kṛṣṇa and continues to do so in Kṛṣṇa lilā after final release.

As the devotional path surfaces in Kṛṣṇa’s mind, he reflects on his different types of devotees in whose hearts spiritual emotion for him arises, dictating their particular loving approach. He thinks of his servants, friends, elders, and lovers who participate in the drama of divine love. As those in whose hearts deep spiritual emotion (bhāva/rati) for Kṛṣṇa has awakened take refuge completely in him, they enter his lilā accordingly. Reflecting in the following verse primarily on these devotees, Kṛṣṇa also reflects secondarily on all beings and their relationship with him, even in the state of bondage. He does so as Arjuna mentally questions, “Your devotees know your birth and activities to be eternally true, but others, such as the jñānīs, think of them in a different way. So what happens to them? In response to this, Kṛṣṇa speaks the following verse.

Text 11

ye yathā mām prapadyante tāṁs tathaiva bhajāmy aham/
mama vartmānuvartante manuṣyāḥ pārtha sarvāśah//

ye—those who; yathā—in whatever way; mām—me; prapadyante—take refuge in; tāṁ—them; tathaḥ—that way; eva—certainly; bhajāmi—reciprocate; aham—I; mama—my; vartma—path; anuvartante—follow; manuṣyāḥ—men; pārtha—O son of Prthū; sarvāśah—all.

In whatever way people take refuge in me, I reciprocate with them accordingly. Everyone in all circumstances, O son of Prthū, follows my path.
Krṣṇa is speaking primarily about his devotees here, but at the same time he addresses others who directly or indirectly approach him for something other than entering his līlā—such as those interested in self-realization, both karma and jñāna-yogīs. He has also addressed those who unknowingly approach him as well, by stating that all persons follow his path whether they realize it or not. Those who worship the gods for material gain also worship Krṣṇa indirectly because the gods are partial manifestations of Krṣṇa. Such worshippers are unaware that the gods are dependent on Krṣṇa to fulfill anyone’s desires.

Although Krṣṇa reciprocates with all who approach him, they do not all get the same result. Yet he is not partial. While the paths of karma-yoga, jñāna-yoga, and bhakti-yoga all lead to him in varying degrees, those approaching through karma and jñāna have desires. The karma-yogi’s desires are purified and he attains knowledge of the self. In self-knowledge such jñāna-yogīs desire and attain liberation. This attainment is Krṣṇa’s reciprocation relative to their approach. Those on the path of bhakti attain love of Krṣṇa (mad-bhāvam āgatāh) in accordance with their particular bhāva. They do not desire anything material, nor do they aspire for liberation, which is a by-product of entering Krṣṇa’s divine līlā.

Among Krṣṇa’s devotees the Vraja gopīs’ approach to him is most notable. Although Krṣṇa promises in this verse to reciprocate the measure of his devotees’ love, he found it difficult to fulfill this promise after experiencing the gopīs’ love. Therefore he told them that they must be satisfied with their love itself, for he himself surrenders to this love, na pāraye ‘ham niravadya-samyujām (ŚB. 10.32.22). Because their love is more powerful than his, in accordance with his statement in this verse, he worships them. He is purchased by their love. Krṣṇa surrendering to the mystery of the gopīs’ love is the deepest significance of the appearance and precepts of Śrī Caitanya, who taught that there is no superior means of approaching Krṣṇa than that which was conceived by the Vraja gopīs. The Vraja gopīs’ love is thus the deepest import of this verse. The object of love that corresponds with the gopīs’ standard of love is svayaṁ bhagavān Krṣṇa.

Overall, Krṣṇa is the architect of the cosmic order, but not its author. Desire writes the story. The desire or ideal of people determines their conception of God.

Text 12
कार्यं च मम कार्यं च स्वयं भगवान् याब्रोऽहताः।
स्मात्मात्मां भक्ति-मर्म्यान्ति कर्म्या ||१२||

YOGA OF KNOWLEDGE
Worldly people who desire material success perform sacrifice in worship of the gods. Surely in this world they quickly get results from such ritualistic acts.

The vast majority of people are interested in material enjoyment. Thus they do not worship Kṛṣṇa. In times gone by such people worshipped his agents, the gods. They attained their desired result quickly in comparison to how long it took for those interested in spiritual matters to attain a result.

Material goals are much more common than spiritual ones, and in our times people seem to attain them without any type of worship at all. However, the principle of worship is not limited to the realm of religion. Gurus and gods abound in all spheres of social and political life. Kowtowing to the growing corporate globalization wins elections, yet it imprisons the victors themselves. We may resist such worship in pursuit of human dignity, but our highest prospect lies in realizing the dignity of the soul.

We must answer to no one other than our own soul and God, and to do so we must withdraw our patronage of the material ego itself, championing neither the rich nor the poor. This is the nondual ground on which the devotee kneels in prayer; it is the drum he beats; it is the key in which he sings in praise of Kṛṣṇa. Such devotees find freedom and dignity in the act of being both an instrument and ingredient of worship, not merely participating in the act of worship while keeping themselves apart. The dignity of the soul is won at the cost of one’s very self, a price many are not prepared to pay.

Pure devotion is rarely attained, and thus people in general are less interested in this, even though the results of such devotion far exceed that of any other course of action. Those interested in spiritual life are rare and devotees rarer still. Even so, Kṛṣṇa has not neglected the masses. He suggests a God-centered socioreligious system that will help them gradually become free from material desire. This is a system in which people can strive to perform their God-given duty in life responsibly without concern for the
immediate result, knowing that the proper execution of one’s ordained
duty is itself a greater reward that will develop and eventually mature into
spiritual realization. Kṛṣṇa mentions this system next in the overall context
of explaining the secret of impartiality and detachment in action, citing
himself as an example.

**Text 13**

चानुवर्ण्यं मया सुष्ट्वै गुणकर्मविभागत:।
तस्य कर्तारमपि मां बिद्याकर्तारस्ययम्॥ ३॥

cātur-varṇyam mayā srṣṭam guṇa-karma-vibhāgasah/
tasya kartāram api mām viddhy akartāram avyayam//

cātur-varṇyam—socioreligious order with its fourfold division; mayā—by
me; srṣṭam—created; guṇa—quality; karma—propensity to act; vibhāga-
sah—according to; tasya—of that; kartāram—the author; api—although;
mām—me; viddhi—you should know; akartāram—as the nondoer; av-
vyayam—imperishable.

*In consideration of the influence of the guṇas and one’s karma, I created
the fourfold division of socioreligious order (caste). Although I created
this system, you should know that I am imperishable and not responsible
for the results derived from it.*

Kṛṣṇa creates the socioreligious system of the four orders. In this system,
prescribed duties correspond with one’s acquired karmic propensity, which
is determined by the threefold influence (guṇas) of material nature. Thus
persons predominantly influenced by sattva (goodness) are prescribed the
religious work suitable for intellectuals, whereas warriors like Arjuna who
are predominantly influenced by rajas (passion) are enjoined to administer,
organize, and lead people in religious life. Those whose psyche is predomi-
nantly influenced by an admixture of rajas and tamas (ignorance) are en-
joined to mercantile and agricultural activity, while those predominantly
under the influence of tamas are enjoined to labor. Kṛṣṇa will speak more
about the influence of these modes of nature (guṇas) and thereby indirectly
about this socioreligious system later, in chapters 14, 17, and 18. Otherwise,
the system itself is well known to Arjuna, as it was in place at the time.

Varnāśrama-dharma is rooted in ultimate reality in that it superficially
governs interaction in Kṛṣṇa līlā and is mentioned here as having been
created by God himself. Thus its essence must have universal application. It is essentially a systematic attempt to organize society so that in the course of realizing material values, spiritual values are also pursued. It is a system in which the spiritual is given the highest priority. However, many of its particulars relevant to Vedic times, such as its monarchical form of government, would be counterproductive to attempt to implement in today’s society. Indeed, any attempt to resurrect varnāśrama-dharma in all respects will be fraught with obstacles, while its essence, its spirit of dutiful work, and the ultimate ideal it seeks to gently push one in the direction of should meet with wide acceptance.

Here Kṛṣṇa seeks not to explain this system, but merely to point out his own position in relationship to it: although he is its creator, he stands aloof from it. The system itself gives results in accordance with how individuals apply themselves.

Kṛṣṇa is beyond the socioreligious system he sets in motion, and thus the method of attaining love for him and entering his līlā cannot come from merely following this system alone. Other than making this important point in the context of his ultimate advocacy of devotion, Kṛṣṇa points here to himself as an example of one who acts without accruing karmic reactions. One could hardly imagine doing something more than establishing a socioreligious system, yet although he has done so, Kṛṣṇa says that he is not bound by it. This is what Kṛṣṇa wants Arjuna to do at present: act such that he is not bound by karmic reactions. Kṛṣṇa also wants Arjuna to understand his supreme status. Thus while explaining his unique position, knowledge of which is essential for devotion, Kṛṣṇa also points to his own example in the next verse to further inspire Arjuna to act in karma-yoga.

**Text 14**

\[
na mām karmāṇi limpanti na me karmaphale spṛhā/
\]
\[
itī mām yo 'bhijānatā karmabhir na sa badhyate//
\]

na—not; mām—me; karmāṇi—works; limpanti—implicate; na—not; me—my; karma-phale—in the fruits of action; spṛhā—desire; itī—thus; mām—me; yah—one who; abhijānatā—understands; karmabhir—by karmic reactions; na—not; saḥ—he; badhyate—becomes bound.
There is no work that implicates me. I have no desire for the fruits of action. One who understands me thus is not bound by reactions to work.

Baladeva Vidyābhūṣāna comments that Kṛṣṇa’s position is like that of rain. Rain causes the creation of vegetation, yet it derives nothing from the vegetation it creates. Kṛṣṇa is free from partiality because he is self-satisfied. He acts only for the welfare of others. Thus detachment from the results of one’s work causes freedom from bondage. It is not action that binds one, but the desire to enjoy the fruit of one’s actions.

**Text 15**

एवं ज्ञात्वा कृतं कर्म पूर्वरीपे मुमुक्षुभिः।
कुरु कर्मं तस्मात् पूर्वे भूतं कृतं॥१५॥

evan jñātvā kṛtam karma pūrvair api mumukṣubhiḥ/
kuru karmaiva tasmāt tvam pūrvavaiḥ pūrvataram kṛtam//

evan—thus; jñātvā—knowing; kṛtam—performed; karma—action; pūr-
vaiḥ—by the ancients; api—also; mumukṣubhiḥ—by those who seek libera-
tion; kuru—perform; karma—action; eva—certainly; tasmāt—therefore;
tvam—you; pūrvavaiḥ—by the ancients; pūrva-taram—in the past; kṛtam—as performed.

**Having known this, ancient seekers of transcendence also performed action. Therefore, now you should also act as the ancients did.**

The ancient seekers referred to in this verse are Vivasvān, Manu, and Ikṣvāku. They are all mentioned in the first verse of this chapter. Kṛṣṇa implores Arjuna to follow their example. Here Kṛṣṇa says, “Knowing means acting.” If one’s heart is not pure, one should perform detached action, and if one’s heart is pure, one should act to set an example for others. Next Kṛṣṇa begins to explain the intricacies of action.

**Text 16**

किं कर्म किमकमेति कन्योद्योग्यम मोहिना:।
तत्त्वं कर्म प्रवक्ष्यामि यज्ञजात्वा मोहसेव्यं भुवान।॥१६॥

kīṁ karma kim akarmeti kavayo ’py atra mohitāḥ/
tat te karma pravakṣyāmi yaj jñātvā mokṣyase ’subhāt//
Even learned people are confused as to what constitutes action and what constitutes inaction. I will now explain action, understanding which you shall be freed from evil.

One may question what is so difficult about understanding action or inaction. One either acts or does not. However, the truth of the intricacies of action and inaction are unknown even to discriminating persons. Thus Kṛṣṇa next explains the intricacies of action prescribed in the sacred literature, the action prohibited therein, and selfless action performed without egotism that constitutes true inaction.

Text 17

कर्मणा हापि बोधव्य बोधव्यं च विकर्मणः
अकर्मणा बोधव्य गहना कर्मणो गति। ॥१७॥

कर्मानां हि अपि बोधव्यम् बोधव्यम् च विकर्मानां/ अकर्मानां च बोधव्यम् गहना कर्मानो गतिः//

One must know the nature of prescribed action, the nature of prohibited action, and also the nature of inaction. The path of action is mysterious.

Text 18

कर्मण्य कर्म यो पस्येत कर्मणी च कर्म यं।
मुनुष्यपुरुष मुक्त: कृत्सन्तकर्मकृत्। ॥१८॥

कर्मानि अकर्मा याह पशयेद अकर्मानि च कर्मायह/ sa buddhimān manusyesu sa yuktah kṛṣṇa-karma-kṛt//

One must know the nature of prescribed action, the nature of prohibited action, and also the nature of inaction. The path of action is mysterious.
Yoga of knowledge

buddhi-mān—wise; manusyesu—in human society; sah—he; yuktah—spiritually situated; kṛṣṇa-karma-kṛt—while engaged in all activities.

One who perceives inaction in action and action in inaction is wise in human society. Such a person is spiritually situated while engaged in all types of work.

The emphasis here is on egoless action. In egoless action one accrues no karmic reaction and remains thereby inactive. This should be adopted, and one should avoid artificial attempts at inaction, in which one acts nonetheless and accrues karmic reactions. As Kṛṣṇa has said earlier, “No one can be free from action even for a moment.” Kṛṣṇa wants to make it abundantly clear to Arjuna that the type of selfless action he advocates is itself knowledge. Perfectly executed, karma-yoga is perfect knowledge. Kṛṣṇa elaborates on this point in the following five verses, and in doing so he describes the life of the true practitioner of karma-yoga, as well as the life of one who has attained perfection.

Text 19

yasya sarve samārambhāḥ kāma-saṅkalpa-varjitāḥ/
   jñānāgni-dagdha-karmāṅgam tam āhuḥ pañātim budhāḥ/

yasya—of whom; sarve—all; samārambhāḥ—undertakings; kāma—desire for sense gratification; saṅkalpa—motivation; varjitāḥ—devoid; jñāna—knowledge; agni—fire; dagdha—consumed; karmāṅgam—karmic reactions; tam—him; āhuḥ—call; pañātim—sage; budhāḥ—the wise.

A person who has removed desire and motivation from his undertakings, and consumed his karmic reactions in the fire of knowledge is called a sage by the wise.

According to Madhusūdana Saraswati, here desire (kāma) means hankering for results, and motivation (saṅkalpa) indicates the sense of agentship, thinking oneself the doer. The word sarve in this verse indicates that all actions, those prescribed in the Vedas or otherwise, including even prohibited actions, have no capacity to bind one whose actions are kāma-saṅkalpa-varjitāḥ.
Baladeva Vidyābhūṣāṇa glosses kāma-sankalpa-varjitāḥ as “activities directed to the self or personal objectives” (karmabhiḥ ātmoddeśinaḥ bhavanti). Both he and Viśvanātha Cakravartī Thākura agree with Śrīdhara Svāmī’s comments, who glosses kāma as “fruits” and sankalpa as “the desire for fruits.”

Text 20

Abandoning attachment to the fruits of action, always satisfied and independent, even while acting, such a person does nothing at all.

One who acts without desire to attain something mundane is always satisfied (nitya-trpto) and independent (nirāśrayaḥ) from the body.

Text 21

Having given up all sense of proprietorship, such a person of disciplined spiritual intelligence, who performs only bodily actions, incurs no evil.
reactions. Here Kṛṣṇa reasons that if one whose actions are devoid of desire and resolve is not implicated even when engaged in elaborate Vedic rites for material acquisition, how much more is this so for one who merely acts for the maintenance of the body.

Text 22

\[ \text{yadrcchā-lābha-santuळo dvandvātito vimatsaraः//} \\
\text{samah siddhau asidduhau ca kṛtvāpi na nibadhyate//} \\
\text{yadrcchā—of its own accord; lābha—gain; suntuळa—content; dvandva—duality; atītah—transcended; vimatsaraः—free from envy; samah—steady; siddhau—in success; asidduhau—in failure; ca—also; kṛtvā—doing; api—even though; na—not; nibadhyate—becomes bound.} \]

Content with that which comes of its own accord, transcending dualities, free from envy, and steady in the face of success or failure, even though acting, such a person is not bound by karmic reactions.

Scripture enjoins that monks can collect alms and minimally clothe themselves. Such acquisition on their part is called \text{yadrcchā-lābha}. The word \text{yadrcchā} means “without being asked for.” This verse speaks of one who is satisfied with this, \text{yadrcchā-lābha-santuळaः}. By stating this in the present verse, Kṛṣṇa clarifies “possessionless” (tyakta-sarva-parigrahaः) in the previous verse.

In the state of \text{samādhi} one has no perception of dualities such as heat and cold. However upon emerging from \text{samādhi} one becomes aware of them. In this state of emergence, the sage, although afflicted by dualities, is not perturbed by them. Thus he lives his life transcendent to material dualities, and because of this he is not envious of anyone. \text{Vimatsarah} means freedom from mātsarya, the inability to tolerate the excellence of another. Such a person is equipoised (samah) amidst material success and failure.

Text 23

\[ \text{गतसङ्ग्रहः मुक्तस्य ज्ञानाधिक्षितशिवेतसः।} \\
\text{यज्ञायाचर्यः कर्म समग्रं प्रक्षीयन्ते।॥२३॥} \]
gata-saṅgasya muktasya jñānāvasthitacametasaḥ/
yajñāyācarataḥ karma samagram pravilīyate//

gata-saṅgasya—of one unattached; muktasya—of the liberated; jñāna-
avasthita—established in knowledge; cetasaḥ—thought; yajñāya—for the
sake of sacrifice; ācarataḥ—acting; karma—karma; samagram—wholly;
pravilīyate—dissolved.

A liberated soul established in knowledge, who is free from attachment
and acts only in sacrifice, dissipates all his karma.

Madhusūdana Sarasvatī comments that yajñāyācarataḥ means acts per-
formed for the satisfaction of Viṣṇu. Such actions do not bind the performer.
Thus not only the monk who performs action for the maintenance of his
body is free from material consequences, but he who engages in any ac-
tion for the satisfaction of Viṣṇu. This part of the verse is a reiteration of
verse 19. It also leads into the following verse, which explains the spiritual
quality of sacrifice.

Text 24

In acts of sacrifice, that by which the offering is made is Brahman, as is
the offering itself. Sacrifice is offered by one who is himself Brahman into
the fire of Brahman. One who is absorbed thus in thoughts of Brahman
in relation to sacrificial action attains Brahman.

Having described the union of action and knowledge resulting from self-
knowledge, Kṛṣṇa explains in this section from verse 24 to 30 how persons
acting sacrificially understand that Brahman permeates all sacrificial action
by pervading and sustaining everything related to it. The action performed by one concerned with liberation is permeated by the consciousness that everything involved with sacrificial action is an embodiment of the Absolute. Such action is itself an expression of that consciousness. Thus action in the spirit of sacrifice is a form of knowledge directly leading to self-realization without the necessity of a separate endeavor in contemplative life. When Brahman is realized, the cause of reactionary work—ignorance—ceases to exist even in the midst of action.

In this verse Kṛṣṇa describes the goal of sacrificial performance. Then, in order to praise this attainment, he describes different types of sacrifices that serve as a means of attaining realization of the all-pervasive nature of Brahman.

**Text 25**

देवमेवापरे यज्ञा योगिनः पर्यूपसते ।
ब्रह्मणानवपरे यज्ञं यज्ञनेवोपाजुहति ||२५||

daivam evāpare yajñam yoginah paryupāsate/
brahmāṇānv apare yajñam yajñenaivopajuhvat//

daivam—to a god; eva—indeed; apare—others; yajñam—sacrifice; yoginah—yogis; paryupāsate—practice; brahma—Brahman; agnau—in the fire; apare—others; yajñam—sacrifice; yajñena—by sacrifice; eva—thus; upajuhvati—offer.

**Others offer sacrifices to the gods. Still others offer themselves into the fire of Brahman.**

The first two lines of this verse refer to karma-yogis who worship the gods through Vedic sacrifice. They worship the Godhead indirectly. Those already in knowledge of the self by karma-yoga are referred to in the second half of the verse. Metaphorically speaking, they offer themselves directly to the Absolute, as if they themselves were the sacrificial clarified butter used in the worship of the gods. The fire of Brahman mentioned in this verse is the same as that mentioned in verses 19 and 37, the fire of transcendental wisdom.

Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa understands this verse and all of the verses in the following section to refer to karma-yoga. Because they have the search for spiritual realization at their heart, they are to be considered forms of knowledge.
Text 26

śrotādindriyāṇya anye saṁyamāgniṣu jhuvaṭi/
śabdādīn viśayān anya indriyāgniṣu jhuvaṭi//

śrotā-ādīni—such as the sense of hearing; indriyaṇī—senses; anye—others; saṁyama—controlled; agniṣu—in the fires; jhuvaṭi—offer; śabdā-ādīn—sound, etc.; viśayān—sense objects; anye—others; indriya—sense organ; agniṣu—in the fires; jhuvaṭi—offer.

Others offer the senses such as the sense of hearing into the fire of the controlled mind, while others offer sound and the other sense objects themselves into the fire of the senses.

In this verse Kṛṣṇa first describes life-long celibates, and then those involved in household life, who more readily interact with sense objects. The life-long celibates renounce ordinary action and engage in hearing continuously about the Absolute. In this way they sacrifice their senses’ activities into the sacrificial fire of the controlled mind. The householder engages his senses in ordinary actions such that they become an offering unto the Absolute. In this way the objects of his senses are sacrificed into the figurative fire of controlled senses.

Text 27

sarvāṇiindriya-karmāṇi prāṇa-karmāṇi cāpare/
ātma-saṁyama-yogāgniṣu jhuvaṭi jñāna-dīpite//

sarvāṇi—all; indriya—senses; karmāṇi—functions; prāṇa-karmāṇi—functions of the life airs; ca—also; āpare—others; ātma-saṁyama—self-restraint; yoga—yoga; āgniṣu—in the fires; jhuvaṭi—offer; jñāna-dīpite—ignite by knowledge.

Others offer the functions of all the organs and the functions of the life airs in the fire of self-restrained yoga, which is ignited by knowledge.
Here Kṛṣṇa refers to those who follow the Yoga-sūtras. They offer the knowledge-acquiring faculties of seeing, hearing, and so on, and the working senses, such as hands and legs, as well as the life airs into the symbolic fire of self-restraint in yoga-sādhana. This figurative fire is ignited by knowledge of the object of meditation—Brahman—which retires the ordinary functions of the knowledge-acquiring and working senses.

Text 28

दृष्ट्यज्ञानपूर्वक योगज्ञानस्थापारे।
स्वाध्यायज्ञानस्थापण्यं यत्यथ: संबंधतः॥२८॥

dravya-yajñās tapo-yajñās yoga-yajñās tathāpāre/
svādhyāya-jñāna-yajñās ca yatayah samśīta-vratāḥ//

dravya-yajñāḥ—sacrifices of one’s possessions; tapaḥ-yajñāḥ—sacrifices through austerities; yoga-yajñāḥ—sacrifices through yoga; tathā—and; apare—others; svādhyāya—reciting the scriptures to oneself; jñāna-yajñāḥ—sacrifices through knowledge; ca—also; yatayah—ascetics; samśīta-vratāḥ—of severe vows.

Some sacrifice through acts of charity, others sacrifice through austerities, and others through yoga practice, while ascetics of severe vows do so through scriptural study and knowledge.

Text 29

अपाने ज्युति प्राण प्राणेश्वरं तथापारे।
प्राणायामार्गी रुद्धवा प्राणायामवर्यमणा। अपरे नियताहारं प्राणान्त प्राणेशु ज्युति॥२९॥

apāne juḥvati prāṇam prāne 'pānam tathāpāre/
prānapāna-gati ruddhvā prānāyāma-parāyanāḥ/
apare niyātāhārāḥ prāṇāṁ prānesu juḥvati//
apāne—in exhalation; juḥvati—offer; prānam—inhalation; prāne—in inhalation; apānam—exhalation; tathā—also; apare—others; prāna-apāna-gati—the movement of inhalation and exhalation; ruddhvā—restraining; prāna-āyāma—breath control; parāyanāḥ—intent on; apare—others; ni-yata—having controlled; āhārāḥ—eating; prānāṁ—vital airs; prānesu—in the airs; juḥvati—offer.
Others practice breath control. They offer inhalation into exhalation and exhalation into inhalation thereby restraining both. Still others restrict their intake of food and restrain their breath, sacrificing their vital force.

Breath control is known as prāṇāyāma. In this practice the yogī closes the right nostril and inhales through the left nostril and in this way offers his inhalation into his exhalation. Reversing this process he offers his exhalation into his inhalation and thereby restrains both his ingoing and outgoing breath.

Another type of yogī restricts his intake of food by filling his stomach with only two parts food and one part water, leaving one part empty for air to circulate. He restrains his breath such that he causes his life airs to merge into a singular vital force concentrated in the mouth.

Verses 26 through 29 refer to eightfold mystic yoga. In verse 28, yama, niyama, and āsana are implied in the word yoga-yajñā. In this verse, prāṇāyāma is referred to. Verse 26 refers to pratyāhāra in the words, “others offer the senses.” The three stages known as dhāraṇā, dhyāna, and samādhi are referred to in verse 27 through the word samyama.

Texts 30–31

sarve 'py ete yajña-vido yajña-ksapita-kalmaśāḥ/
yajña-siśṭāṁtra-bhūjo yānti brahma sanātanaṁ/
nāyam loko 'stī ayajñasya kuto 'nyah kuru-sattama/

All these persons know well the purpose of sacrifice and are purified from evil through its performance. They enjoy the nectar of sacrificial remnants and attain eternal Brahman. O best of the Kurus, without sacrifice no one can live happily even in this world; what then of the other?
Sacrifice yields results in this world in the form of knowledge, mystic power, and material opulence. After leaving this world such sacrificers attain Brahman/Paramâtmâ. All of the various sacrificers mentioned in the preceding verses attain their respective goals in this world and ultimately attain the fruit of self-realization.

**Text 32**

एवं बहुविधा यज्ञ वितात ब्रह्माणो मूले।
कर्मजानिविन्ध तानं सर्वानं ज्ञाता विमोक्ष्यसे॥३२॥

**evaṁ bahu-vidhā yajñā vitatā brahmaṇo mukhe/ karma-jān vinā dhī tān sarvān evaṁ jñātvā vimokṣyase//**

evam—thus; bahu-vidhā—various kinds; yajñā—sacrifices; vitatā—spread; brahmaṇah—of the sacred literature; mukhe—through the mouth; karma-jān—born from action; viddhi—you should know; tān—them; sarvān—all; evam—thus; jñātvā—knowing; vimokṣyase—you shall be liberated.

**In this way, there are many sacrifices that have emanated from the mouth of the sacred literature. You should know that they are born from action. Thus knowing, you shall be liberated.**

In verse 31 Kṛṣṇa says that without sacrifice one has no standing in this world, what to speak of the next world. In this verse he implies that this opinion is supported by the Vedas, vitatā brahmaṇo mukhe. Śaṅkara takes “Brahman” in this verse to mean the Vedas. Both Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa and Viśvanātha Cakravarti concur with Śaṅkara. Sacrifice is mandated in the Vedas as a basis for life in this world, and such sacrifice assures one’s standing in the next. Life is about sacrifice, giving. Short of this, we do not get and do not live.

Another possible rendering of the phrase vitatā brahmaṇo mukhe is “offered in the presence of Brahman.” Sacrificial acts are born of Brahman and are themselves Brahman, thus acting as a link between time and eternity. They are not, as Śaṅkara would have it, entirely foreign to the self. Śrīpāda Rāmānuja says that they are a means by which one gains possession of one’s own self. They emanate from Brahman and lead to the wisdom of Brahman.

**Text 33**

श्रेयान् दृष्ट्वभयं ज्ञातान्यतः परमपृ।
सर्वं कर्माविलं पार्थ ज्ञाने परिसमाप्यते॥३३॥

[The text continues with further exposition.]
O subduer of the enemy, of the various sacrifices, that of wisdom is far superior to the sacrifice of material possessions, for whatever may be accomplished by action is realized in wisdom.

Here Krishna tells Arjuna that the inner element of wisdom that serves as the proper orientation to sacrificial action is more important than the actual work of sacrifice itself. Work is ultimately about wisdom. That sacrifice that is directly involved with the culture of inner wisdom (jñāna-yajñah) is better than sacrifice in which material ingredients are offered (dravya-mayāt yajñat), because the latter at best leads to the former.

In the most general sense this verse tells us that psychological sacrifice of one’s inner attachments is more valuable than merely giving up one’s external possessions. The pain involved in conscious, unmotivated giving to another, even if it involves very little in the way of tangible goods, brings greater reward than the sacrifice of great material wealth offered with a motive of personal gain. In chapter 3 Krishna spoke of performing one’s prescribed duty with the spirit of detachment. In this chapter, and in this section in particular, he takes Arjuna deeper. From the surface of dutifully conforming to the socioreligious norms in a spirit of detachment, we dive into activities that are directly involved with wisdom: sacrificial acts, yoga, and meditation.

The importance of inner wisdom being what it is, Krishna next speaks of the direct method of acquiring that wisdom and the means to sustain it. The implication is that there are many types of sacrifices or purificatory rites, and one needs to find a wise person in order to understand which specific acts one should engage in and what the goal of such practice will be. What sadhana should one perform, and what is the sadhya one will attain thereby? The answer to this question lies with the sadhu, śrī guru.

Text 34

तत्तद्वितीय प्राणायां परिप्रेक्ष्यन संबोधः।
उपदेश्ययति ने ज्ञान ज्ञानसनस्तन्तरिनं॥३४॥
Acquire that wisdom through humble resignation, relevant inquiry, and rendering service to the wise who have realized the truth. They in turn will impart wisdom unto you.

By resigning oneself to the preceptor, knowledge is revealed. Proper action, Kṛṣṇa teaches, bears the fruit of knowledge. The disciple should learn to make spiritual practice his life’s duty and stick to it. Identification with a particular guru is the recognition of a specific direction valid for oneself in spiritual life. This identification involves glimpsing one’s own spiritual potential. The practitioner’s own heart free from the clutter of material desire appears before him in the form of Śrī guru.

We are accustomed to making material knowledge part of our agenda, but spiritual knowledge has an agenda of its own. This knowledge reveals its agenda and the fact that we are part of it when we approach this knowledge on its terms. These terms are laid out in this verse: humble submission (praṇipātena), relevant inquiry (paripraśnena), and the rendering of service (sevā) to realized souls who represent divine knowledge in this world. When we do this, spiritual wisdom chooses to reveal itself to us, not otherwise.

Pranipāta means humble submission to the guru out of respect for the wisdom he represents. This submission is natural, and it creates an inner state of receptivity. Paripraśna means asking questions, such as “Who am I?” and “Why am I suffering?” Relevant inquiries are not those questions asked merely out of desire for intellectual stimulation, but rather from a sense of urgency for spiritual growth. Such inquiries are relevant to one’s immediate advancement in spiritual life. Here the word sevā indicates affectionate service.

Although the scripture mandates that one must learn from the guru, this scriptural law has love at its heart. The sincere disciple genuinely feels that his highest prospect lies in hearing and serving the knowledge imparted by the guru: “I must surrender here, for my life’s highest prospect will be
realized in this.” This feeling arises within when we hear from one who has been commissioned to collect our soul for divine service. It is love that forms the bond between guru and disciple, not law.

In this verse Kṛṣṇa speaks of a plurality of gurus (jñāninaḥ) and at the same time of the singularity of guru tattva. The word jñāninaḥ is plural. However, in Sanskrit the plural is often used to indicate respect for one person, rather than to indicate more than one person. The spiritual preceptor is worthy of the highest regard, and this is indicated by the use of the plural in the word jñāninaḥ. In principle the guru is one. He represents the singular Godhead. In the Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam (11.17.27) Kṛṣṇa says that he himself is the guru, ācāryaṁ māṁ vijāniyāt. This does not mean that the guru is God. It means that God chooses one or more of his devotees to represent him, and such a devotee should be honored as though he were Kṛṣṇa himself. Thus, even behind the multiplicity of instruction, the disciple detects the direction of the one Godhead.

The singular Godhead has many representatives. Thus within the oneness of śrī guru there is simultaneously a plurality. In the Gauḍīya tradition there are both initiating (dikṣā) and instructing (sīkṣā) gurus. They are to be honored equally, yet their functions differ. The initiating guru is usually the one who prescribes the practice for the disciple, while the instructing gurus help to fine-tune this practice. The initiating guru must be singular, whereas one can embrace a plurality of instructing gurus. If one enrolls in spiritual culture under the guidance of a guru, one will simultaneously experience a plurality of gurus, for in discipleship one is linked through one guru to a succession of gurus (guru-paramāparā), all of whom benevolently lend support to the disciple’s progress. Such a sincere disciple may also get support from other saints or instructing gurus to pass through the door of opportunity opened by one’s initiating guru. However, one who in the name of accepting many gurus does not submit to one guru experiences neither the singularity nor plurality of gurus.

The force of Kṛṣṇa’s emphasis on hearing from and serving a realized soul in this verse is noteworthy. All of the methods of sacrifice previously mentioned require that we learn how to practice them from a teacher, the guru. Here Kṛṣṇa implores us to approach such a guru, his representative. The power inherent in approaching a realized soul is such that it can make one immediately eligible for the direct culture of spiritual life without one’s having to qualify oneself gradually through other means. While the study of Vedānta (brahma-jñānas) generally requires that one first inquire into
and pass through religious practice (*dharma-jñāsa*), this prerequisite can be waived if one is fortunate to associate with a realized soul. This is the opinion of both Śankara and Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa.\(^6\)

Over the next four verses Kṛṣṇa describes the nature of the knowledge one receives from *śri guru*.

**Text 35**

"yaj jñātvā na punar moham evam yāsyasi pāṇḍava/
yena bhūtānī aśeśāni drakṣyasy ātmany atho mayi//"

*yat*—which; *jñātvā*—knowing; *na*—not; *punah*—again; *moham*—illusion; *evam*—indeed; *yāsyasi*—you shall go; *pāṇḍava*—O son of Pāṇḍu; *yena*—by which; *bhūtānī*—living beings; *aśeśāni*—all; *drakṣyasi*—you will see; *ātmanī*—in the self; *athau*—then; *mayi*—in me.

**Having acquired this knowledge, you shall not be deluded again, O son of Pāṇḍu, for by that knowledge you shall see all living beings in terms of their common spiritual essence as one with you and abiding in me.**

In this verse and the following three verses, Kṛṣṇa details the glory of spiritual wisdom and the result of acquiring it. Here Kṛṣṇa tells Arjuna that having acquired wisdom he will see all living beings such as his friends and relatives assembled on the battlefield as one in terms of their common spiritual essence, and not in terms of differences arising from bodily identification. Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa says that Arjuna will be freed from the illusion (*moha*) that he must kill friends and relatives. Viśvanātha Cakravartī Ṭhākura comments that Kṛṣṇa’s use of the word *mayi* in this verse means that Arjuna will see all beings as effects of Kṛṣṇa, the supreme cause.

The fruits of acquiring transcendental knowledge are listed herein as (1) knowing the common spiritual essence shared by all beings regardless of their bodily appearance, (2) never falling into illusion, (3) understanding that all souls abide in Kṛṣṇa’s all-pervading Paramātmā feature (*Viṣṇu*). Here the eternal plurality of all souls is posited, while for the first time

---

6. See their commentaries on Vs. 1.1.1.
in the Gitā the individual soul and God are brought into juxtaposition as Kṛṣṇa further develops the text’s theology.

Text 36

Even if you are the worst of sinful persons, you can cross over all sin by the boat of transcendental knowledge.

How can one who is most evil directly acquire self-knowledge without undergoing acts of purification? Madhusūdana Sarasvatī answers this apparent contradiction. He says this verse is a glorification of knowledge, “theoretically accepting the impossible as possible.”

Here Kṛṣṇa says that knowledge is like a boat carrying one across the ocean of evil. In the next verse Kṛṣṇa gives an example to further illustrate the efficacy of the power of knowledge.

Text 37

As a blazing fire burns wood to ashes, Arjuna, so does the fire of transcendental knowledge reduce all karmic reactions to ashes.
Here Kṛṣṇa continues to stress the purifying effects of knowledge. He gives an example in which he seems to say that even the manifest (prārabdha) karma of one can be destroyed by knowledge. However, only bhakti has this power. The opinion that the knowledge under discussion has such power due to its fruition in bhakti is supported by Bhaktivedanta Swami Prabhupāda’s commentary on this and the following verse: “Perfect knowledge of self and Superself and of their relationship is compared herein to fire. This fire not only burns up all reactions to impious activities, but also all reactions to pious activities, turning them to ashes. There are many stages of reaction: reaction in the making, reaction fructifying, reaction already achieved, and reaction a priori. But knowledge of the constitutional position of the living entity burns everything to ashes. When one is in complete knowledge, all reactions, both a priori and a posteriori, are consumed. In the Vedas (Brhad-āranyaka Upaniṣad 4.4.22) it is stated, ubhe uhaivaisa ete taraty amṛtah sādhv-asādhūni: ‘One overcomes both the pious and impious reactions of work.’ When we speak of transcendental knowledge, we do so in terms of spiritual understanding. As such, there is nothing so sublime and pure as transcendental knowledge. Ignorance is the cause of our bondage, and knowledge is the cause of our liberation. This knowledge is the mature fruit of devotional service, and when one is situated in transcendental knowledge, he need not search for peace elsewhere, for he enjoys peace within himself. In other words, this knowledge and peace culminate in Kṛṣṇa consciousness. That is the last word in the Bhagavad-gītā.”

In the previous verse Kṛṣṇa spoke of crossing the karmic ocean. When one crosses the ocean on the boat of knowledge, the water remains. This water is the prārabdha-karma that remains in the life of the jīvanmukta. However, when wood is burnt to ashes, the wood no longer remains. Similarly bhakti, the furthest reach of knowledge, has the power to remove even one’s prārabdha-karma, as Kṛṣṇa takes over the body of his devotee using him as his instrument.

With regard to the aforementioned practices of sacrifice, in the next verse Kṛṣṇa again asserts the superiority of transcendental knowledge, the very fruit of such practices.

Text 38
There is nothing here that is as purifying as transcendental knowledge. One who is perfect in yoga realizes this wisdom within himself in due course.

The word *iha* (here) refers to this world. Inner wisdom is the purest thing in this world. *Iha* can also refer to the sacrificial practices mentioned previously. Among all varieties of sacrificial acts, it is the wisdom that arises from them that justifies their performance. Thus Kṛṣṇa stresses that realized knowledge awakens naturally within one who has learned how to acquire that knowledge from a seer by engaging himself under that seer’s direction. Realized knowledge will awaken within the practitioner of its own accord as his heart becomes purified.

Kṛṣṇa speaks next of the relationship between faith and knowledge.

One who has faith and devotes himself with controlled senses to attaining this wisdom is successful in his effort. Having wisdom and knowledge, he quickly attains the supreme peace.

The faithful stand on firm ground, for divine faith is a most tangible reality and not merely a product of the mind and intellect. Faith is the preroga-
tive of the soul, while belief belongs to the intellect. Faith picks up where reason leaves off. It is not unreasonable, but rather a transrational vehicle to the land beyond intellect, the home of the soul.

A person who trusts in that which he has learned from the guru and thus acts with controlled senses, detached from the fruits of his work in devotion, attains transcendental knowledge. He who has confidence that through niṣkāma-karma-yoga his heart will be purified, and not merely by renunciation of work, attains peace.

To emphasize his point through contrast, Kṛṣṇa next describes the fate of those devoid of the requisite faith in the scripture and the guru—the ignorant. Such suspicious persons are suspended, unable to be successful in any sphere.

Text 40

अज्ञात्रसूक्ताम् ज्ञात्मा विनस्तयति।
नायं लौकिकर्षिनि न परेऽन सुखं मक्षयामनः॥४०॥

ajñaḥ cāśraddadhānas ca saṁśayātmā vinaśyati/
naṁ lokaṁ 'sti na paro na sukham saṁśayātmanah//

ajñaḥ—the ignorant; ca—and; aśraddadhānāḥ—without faith; ca—also; saṁśayātmā—those who doubt; vinaśyati—is lost; na—not; ayam—this; lokāḥ—world; asti—there is; na—not; parah—next; na—not; sukkhaṁ—happiness; saṁśaya-ātmanah—of the doubtful.

Those who are ignorant, faithless, or doubting are lost. There is neither happiness nor success in this world or the next for the doubting soul.

The disciple should have faith in the scripture and the guru’s explanation of it. Those who question whether knowledge will ever fructify in themselves and are thus doubtful will never be successful. They lack faith in the inconceivable power of God and remain preoccupied with their own shortcomings.

Other than the doubtful, Kṛṣṇa mentions the ignorant (ajñaḥ) and faithless (aśraddadhānāḥ). These two persons are in one sense better off than the doubtful, for at least they enjoy the bliss of their ignorance and happiness in this world. Those without faith in the next world find some happiness in the here and now. Those who doubt that they will be successful on the spiritual path, yet believe in it, cannot find happiness in this world nor will
they attain the next. They cannot find happiness in this world because they
know from scripture that there is no enduring happiness here, and they
lack the self-confidence necessary for happiness and success in general. Viś-
vanātha Cakravartī argues that the three persons mentioned in this verse
are in a hierarchical order beginning with the lowest ignorant (ajñāh) to
the faithless (aśraddadhānāh) to the doubtful (samsayātmā).

In the last two verses of this chapter, Kṛṣṇa introduces chapter 5 by im-
ploring Arjuna to realize the fruit of karma-yoga through diligent execution
and thereby qualify himself for renunciation.

Text 41

yoga-sannyasta-karmānam jñāna-saṅchinna-saµçayam/
ātmavantaµ na karmāni nibadhinnanti dhanañjaya//

yoga—yoga; sannyasta—renounced; karmānam—action; jñāna—knowledge;
saṅchinna—cut; saµçayam—doubt; ātmavantaµ—composed in the self; na—not; karmāni—actions; nibadhinnanti—bind; dhanañjaya—O conqueror of riches.

One who has renounced action through yoga and whose doubt is cut
asunder by knowledge and is thus composed in his self, O Dhanañjaya,
is not bound by karma.

Here Kṛṣṇa speaks of karma-yoga in the words yoga-sannyasta-karmānam.
The karma-yogi is one who has disciplined his actions in consideration of
the principle of sacrifice outlined in this chapter. Madhusūdana Saraswatī
says, “He has dedicated his actions to God through yoga consisting of the
attitude of equanimity characterized by adoration of God, as mentioned
in chapter 2 (Bg. 2.48).” This karma-yogi is not bound by his actions, and
continues to practice karma-yoga, cultivating the inner spirit of renuncia-
tion leading to meditation and devotion proper. This cultivation is what
Kṛṣṇa instructs Arjuna to do in the next chapter, while also describing the
dynamics of renouncing action in the direct culture of inner wisdom—the
contemplative life.

Kṛṣṇa also speaks of the results of karma-yoga: the removal of doubt
through knowledge (jñāna-saṅchinna-saµşayam), the firm resolve of self-
composure required for a contemplative life of renunciation (ātma-vāntam), and freedom from the obligation to act further in terms of karma-yoga (na karmāṇī nibadhānti).

Visvanātha Cakravarti understands the word ātma-vāntam as pratyagātmanī, “knowledge of the self as an individual soul.” In this rendering self-knowledge serves as a precursor to the doctrine of devotion that is only beginning to unfold at this point. Kṛṣṇa has not yet begun his discourse on devotion itself. He is building up to it by setting a firm foundation for spiritual life. Bhakti assimilates both karma and jñāna, as it involves the acts of the senses and working organs as well as the subtler mental powers and consciousness. However, in both these domains, bhakti involves the culture of spiritual emotion for God. Karma-yoga involves dutiful, detached action and jñāna is emotionless. Bhakti, while including the objectivity and absence of material emotion involved in karma and jñāna, is based in positive spiritual emotion for God, either that shared with the neophyte by an advanced devotee or that arising from the soul proper in advanced stages of devotional culture.

**Text 42**

Therefore, having cut away with the sword of knowledge your doubt arising from ignorance that lurks in your heart, take refuge in yoga and stand for battle, O descendant of Bharata!

Verses 41 and 42 conclude this chapter with emphasis on knowledge as the fruit of detached action. Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa comments that knowledge and action are like the two aspects of rice paddy, the husk and the rice grain itself. Karma is compared to the husk and jñāna to the rice. Jñāna develops out of the protective husk of detached action, yet the rice of jñāna itself is
superior to such action, being the fruit of the harvest. This, he says, is the lesson of chapter 4.

These two concluding verses also introduce chapter 5. Verse 41 speaks of the result of *karma-yoga* that qualifies one for the renunciation of contemplative life. In verse 42 Kṛṣṇa implores Arjuna to take shelter of *karma-yoga* having gained theoretical knowledge from him and thus conviction about the self. This is what he instructs Arjuna to do in chapter 5—continue to practice *karma-yoga* with a view to attain the qualification for renunciation and meditation. However, this concluding verse can also be construed to be a covert directive for the culture of *bhakti*, for knowledge by which doubts are destroyed is more than theoretical knowledge. It is the ground of inner wisdom that is the fruit of *karma-yoga* upon which the emotional life of *bhakti* stands. Viewing it in this light, here Kṛṣṇa instructs Arjuna to fight, not out of duty with a sense of detachment but rather because this battle is Kṛṣṇa’s work.
Text 1

अर्जुन उवाच
सत्यां कर्मणां कृष्ण पुनर्योगं च संसिद्धि।
यज्ञश्च एत्योरेक तन मे बृहि सूनिष्ठितम् ||1||

arjuna uvāca
sannyāsam karmanāṁ krṣṇa punar yogam ca śāṁsasi/
yac chreya etayor ekam tan me bruḥi su-niścitam//

arjunah uvāca—Arjuna said; sannyāsam—renunciation; karmanām—of actions; krṣṇa—O Kṛṣṇa; punah—again; yogam—yoga; ca—also; śāṁsasi—you praise; yat—which; śreyah—better; etayoh—of the two; ekam—one; tat—that; me—to me; bruḥi—tell; su-niścitam—with certainty.

Arjuna said: O Kṛṣṇa, on the one hand you advocate renunciation of action and on the other you advocate yoga. Tell me with certainty, which of the two is better?

In chapter 3 Kṛṣṇa stressed selfless action. In chapter 4 Kṛṣṇa glorified knowledge over selfless action, inasmuch as knowledge is the fruit of selfless action. In this chapter, Kṛṣṇa stresses the renunciation of action that deepens knowledge. While selfless action is indirectly helpful in awakening knowledge, renunciation of action involves the direct culture of knowledge. Selfless action prepares the heart for knowledge to manifest by awakening dispassion and the firm resolve to attain wisdom. Subsequently, action that interferes with meditation should be renounced as dispassion arises. This renunciation of action makes one eligible for the contemplative life and meditation that directly awaken wisdom. The contemplative’s renunciation
and meditation are the subjects discussed in chapters 5 and 6 from which they receive their names, Karma-sannyāsa-yoga and Dhyāna-yoga, respectively. Both chapters are an elaboration on the concluding section of chapter 2 (Bg. 2.55–72), in which the samādhi of the enlightened soul is described.

This chapter further clarifies the apparent difference between action and renunciation by pointing out that the two are really inseparable because renunciation is the very state of mind the karma-yogi must possess. At the same time, the life of the karma-yogi and that of the contemplative are outwardly different. Karma-yoga is better because it is safer and easier for the beginner. Furthermore, while engaging in it, renunciation develops naturally and can be strengthened through its continued practice.

The integrated person that Kṛṣṇa further elaborates on in this chapter is ultimately his devotee. Thus this chapter ends with a verse in which Kṛṣṇa, in speaking of the attainment of Brahman and the cessation of material suffering (brahma-nirvānam), thrusts himself, the object of devotion, into his description of the perfect static peace (śānti) of liberation, declaring that knowing him, the Lord of all, one attains true peace and does so quickly.

Arjuna’s question in this opening verse picks up from the last two stanzas of the previous chapter. When Kṛṣṇa urged Arjuna to attain the status of renunciation and self-composure through karma-yoga (Bg. 4.41), the words “renounce action” (sannyasta-karmāṅga) stood out in Arjuna’s mind. Thus when Kṛṣṇa at the same time implored him to “stand for battle” (Bg. 4.42), Arjuna asks for clarification, as renouncing action and fighting appear to be opposites. However, when Kṛṣṇa told Arjuna to renounce action, he told him to do so through the practice of karma-yoga (yoga-sannyāsta-karmāṅga). Thus he spoke of the action of karma-yoga as the means to attain the self-composure necessary for renunciation and contemplative life. He was also instructing Arjuna that selfless action itself is not materially binding on the self and thus constitutes a dynamic expression of inaction. Kṛṣṇa was not instructing Arjuna to then and there overtly renounce action. When Kṛṣṇa told Arjuna to fight in the following verse (Bg. 4.42), he did not contradict himself. When he implored Arjuna to act in battle, he meant that he should act in karma-yoga inspired by theoretical knowledge and the conviction to attain self-realization, which he compared to a sword of knowledge (jñānāsin) that destroys ignorance. Thus while this chapter advocates the renunciation of action that is no longer necessary for one entering contemplative life, it also emphasizes once again the idea that selfless action itself is not binding. This is another way of understanding
the term *karma sannyasa*, renunciation of action through renunciation of attachment to the result of action. Seen in this light, chapter 5 reemphasizes the essence of chapter 3, given that the notion of inaction in action is difficult to grasp. In chapter 4 Kṛṣṇa also spoke covertly about engaging in battle as a result of having actually attained inner wisdom—liberated action. As we shall see at the end of chapter 6, this mature yoga Kṛṣṇa alludes to is *bhakti*.

**Text 2**

The Lord of Śrī said: Both renunciation of action and selfless action lead to ultimate happiness. However, of the two, selfless action is better than the renunciation of action.

Selfless action is better for one who is ineligible for the path of renunciation of action. The path of selfless action is easier than a contemplative life of introspection (*sannyāsa*) in the sense that once a monk formally renounces prescribed actions and adopts the renounced order of life, should any impurity surface in his heart, he cannot return to the world of prescribed action to remove it without being condemned as fallen. According to Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa, statements advising renunciation apply to those who have attained attachment to the spiritual platform (*ātmā-rāti*). However, on the whole a person who has attained inner wisdom can still engage in *karma-yoga* without incurring fault, and furthermore it strengthens one’s realization in that it has wisdom at its heart. Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa comments further that knowledge is within *karma-yoga* as a child is within the womb or as
fire is within wood. As Kṛṣṇa elaborates in the following verse, that which is accomplished by the renunciation of action is accomplished as well by one engaged in selfless action.

**Text 3**

ज्ञेय: स निन्यसत्वायी यो न दूषित न कार्यत।

निर्द्वंद्वो हि महाबोधि सुधि बन्धन-प्रमुख्यने॥३॥

\[ jñeya˙ sa nitya-sannyåsî yo na dve߆i na känksåti/

nirdvandvo hi mahå-båho sukham bandhåt pramucyate// \]

\[ jñeya—with to be known; sa—he; nitya—always; sannyåsî—renouncer; yah—who; na—not; dve߆i—hates; na—not; känksåti—desires; nirdvandvah—indifferent to dualities; hi—certainly; mahå-båho—O mighty-armed; sukham—easily; bandhåt—from bondage; pramucyate—is liberated. \]

A person who is free from both hatred and desire is always renounced. Being indifferent to dualities, O mighty-armed, he is easily freed from bondage and attains liberation.

One who is free from prejudices is renounced even while acting. Here Kṛṣṇa explains how the karma-yogi himself is already a renouncer of action and thus a candidate for liberation even while apparently acting. Such a person is not formally a monk, but more importantly he is one in spirit.

Having spoken of the relative superiority of karma-yoga, Kṛṣṇa next speaks of that which the paths of karma-yoga and jñåna-yoga have in common.

**Text 4**

सांक्ष्य्योगी पृथक प्रलोक्योऽर्थी सम्यक विद्या न प्रवर्तता।

एकमप्राध्येत: सम्यक्ष्योपिन्दते फलम्॥४॥

\[ sànkhya-yogau prthag bålah pravadanti na panditåḥ/

ekam apy ästitah samyag ubhayor vindate phalam// \]

\[ sànkhya—contemplative life; yogau—selfless action; prthak—different; bålah—the childish; pravadanti—declare; na—not; panditåḥ—the learned; ekam—one; api—even; ästitah—followed; samyag—correctly; ubhayoh—of both; vindate—finds; phalam—the result. \]
Childish persons, not the learned, declare that contemplative life and selfless action are separate. One who practices either of these correctly achieves the same result.

In this verse the terms sánkhya and yoga (sánkhya-yogau) take on different meanings than they did in chapter 2 (Bg. 2.39). There sánkhya meant “theory” and yoga meant “practice.” According to Śaṅkara, while using the same terms here, Kṛṣṇa uses them in a different way. Here the meaning of yoga is practice associated with action, and the meaning of sánkhya has developed from theory in chapter 2 (Bg. 2.39) to contemplation in chapter 3 (Bg. 3.3) to contemplation associated with renunciation here in chapter 5.

Text 5

That destination attained by the contemplatives is also attained by the yogis. Contemplative life and karma-yoga are one. One who perceives this sees things as they are.

Here Kṛṣṇa explains in what sense the two paths are equal. The two paths are one because they deliver the same result. The relative superiority of karma-yoga is in terms of its being easier and more expedient, of which Kṛṣṇa speaks in the following verse. In doing so he stresses that renunciation that does not arise out of karma-yoga should not be embraced.
However, renunciation of action without yoga, O Arjuna, is difficult. The sage who is practiced in yoga, however, quickly attains the Absolute.

Renunciation and a contemplative life must be prefaced by detached action that purifies the heart. Without a pure heart, no one can meditate effectively. Here Kṛṣṇa indicates that the karma-yogī also practices meditation in due course, yoga-yukto munir brahma.

How does the karma-yogī embrace the spirit of renunciation? Kṛṣṇa explains this next.

Engaged in yoga, one whose intelligence is purified, whose mind is controlled, and whose senses are conquered, and who has thus identified with the self of all beings, is not implicated even when acting.

Here Kṛṣṇa stresses the dynamic sense of oneness that the karma-yogī attains with other living beings, one in which the sorrow and joy of others is identified with as if it were one’s own. In this compassionate state, he works for the welfare of others without karmic reaction. Because he makes God his very being, he becomes like the soul of all beings and is thus dear to them. This is the Vaiṣṇava reading of sarva-bhūtātmā-bhūtātmā. The Adwaita rendering of this compound word is that the ātman and Brahman are one in all respects.
Madhusūdana Saraswati sees this verse as referring to one who is controlled in mind, body, and speech. He quotes Manu-śamhitā: “Speech is a danda, mind is a danda, so also the body is a danda. One who has these three dandas under control is called a tridandī.” (Manu-śamhitā 12.10) The danda symbolizes the rod of chastisement one invokes to curb the intelligence, mind, and senses from straying away from a God-centered life. It is carried by those in the renounced order (sannyāsa). Vaiṣṇava sannyāsis in particular carry the tridanda (triple danda) and are thus often referred to as tridandī-sannyāsis. They actively engage their body, mind, and speech in the service of God. Monists of Śaṅkara’s lineage, on the other hand, carry the ekadanda (single danda) that symbolizes their monistic worldview.

According to Viṣvanātha Cākravartī Thākura, this verse describes three types of karma-yogīs: those whose intelligence is purified, those whose minds are controlled, and those who have conquered their senses.

In the next verse Kṛṣṇa explains the psychology of the sense-controlled entry-level karma-yogi.

**Texts 8–9**

naīva kiñcit karomīti yukto manyeta tattva-vit/
pāṣyaṇ śrūṇaṁ śr śroṣaṇaṁ gacchan śvaptaṁ śvasan  || 8||
pralapaṁ visṛjan grhnāṁ umśiṣāṁ nimiṣāṁ api/
indriyāṁindriyāṁ theṣu vartante iti dhārayan  || 9||

A person who is steadfast in yoga and knows things as they are should think, “I am not doing anything, even while I am seeing, hearing,
touching, smelling, eating, walking, sleeping, breathing, talking, evacuating, accepting things, and blinking my eyes. Rather, it is the senses alone that are acting in relation to the sense objects."

Here Kṛṣṇa begins to describe the state of inner renunciation in which the self is experienced as being inactive in relation to the movements of the body. In these two verses, the five senses of perception and the five working senses are indicated. Breathing indicates the five internal airs and blinking indicates the five vital forces identified in the Yoga-sūtra (karma, nāga, krkala, devadatta, and dhanañjaya). Sleeping indicates the fourfold function of the internal organ (mind, intellect, citta, and ego), for during sleep, when the physical body retires, this organ continues to function. All of these functions are distinct from the self. Thus this verse is an elaboration on verse 28 of chapter 3.

Next Kṛṣṇa gives an example of how the sense-controlled karma-yogi is in the world but not of it. Thus he continues to stress the beginning stage of karma-yoga, in which the senses alone are controlled, and by which the mind and intelligence are also eventually mastered.

Text 10

One who works without attachment ascribing his actions to Brahman is not tainted by evil, just as a lotus leaf is untouched by water.

The lotus stem lies within the water but its flower never gets wet. Following this example, the perfect karma-yogi is in the world but not of it. He has renounced attachment (saṅgam tyaktvā) in the midst of his action.

The word brahmaṇi in this verse has been explained by both Śrīdhara Svāmī and Viśvanātha Cakravartī to indicate God (parameśvara). Śaṅkara
also understands *brahmaṇī* to be *iśvara*, considering the person described in this verse to be “like a servant who renounces all works and attachment to the fruits of his action, even liberation, for the sake of his master.” Rāmānuja differs, identifying *brahmaṇī* with the original state of nature in which the *guṇas* are in equilibrium. In support of this he cites the third verse of chapter 14. His explanation follows the idea that this section is elaborating on verse 28 of chapter 3, and Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa agrees with this understanding, arguing strongly that no other interpretation is appropriate. However, in either interpretation the action of one who works without attachment is not his own. It is either God working through him, the yogī being God’s (Brahman’s) instrument, or material nature’s (Brahman’s) movements that the self is not involved with.

Text 11

कायेन मनसा बुध्या केवलरिन्दूयेरपि ।
योगिनः कर्म कुर्वानि सङ्गम त्यक्तवात्मा-सुध्दाये ॥ ११ ॥

*kāyena manasā buddhyā kevalair indriyair api/

yoginah karma kurvanti saṅgam tyaktvātma-śuddhayeva//

*kāyena*—with the body; *manasā*—with the mind; *buddhyā*—with the intellect; *kevalaiḥ*—solely; *indriyaiḥ*—with the senses; *api*—even; *yoginah*—yogī; *karma*—actions; *kurvanti*—act; *saṅgam*—attachment; *tyaktvā*—abandoning; *ātma*—self; *śuddhaye*—for the purpose of purification.

*Karma-yogīs act with the body, mind, intellect, and even senses, solely for the purpose of purification, having renounced attachment.*

The word *kevala* here also implies that one who works in *karma-yoga* with only his senses gradually becomes purified, even though his mind wanders elsewhere. In the next verse, Kṛṣṇa summarizes his description of the *karma-yogī*, contrasting him with someone who does not follow the yogic path.

Text 12

युक्तः कर्मफलं न्यक्तवात् सांतिम अपनोऽपिनति नैश्चित्कीम् ।
अयुक्तः कामकारणं फलं सक्तं निद्धयते॥ २ ॥

*yuktah karma-phalam tyaktvā śāntim āpnoti naiśthikīm/

ayuktah kāma-kāreṇa phale sakto nibadhyate//

yuktah karma-phalam tyaktvā śāntim āpnoti naiśthikīm/

ayuktah kāma-kāreṇa phale sakto nibadhyate//
yuktaḥ—one who is disciplined; karma-phalam—the fruit of action; tyaktvā—having renounced; sāntim—peace; āptoti—attains; naiṣṭhikīm—lasting; ayuktah—one who is not practiced in yoga; kāma-kāreṇa—by the action coming from desire; phale—in the fruit; saktah—attached; nibadhyate—is entangled.

A person disciplined in karma-yoga, having renounced the fruit of action, attains lasting peace. A person who does not practice karma-yoga remains attached to the fruit of work and is entangled by his actions.

The karma-yogi knows that he himself is not really acting at all. He is free from the ego of considering himself the doer even while acting, and he is free from considering himself the initiator of the body’s action while engaging the body.

Text 13

सर्वकर्मांि मनसा सत्यस्यांसे मुख वशी।
नवद्व्रे पुरे देही नेव कुर्वल कारयन।

sarva-karmāni manasā sannyasyāste sukham vaśī//
nava-dvāre pure dehi naiva kurvan na kārayan//

sarva—all; karmāni—actions; manasā—with the mind; sannyasya—renouncing; āste—resides; sukham—happily; vaśī—one who is controlled; nava-dvāre—with nine gates; pure—in the city; dehi—the embodied; na—not; eva—certainly; kurvan—acting; na—not; kārayan—causing to act.

Mentally renouncing all actions, the embodied one happily resides with self-control in the city of nine gates, neither acting nor causing action to be performed.

The city of nine gates is the body with its two eyes, two ears, two nostrils, mouth, anus, and genital through which a person becomes implicated in the world of sense objects. Residing happily in this city means to reside there without attachment. He is self-controlled and indifferent to the actions of the body without any sense of identity with it. Such a person neither acts nor causes others or his own body to act other than in the service of God.

At this point, Arjuna, attentively listening to Kṛṣṇa’s extended answer, mentally questions him thus: “Who acts and who is responsible for the
results of action? If it is not the one enlightened in *karma-yoga*, perhaps it is material nature or God, who is in control of material nature. Or is it the living being in ignorance?” Knowing the mind of his disciple, Kṛṣṇa replies in the following verse.

**Text 14**

\[
\text{न कर्त्तव्यः न कर्माणि लोकस्य सृजति प्रभुः।}
\text{न कर्मफलसृयं भवावस्तु प्रवर्तते॥ ॥}
\]

na kartṛtvam na karmāṇi lokasya srjati prabhuḥ/
na karma-phala-samyogam svabhāvas tu pravartate//

The Lord creates neither a person’s agency of action nor his actions nor the result. All this is done by a person’s conditioned nature.

In this verse Kṛṣṇa reiterates his instruction found in verse 27 of chapter 3, which is the seed verse for his instruction found in this section. The means by which action is accomplished—its agency—is the ignorance of false proprietorship brought about by identification with material nature and desire. All actions are performed by the *guna*s. The word *na* (not) is used three times here for emphasizing that God is not directly responsible for the agency of action, our actions, or their results. Thus the individual soul has been described in its true state as being situated in an inner state of renunciation removed from the action of the body. Here God is also described as being in a state of renunciation, removed from the action of those in material life.

The word *prabhuḥ* in this verse can also be interpreted to mean the individual self. Although this word is usually used to indicate God, not the individual soul, nonetheless, many commentators understand it in this way, including some of the Vaiṣṇava commentators. Following this interpretation, it is not the self-controlled person residing in the city of the body who creates either the agency or the actions of the body. This is done by material nature, which the self-controlled person is a witness to. The self-controlled yogi is God’s instrument, and thus, as the actions of
material nature characterized by ignorance are not ascribed to God, neither are they to be ascribed to his servant who does his bidding in the world. The individual soul, whether realized or not, is always distinct from matter, yet it becomes identified with matter through beginningless ignorance. This ignorance is called anādi-avidyā. Bhaktivedanta Swami Prabhupāda comments that “it is ignorance acquired from time immemorial that is the cause of bodily suffering and distress. As soon as the living entity becomes aloof from the activities of the body, he becomes free from the reactions as well.”

**Text 15**

नादत्ते कत्याचित्त पापं न चैव सुकृतं विभुḥः।
अज्ञानेनावर्त्तम ज्ञानं तेन मुह्यानि जन्तवः।

`nādatte kasyacit pāpaṁ na caiva su-kṛtam vibhuḥ/
ajñānenāvṛtam jñānam tena muhyanti jantavah//`

na—not; ādatte—accepts; kasyacit—of anyone; pāpaṁ—evil deed; na—not; ca—and; eva—certainly; su-kṛtam—pious deeds; vibhuḥ—the Omnipresent; ajñānena—by ignorance; āvṛtam—covered; jñānam—knowledge; tena—by that; muhyanti—are deluded; jantavah—the living beings.

The omniscient Godhead does not accept responsibility for anyone’s good or evil deeds. Beings are deluded because their knowledge is covered by ignorance.

With the exception of Rāmānuja, all of the commentators who identified prabhuḥ in the previous verse with the individual soul have identified vibhuḥ in this verse with God.

Jīva Goswāmi thoughtfully concludes that in the second half of this verse Kṛṣṇa explains that the individual souls are eternally individual, their knowledge being covered by the influence of ignorance, ajñānenāvṛtam jñānam (Ts. 32 and Ps. 22). It is not that they themselves are a product of ignorance, disappearing with the removal of ignorance. When their ignorance is removed, they continue to exist in enlightened life, one in purpose with the Absolute.

Central to God’s noninvolvement is the principle of free will inherent in the finite soul, as is the principle of beginningless karma. The notion of beginningless karma is explained in *Vedānta-sūtra* (2.1.34–35). It refers
to the condition of the bound souls. Their conditioning under the influence of material nature, while having no beginning, can come to an end through the exercise of their inherent free will in relation to the hand of God’s grace, which is perpetually extended to them.

God does not create an individual soul’s agency for action. It is the soul’s lower nature arising out of ignorance and timeless karmic implication that is the true agent of action. The living beings are disposed to material action through the influence of desire arising from timeless ignorance. God engages them in such action, but he does not make them act. Because God is self-satisfied, he does not direct the living beings for the fulfillment of his selfish desire. He directs in accordance with the living beings’ previous actions. He does this through the power of his illusory energy (mâyâ). In doing so, he acquires no sin or virtue, as do the living beings.

As for God’s apparent partiality toward his devotees, this is a spiritual partiality. Rather than a fault, it is God’s most beautiful ornament. He is perceived as being materially partial by those whose knowledge is covered by ignorance. They do not understand that his chastisement is also a form of grace. Kṛṣṇa’s apparent partiality is the special grace he extends to his devotees. It is not arbitrary. Were he not the lover of those who love him, all of his other qualities would not be sufficient to evoke devotion and love. Moreover, it is the impartiality of the individual soul to the dualities of this world that serves as the passport for leaving it, but his spiritual partiality or individual preference that serves as his visa to the spiritual world of Kṛṣṇa’s play.1

Text 16

ज्ञानेन तु तद्ज्ञानं वेषा नाशितमामन्
तेषामादित्यवज्जनं प्रकाशयति तत्परम॥१॥

jnānena tu tad ajñānam yeśāṁ nāsitam ātmanah/
 teśāṁ āditya-vaj jnānam prakāśayati tat param//

jnānena—by knowledge; tu—but; tat—that; ajñānam—ignorance; yeśām—whose; nāsitam—is destroyed; ātmanah—of the self; teśām—their; ādityavat—like the sun; jnānam—knowledge; prakāśayati—illumines; tat—that; param—God/relationship with God.

1. See Vs. 2.1.36.
For those whose ignorance of the self has been destroyed by knowledge, that same knowledge reveals like the shining sun the nature of their relationship with God.

Kṛṣṇa has been speaking about God himself, the Lord, referred to as prabhuh and vibhuh in verses 14 and 15, respectively. In consideration of this, param in this verse and the tad in verse 17 can be understood to refer to him as well, rather than the individual soul. While Viśvanātha Cakravarti Ṭhākura understands param to refer to the awakening of the inherent nature of the soul in relation to God, Baladeva Vidyābhūṣāna comments that the word refers to both the individual soul as well as to the Supreme Soul. He states further that although knowledge itself (referring to sattva-guṇa) does not reveal God, the knowledge given by the guru who acts on behalf of God does reveal both God and the true self. Thus in the opinion of Baladeva Vidyābhūṣāna, param here indicates both the individual soul and God. He says that “just as the sun when it rises obliterates the darkness and shows everything in its true form, so too does the knowledge of the self received from the pure spiritual master show the soul in its true form.” The true self is the eternal servant of God.

Here Kṛṣṇa speaks of the undeluded and the nature and effect of transcendental knowledge. This knowledge involves proper understanding of the relationship between God, material nature, and the deluded as well as the enlightened soul. Such knowledge removes the ignorance that causes one to attribute mundane partiality to God.

In this verse Kṛṣṇa continues to affirm that souls are many in their essential nature, rather than only appearing so in the illusioned condition. Their plurality after the destruction of ignorance is essential for a life of enlightened devotion, and knowledge is an inalienable attribute of their self. The soul’s knowledge is subject to expansion and contraction in relation to the Absolute and material nature, respectively. This is the opinion of Rāmānuja. Similarly, Baladeva Vidyābhūṣāna comments, “Here by mentioning the plurality of the living beings whose ignorance has been destroyed, Kṛṣṇa confirms what he said at the very beginning of the Gitā in verse 2.12: ‘The individual nature of the soul is not conditional and does not disappear with liberation.’”

Text 17

तदुद्भयस्तदास्मात्मानस्तत्तत्तत्तत्वपरिवर्त्यन्त: ।
गच्छन्ति-पुनरज्ञानवृत्ति-ज्ञाननिष्ठत्वकल्मस्य: || ७||
Those whose intelligence is absorbed in God, whose minds are fixed on God, whose faith is in God, who are devoted to God, and whose impiety has been thus cast off through knowledge, go to that place where one does not again take birth.

Here the word *tat* repeated throughout this verse refers to God, who has been referred to in the previous verses in this section as *prabhu*, *vibhuh*, and *param*. Viṣvanātha Cakravarti Thākura comments that knowledge or learning can reveal knowledge of the individual soul, but it cannot give realization of God. Therefore *jñānis* must engage in *bhakti* if they wish to advance from self-realization to God-realization. Kṛṣṇa emphasizes this here, clarifying his statement in the previous verse as to the nature of the knowledge under discussion. It is the knowledge concomitant to *bhakti* that reveals the self as different from matter and God. It also reveals one’s relationship with God.

Those whose intelligence is absorbed in God are always reflecting on him. Their minds are always absorbed in meditation on him. Faithful to him, they have surrendered even their self-knowledge to him in his service. Devoted, they are always engaged in hearing and chanting about him. The words *jñāna-nirdhūta-kalmasāh* refer to the destruction of ignorance through the influence of spiritual knowledge, as stated in the previous verse.

Baladeva Vidyābhūṣana says that those who recognize God’s freedom from partiality and meditate on him develop the fixed intelligence mentioned in this verse. They too become impartial, experiencing an inner state of renunciation.
The wise see equally a brāhmaṇa endowed with learning and culture, a cow, an elephant, and even a dog or a dog-eater.

The enlightened soul, like God, is free from mundane partiality as a result of contemplating the impartiality of the Absolute. He regards all equally regardless of the species in which they appear or their conduct, be they brāhmaṇas or outcastes. Here the cow, elephant, and dog are mentioned to show that distinctions of species are not made by the sage of equal vision. That he makes no distinctions on the basis of conduct or caste is shown by the mention of the brāhmaṇa and the dog-eater. According to Viśvanātha Cakravartī, the cow and brāhmaṇa are representative of the mode of goodness and are therefore superior in material estimation; the elephant is in the mode of passion and therefore a creature of moderate value by the same standard. The dog-eater and the dog are representative of ignorance and therefore they are inferior. However, since the learned sage of equal vision acknowledges the soul, he does not make such judgments. He is free from prejudice and relates to everyone in light of their spiritual reality, beyond the three constituents of the material nature.

This verse speaks of jīvanmukti, whereas final liberation after the death of the body (videha-mukti) is described in the previous verse.

Text 19

ihaiva tair jitaḥ sargo yeṣām sāmye sthitam manah/
   nirdoṣam hi samam brahma tasmād brahmaṇi te sthitāḥ/

iha—here, in this world; eva—certainly; tāh—by them; jitaḥ—conquered; sargah—rebirth; yeṣām—whose; sāmye—in equanimity; sthitam—situated; manah—mind; nirdoṣam—faultless; hi—certainly; samam—impartial;
Even here in this world those whose minds are established in impartiality conquer rebirth. As the Absolute is faultless and impartial, they too become established in the Absolute.

Here Kṛṣṇa speaks of those in this world who meditate on the Absolute and thus realize impartiality. Jiva Goswāmi says that the idea that the liberated are established in Brahman (tasmād brahmaṇi te sthitāḥ) means that the jīvas are of this nature (Ps. 32). In their pure state they are of the nature of Brahman, which is faultless (nirdosam) and impartial (samam). Their nature is not adulterated by the influence of the material energy.

Text 20

na praḥṛṣyet priyam prāpya nodvijet prāpya cāpriyam/
sthīra-buddhir asammūḍho brahma-vid brahmaṇi sthitah/

One who knows the Absolute, who is established in the Absolute, and who is fixed in intelligence does not rejoice on attaining something pleasant or become repulsed on attaining something unpleasant.

The characteristics of the jīvanmukta are further described in this verse, which reiterates the explanation found in verse 56 of the second chapter. Here Kṛṣṇa implies that those aspiring for self-realization should strive for the natural qualities of the liberated soul described in this verse.

Text 21

One whose mind is not attracted to sense pleasure, who finds joy in the self, and whose self is united with God in yoga attains unlimited happiness.

The practitioner must be fixed in his intelligence as to the unhappy reality of sense pleasure. Following this intelligence he finds joy in the self, attains yoga (sa brahma-yoga-yuktātmā), and comes to know unlimited happiness (sukham aksayam aśnute). One who finds joy in the self (tvam), upon attaining yoga comes to know that (tat) which is God—tat tvam asi. God-realization follows self-realization.

Next Kṛṣṇa contrasts the unlimited happiness of God-realization with the so-called happiness of sense indulgence.

Text 22

Certainly pleasures born of sensual contact are nothing but wombs of misery. Since they have a beginning and end, O son of Kunti, the wise do not rejoice in them.

Here Kṛṣṇa poetically elaborates on the nature of pleasure born of sense indulgence. Such pleasures born out of contact with sense objects are wombs of misery that give birth to suffering. The wise who seek eternal life take
no pleasure in contact between the senses and their objects, knowing the pleasure born of this contact to be nonenduring in the least.

That which does not exist at some point in time, yet appears to come into being, only to cease from existing afterwards, does not really exist in the present any more than in a dreamlike condition. Such is the ephemeral nature of sense pleasure. In Kṛṣṇa’s critique of sense pleasure, he appeals to wise persons. They alone will concur with him as to the unhappy nature of all variety of sense indulgence. According to Patañjali’s *Yoga-sūtra* (2.15) the wise understand that sense pleasure begets suffering either as a direct consequence (*parināma*) in the form of anticipation (*tāpa*) of its inevitable loss or in the form of new craving (*saṃskāra*) for sense pleasure that arises from impressions of it imbedded in the mind. Thus sense pleasure is mixed with suffering in all three phases of time.

The cause of sensual happiness is one with its effect. The cause is attachment, for it is not possible to derive pleasure from an object one has no attachment for. Initial attachment for an object is transformed into the effect of so-called happiness on obtaining that object, an object that will inevitably be lost. When the material object is lost, attachment remains either for that same object or another, all of which are transformations of the same basic material ingredients. As the result of acquiring happiness from sense objects is suffering, so too is its cause—attachment. Furthermore, while experiencing sensual happiness one simultaneously experiences displeasure in relation to that which opposes this so-called happiness. Dealing with this opposition brings suffering to others.

Reaching the above conclusion involves applying one’s entire intellectual faculty in spiritual pursuit. Only such a wise person can know the unending joy of spiritual life, for spiritual bliss follows the fullest measure of intelligent life. To reach this conclusion and act accordingly is not easy. Therefore Kṛṣṇa speaks next of the effort involved.

**Text 23**

*śaknotiḥ iḥaḥ soḍhum prāk sarīra-vimokṣanāt/*

*kāmakoṇḍhodbhavaḥ vegam sa yuktah sa sukhā narah//*

*śaknoti*—is able; *iha eva*—here in this world; *yah*—one who; *soḍhum*—to tolerate; *prāk*—before; *sarīra*—body; *vimokṣanāt*—from liberation; *kāma*—
desire; krodha—frustration; udbhavam—origination; vegam—agitation; sah—he; yuktah—fixed in yoga; sah—he; sukhi—happy; narah—human being.

A person in this world who can tolerate the agitation that arises from desire and frustration until he is liberated from the body is fixed in yoga. He is happy; he is a human being.

The word vega is used in this verse to denote the similarity between one's being on the verge of acting in relation to sense pleasure, even though one has repeatedly contemplated its true nature, and the rushing of a river during the rainy season. A person who can withstand the forceful internal current arising from desire for sense objects and the frustration of not acquiring the sense objects is poised to realize his human potential. Such a person differentiates himself from the animal species through practical exhibition of his capacity to reason meaningfully and thus solve the problems of life, opening the door to actual happiness.

The body does not feel pleasure or pain after the soul has departed. The practitioner who can live in the body with this understanding, knowing that pain and pleasure are merely perceptions born of bodily identification, lives a life that begets liberation. Such a person rejoices within. He finds intrinsic happiness in his own nature, as opposed to deriving happiness from external objects.

Text 24

यो योगी ब्राह्मणं आनंदितं द्विगुणतः द्विगुणतः द्विगुणतः द्विगुणतः द्विगुणतः द्विगुणतः द्विगुणतः

yo 'ntah-sukho 'ntar-ārāmas tathāntar-jyotir eva yah/
   sa yogi brahma-nirvānam brahma-bhūto 'dhigacchati///
yah—one who; antah-sukhā—happiness within; antah-ārāmāḥ—delight within; tathā—and; antah-jyotih—illumined within; eva—certainly; yah—anyone; sah—this; yogi—yogi: brahma-nirvānam—liberation in Brahman; brahma-bhūtah—self-realized; adhigacchati—attains.

One who finds happiness within, who delights within, who is illumined within, such a yogi established in self-realization, attains the cessation of material existence in Brahman.
Here the word *brahma-nirvāṇam* refers to cessation of material existence arising from identifying oneself with Brahman, as opposed to the Buddhist conception of *nirvāṇa*, which does not acknowledge the eternal existence of consciousness (*ātman*). In contrast, the Buddhist conception of *nirvāṇa* could be termed *prakṛti-nirvāṇa*, which involves identification with matter through all of its transformations, as opposed to identifying with one particular stage of transformation.

The term *brahma-nirvāṇam* first appeared at the end of chapter 2 (Bg. 2.72). Kṛṣṇa elaborates on this liberated condition in this and the following two verses. At the end of this chapter he implies that this liberated status is included within realization of himself, and in chapter 6 (Bg. 6.15) he states that *brahma-nirvāṇam* is subsumed within himself. The term *brahma-bhūtaḥ* in this verse is also found in chapter 18 (Bg. 18.54), where it describes the liberated status from which one enters into *bhakti* proper.

A person who is happy within no longer takes pleasure in sense objects. His happiness is independent of them and derived from the intrinsic nature of the self. He takes pleasure in the self (*ātmārāma*).

**Text 25**

तथान्तः ब्रह्मानिवाणमृण्यः क्षीणक्लस्यः।
छिन्तदूधः यतात्मनः सर्वमृणाहते रतः॥२५॥

labhante brahma-nirvāṇam ṛṣayah ksīna-kalmaṣāḥ/
chinha-dvaidhā yatātmānaḥ sarva-bhūta-hite ratāḥ//

The seers, whose impiety has been vanquished, whose doubts have been slashed, who are self-controlled and live for the welfare of all beings, attain the cessation of material existence in Brahman.

**Text 26**

कामक्रोधविन्नां यतीनां यतेतत्साद।
अभिन्नो ब्रह्मानिवाणं वर्तनं विदितात्मनाम॥२६॥

kāma-krodha-vimuktānāṃ yatiṁān yata-cetasāṃ/
abhito brahma-nirvāṇam vartate viditātmānām//
Those renunciates who are free from desire and anger, who have control of their minds and know the self, attain the cessation of material existence in Brahman, both here and in the hereafter.

After speaking at length regarding attaining the Absolute, the means of doing so, and the experience of those who have, Kṛṣṇa here emphasizes as he did in the beginning of this chapter that karma-yogīs are also renouncers of action in a dynamic sense by referring to them as renunciates or sannyāsīs (yatīnām). Viśvanātha Cakravartī says this verse states that the yogī under discussion attains brahma-nirvāṇam quickly.

Kṛṣṇa next introduces the techniques of meditation (dhyāna) that are common to all types of yoga and are sometimes employed in the advanced practice of karma-yoga and jñāna-yoga in particular. First, in the next two verses, Kṛṣṇa mentions yogic techniques and their results in brief, and then in the third verse, he elaborates on the results of practicing these techniques. By speaking of meditation (dhyāna) and its techniques along with its result in the following three verses, Kṛṣṇa also introduces the next chapter, dhyāna-yoga.

Texts 27–28

sparśān kṛtvā bahir bāhyāṁ ca kṣuṣā caivaṁtare bhrūvah/
prāṇāpānau samau kṛtvā nāsaśhyantara-cārīnau/
yatendriya-manuṣau buddhir munir mokṣa-parāyaṇāh/
vigateccchā-bhaya-krodho yah saddā mukta eva saḥ//

2. Elsewhere Viśvanātha Cakravartī Thākura has proclaimed prāṇāyāma to be pratikūla, or unfavorable, for bhākta; however, it is mentioned in Hari-bhakti-vilāsa in reference to mantra-dhyāna of the Gauḍīyas.
Shutting out external sense objects and fixing the eyesight between the two eyebrows, equalizing the incoming and outgoing breaths that move through the nostrils, restraining the senses, mind, and intelligence, and dedicating oneself to liberation, he from whom desire, fear, and anger have departed is forever liberated.

Those situated in inner renunciation, either in contemplative life or in the ongoing culture of karma-yoga, practice meditation. Without evolving to the stage of inner renunciation, meditative attempts will not be very successful.

The yogī must learn to expel from the mind thoughts of contact with sense objects in the name of pleasure. Fixing the eyesight between the eyebrows on the “third eye” helps him to inhibit random thought, as eye movement often accompanies thought. Expelling external contacts (sparśan kṛtvā bahir bāhyān) refers to sense indulgence in general. The word sparśan (contact/touch) is understood to represent the functions of all the senses, as the sense of touch is connected with all of the working senses through skin, which pervades the entire body.

Having introduced the meditation that is the subject of chapter 6 in this verse, Kṛṣṇa declares himself to be the object of the yogī’s meditation in the last verse of this chapter. He also places all that enlightenment involves for the jñāṇī, yogī, and devotee within himself, and declares that the enlightened state he has been discussing is quickly attained by acknowledging his supreme position. Thus bhakti is alluded to yet again, this time as we enter chapter 6 wherein Kṛṣṇa openly states his preference for devotion and implores Arjuna to be his devotee—the perfectly integrated being.
Knowing me to be the enjoyer of the results of sacrifice and austerities, the great controller of the entire world, and the friend of all creatures, one quickly attains peace.
Chapter Six

ध्यानयोगः

Dhyāna-yoga

YOGA OF MEDITATION

Text 1

śri-bhagavān uvāca
anāśritah karma-phalam kāryam karma karoti yah/
sa sannyāsi ca yogī ca na niragnir na cākriyah//

śri-bhagavān uvāca—the Lord of Śrī said; anāśritah—without depending; karma-phalam—the fruit of work; kāryam—prescribed; karma—work; karoti—does; yah—one who; sah—he; sannyāsi—renunciate; ca—and; yogi—yogi; ca—and; na—not; niragnih—one who forgoes the sacrificial fire; na—not; ca—also; akrīyah—without rite.

The Lord of Śrī said: A person who performs his duties renouncing the fruit of his action is both a renunciate and a yogi. One does not become a sannyāsi merely by forgoing work and the sacrificial fire.

At the beginning of this chapter Kṛṣṇa continues to stress karma-yoga centered on himself, leading to knowledge, meditation, and ultimately bhakti. This chapter discusses meditation in greater detail, both in its physical and psychic aspects. Karma-yoga refers to all activities executed with the body. Thus the discussion of physical (haṭha) yoga and psychic (aṣṭāṅga) yoga in this chapter are essential aspects of the practice of karma-yoga required to facilitate the training of the mind in meditation. While the discussion of haṭha-yoga and aṣṭāṅga-yoga takes up much of the chapter, Kṛṣṇa brings his discussion of yoga to its zenith by emphasizing bhakti. He does so by
stressing his own position as that in which liberation subsists (Bg. 6.15) by describing the highest yogic experience of his devotees (Bg. 6.29–32) and by stating at the end of the chapter that bhakti-yoga is the yoga most dear to him (Bg. 6.47). It should be noted that this chapter stresses practice (sādhana). Regardless of which yoga path or rung of the ladder of yoga one identifies with, one cannot avoid the spiritual practice involved in controlling the mind and senses.

In this verse Kṛṣṇa tells Arjuna that the karma-yogi is both a renunciate, and thus as good as a jñāni, as well as a yogī in spirit, for self-sacrifice is at the heart of yoga. One who lights no fire (niragnih) is one in whose life there is no self-sacrifice. Because the karma-yogi is a true yogī, he is eligible to engage in yogic techniques that are helpful in meditation as his heart becomes purified.

One in advanced stages of karma-yoga employs meditative techniques as jñāna awakens. Even the bhakti-yogī, the devotee, engages in dhyāna, and thus some of the techniques of this type of yoga are also relevant to his practice.¹

Text 2

O son of Pāṇḍu, know that which is sannyāsa to be yoga, for without renouncing selfish motivation, no one becomes a yogī.

Here Kṛṣṇa tells Arjuna he should understand that one who is actually a renouncer, the karma-yogī he has been describing, is also a mystic yogī. Yoga implies selflessness. It involves restraint of the mental modifications that

¹. In the bhakti school of the Gauḍīyas, dhyāna is one of the fivefold aspects of smaranam (remembrance).
occur in the form of desires for sense objects. Thus renunciation, which involves realizing the nature of material desire, and yoga, which involves the cessation of material desires, are one.

In underscoring the heart of yoga by declaring here that it is first and foremost selflessness that makes one a yogī, Kṛṣṇa lays the foundation for establishing his ultimate premise: bhakti-yoga is the most complete yoga, including within itself union with God through action (as in karma-yoga), introspection (as in jñāna-yoga), and meditation (as in dhyāna-yoga), for the body, intelligence, and mind all follow the heart. The devotee not only forgoes selfish concerns, abnegating material desire to attain peace, but embraces the desire of God, becoming his instrument in divine slavery.

Having stressed the heart of yoga in the form of renunciation of selfish desire, Kṛṣṇa next begins to describe the path of mystic yoga itself in detail. To begin this path, one must pass through selfless action and purification of the heart. Only then can one sit peacefully culturing meditation without being distracted by the call of the world, religious or otherwise.

Text 3

äuruksor muner yogam kāraṇam ucyate/
yogārūḍhasya tasyaiva śamā kāraṇam ucyate//

äuruksor—of the beginner; muneh—of the sage; yogam—yoga; karma—work; kāraṇam—the means; ucyate—is said; yoga—yoga; ārūḍhasya—of one who has attained; tasya—his; eva—certainly; samāh—cessation of activities; kāraṇam—the means; ucyate—is said to be.

For the beginner desiring perfection in yoga, action is the means, whereas for one who has attained yoga, cessation of activity is the means.

One who desires perfection in mystic yoga must first engage in selfless action. On the other hand, one who has attained perfection in mystic yoga is able to remain in continuous trance through cessation of activity that would otherwise be disturbing to the mind.

Kṛṣṇa next describes the symptoms of yogic attainment followed by its techniques.
When one is attached to neither sense objects nor to action itself and has renounced all material motivation, one is said to have attained yoga.

The mature yogi has no purpose to fulfill. He is not attached to sense objects, nor any type of work, nor does his attainment in yoga depend any longer on a particular spiritual practice. He does not entertain the idea that he is the doer or that the results of action are for his enjoyment. Kṛṣṇa says again that he is sarva-sankalpa-sannyāsi. Baladeva Vidyābhūṣana comments that Kṛṣṇa has not said sarva-karma-sannyāsi. The mature yogi gives up all desire (sarva-sankalpa) for the results of his work and not all work (sarva-karma). Such a yogi is established in yoga (yogārūdhah).

In the context of discussing yogic attainment, because meditation deals with mastering the mind, Kṛṣṇa next speaks both of the mind’s power to degrade and elevate one relative to the extent that it has been mastered by the self.

Text 5

उद्धरेतात्मानात्मानं नात्मानं नात्मानं अवासादयेत् ।
आत्मावैव ह्य अत्मानो बाँधुरात्मावैव रिपुर अत्मानहः ॥ ॥

uddharet—one should deliver; ātmanā—by the mind; ātmānam—oneself; na—not; ātmānam—oneself; avasādayet—one should degrade; ātmā—mind; eva—certainly; hi—indeed; ātmanah—of the self; bandhuh—friend; ātmā—mind; eva—certainly; ripuḥ—enemy; ātmanah—of the self.
One should elevate oneself by the mind, not degrade oneself. Indeed, the mind can be the self’s friend or its enemy.

In consideration of the context in which it appears, ātmā can mean mind, intelligence, body, or soul, as the “self” we speak of is often a bodily, mental, or intellectual self, rather than the self proper, the soul. In verses 5 through 7, ātmā refers primarily to the mind. Here Kṛṣṇa says that the mind influenced by spiritual discrimination has the power to uplift the self from worldliness. However, when the mind is not fortified in this way, it causes degradation.

A friend is one who can help us in times of need. The trained mind is such a friend. The uncontrolled mind, on the other hand, is the greatest enemy of the soul. Kṛṣṇa next elaborates on just how the mind can be either one’s friend or enemy, followed by a description of the symptoms of one who has controlled the mind—the sthita-prajñā, discussed earlier in chapter 2 (Bg. 2.55–72).

Text 6

बन्धुः अत्मात्मनाः तस्या येनाभ्यात्मनाः जिताः
अनात्मानन्तः शजुवेन वर्नात्मावेन शजुव्यते ॥६॥

bandhuh ātmātmanas tasya yenātmaivātmanā jitaḥ/
anātmanas tu satrutve vartetātmaiva satru-vat//

bandhuḥ—friend; ātmā—the mind; ātmanah—of the self; tasya—of him; yena—by whom; ātmā—the mind; eva—certainly; ātmanā—by the self; jitaḥ—conquered; anātmanah—of one who has not conquered the mind; tu—but; satrutve—in enmity; varteta—it might be; ātmā eva—the very mind; satru-vat—as an enemy.

For one who has conquered the mind, the mind is the best of friends, but for one who has not conquered the mind, it acts like one’s enemy.

The uncontrolled mind acts as one’s enemy. This is true even with regard to material pursuit, not to speak of spiritual pursuit. However, as the mind is trained through spiritual discipline, it acts as one’s friend by thinking naturally of God and all things in relation to him. There is an illuminating story in this connection from the Gauḍīya tradition. Two devotees were walking side by side when a vulture flew overhead. Noticing the vulture, one devotee cried out “hari bol” (chant the name of God). Hearing this from
his comrade, the other devotee exclaimed, “Why are you so overjoyed on seeing a vulture, whose preoccupation is death? Seeing this bird does not ordinarily give rise to chanting the names of God.” To this the first devotee replied, “When I see the vulture, my mind goes to the cremation grounds where cows who have died naturally are skinned. This skin is then tanned and the hide is used to make the traditional drum used in Hari 
kirtana (chanting of God’s name).” Seeing the vulture, his trained mind, acting as his friend, drew him naturally to his spiritual practice.

Text 7

 jitātmanaḥ praśāntasya paramātmā samāhitah/
sitosna-sukha-duḥkheṣu tathā mānāpamānayoḥ//

jitā-ātmanah—of one who has conquered the mind; praśāntasya—of the peaceful; parama-ātmā—the Supreme Soul; samāhitah—poised; sīta-uṣṇa—in cold and heat; sukha-duḥkheṣu—in pleasure and pain; tathā—and; māna-
apamānayoḥ—in honor and dishonor.

A person who has conquered the mind and is thus peaceful is poised in realization of the Supreme Soul. Heat and cold, pleasure and pain, honor and dishonor are all the same to him.

In this verse the word Paramātmā is used for the first time in the Gitā. The concept of the Paramātmā, however, was introduced at the end of chapter 5 with the words sarva-loka-mahēśvaram. The Paramātmā is the object of the aṣṭānga-yogī’s meditation.

Bhaktivedanta Swami Prabhupāda comments, “The effect of controlling the mind is that one automatically follows the dictation of the Paramātmā, or Supersoul…. the devotee of the Lord is unaffected by the dualities of material existence, namely distress and happiness, cold and heat, etc. This state is practical samādhi, or absorption in the Supreme.”

Here Kṛṣṇa uses the word samādhi (samāhitah) for the first time in this chapter. He has referred to it earlier using the word yoga in its stead in verse 3 and 4. There he speaks of attaining yoga (samādhi). Samādhi was first mentioned in the Gitā in chapter 2 (Bg. 2.44). Therein Kṛṣṇa told Arjuna that those who are too attached to sense objects cannot experience
samādhi. Later in the same chapter (Bg. 2.54) Arjuna asked Kṛṣṇa about the characteristics of one who has attained samādhi. In chapter 4 (Bg. 4.24–29) Kṛṣṇa also spoke of samādhi when he described being absorbed in various types of sacrifices to attain Brahman: brahmaiva tena gantavyaṁ brahma-karma-samādhinā. Here in chapter 6 Kṛṣṇa elaborates further on his initial response to Arjuna’s question in chapter 2 concerning the characteristics of one who has attained samādhi. He also speaks of different kinds of samādhi and their results.

Text 8

jñāna-vijñāna-tṛptātmā kūṭa-sthaḥ vijitendriyāḥ/
yuktā ity ucyate yogī sama-lośtraśma-kāñcanah//

jñāna—knowledge; vijñāna—realization; tṛpta—satisfied; ātmā—self; kūta-sthā—steady; vijita-indriyāḥ—whose senses are conquered; yuktah—fixed; iti—thus; ucyate—is said; yogī—yogi; sama—equally; lośtra—earth; aśma—stone; kāñcanah—gold.

One who is self-satisfied by dint of scriptural knowledge and realization and is steadfast and sense controlled sees a piece of earth, a stone, and gold equally. One so fixed is said to be a yogī.

Seeing a piece of earth, a jewel, or gold equally means seeing them as the same substance in different states of transformation. In this verse Kṛṣṇa speaks of equal vision in relation to inanimate objects. In the next verse he speaks of a higher stage in which one sees the animate world with the same equal vision.

Text 9

su-hṛt-mitrāry-udāśina-madhya-stha-dveṣya-bandhusu/
sādhusu api ca pāpeṣu sama-buddhīr viśisyate//

su-hṛt—friend; mitra—associate; ari—enemy; udāśina—equal-minded; madhya-stha—neutral amidst; dveṣya-bandhusu—enemies and friends;
sādhusu—among saints; api—even; ca—and; pāpeṣu—among sinners; sama-buddhiḥ—having equal intelligence; viśisyaṭe—is superlative.

The superlative yogī is one who looks equally on a close friend, an associate, and an enemy, and who is thus equal in his dealings with everyone be they saints or sinners.

This verse is comparable to Kṛṣṇa’s description of the impartial vision of the wise in chapter 5 (Bg. 5.18), with the difference that here the people the yogī is to see equally are those with whom one is personally involved—like the people with whom Arjuna has to fight.

Having explained the nature of yogic attainment in brief, Kṛṣṇa next explains the practices involved in achieving yoga-samādhi. These practices include the culture of samprajñāta-samādhi, mental absorption wherein one’s thoughts are concentrated on one object (ekāgra). Samprajñāta-samādhi leads to the perfection of asamprajñāta-samādhi, the mental stage in which all thought is restrained (nirodha).

Text 10

yogī yuñjīta satatam ātmānam rahasi sthitā/
   ekākī yata-cittātmā nirāsīr aparigrahaḥ//

yogī—the yogī; yuñjīta—should concentrate; satatam—always; ātmānam—
on the self; rahasi—in a secluded place; sthitā—remaining; ekākī—alone;
yata-citta-ātmā—mind and body controlled; nirāsīḥ—free from desire;
aparigrahaḥ—devoid of possessions.

The yogi should always concentrate his mind on the self, remaining alone in a secluded place with mind and body controlled, free from desire and devoid of possessions.

In verses 10 through 13 Kṛṣṇa explains how the yogī should sit for meditation. He should do so in a secluded (rahasi) place. Other than the fact that meditation itself involves entering the private hollow of the heart in utmost earnestness, the sense of this verse is that one should find a peaceful place free from disruptive influences and conducive to spiritual practice. The yogī
should be alone to tend to his mind with controlled senses. The mind must be free from distraction if one is to be successful in yoga.

There are five mental planes or stages, only two of which are really conducive to yoga. Kṣipta refers to the mental plane in which under the influence of likes and dislikes the mind becomes engrossed in material objects; mūḍha refers to mental drowsiness; vikṣipta refers to the restless condition of the mind; ekāgra refers to one-pointed concentration of the mind; nirodha involves the restraint of thought altogether.

The planes of kṣipta and mūḍha are governed by tamo-guṇa. They are not at all conducive to the culture of yoga-samādhi. Vikṣipta is the influence of rajo-guṇa. This restless condition of the mind allows one to experience occasional samādhi. In this mental plane, the restless mind that is preoccupied with sense objects can sometimes concentrate in meditation. However, this dhyāna is short lived. It is in the stage of ekāgra, when the guṇa of sattva predominates, that the yoga practitioner can experience continued samādhi. This is known as samprajñāta-samādhi, which Kṛṣṇa is recommending the cultivation of here. In the mental stage of nirodha, all thought is restrained and one experiences asamprajñāta-samādhi. This will be discussed later in this same chapter. One should practice meditation and bhajana with knowledge of these mental planes and judge one’s success accordingly.

Text 11

He should establish a firm seat for himself in a clean place. It should be neither too high nor too low and should be covered with kuśa grass, a deer skin, and a cloth.

The meditator’s seat should be slightly elevated and firm so that it will give sufficient support and not be subject to movement. If his āsana is too
high or too low it will be a cause of disturbance. If it is too high he could fall from it during trance, and if too low forest creatures could disturb him and thus his samādhi. In ancient times it consisted of kuśa grass on top of which a tiger or deer skin was placed and then covered by a layer of cloth (cailājina-kuṣottaram). Patañjali reveals the spirit of the āsana to be a seat that is firm and pleasant (Ys. 2.46). This seat should be one’s own (āsanam ātmanah) and used exclusively for the purpose of meditation. If the seat belongs to another, one may be disturbed due to uncertainty whether its owner wants to use it.

Text 12

Making his mind one-pointed and controlling all the activities of his senses, he should sit on that seat and engage in yoga for the sake of self-purification.

Here Kṛṣṇa says that one should practice ekāgra—samprajñāta-samādhi. Stress on sitting implies that meditation should not be attempted lying down or standing. Such an injunction is also found in Vedānta-sūtra (4.1.7–10), dhyānāc ca, “And because meditation is possible only in a sitting posture.” However, one-pointedness, or concentration of the mind, is at the heart of meditation. The conditions set forth for meditating are subordinate to actually doing so. These conditions are favorable for accomplishing mental concentration; nevertheless, wherever, whenever, or however one can concentrate the mind on God one should do so. The above scriptural injunctions with regard to detail are not violated should they not be in place. Hence the best place for meditation is that which is conducive to concentrating the mind, yatra ekāgratā tatrāviṣeṣāt (Vs. 4.1.11).
Holding his body, head, and neck erect, he should remain motionless and steady, concentrating his vision on the tip of his nose without letting it stray here and there.

After completing his description of how one should sit for meditation with the first half of this verse, Kṛṣṇa continues to discuss how one should meditate in the culture of samprajñāta-samādhi in the second half of this verse. He continues this description in the following verse.

With his mind quieted, fearless, observing a vow of chastity, controlling his mind by fixing his thoughts on me, he should sit concentrated in devotion, holding me as the highest object.

Central to all that has been described thus far is Kṛṣṇa’s instruction in this verse, “Holding me as the highest object.” Indeed, if a person somehow
or other is able to fix his mind on Kṛṣṇa, he becomes situated in yoga. In describing himself as the central focus of dhyāna-yoga, Kṛṣṇa has identified himself with the Paramātmā seated in the heart of all living beings. Here Kṛṣṇa indirectly disparages the acquisition of yogic powers (siddhis), which can be acquired by one-pointed concentration on material objects.

**Text 15**

युङ्जन्तं द्वीत्मनं योगी नियत्मनसः।
शान्तिः निर्वणा-परमम् मत-साश्च शामस्ताम अधिगच्छति॥१५॥

yuñjann evam sadātmānam yogī niyata-mānasah/
śāntim nirvāṇa-paramām mat-saṃsthāṁ adhigacchati//

yuñjan—disciplining; evam—thus; sadā—always; ātmānam—the self; yogī—the yogī; niyata-mānasah—with a controlled mind; śāntim—peace; nirvāṇa-paramām—cessation of material existence; mat-saṃsthām—standing with me; adhigacchati—attains.

*Thus always disciplining the self, the yogī whose mind is controlled attains the supreme peace situated in me, beyond the cessation of material existence.*

Here Kṛṣṇa defines that which lies beyond the mere cessation of material existence (nirvāṇa-paramām) to be the ultimate goal of yoga—union in love with Kṛṣṇa (mat-saṃsthām). This is attained after prolonged practice. Baladeva Vidyābhūṣāṇa calls it “the highest limit of liberation.” Here the conception of nirvāṇa first mentioned in chapter 2 (Bg. 2.72) has been subsumed in Kṛṣṇa. The highest peace that lies beyond the cessation of material existence is incorporated within the experience of Kṛṣṇa himself. What then must the direct experience of Kṛṣṇa be for his devotee? This is asamprajñāta-samādhi, in which thought is restrained (niyata-mānasah), stolen by the charm and beauty of Kṛṣṇa. It is attained through the constant practice (yuñjan) of fixing one’s mind on Kṛṣṇa in samprajñāta-samādhi.

Kṛṣṇa speaks next of the moderation that is central to the path of yoga, making clear that yoga is not concerned with the material world, either in terms of chasing after it or running away from it.

**Text 16**

नान्यतरस्तः योगोऽश्चियत्नं च चान्तामस्यनन्दनः।
न चान्तं विस्मृत्तिभूषणं जागर्नावेत चार्जुनं॥१६॥

नान्यतरस्तः योगोऽश्चियत्नं च चान्तामस्यनन्दनः।
न चान्तं विस्मृत्तिभूषणं जागर्नावेत चार्जुनं॥१६॥

Text 16
O Arjuna, yoga is not attained by eating too much or eating too little. Nor is it for those habituated to sleeping too much or sleeping too little.

Overeating will cause disease. If one eats too little, the body will not be properly sustained. Not too much and not too little eating can also refer to the yogic prescription of filling one half of the stomach with food and one quarter with water, leaving the remaining quarter empty for the circulation of air. Regarding sleep, the yogi remains awake at the beginning and end of the night, sleeping only in the middle period.

Having spoken of what a yogi should not do, Kṛṣṇa next explains what he should do.

Text 17

The practice of yoga destroys the miseries of a person who is disciplined in his eating and relaxation, who performs his duties diligently, and who is balanced in his sleeping and waking.

The need for the discipline of moderation in eating, sleeping, relaxation, and so on applies not only to spiritual pursuit but also to material well-being.
Extreme fasting and sleep deprivation are not recommended here. The word *yukta* implies that which is acquired without excessive difficulty. One must be sensible in the practice of yoga.

**Text 18**

Yadā vinīyataṁ cittam ātmany evāvatiṣṭhate/

nisthāḥ sarvāṁ īcām kāmabhyaḥ yukta ity ucyate tadā/

Yadā—when; vinīyataṁ—controlled; cittam—mind; ātmani—in the self; eva—certainly; evāvatiṣṭhate—abides; nisthāḥ—free from longing; sarvāḥ—all; kāmabhyaḥ—from desires; yuktaḥ—situated in yoga; iti—thus; ucyate—is said; tadā—at that time.

When a yogī abides in the self alone with mind controlled and free from longing in relation to all material desires, at that time he is said to have attained yoga.

**Text 19**

Yathā dīpo nivāta-stho nengate sopamā smṛtā/

yogino yata-cittasya yuñjato yogam ātmanah/

Yathā—as; dīpaḥ—a lamp; nivāta-sthāḥ—in a windless place; na—not; nengate—flickers; sā—this; upamā—comparison; smṛtā—is considered; yōgīnāḥ—of the yogī; yata-cittasya—whose mind is controlled; yuñjataḥ—of the concentrated; yogam—yoga; ātmanah—of the self.

A yogī whose mind is controlled and situated in yoga is like an unflickering lamp in a windless place.

**Texts 20–25**

Yogopasmate śītan nirōdha yogasākṣaya.

Yat chaiva ātmānaṁ pātākāmāni tuṣyati. ||20||

Suvastuṣyantiṁ kalluṇḍṛigahamahesāryaḥ.

Bṛhat yatra n chaiva śītanāḥ kaṇṭhaṁ tatra. ||21||
yatroparamate cittam niruddham yoga-sevayā/
yatra caiva atmanātmānam pasyam ātmanī tusyati//
sukham āryantikam yat tad buddhi-grāhyam atindriyam/
vetti yatra na caiva yām sthitām calati tattvatah//
yam labdhvā cāparam lābham manyate nādhikām tatah/
yasmin sthito na duḥkhena gurunāpi vicālyate//
tam vidyād duḥkha-saṁyoga-viyogam yoga-saṁjñitam/
sa niścayena yoktavyo yogo ’nirvinna-cetasā//
sañkalpa-prabhavān kāmāṁs tyaktvā sarvāṁ aṣeṣatah/
manasaiśvendriya-grāmāṁ viniyamya samantatah//
śanaiḥ śanair uparamed buddhyā dhṛti-grhitayaḥ/
ātma-saṁstham manah kṛtvā na kiñcid api cintayet//
sah—that; niścayena—with determination; yoktavyah—to be practiced; yogah—yoga; anirvinna-cetasā—with undismayed mind; saṅkalpa—cravings; prabhavān—born; kāmāṁ—material desires; tyaktvā—abandoning; sarvāṁ—all; aṣeṣatah—without exception; manasā—by the mind; eva—certainly; indriyā-grāmāṁ—the full set of senses; viniyamya—controlling; samantatah—on all sides; yatra—where; uparamate—stops; cittam—mind; niruddham—restrained; yoga-sevayā—by yoga practice; yatra—where; ca—and; eva—certainly; ātmanā—by the self; ātmanāṁ—the self; pasyan—beholds; ātmani—in the self; tusyati—becomes satisfied; sukham—joy; āryantikam—boundless; yat—which; tat—that; buddhi-grāhyam—grasped by intelligence; atindriyam—transcending the senses; vetti—knows; yatra—where; na—not; ca—and; eva—certainly; ayam—he; sthitāḥ—established; calati—wavers; tattvatah—from the truth; yam—that which; labdhvā—upon gaining; ca—also; aparam—other; lābham—gain; manyate—thinks; na—not; adhikām—greater; tataḥ—than that; yasmin—in which; sthitāḥ—situated; na—not; duḥkhena—by distress; gurunā—by difficult; api—even; vicālyate—is perturbed; tam—that; vidyāt—let it be known; duḥkha-saṁyoga—sorrow
arising from material contact; viyogam—dissolution; yoga-samjňitam—known as yoga; śanaih śanaih—step-by-step; uparamet—one should become still; buddhyā—by intelligence; dhṛti-grhītayā—carried by conviction; ātma-samsthān—established in self-realization; manah—mind; kṛtvā—making; na—not; kiñcit—anything else; api—even; cintayet—should think.

Yoga is the name given to the state of dissolution of all sorrow arising from material contact, in which the adept’s mind comes to a halt, being restrained by his disciplined practice, in which he beholds the self by the self and is thus self-satisfied, in which he comes to know the boundless joy that is beyond the senses but is apprehended by the pure intelligence of the soul, in which once established he never wavers from the truth, upon gaining which he thinks there is nothing greater to be attained, and situated in which he is not perturbed even in the face of great difficulty. To attain this a person should engage himself in yoga practice with determination, his mind always confident of success. Without exception he should abandon all cravings born of desires and control the senses on all sides by the mind. Gradually, step-by-step he should become still. With intelligence carried by conviction, his mind established in self-realization, he should cease all mental activity.

From verse 20 through 23, Kṛṣṇa speaks about asamprajñāta-samādhi. In verses 24 and 25, Kṛṣṇa speaks of the practices at the beginning and end of the yoga process: Giving up cravings is the symptom of the beginning of the process of yoga, while ceasing all mental activity is the sign of having completed it. Ceasing all mental activity is accomplished when the mind is taken over by the Absolute. Viśvanātha Cakravartī Ṭhākura comments that all these verses (Bg. 6. 20–25) are to be read together as descriptions of the condition called yoga (samādhi).

Text 26

yato yato niścalati manas cañcalam asthiram/
tatas tato niyamya itam eva vašam nayet//

yatāḥ yatāḥ—wherever; niścalati—wanders; manas—mind; cañcalam—fickle; asthiram—unsteady; tataḥ tataḥ—from there; niyamya—controlling; etat—
this; ātman—in the self; eva—certainly; vaṣam—control; nayet—should bring.

*From wherever the unsteady, fickle mind wanders, the yogi should draw it back under the control of the self.*

**Text 27**

प्रसांतमनस्तः होनं योगिनं मुख्यतत्पम्।
उपैति श्रान्तरजस्य ब्रह्मभूतमकल्पसम्॥२७॥

prasānta-manasam hy enam yoginam sukham uttamam/ upaiti sānta-rajasam brahma-bhūtam akalmaṣam//

prasānta—peaceful; manasam—mind; hi—certainly; enam—this; yoginam—yogi; sukham—happiness; uttamam—the highest; upaiti—attains; sānta-rajasam—his passion subdued; brahma-bhūtam—self-realization; akalmaṣam—free from evil.

*The yogi whose mind is truly composed, who has subdued his passion and is free from evil, attains ultimate happiness in self-realization.*

**Text 28**

युन्त्यंत्यं सदाम्यं योगी विगतकल्पसः।
शुच्येन ब्रह्मसांपर्यान्तं सुक्ममद्यनो॥२८॥

yuñjan evaṁ sadātmānam yogi vigata-kalmaṣaḥ/
sukhena brahma-saṁsparśam atyantam sukham aṣnute//

yuñjan—practicing yoga; evam—thus; sadā—constantly; ātmānam—himself; yogi—yogi; vigata—gone away; kalmaṣa—evil; sukhena—in happiness; brahma-saṁsparśam—contact with Brahman; atyantam—boundless; sukham—happiness; aṣnute—attains.

*In this way through constant practice, the yogi, free from any trace of evil, easily reaches Brahman, attaining boundless happiness.*

**Text 29**

सर्वभृत्त्वतमानं सर्वभृत्त्वानि चाम्मनि।
हेमश्व योगयुक्तमां सर्वं समस्ते॥२९॥
He who is disciplined in yoga sees the Supreme Self existing in all beings and all beings existing in the Supreme Self. He sees equally at all times.

Here Kṛṣṇa describes the vision of the jīvanmukta. He sees equally, and he sees God in everything and everything in God. Although he sees only God, this involves seeing all things in relation to him. The famous Upaniṣadic dictum sarvam khalv idam brahma, “Everything is Brahman,” hardly does away with “all things.” They exist as the energy of God. Thus the perfect yogi sees only God and his energy.

Most of the Vaiṣṇava commentators render ātmān in this verse as God (Paramātmā). Here Kṛṣṇa speaks of a further development in yogic perfection from that mentioned in the previous verse. From Brahman realization, the yogi advances to realization of the Paramātmā feature of God.

Bhaktivedanta Swami Prabhupāda renders ātman as “me,” referring to Kṛṣṇa himself. This rendering senses the emotion of Kṛṣṇa as he speaks of the perfection of yoga that culminates in devotion to himself. Indeed, the following verse seems to confirm this. As a person in love sees only his lover wherever he looks, so the highest devotee sees Kṛṣṇa all the more so, for in reality all things are but his energy. Such a devotee lives in Kṛṣṇa, beyond the necessity of the rules of yoga mentioned previously. Whatever he does is done out of love for Kṛṣṇa, and because he is so motivated no one can predict what he will do.

Text 30

ysa mām paśyati sarvatra sarvam ca mayi paśyati/
tasyāham na praṇāśyami sa ca me na praṇāśyati//

yah—whatever; mām—me; paśyati—sees; sarvatra—everywhere; sarvam—everything; ca—and; mayi—in me; paśyati—sees; tasya—of him; aham—I;
na—not; praṇaśyāmi—is lost; saḥ—he; ca—also; me—to me; na—not; praṇaśyatī—is lost.

*I am never lost to one who sees me everywhere and sees all things in me, nor is such a person ever lost to me.*

Speaking of himself, Bhagavān Śrī Kṛṣṇa describes the vision of his highest devotees: mahātmas, mahābhāgavatas. As we shall see at the end of this chapter, they are the best yogīs. Their vision is further described in the Śrimad-Bhāgavatam thus:

\[
\text{sa}r\text{va-bhūtesu yah} \text{paśyed bhagavad-bhāvam} \text{ātmanah} \text{bhūtāni bhagavaty} \text{ātmany eśa bhāgavatottamaḥ}
\]

“One who sees the soul of all souls within everything and thus everything in relation to God, realizing that existence itself is situated within God, such a person is a superlative devotee.” (ŚB. 11.2.45) The best example of this is found in the Vṛṣṇi gopīs, and it appears that Kurukṣetra Kṛṣṇa is remembering them here.

After Vṛṣṇi Kṛṣṇa disappeared from the rāsa dance on the night designated to consummate his relationship with the gopīs, their love for him in separation caused him to reappear. How did they express their love in separation? They spoke to the trees, the earth, the deer, and other forest inhabitants, inquiring from them about Kṛṣṇa’s whereabouts. They addressed them as if they were better devotees than themselves. They projected their own love onto others, even inanimate objects, bringing them and the world to life in divine love. Devoid of the tendency to criticize others, they found fault only in themselves. Whatever they saw reminded them of Kṛṣṇa. They saw him in everything, and he was captured by their love.²

Text 31

\[
\text{sa}r\text{va-bhūta-sthitam} \text{yo māṁ} \text{bhajaty ekatvam āśtitah/}
\]

\[
\text{sa}r\text{vathā} \text{vartamāno 'pi} \text{sa yogi} \text{mayi} \text{vartate/}
\]

sarva-bhūta-sthitam—situated in all beings; yah—he who; māṁ—me; bhajati—worships; ekatvam—in oneness; āśtitah—situated; sarvathā—in

². See ŚB. 10.29–33.
whatever way; vartamānah—existing; api—in spite of; sa—he; yogī—yogi; mayi—in me; vartate—lives.

That yogī who worships me in the oneness of understanding that it is I who am situated in all beings, lives in me regardless of how he acts.

Kṛṣṇa’s words sarvathā vartamānaḥ ’pi (regardless of how he acts), keep his instruction in this section focused on the highest devotion. Those who appeared to cross over dharma by stealing away in the night to meet with Kṛṣṇa, the Vraja gopīs, are the kind of yogīs Kṛṣṇa is speaking of here. They had little concern for sitting postures and breathing exercises, for they had embraced the heart of yoga, which caused them to get up to sing and dance. While the average yogī tries to think of Kṛṣṇa, they tried to forget him in the madness of divine love but could not! The techniques of mystic yoga Kṛṣṇa has spoken of apply to Kṛṣṇa’s devotees in terms of their meditation on their mantra and their japa. Singing in kirtana about Kṛṣṇa, however, is not subject to these regulations. Such chanting and subsequent dancing can be performed anywhere at any time, in all circumstances. Furthermore, such practice, while potent for the practitioner and an outpouring of love for the perfected devotee, simultaneously benedicts others.

Arjuna thought, “If such a devotional yogī sees Kṛṣṇa in everything, how does he relate to ‘others’?” To his query Kṛṣṇa responds, speaking of his devotee’s compassion, the overflowing of the vessel of his love.

Text 32

आत्मपूपम्येन सर्वत्र समं परस्य यो योध्जुनः।
सुखम् या यदि या दुःखम् स योगी परस्यो मनः॥ ३२॥

ātmapūpamyena sarvatra samam paśyati yo ’ṛjuna/
sukham vā yadi vā duḥkhham sa yogī paramo mataḥ//

ātma—self; aupamyena—by comparison; sarvatra—everywhere; samam—equally; paśyati—sees; yah—he who; arjuna—O Arjuna; sukham—pleasure; vā—or; yadi—if; vā—or; duḥkhham—pain; saḥ—that; yogī—yogi; paramah—best; mataḥ—considered.

The yogī who measures the pain and pleasure of others as if it were his own, O Arjuna, is considered to be the best of all.
Krṣṇa’s devotees possess such compassionate hearts that they broadcast his holy name and virtuous deeds wherever they go. In the words of the gopīs, they are the most munificent welfare workers. They identify with the joys and sorrows of others as if they were their own, and thus they tirelessly canvass to lift others beyond the duality of joy and sorrow by showering them with the immortal nectar of hari-kathā. To see another’s sorrow as one’s own is to see through the eyes of God, for all souls are eternally related with God, as parts are to the whole. Mature yoga is recognizable by the outward symptoms indicated in this verse.

Here we find the practical application of yoga in the world, what yoga practice will do to improve the world. Although this and the previous verses in this section refer to advanced yogīs, it is they whom practitioners should try to emulate. Practitioners should strive to follow this golden rule of yoga. Only when practitioners do so will their practice of meditation be effective. How we deal with others and the world in everyday life will have considerable impact on our attempts at meditation. In Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam it is mentioned that without cultivating this outlook, one’s devotional practices are performed in vain. Therein Krṣṇa’s incarnation Kapiladeva instructs his mother thus: “I am present in every living entity as the Supersoul. If someone neglects or disregards that Supersoul everywhere and engages himself in the worship of the Deity in the temple, that is simply imitation. One who worships the Deity of Godhead in the temple but does not know that God, as Paramātmā, is situated in every living entity’s heart, must be in ignorance and is compared to one who offers oblations unto ashes.” Krṣṇa himself instructed Arjuna along these lines earlier in the Gītā (Bg. 5.25): “Those who are self-controlled and live for the welfare of all beings (sarva-bhūta-hite ratāḥ) attain brahma-nirvāṇa.”

Verses 29 through 33 foreshadow Krṣṇa’s concluding statement on yoga in verse 47. Finally, as we near the end of the first six chapters that constitute the yoga psychology of the Gītā, we arrive at the highest ideal. After describing the entire process of self-realization, discussing all its different levels of self-control and experience, sthita-prajña, brahma-bhūta, brahma-nirvāṇa, and so on, we come to bhakti and Krṣṇa himself. Krṣṇa has been revealing himself little by little throughout these six chapters almost at regular intervals (Bg. 2.61, 3.30, 4.35, 5.29, 6.14–15). Now it is definite—he is the one we have to see everywhere and in everything. As

3. See SB. 10.31.9.
he emphatically concludes at the end of this chapter, the means to do so is bhakti.

As Kṛṣṇa’s mind floods with thoughts of his devotees, Arjuna asks him about the practicality of that which he had proposed earlier. Inasmuch as controlling the mind is central to the system of yoga that Kṛṣṇa has explained, Arjuna expressed his reservation, knowing well from his own experience the restless nature of the mind. After all, his mind had been reeling at the thought of doing battle with his own kinsmen.

Text 33

अर्जुन उवाच
yādasya yoga-stvam prōktaṁ sāmyena madhusūdana/
etasyāham na paśyāmi cañcalatvāt sthitim sthirām//
arjuna uvāca—Arjuna said; yaḥ ayam—this which; yogah—yoga; tvayā—by you; proktah—described; sāmyena—with evenness of mind; madhusūdana—O killer of Madhu; etasya—of this; aham—I; na—not; paśyāmi—see; cañcalatvāt—from unsteadiness; sthitim—situation; sthirām—permanent.

Arjuna said: O Madhusūdana, the system of yoga you have described that calls for evenness of mind does not appear realistic, because of the mind’s unsteady nature.

Arjuna’s reservation is partly related to his lack of inclination for the techniques of yoga, such as breath control (prānāyāma) and other such devices that Kṛṣṇa has described. Being at heart a devotee, he is not overly inclined to the techniques of mystic yoga and its goal of union with the Paramātmā. He is, however, disposed to the central theme of yoga: thinking of Kṛṣṇa and loving him as Bhagavān. However, actually loving Kṛṣṇa involves passing through the stages of yogic attainment discussed thus far. This is an enormous undertaking, and Arjuna is understandably overwhelmed by the task before him.

Arjuna next attempts to justify his doubts and gives an example to further illustrate them.
Text 34

For the mind is so fickle, disturbing, powerful, and obstinate, O Kṛṣṇa, that I think that subduing it is as difficult as trying to control the wind.

Use of the word hi (certainly) in this verse indicates that Arjuna’s depiction of the mind is something that is universally experienced. Arjuna’s reservations are thus well founded. Yoga is not for the squeamish. It is no easy task for Arjuna to look upon his own brothers and Duryodhana, the leader of the opposition, with impartiality. He will have to die an ego death to live in this reality, and this is much more difficult than dying in battle. One’s mind is his most formidable enemy.

The mind is not only fickle (cañcalam), it also disturbs (pramāthi) the other senses. Furthermore, it is powerful (bala-vat) and obstinate (drḍham). Śaṅkara has compared it to an octopus. Viśvanātha Cakravartī comments that the mind is so powerful that it does not care for the counsel of intelligence.

While Arjuna speaks here of the predicament, he also indicates the solution by invoking Kṛṣṇa’s holy name. Kṛṣṇa means he who removes (karṣati) even the greatest faults in his devotees—reactions to evil deeds for which there is no other remedial measure. There is no more effective means recommended anywhere in the sacred literature for conquering the mind than invoking the name of Kṛṣṇa. Here Arjuna has done so without thinking due to his natural position in devotion. In doing so, he indicates his natural love for the heart of yoga, the very principle of spiritual life, in relation to which the various techniques mentioned are details subject to modification in accordance with time and circumstance.
śrī-bhagavān uvāca

asaṁśayam mahā-bāho mano durnigrahaṁ calam/
abhyaśena tu kaunteya vairāgyena ca grhyate/

śrī-bhagavān uvāca—The Lord of Śrī said; asaṁśayam—undoubtedly; mahā-bāho—O mighty-armed one; mano—the mind; durnigrahaṁ—difficult to control; calam—fickle; abhyaśena—by practice; tu—but; kaunteya—O son of Kuntī; vairāgyena—by detachment; ca—also; grhyate—is controlled.

The Lord of Śrī said: No doubt, O mighty-armed one, the fickle mind is difficult to control. However, O son of Kuntī, it can be controlled by practice and detachment.

Kṛṣṇa sympathizes with Arjuna in this verse, and he appreciates Arjuna’s natural devotion. Thus he addresses Arjuna encouragingly as mahā-bāho, “mighty-armed.” Through this address Kṛṣṇa implies that by his grace Arjuna will be successful in his battle with the obstinate mind. He underscores this with the word asaṁśayam (without doubt). Both God’s grace and great effort on our part are required for successful yoga practice. Kṛṣṇa’s grace is further implied here when he identifies Arjuna as his dear relative, kaunteya. Surely for such a dear one Kṛṣṇa will be merciful. Thus one should try to endear oneself to Kṛṣṇa. This is real yoga.

The relationship between practice and grace is not always clear. Through grace one is empowered to practice, and by practice one secures God’s grace. In Viśvanātha Cakravartī’s comments on verse 41 of chapter 2 we find that the grace of the guru that is so essential for success is equated with wholeheartedly embracing the practices he outlines.

Here Kṛṣṇa further recommends that practice (abhyāsa) and detachment (vairāgya) are essential if one is to conquer the mind. By detaching the mind from thoughts of sense indulgence, one damns the river of its perpetual flow. By yoga practice the sādhaka diverts the mind’s current in the direction of God. This practice involves not only spiritual practices relative to one’s chosen path, such as hearing and chanting about Kṛṣṇa, associating with saintly persons, hearing the scripture, venerating the Deity, living in a
sacred place, and other such forms of sādhana, but practicing to steady the
mind itself in samādhi. One must practice restraining the mind. Spiritual
practice, sādhana, is the emphasis of this entire chapter. There is no replace-
ment for spiritual practice. Detachment involves a lifestyle in which one
abstains from those things that tend to disturb the mind. Without such
detachment, one's practice will be like pouring water in a leaking bucket.
Whatever gains are made are simultaneously lost rather than accumulated.

Text 36

I agree that yoga is difficult to attain for one whose mind is out of control,
but for one whose mind is under control and who strives by the proper
method, it is possible.

Krṣṇa agrees with Arjuna that yoga is difficult to achieve for one with an
uncontrolled mind. By this he means to say that one cannot attain yoga
if one has not cultivated detachment and engaged regularly in spiritual
practice as prescribed in the previous verse. The proper method (upāyataḥ)
mentioned in this verse refers to repeated efforts (sādhan-bhāyatvam).

Hearing Krṣṇa stress practice and detachment, Arjuna wonders about
the fate of one who fails in his practice.

Text 37

arjuna uvāca

ayatiḥ śraddhayopeto yogāc calita-mānasah/
aprāpya yoga-saṁsiddhim kāṁ gatim krṣṇa gacchatil//
Arjuna said: O Kṛṣṇa, what destination befalls one who, although possessed of faith, is nevertheless uncontrolled? What happens to one whose mind has fallen away from yoga practice without having achieved perfection?

These are my doubts, O Kṛṣṇa! Please cut through them, for other than you, no one is capable of destroying them completely.
Arjuna’s question is thoughtful. Should a person leave the *karma-mārga*, he will not attain heaven or material success in the next life. That is fine if in doing so he embraces *yoga* in pursuit of liberation. However, should he be unsuccessful in *yoga* practice, what will his position be then? It would seem that he attains neither heaven nor liberation, neither material nor spiritual perfection.

Arjuna has implicit faith in Kṛṣṇa, and Kṛṣṇa responds to his sincere inquiry with great affection.

**Text 40**

Śrībhagavān uvāca

*pårtha* naiveha nāmutra vināśas tasya vidyate/

na hi kalyāṇa-kṛt kaścid durgatim tāta gacchati//

śrī-bhagavān uvāca—*the Lord of Śrī* said; *pårtha*—O son of Prthā; *na*—not; *eva*—certainly; *iha*—in this world; *na*—not; *amutra*—there in heaven; *vināśah*—destruction; *tasya*—his; *vidyate*—exists; *na*—not; *hi*—certainly; *kalyāṇa-kṛt*—virtuous; *kaścit*—anyone; *durgatim*—to misfortune; *tāta*—my dear friend; *gacchati*—goes.

The Lord of Śrī said: O son of Prthā, neither here in this world nor in the next is he vanquished. Anyone who is sincere, my dear friend, walks not the road of misfortune.

Here the all-compassionate Kṛṣṇa replies, his heart going out to Arjuna and all of his devotees. His assurance is that “sincerity is invincible,” *na hi kalyāṇa-kṛt kaścid durgatim tāta gacchati*. Anyone who does good is never overcome by evil. With this assurance one should practice *yoga*, difficult though it may be. The use of the word *tāta* indicates great affection on the part of Kṛṣṇa, who speaks here as fatherly guru to his son-like disciple. Although Kṛṣṇa’s words are relevant for *yoga* practitioners in general, this verse is intended for his devotees in particular.

**Text 41–42**

प्राय: पूण्यकुलां लोकाणां उपिष्ठ शाश्वती: समा: ।

हुँचीना श्रीपता गंहे योगमहोभिज्ञवेत् ॥ ४१॥
prāpya punya-krātām lokān usitvā sāsvatih samāḥ/
śucināṁ śrimatāṁ gehe yoga-bhraśto 'bhijāyate//
athan yogināṁ eva kule bhavati dhimatāṁ/
etad dhi durlabhataram loke janma yad idrśam//

prāpya—after achieving; punya-krātām—of those who performed pious activities; lokān—planets; usitvā—after dwelling; sāsvatih—many; samāḥ—years; śucināṁ—of the pious; śri-matām—of the aristocratic; gehe—in the house; yoga-bhraśtaḥ—one who has fallen from the path of yoga; abhijāyate—is born; atha vā—or; yogināṁ—of yogīs; eva—certainly; kule—in the family; bhavati—is born; dhi-matām—of the learned; etat—this; hi—certainly; durlabha-taram—very rare; loke—in this world; janma—birth; yat—that which; idrśam—such.

*He who has fallen from the path of yoga attains heaven and dwells there for what seems an eternity. Then he is born again in a pious or aristocratic family. Or he may be born directly into a family of wise transcendentalists. Rare is such a birth in this world.*

Contrary to Arjuna’s thinking, Kṛṣṇa reveals that the unsuccessful yogi attains both material happiness and eventually liberation. Here we are reminded of Kṛṣṇa’s first instruction on the nature of yoga-dharma found in chapter 2 (Bg. 2.40), wherein he taught that efforts on the path of yoga never go in vain. The immature yogi or devotee attains material heaven where he is free to enjoy without karmic repercussion that sense pleasure that distracted him from his practice. This, however, does not include distractions that lead the practitioner off the path—deviations from pious, scripturally regulated life. It refers to distractions such as the desire to visit heaven itself. When the neophyte yogi has exhausted this propensity, he again takes birth on earth in a family that provides him the economic freedom or pious situation from which to pick up where he left off in his spiritual practice.

The advanced yogi referred to in verse 42 who falls from his practice need not go to heaven to exhaust his enjoying propensity. He takes birth directly in a family that is involved in yoga practice, receiving instruction in yoga from his very birth. Both the mature and immature yogīs are assisted
by efforts spent on the spiritual path, as the yogic tendency again asserts itself in their life. Kṛṣṇa affirms this in the following verses.

Text 43

Thereupon he regains the yogic intelligence cultivated in his previous life and once again strives for perfection, O son of Kuru.

Text 44

Due to his prior practice, he is carried along spontaneously. Even one who merely inquires about yoga transcends the ritualistic recitation of the Vedas.

Text 45
prayatnāt—from persevering; yatamānah—restrained; tu—but; yogī—the yogī; samśuddha—completely cleansed; kilbiṣah—evil; aneka—many; janma—birth; samsiddhāḥ—perfected; tataḥ—thereafter; yāti—attains; parāṁ—supreme; gatim—goal.

In this way, by persevering and restraining his mind, the yogī, completely cleansed of all evil tendencies and perfected through many births, finally attains the supreme goal.

Text 46
तपस्विभ्यो 'धिको योगी ज्ञानिभ्यो 'पि मतो 'धिकाः/ कर्मिब्यो 'धिको योगी तस्माद योगी भवार्जुनः//
tapasvibhyo ’dhiko yogī jñānibhyo ’pi mato ’dhikah/
karmibhyaś cādhiko yogī tasmād yogī bhavārjuna//
tapasvibhyah—than the ascetics; adhikah—superior; yogī—the yogī; jñānibhyah—than the jñānis; api—also; mataḥ—considered; adhikah—superior; karmibhyah—than the ritualists; ca—also; adhikah—superior; yogī—yogī; tasmāt—therefore; yogī—yogī; bhava—be; arjuna—O Arjuna.

The yogī is superior to the ascetic, superior to the jñāni, and superior to the ritualist as well. Therefore, Arjuna, be a yogī!

Here Kṛṣṇa summarizes his teaching thus far: “Become a yogī, Arjuna.” He addresses his disciple as Arjuna, indicating his purity. In the concluding verse of this chapter, Kṛṣṇa tells Arjuna that of all types of yogīs, his devotee is the best.

Text 47
योगिनाथं सर्वं मद्गतेनात्मरामना ।
श्रद्धावान् भजने यो मां स मे युक्तमो मन: ||47||
yoginām api sarvesāṁ mad-gatenaṁ atmanā/
śraddhāvān bhajate yo māṁ sa me yuktatamām mataḥ//
yoginām—of yogīs; api—also; sarvesāṁ—of all; mad-gatena—abiding in me; antah-ātmanā—within himself; śraddhā-vān—with full faith; bhajate—worships; yah—he who; māṁ—to me; saḥ—he; me—to me; yukt-tamaḥ—the best yogī; mataḥ—is considered.
Of all yogis, he who abides in me with full faith, worshipping me in devotion, is most intimately united with me and considered the best of all.

After the considerable discussion of yoga that began in the second chapter (Bg. 2.39), Kṛṣṇa concludes his yoga discourse with this verse. Here he places his devotees on the highest rung of the ladder of yoga. Devotion to Kṛṣṇa is the last word on yoga. He has indicated this throughout the first six chapters and at the end of chapters 2 through 6 he has indicated that it is bhakti that Arjuna is to attain if he is to be the person Kṛṣṇa wants him to be. The perfectly integrated person that Kṛṣṇa has been teaching Arjuna about is his devotee. He is dutiful and responsible in all his actions. His actions are informed by higher knowledge, and he has realized the fruit of this detached action in the form of inner wisdom. His action is integrated with knowledge, and thus he is renounced even while acting. He is absorbed in meditation on God, and his heart swells with love for God and love for all beings. He has realized the cessation of material suffering, and he knows God as Brahman, Paramātmā, and Bhagavān. Arjuna is spellbound at what it means to be Kṛṣṇa’s devotee!

As the first six chapters describing the psychology of the ideal person come to a close, Kṛṣṇa turns next to theology and a discussion of different types of devotees.
Text 1

śrī-bhagavān uvāca
mayy āsakta-manāḥ pārtha yogam yuñjan mad-āśrayah/
asamāyam samagram mām yathā jñāsyasi tat chṛṇu//

śrī-bhagavān uvāca—the Lord of Śrī said; mayi—to me; āsakta-manāḥ—mind attached; pārtha—O son of Prthūṣaṅga; yogam—yoga; yuñjan—practicing; mad-āśrayah—taking refuge in me; asamāyam—without doubt; samagram—completely; mām—me; yathā—how; jñāsyasi—you will know; tat—that; cṛṇu—listen.

The Lord of Śrī said: Listen, O Pārtha, how with mind attached to me, practicing yoga and taking refuge in me, you can know me completely without doubt.

Having concluded the sixth chapter by emphasizing devotion to himself, Kṛṣṇa continues speaking about devotion as the seventh chapter opens. While knowledge of the self (tvam, you) is revealed in the first six chapters, knowledge of that with which the self is to be united in love (tat, his) is revealed in chapters 7 through 12. Thus the famous Upaniṣadic dictum tat tvam asi, “you are his,” is explained.¹

¹ This phrase, usually rendered “you are that,” can also be translated “you are his.” In this rendering it indicates a union between self and God in love, wherein both self and God continue to exist individually, yet united in purpose.
When Kṛṣṇa told Arjuna to fix his mind on him, Arjuna naturally wondered how one does so. Sensing his mental question, Kṛṣṇa speaks without waiting for Arjuna to ask, enthused to be speaking directly about devotion, by which he can be known completely. In the previous six chapters, knowledge of the individual spiritual self’s likeness to Brahman and the nature of the Brahman and Paramātma feature of the Absolute have been described. Now in this chapter, Kṛṣṇa will discuss the Bhagavān feature of Godhead.

Bhagavān is the personal, lovable aspect of Godhead, replete with eternal form, abode, associates, and pastimes. Reality exists, is cognizant of itself, and has a purpose. As Brahman, Godhead exists. As Paramātma, cognizance comes into play, and as Bhagavān, a cognizant existence plays. This play, the inner life of the Absolute, is the līlā of Bhagavān, which overflows into the world of our experience from time to time when Bhagavān enters this plane. Knowing this feature of Godhead amounts to knowing him completely (samagram).

Knowledge of Bhagavān, which includes all of his saktis, is required if one is to practice the devotional yoga Kṛṣṇa characterized as the best of all at the end of the previous chapter. His primary sakti was introduced in the fourth chapter (Bg. 4.6). His intermediate and secondary saktis are introduced in this chapter.

Complete (samagram) knowing is the knowledge that is inherent in love. When one loves, one knows what to do. When one loves God, one knows everything one needs to know. This knowing is characterized further as freeing one from doubt (asamsayam). Doubt is a function of the mind. When it is overridden, we are able to move freely. Intellect driven movement suggests surety, yet following its lead amounts to proceeding with caution. It is not the movement of the heart. Here Kṛṣṇa speaks of the homeland of the heart, and a life in which mind and intellect are subordinate to one’s heart. In this land, one does not doubt the virtue of serving God, but questions how one can serve him best in any given circumstance.

How does one reach this plane? One begins by hearing, indicated here by the words tat śīnu. Kṛṣṇa says further, yogaṁ yuñjan, one attains comprehensive knowing in love through yoga practice. Devotional yoga has three developmental stages: devotion in practice (sādhana-bhakti), devotion in ecstasy (bhāva-bhakti), and devotion in love (prema-bhakti). Here Kṛṣṇa speaks of devotion in practice. He is speaking, however, of the final stage

2. See Brs. 1.2.1.
of sādhana-bhakti, invoking as he has the word āsakti, spiritual attachment. Āsakti is the stage of practice in which the practitioner’s mind is attached to Kṛṣṇa, the object of devotion (mayy āsakta-manāḥ). At this stage, due to intense attachment, one’s spiritual identity is glimpsed as one enters devotion in ecstasy, taking refuge in Kṛṣṇa alone.

Kṛṣṇa next eulogizes the topics discussed in this chapter in order to stress their importance to Arjuna.

Text 2

Without holding anything back, I shall expound on this knowledge and its realization, understanding which there remains nothing further to be known in this world.

Here jñāna refers to theoretical knowledge derived from scripture. Vijñānam is the practical wisdom that constitutes realization of the theory. Generally, the latter follows the former. Theoretical knowledge is required, and by applying this knowledge practically, one gains wisdom.

Regarding the sacred literature, it is said that nothing exists outside the mind of Vyāsa, its compiler. However, possessing theoretical knowledge alone does not make one's knowledge complete. It is the realization of this knowledge that leaves nothing further to be known.

The knowledge that Kṛṣṇa will explain is knowledge of himself, Bhagavān, and not knowledge of lesser manifestations of the Absolute. This is implied in his willingness to speak without reservation (ašeṣataḥ). Knowledge relating to the nature of the self is more confidential than knowledge of how to prosper materially through religious adherence. More confidential still is knowledge relating to the personality of the Absolute. This knowledge also has two divisions, that of Bhagavān’s opulence and
that of his sweetness. Viśvanātha Cakravarti Thākura comments that both of these are discussed in this chapter, and thus the words ājñāna and viññānam in this verse can also be understood to refer to these two aspects of Bhagavān.

Next Kṛṣṇa further glorifies this knowledge by addressing the rarity of its attainment.

**Text 3**

Among many thousands of men, one may strive for perfection, and among those who attain perfection, only a very rare soul knows me in truth.

Although in one sense everyone pursues perfection on some level, very few people are interested in striving for spiritual perfection systematically in accordance with the sacred literature and advice of saints. One reason for lackluster enthusiasm among those who are aware of the path is the rarity of success.

In this verse, Kṛṣṇa makes a startling point: even among liberated souls (siddhānām) very few know him in truth. According to Śrīdhara Swāmī, the spirit of this verse is that “even among thousands of those who are perfect through knowledge of the self, only one perchance, through my grace, knows me in truth as the Supreme Self.” Kṛṣṇa, Mukunda, the giver of liberation, stands above liberation, and if he should grace the liberated, their perfection knows perfection.

Knowing Kṛṣṇa as param brahma is a post-liberated realization. The example of Śukadeva Goswāmī from Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam serves to illustrate this important point. Although he was a liberated siddha who had realized Brahman, Śukadeva became attracted to Kṛṣṇa’s form, qualities, and lilā. What then is the nature of Kṛṣṇa? This question was touched on in the
fourth chapter during the tangential discussion of the *avatāra*. It will be more fully addressed in this chapter.

Having aroused Arjuna’s interest, Kṛṣṇa next speaks about himself in the following verses in terms of his *śaktis* that make up the material world. First he speaks of his secondary power (*māyā-śakti*) and then his intermediate power (*jīva-śakti*). He does so not with a view to explain these *śaktis* in any detail, but to define their ontological status. Further discussion of them will be taken up in chapter 13.

**Text 4**

```
भूमिर अपो ‘नालो वायुह क्रम्य मनो बुद्धिः एवं कल/
   अहंकार इत्याय मेवा भिन्नः प्रकृतिः एव सादाह।।

bhūmir āpo ‘nalo vāyuḥ kham mano buddhir eva ca/
     ahaṁkāra itiyam me bhinnā prakṛtir aṣṭadhā।।
```

*bhūmih*—earth; *āpah*—water; *analah*—fire; *vāyuḥ*—air; *kham*—ether; *manah*—mind; *buddhiḥ*—intellect; *eva*—certainly; *ca*—and; *ahaṁkārah*—egoism; *iti*—thus; *iyam*—this; *me*—my; *bhinnā*—separated; *prakṛtih*—nature; *aṣṭadhā*—eightfold.

**Earth, water, fire, air, ether, mind, intellect, and egoism—this material nature of mine is so divided eightfold.**

Here Kṛṣṇa describes in brief the makeup of matter. Matter constitutes one of his *śaktis*. In the next verse he will refer back to this *śakti*, describing it as his inferior nature or secondary power. Inside each of the elements mentioned are their subtle origins.

Earth, water, fire, air, and ether are the five gross elements known as *mahā-bhūtas*. Included within these five are sixteen transformations: the five knowledge-acquiring senses (nose, tongue, eyes, tactile sense, and ears), the five working senses (hands, legs, genitals, the organ of speech, and the organ of evacuation), the eleventh internal sense (the mind), and the five sense objects (manifestations of smell, taste, sight, touch, and sound).

Mind, intelligence, and egoism are the three subtle elements mentioned in this verse. If we count the mind among the senses, both working senses because the mind directs them and the senses of perception because they inform the mind, the word *manah* (mind) in this verse appears unnecessary. The mind itself is included within the uncompounded elements
(mahā-bhūtas) as the eleventh sense. However, here manah can be understood to refer to pradhāna, the unmanifest stage of the three modes of material nature, on account of its being correlated with the word prakṛti in this verse. From pradhāna, the mahat-tattva, or great intellect, manifests. Mahat-tattva in turn gives rise to ahaṅkāra, or ego, the principle of material identification, which in turn is the subtle cause of the sense objects and mind/senses. After the sense objects manifest, the necessity for the senses to manifest arises.

Thus in the form of a sūtra Kṛṣṇa has described his secondary power that makes up material nature and its divisions. He has also indicated that the material nature itself is separated from himself (bhīma prakṛtih). This is the explanation of Bhaktivedanta Swami Prabhupāda. Separated means that it acts as if independent of God once God sets it in motion, much like a tape recording acts independently of the person whose words it has recorded, while being wholly dependent on him at the same time.

The world as we experience it, however, is not merely matter. Thus Kṛṣṇa next describes his jīva-śakti, which is of the nature of consciousness.

Text 5

अपरायंतमन्वान्यं प्रकृति विद्धि मे पराम्।

जीवभूतं महाभूतं महाभूतं ययेद् धार्यति जगत्॥५॥

apareyam itas tv anyāṁ prakṛtiṁ viddhi me parām/

jīva-bhūtāṁ mahā-bāho yayedam dhāryate jagat//

aparā—inferior; iyam—this; itah—here; tu—but; anyām—another; prakṛtim—energy; viddhi—know; me—my; param—superior; jīva-bhūtām—consisting of souls; mahā-bāho—O mighty-armed one; yayā—by which; idam—this; dhāryate—is sustained; jagat—the material world.

However, other than this, O mighty-armed one, you should know that I have another, superior nature consisting of souls, by which this universe is sustained.

Material nature is inferior to consciousness. It is that which is experienced, as opposed to that which experiences. Matter is insentient, while consciousness is life itself.

The jīva-śakti consisting of individual souls is God’s intermediate power. It is similar in nature to God and dissimilar to matter. It is at the same time
dissimilar to God in that it is prone to being deluded by the influence of material nature. How can the jīva-śakti be deluded by material nature if it is superior to matter? Such is the power of illusion. Even while souls, units of consciousness, sustain the material world by their presence, due to their association with matter they think their existence is dependent on material conditions.

Kṛṣṇa has described his intermediate power here as jīva-bhūta. In using the singular, he refers to the entire class of individual souls. The source of both the individual souls and matter is Kṛṣṇa himself, as he affirms in the next verse.

Text 6

You should understand that all beings are born of these two powers and that I am the origin and destroyer of the entire universe.

All beings as we know them in this world are a product of Kṛṣṇa’s two saktis, secondary and intermediate. They are a combination of consciousness and matter, be they men, women, animals, or plants. Souls in touch with matter animate material nature and identify themselves with the particular gross shape and subtle mental condition that matter surrounds them with. Although unborn and eternal, souls take birth in terms of material life when in connection with matter.

Kṛṣṇa will describe his intermediate and secondary śaktis in greater detail in chapter 13. In this verse Kṛṣṇa mentions these śaktis in the course of stressing his point thus far: they are the world as we know it, they belong to him, and they are thus subordinate to him.
mattaḥ parataram nānyat kiñcid asti dhanañjaya/
maya sarvam idam protaṁ sūtre mani-gaṇā iva//

mattaḥ—than me; para-taram—superior; na—not; anyat kiñcit—anything else; asti—there is; dhanañjaya—O winner of wealth; mayi—in me; sarvam—all; idam—this; protam—strung; sūtre—on a thread; mani-gaṇāḥ—pearls; iva—like.

Nothing whatsoever is superior to me, O winner of wealth. Everything rests on me like pearls strung on a thread.

This is one of a number of statements in the Gītā in which Kṛṣṇa asserts his supreme position. According to Śaṅkara, Kṛṣṇa is a manifestation of what he terms saguṇa Brahman, Brahman with material qualities. He considers the so-called saguṇa manifestation of Brahman as Kṛṣṇa to be an inferior manifestation of the Absolute, which in its highest expression is formless and without qualities (nirguṇa Brahman). In his Vedānta commentary, Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa asks sarcastically, “When Kṛṣṇa says, ‘O Dhanañjaya! No one is higher than myself,’ was Śrī Kṛṣṇa saguṇa or nirguṇa?”3 If he was saguṇa, Kṛṣṇa must have been mistaken when he said that there is nothing superior to himself. If he was nirguṇa, we must understand nirguṇa to indicate that God, Kṛṣṇa, has no material qualities. His form is spiritual, and thus nothing like material forms which are ephemeral.

Kṛṣṇa has explained that he is the world and he is the cause of the world. He is the world inasmuch as the effect is present in the cause. Moreover, he has entered into this effect and is now standing before his friend Arjuna in order to explain this metaphysical reality. Thus Kṛṣṇa’s example: he is the invisible thread that has entered the world and is its ultimate support, as a thread strings pearls together and supports them. He is invisible in that it is not apparent that he, as Arjuna’s charioteer, is the support of all existence. Thus knowing this is required if we are to understand the worshippable nature of humanlike Kṛṣṇa. Who would have thought him to be so?

After a forced effort to explain this verse in support of Adwaita Vedānta, Madhusūdana Sarasvatī admits the possibility of other interpretations. Without mentioning names, he appears to refer to Vaiṣṇava Vedānta. He comments that Kṛṣṇa’s example of pearls on a thread refers to the fact that

3. See Baladeva’s Govinda Bhāṣya 1.1.10. Baladeva renders gatiḥ sāmānyat, “Saguṇa Brahman is not taught anywhere in the Vedas, which uniformly describe only nirguṇa Brahman.”
the world rests on Krṣṇa, whereas it does not explain how he is also its material cause. He then suggests that a better example would have been “like gold earrings in relation to gold,” as gold both supports and is the cause of gold earrings. However, this example illustrates the Advaita position of vivarta-vāda, in which the Absolute is the material cause by way of the Absolute’s appearing to be transformed into the material world, just as a piece of gold becomes a gold earring. This is opposed to the Vaishnava position of parimāma-vāda, in which the world is considered to be a transformation of God’s sakti, rather than an apparent transformation of the Absolute itself. Although Madhusūdana Sarasvatī’s criticism of the limitation of Krṣṇa’s example is valid, Krṣṇa has already described himself as the independent cause of the material world in the previous verse. He is not transformed in the course of its manifestation, which is the interaction of his intermediate and secondary çaktis.

In the next five verses, Krṣṇa gives examples of how he may be thought of as the essence of all things, their very support. This follows the reasoning of this verse, in which Krṣṇa has said that he, along with being the one who creates the world and destroys it, is its support as well.

Text 8

raso ’ham apsu kaunteya prabhāsmi çaçi-sūryayo˙/
pranavah sarva-vedeßu çabda˙ khe paurußam nrṣu//

rasah—taste; aham—I; apsu—in water; kaunteya—O son of Kuntī; prabhā—the shine; asmi—I am; çaçi-sūryayo˙—of the moon and the sun; pranavah—the syllable om; sarva—all; vedeßu—in the Vedas; sabdaḥ—sound; khe—in the ether; paurußam—manhood; nrṣu—in men.

O son of Kuntī, I am the taste in water, the shine in the moon and the sun, the sacred syllable (om) in all the Vedas, the sound in ether, and humanity’s drive to achieve.

As the tanmātras (sense objects) of taste and sound, Krṣṇa is present everywhere in water and ether. The radiance of the sun and moon are inseparable from them. Similarly, the sacred syllable om pervades the Vedas, as all Vedic mantras are prefaced by om. In this five-verse section Krṣṇa speaks of being
one with all things while simultaneously being different from them as well. We can talk about humanity and we can talk about its drive to achieve, yet the two are at the same time inseparable. Viśvanātha Cakravartī comments, *pauruṣaṁ saphala udyama-viṣeṣa eva manusya-sāra*: “Pauruṣaṁ is the drive to achieve that is the distinguishing feature of humanity.” Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa comments that this *pauruṣam* is that by which humanity has its existence, and this is why it represents Kṛṣṇa.

**Text 9**

punyo gandhaḥ prthivyāṁ ca tejaḥ cāsmi vibhāvasau/
jīvanam sarva-bhūteṣu tapaḥ cāsmi tapasviṣu//

*punyah*—original; *gandhaḥ*—fragrance; *prthivyāṁ*—in the earth; *ca*—also; *tejaḥ*—light; *ca*—also; *asmi*—I am; *vibhāvasau*—in the fire; *jīvanam*—life; *sarva*—all; *bhūteṣu*—in the living being; *tapah*—austerity; *ca*—also; *asmi*—I am; *tapasviṣu*—in the ascetics.

*I am the original fragrance in earth, the light in fire, the life in all living beings, and the austerity of ascetics.*

Kṛṣṇa describes fragrance as *punyah* (original, pure). By this, he refers to the fragrance of the earth in its pristine state, before it is polluted by the misdeeds of humans. Viśvanātha Cakravartī comments that here *ca* (and) following *prthivyāṁ* refers to the tanmātras mentioned in the previous verse.

Kṛṣṇa is the light in fire. The use of *ca* (also) following this description indicates heat as well as light, as warmth is associated with light. *Ca* can also be construed to imply the cooling effect of air that comforts those afflicted by excessive heat.

Kṛṣṇa is the life of all living beings, whose life is service to something, be it a manifestation of Kṛṣṇa’s lower nature for the materialist or himself for the enlightened. That which sustains the ascetic, his austerity, is Kṛṣṇa as well.

**Text 10**

वीजः मा सर्वभूतानां विहित पार्थ सनातनम्।
बुद्धिविर्दिष्टपतामस्मि तेजसः ज्ञितविनामहम्॥१०॥

Vījṛṁ mā sarvabhūtānāṁ vihīta pārtho sanañānam. Buddhi-viruddhatāmam smi tejasā jñitaviniham. ||10||
bījam mām sarva-bhūtānāṃ viddhi pārtha sanātanam/
   buddhir buddhimatām asmi tejas tejasvinām aham//

bījam—the seed; mām—me; sarva-bhūtānāṃ—of all beings; viddhi—know;
pārtha—O son of Pṛthā; sanātanam—primeval; buddhiḥ—intelligence;
buddhi-matām—of the intelligent; asmi—I am; tejah—prowess; tejasvinām—
of the powerful; aham—I am.

O Pārtha, know me to be the primeval seed of all beings, the wisdom of
the wise, and the splendor of the splendid.

Text 11

balaḥ balavatāḥ caḥ kāma-rāga-vivarjitam/
   dharma-aviruddho bhūteṣu kāmo ’smi bharatarṣabha//

balaḥ—strength; bala-vatāḥ—of the strong; ca—and; aham—I am; kāma—
desire; rāga—attachment; vivarjitam—devoid; dharma-aviruddhaḥ—not
against religious principles; bhūteṣu—in beings; kāmaḥ—love; asmi—I am;
bharata-ṛṣabha—O best of the Bhāratas.

Of the strong I am strength devoid of desire and attachment, and I am
love that is righteous, O best of the Bhāratas.

The strength mentioned here is of the nature of purity (sattva). Kāma
(desire) represents the material influence of passion (rajas), and rāga (at-
tachment) indicates the material influence of ignorance (tamas). Passion
is active, whereas attachment is passive, being synonymous with the thirst
for more of an object already attained.

In the least, Kṛṣṇa refers here to the strength necessary to maintain
one’s body and mind for the sake of performing one’s religious duty. It is
strength devoid of desire and attachment born of the lower influence of
material nature, in which there is no scope for spiritual advancement. In
the optimum, Kṛṣṇa speaks of the strength of those who have turned their
back on the illusion of material life.

Kṛṣṇa also identifies himself with love that is in accordance with script-
tural law. While love by nature is lawless, Kṛṣṇa advocates the taming of
material love. The effect of this is the awakening of the soul and its prospect for love on the spiritual plane, real love arising out of self-sacrifice. Although love is lawless, in material life its unbridled pursuit amounts to ignoring obvious laws of nature, which in the least render such love unenduring. Scripture points this out and advocates that material love be redirected in order that it be fulfilled. When love is fully spiritualized, it transcends scripture.

Concluding this brief elaboration on his presence in all things as their essence, Krṣṇa next tells Arjuna that this description is endless. Rather than go into further detail, he states in summary that the entire material existence is a product of the threefold influence of material nature (triguṇa), which emanates from him. He is the primal cause and the essence of the effect. The world as an effect is in him, but he is aloof from it.

Text 12

ये चेव सात्विका भावा राजसार्नामसाध्य ये।
मतां एवंत्ति लालन् बिन्दिन न त्वह तेषु ते मयिः॥ १२॥

ye caiva sāttvikā bhāvā rājasās tāmasās ca ye/
matta eveti tān viddhi na tv aham teṣu te mai//

ye—which; ca—and; eva—certainly; sāttvikā—derived from the sattvaguna; bhāvā—states of being; rājasāḥ—in the mode of passion; tāmasāḥ—in the mode of ignorance; ca—also; ye—which; mattaḥ—from me; eva—certainly; iti—thus; tān—those; viddhi—know; na—not; tu—but; aham—I;
tēṣu—in them; te—they; mai—in me.

And, indeed, know that all things constituted of the gunas of purity, passion, and ignorance issue from me alone. At the same time, I am not in them—they are in me!

If what Krṣṇa has said about his being the cause of the entire world and its very essence is true, Arjuna wonders, “Why don’t people know about it? Why don’t they serve you?” Krṣṇa responds to this doubt in the next verse.

Text 13

विभिन्नमायेभिरेणंभिरेणं सर्वं जगत्।
मोहित नाभिज्ञातामात् मामभ्यं परममयम्॥ १३॥
Being deluded by the three guṇas, the entire universe does not recognize me, who am transcendental to the guṇas and inexhaustible.

In answering Arjuna’s doubt, Kṛṣṇa explains that under the influence of the three guṇas (tribhir guṇa-mayaiḥ), beings mistake the transformations of material nature to be enduring and worthy of pursuit. Thus they cannot recognize him, who is enduring (avyayam) and not a product of these transformations. Simply put, Kṛṣṇa says souls are bewildered (mohitam) and the cause is the guṇas of his māyā.

At this point, Arjuna wonders how this bewilderment can be overcome. Souls lost to their own higher nature look for this nature in a place where it will never be found. Viśvanātha Cakravartī Ṭhākura comments that in response, Kṛṣṇa points to his chest and emphatically declares that surrender to himself in his form of Śyāmasundara (Vraja Kṛṣṇa) is the solution, and there is no other remedy.

Text 14

daiśī hi esā guṇa-mayī mama māyā duratyayā/
mām eva ye prapadyante māyām etām taranti te//

daiśī—divine; hi—certainly; esā—this; guṇa-mayī—consisting of the guṇas; mama—my; māyā—energy; duratyayā—very difficult to overcome; mām—unto me; eva—certainly; ye—those who; prapadyante—surrender; māyām etām—this energy; taranti—transcend; te—they.

This divine energy of mine consisting of the guṇas is certainly difficult to go beyond. Those who take refuge in me alone transcend this illusion.
Kṛṣṇa here describes the illusion cast by his material nature as divine (daivi) because he is its master (mama māyā). The illusion consisting of the three gunas, or ropes (guna-mayi), is impenetrable. As one bound not by one rope but by three ropes intertwined is indeed bound tightly, so are the souls of this world bound by Kṛṣṇa's divine illusion. While the world itself is real, its effect on the jivas is such that they misread reality.

Struggling with material nature is futile. Surrender to Kṛṣṇa, its master, on the other hand, allows one to easily cross over māyā. Through the words mām eva, Kṛṣṇa stresses himself, as opposed to other manifestations of God, be they governing agents of the material manifestation or expansions or incarnations of himself. The word eva also implies the certainty and expediency of deliverance by surrender to Kṛṣṇa, as opposed to surrender to any of Kṛṣṇa's avatāras. Although avatāras of Kṛṣṇa can deliver one from illusion, surrender to Kṛṣṇa in particular makes this deliverance comparatively easy. Taken in this sense, Kṛṣṇa refers here to the path of Vraja bhakti, in which hearing and chanting about his charming līlās is the primary means of surrender. As the propensity to love is inherent in all souls, and Kṛṣṇa means the all-attractive, irresistible manifestation of the Absolute, surrender to him is easy and natural.

Madhusūdana Saraswatī admits that prapadyante implies, “those who by taking shelter of me alone pass their days thinking constantly of only me, who am the essence of infinite beauty in its entirety, who am possessed of the luster of two lotus-like feet that surpass the beauty of a newly born, blooming lotus, who am ever engaged in playing on a flute, whose mind is absorbed in Vṛndāvana (Vraja) sport, who playfully holds aloft the hill called Govardhana, who am a cowherd, destroyer of evil ones such as Śiśupāla, Kāṁsa, and others, whose feet defeat the beauty of rain clouds, who possesses a form made of supreme bliss through and through, who transcends the phenomenal creation of Brahmā—they on account of having their minds immersed in love for me, which is a great ocean of joy, are not overwhelmed by the guṇas of māyā.”

Madhusūdana Saraswatī goes on to say that māyā herself, as though out of fear that she could be entirely uprooted by such devotion to Kṛṣṇa, her ultimate source, withdraws from those who surrender to Kṛṣṇa, in the same way that a prostitute withdraws from those in the renounced order who are prone to outbursts of anger and thus sometimes cast curses on ladies of ill repute.
Understandably, Arjuna continues to wonder why some people don’t surrender to Kṛṣṇa. In the next verse, Kṛṣṇa informs him that those who are impious (duṣkṛtis) do not surrender to him.

Text 15

na mām duṣkṛtino mūḍhāḥ prapadyante narādhamāḥ/
māyayāpahṛta-jñānā āśurāṁ bhāvam āśritaḥ//

Those who are grossly foolish, the lowest of men, the so-called learned who are bereft of wisdom owing to the influence of illusion, and those whose very existence is demoniac do not surrender to me.

In this verse, Kṛṣṇa describes four types of persons whose karma is such that they do not rise to the point of surrendering to him. The first and best of this unfortunate lot suffers from a failure of understanding. They cannot grasp the basic difference between that which is spiritual and that which is material even in terms of theoretical knowledge. They are the best of the four types mentioned in this verse because their lack of surrender is based on ignorance.

The second type suffers from a failure of spiritual inclination. While they have a general understanding of the nature of reality, they are not inclined to take the steps to perfect their understanding. They are labeled narādhamā (low-life) for their lack of interest in that which is not only entirely in their interest but available to them as well. Persons of good birth and spiritual background who do not take advantage of spiritual opportunity when it knocks are examples of the narādhamā.

The third group suffers from a failure of reason. Their understanding of God is undermined by innumerable theories both spiritual and mundane, which together render the Absolute relative in the mind of this unfortunate group. Their wisdom is stolen by the illusion of the power and potential of
logic to arrive at conclusive truth (māyāyāpahṛta-jñānā). While the second group lacks the intellectual prowess to understand, this third group suffers from its excess.

The fourth and worst of these duskrītas suffer from a failure of heart. They are those in whose hearts hatred for God (āsurāṁ bhāvam) is generated despite being established in theoretical understanding of the nature of God-centered reality. Jīva Goswāmī says in Bhakti-sandarbha (115) that this verse describes that which is to be avoided in the culture of the mystery of bhakti. Such avoidance constitutes the indirect (vyatireka) culture of devotion (ŚB. 2.9.36). Madhusūdana Sarasvatī sees this verse as describing the impious in general and not four types of impious persons. Vaiṣṇava ācāryas all understand the verse to be referring to four types, while differing slightly in their description of them.⁴

Kṛṣṇa next describes four types of pious souls who do turn to him.

Text 16

catur-vidhā bhajante mām janāṁ sukṛtinārjuna/
ārto jijñāsur arthārthi jñānī ca bharatarṣabha//

catuh-vidhāḥ—four kinds; bhajante—worship; mām—me; janāḥ—persons; su-kṛtināḥ—the pious; arjuna—O Arjuna; ārtaḥ—the distressed; jijñāsuh—the inquisitive; artha-arthi—one who desires wealth; jñānī—the knowledgeable; ca—also; bharata-ṛṣabha—O best of the Bhāratas.

Among the pious, Arjuna, four kinds of men worship me: the distressed, the seekers of wealth, the inquisitive, and the knowledgeable, O best of the Bhāratas.

In this and the next three verses, Kṛṣṇa speaks about miśra-bhakti, or devotion mixed with either material desire (karma-miśra) or desire for knowledge/liberation (jñāna-miśra). Three persons mentioned in this verse, the distressed (ārta), those desiring wealth (artha-ṛthi), and the inquisitive (jiñāsū), are examples of karma-miśra-bhakti. The person in knowledge who

⁴. My explanation follows the lead of Rāmānuja, whose commentary on this verse lends itself well to a contemporary explanation.
takes to bhakti is an example of jñāna-miśra-bhakti. This is the opinion of Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa, while Kṛṣṇadāsa Kavirāja Goswāmī differs slightly, dividing the four types into two categories. He considers the distressed and those desiring wealth to be involved in karma-miśra-bhakti and the inquisitive and those in knowledge to be involved in jñāna-miśra-bhakti. Both of these ācāryas concur that such persons gradually give up material desires and become unalloyed devotees engaged in suddha-bhakti—pure, unmixed devotion—after having received the grace of Kṛṣṇa or his devotees.

The word sukṛti in this verse is significant. There are three types of piety, or sukṛti: piety in relation to karma, piety in relation to jñāna, and piety in relation to pure devotion (bhakty-unmukhi-sukṛti). Those whose sukṛti has developed in connection with bhakti will develop faith (śraddhā) in bhakti and take directly to devotional life. However, in this verse Kṛṣṇa is describing pious souls in general who follow the socioreligious life ordained in the scriptural canon (varṇāśrama-dharma). They surrender to Kṛṣṇa in their hour of necessity. In association with devotees they eventually become purified and take directly to bhakti.

The lowest of the four pious souls mentioned here are those who approach Kṛṣṇa for wealth (arthārthi). Indeed, this seems almost diametrically opposed to the thrust of the Gītā. Some commentators, including Rāmānuja, have dismissed this rendering of arthārthi because of this, offering as an alternative, “One who desires the highest necessity (artha).” However, the Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam (2.3.10) agrees with the notion that one desirous of wealth should approach Kṛṣṇa on the bhakti-mārga. The example of Dhruva Mahārāja is found in the Bhāgavatam, and Gauḍīya Vaiṣṇava commentators, as well as Madhusūdana Sarasvatī, have cited Dhruva as an example of one who, desirous of material gain, approached Kṛṣṇa (Viṣṇu). One has to begin somewhere.

In his commentary on this verse, Viśvanātha Cakravartī Ṭhākura explains that those on a path in which bhakti does not predominate attain their respective goals of knowledge and liberation as outlined in the first six chapters of the Gītā. Those on a path in which bhakti comes to predominate are discussed in this verse. They will ultimately attain pure devotion.

6. See Brs. 1.2.14–21.
7. For a description of Dhruva see ŚB. 4.8–12.
8. Examples of the other three are Gajendra (the distressed), Śaunaka Rṣi (the inquisitive seeker/philosopher), and the four Kumāras (those in knowledge).
According to Baladeva Vidyābhūṣāna, those desiring wealth and those in distress (arthāṛthi, ārtah) will eventually become inquisitive (jījñāsuḥ), and the inquisitive will eventually become knowledgeable (jñāni). This is the natural progression, in which devotion waxes and desire wanes as knowledge develops. Thus the best of this group is the person in knowledge of the soul, as Kṛṣṇa affirms in the following verse.

Text 17

Of these, the man in knowledge, who is ever united and one with me in devotion, is best. Indeed, I am very affectionate to a person in knowledge, and he is fond of me.

The word eka-bhakti implies a dynamic oneness with Kṛṣṇa in devotion. In conjunction with nitya-yukta, it is a reference to devotion that is eternal in nature. Those who are in knowledge and are devoted to Kṛṣṇa, but whose devotion is a means to a nondevotional monistic end, are not the subject of this verse. This is obvious from the fact that the self-realized soul is described as one with Kṛṣṇa in devotion and not engaged in devotion as a means to self-realization. The wise person in this verse has already attained self-realization, which distinguishes him from the seeker. He is a jīvanmukta, one who is liberated while in this world.

Jīvanmuktas are of two types, those in the jñāna-mārga and those in the bhakti-mārga. Those on the path of knowledge attain the jīvanmukta status and await the expiration of their manifest karma to enter ultimate reality in unembodied liberation (videha-mukti). Jīvanmuktas on the path of devotion, on the other hand, are free from all manifest karma, their bodies having been taken over by Kṛṣṇa’s primary sakti in order that they may do his bidding in this world. He in this verse who is very dear to Kṛṣṇa is a jīvanmukta from
the path of knowledge who takes to bhakti. This person reminds us of the progression described in the first six chapters, where through karma-yoga the inner wisdom of jñāna develops and one is thus eligible to enter bhakti proper.

In the next verse Kṛṣṇa explains further just how dear to him the jñāni-bhakta is, while assuring Arjuna that the other three types of souls who worship him are also dear. All are dear because all eventually become unalloyed devotees.

Text 18

Rāmānuja says that the word udārāh indicates generosity. Kṛṣṇa says that the exalted character of those who worship him for any of the above reasons is such that they become recipients of his grace, and thus these seekers are themselves benefactors, for the spiritual need of the Absolute is to affectionately bestow grace. This need is so great that opportunities provided by the devoted for God to express his grace are hailed as generosity.

If Kṛṣṇa is so moved by the slightest devotion even when it is tinged with desire for something other than devotion itself, it is understandable how much more moved he would be by those whose devotion is free from any material concern. Here Kṛṣṇa glorifies such devotees by saying that they are one with him. There are also devotees who Kṛṣṇa considers greater than himself, such as the gopīs, whose motivation for serving him is a love so strong that it suppresses knowledge of his opulence.9

9. See SB. 10.29.42.
When the self-realized jñāni becomes a bhakta, Kṛṣṇa accepts him as his own self. Although metaphysically speaking Kṛṣṇa is the soul of all souls, here Kṛṣṇa speaks the truth of love, in which his devotee is seen as his soul. The spirit of the identity that Kṛṣṇa expresses here is that of one who says about someone dear, “He and I are one.” Nārāyaṇa said these very words to the Kumāras when they knocked on the door of Vaikuṇṭha (ŚB. 3.16.4). At that time, when the gatekeepers refused to allow the Kumāras entrance to his abode, Nārāyaṇa took responsibility for the gatekeepers’ actions as if they were his own. Understanding the implication of Nārāyaṇa’s speech, in which he indicated that his devotees are one with him, the Kumāras themselves became devotees, concluding that self-realization is merely a stepping stone to God-realization.

Echoing the third verse of this chapter, Kṛṣṇa next describes how rare it is for a soul to attain self-knowledge and from there to become his devotee. He also explains the vision attained by such a devotee.

Text 19

After many births, the person possessing self-knowledge surrenders to me upon realizing that Vāsudeva is everything. Such a great soul is very rare.

Kṛṣṇa uses the word mahātmā for the first time in this verse. He will use it once again in the eighth chapter and again in the ninth. Although he describes many types of transcendentalists and religious persons in the Gitā, he reserves this term for his unalloyed devotees. The spirit of this verse is that it takes many lives to arrive at self-realization, which is a prerequisite for realizing that everything is Kṛṣṇa and his energy, including oneself.

10. See Bg. 8.15 and 9.13.
As Kṛṣṇa concludes this section, Arjuna wonders what becomes of those who lack knowledge and thus have material desires, but petition other gods instead of taking refuge in Kṛṣṇa like those mentioned in verse 16. Kṛṣṇa answers Arjuna’s thoughts in four verses. By providing contrast, he further defines bhakti.

**Text 20**

कमाईस ताइस ताईह ह्रता-ज्ञानाह प्रणयांते 'न्या-देवाताह\/
तम तम नियमम आस्थाया प्रकर्त्यां नियताह स्वयाह\

kāmais tais tair hṛta-jñānāh prapadyante 'nya-devatāh/
tam tam niyamam āstāya prakṛtyā niyatāḥ svayāh/

Those whose intelligence has been stolen by various desires take refuge in other gods. Impelled by their own natures, they engage in various religious rituals.

Those who have no background of piety in relation to bhakti worship various deities to attain their material goals. At best, they can attain these goals, but they will not awaken knowledge and devotion.

In this section, Kṛṣṇa dismisses the notion that worship of any god or goddess results in liberation. The word anya-devatāḥ means “other gods.” Gods other than himself are those invested with his power for the express purpose of conducting affairs in the material world. These gods of limited jurisdiction are innumerable.

Lest one fault Kṛṣṇa for sectarian propaganda in our pluralistic times, it is important to point out just what “Kṛṣṇa” means. This is precisely what Kṛṣṇa is doing in this chapter. He is telling Arjuna that he, Kṛṣṇa, is the all-attractive person by virtue of his being everything and beyond everything at the same time. Kṛṣṇa is not a sectarian God. He is the heart of divinity itself. The affairs of the other gods are all within the world consisting of his two energies. Their power to function as gods is relative to their empowerment by Kṛṣṇa.
Text 21

Whoever desires to faithfully worship a particular form, whichever one it is, I grant him the necessary conviction to do so.

Text 22

A person endowed with this faith desires to worship that form, and surely he attains the fulfillment of his desires only because of me.

Although those who worship other gods are indirectly worshipping Kṛṣṇa, those mentioned here are unaware of this fact. Were they aware of what Kṛṣṇa is saying here, they could worship these gods without receiving the undesirable results mentioned in the next verse or the sharp criticism of Kṛṣṇa.

Text 23

antavat tu phalaṁ teśāṁ tad bhavaty alpa-medhasāṁ/
   devān deva-yajo yāṇti mad-bhaktā yāṇti māṁ api//
However, the results of these persons of meager intellect are perishable. Those who worship the gods attain the gods, but my devotees attain me.

Although the Gitā establishes Kṛṣṇa’s supremacy and extols the worship of Kṛṣṇa over all other types of worship, it remains a work of religious tolerance, acknowledging other gods and their worship as other forms of religious expression.

If anyone worships Kṛṣṇa in pursuit of material goals, he not only attains them but eventually develops the knowledge and devotion that lead to eternal life. On the other hand, by worshipping other gods, one attains only one’s material objectives. Thus the difference between worshipping Kṛṣṇa directly and worshipping other gods without understanding that the gods themselves are dependent on Kṛṣṇa is one of attainment. While both groups of worshippers attain their immediate desired objectives, after doing so, their ultimate destination is relative to the object of their worship. Those who worship Kṛṣṇa attain eternal life, whereas those who worship other gods attain only perishable results. One obvious reason for this is that the gods themselves are perishable.

Although the preceding paragraph represents the instruction of the Gitā, we are left to wonder how it is that devotees of Kṛṣṇa often do not seem to attain their material objectives. History reveals that superstition has been replaced with religion, and religion with science in pursuit of actually attaining material objectives. In response the Gitā’s adherents will say that in such cases the material objectives sought after are either not obtained until one’s next life or they are withheld by Kṛṣṇa in order to awaken detachment in his devotees and thus bring them nearer to him.

While Kṛṣṇa considers those who worship other gods to be less intelligent, he next speaks of the unintelligent.

Text 24

अन्यंकं व्यक्तिमापमण्यन्तु मामज्ञातयम्

परं भावमज्ञातन्नो ममस्यायमनुत्तमम्॥२४॥
The unintelligent, being unaware of my supreme nature, which is eternal and unsurpassable, think me to be the unmanifest that has become embodied!

With a tone of indignation, Kṛṣṇa decries those who think him to be different from his form and his form thereby to be material. Even if they think that his form is constituted of the material quality of purity (sattva), which has an elevating effect on the soul, they are not free from his wrath.

To Vaiṣṇava commentators this verse speaks of Monists, who consider Brahman to be the undifferentiated Absolute that enters the world in a material form with the purpose of serving as a focal point of meditation for sādhakas. According to Monists, Kṛṣṇa’s form, however special and extraordinary a manifestation it is considered, is nonetheless not transcendental or eternal—it is Brahman with material adjuncts. This theory is untenable for Vaiṣṇavas, and it does not get much support from this verse.

Kṛṣṇa’s form and humanlike activities lead the uninformed, who are equally lacking bhakti, to believe that either Kṛṣṇa is not worshippable at all or that such worship is a means to an end in which the form of Kṛṣṇa is transcended. To the ignorant latter, who think themselves too intelligent to believe that the form of Kṛṣṇa could be anything but a limitation on the Absolute, worship of Kṛṣṇa is considered ultimately unnecessary. The foolish former group, misunderstanding his humanlike activities, turn to other gods for their needs or do not worship at all.

Kṛṣṇa is known only to those he chooses to reveal himself to. Those lacking in devotion are not privileged to know him in full. This is the thrust of the chapter. Accordingly, Kṛṣṇa next speaks of how the ignorant mentioned in this verse and the foolish in the preceding verses are kept from understanding him.

Text 25
nāham prakāsah sarvasya yoga-māyā-samāvṛtah/
   mūdhoh 'yam nabhijānāti loko mām ajam avyayam//
na—not; aham—I; prakāsah—manifest; sarvasya—of everyone; yoga-māyā-
samāvṛtah—hidden in yogic illusion; mūdhah—confused; aham—this; na—not; abhijānāti—recognize; lokah—world; mām—me; ajam—birthless; avyayam—eternal.

I am not revealed to everyone, being hidden by the power of māyā, and thus the world does not recognize me, the birthless and infallible one.

The juxtaposition of the words *yoga* and *māyā* is curious. *Yoga* overlaps with *māyā* in several meanings—magic, trick, power—and in general strengthens the meaning of the word *māyā*. In the devotional literature *yoga-māyā* often refers to Kṛṣṇa’s internal primary *sakti*. However, we cannot really talk about Kṛṣṇa’s internal potency here without first discussing his external potency. In this verse *yoga-māyā* refers to the magical power of Kṛṣṇa’s *māyā-sakti* that deludes those who are not his devotees.

When we speak of *yoga-māyā* with regard to Kṛṣṇa’s primary *sakti*, this influence creates an enlightened illusion within divinity. Such is the nature of the illusion by which Kṛṣṇa’s devotees are enabled to relate with him not as God, but as friend, lover, and so on. It is under the influence of this mystic illusion that Kṛṣṇa allows himself to be intimately related with his devotees, bordering on forgetfulness of his own divinity at times. Although absolutely divine, his divinity cannot be understood by those without devotion.

Kṛṣṇa appears in his human form and all types of people see him but nevertheless do not understand who he is. This is the exercise of *yoga-māyā* as internal *sakti* rather than *yoga-māyā* as *māyā-sakti*, which is broader in scope and involves creation as a whole. Since *yoga-māyā* thus involves perception of Kṛṣṇa’s person, it is equally applicable to the devotees and those who are averse to him. He hides from those adverse to him in his human-like relationships with his devotees under his own self-imposed *yoga-māyā*.

Jīva Gosvāmī comments in *Kṛṣṇa-sandarbha* (29) that in this verse Kṛṣṇa explains why some people, even in some instances those devoted to him, think he is an incarnation, rather than the source of Viṣṇu. According to this verse, even when the complete manifestation of God (Kṛṣṇa) appears to the common person, such a person may take Kṛṣṇa to be an incarnation of Viṣṇu because Kṛṣṇa only reveals himself partially, relative to that person’s belief.
While hiding from others, Kṛṣṇa is aware of their position. Although they cannot see him, he is not blind to their affairs.

**Text 26**

vedāham samatitāni vartamānāni cāṛjuna/

bhavisyāni ca bhūtāni mām tu veda na kaścana/

veda—knows; aham—I; samatitāni—the past ones; vartamānāni—the present ones; ca—and; arjuna—O Arjuna; bhavisyāni—the ones to be; ca—also; bhūtāni—beings; mām—me; tu—but; veda—know; na—not; kaścana—anyone.

O Arjuna, I know the past, present, future, and all beings, but no one knows me.

Here Kṛṣṇa contrasts his position with that of others. He is omniscient and undeluded by māyā, appearing under the influence of his own internal yoga-māyā. The jīvas are deluded by his mahā-māyā (secondary potency) and certainly cannot understand the enlightening influence of his yoga-māyā, under whose influence he performs humanlike activities in subordination to his devotees’ love, while remaining omniscient.11 Understanding and thereby transcending the influence of māyā, one realizes self-perfection. When one understands Kṛṣṇa’s yoga-māyā, one is the very rare soul Kṛṣṇa refers to in verse 3 and again in verse 19. He knows Kṛṣṇa as much as one can know him through love, while Kṛṣṇa himself remains unknowable.

Kṛṣṇa next describes further the influence of his māyā.

**Text 27**

icchā-dvesa-samutthena dvandva-mohena bhārata/

sarva-bhūtāni saṁmohāṁ sarge yānti āparatapal/

11. See KK. 83 and SB. 3.4.17.
Knowledge and Realization

icchā—desire; dvesa—hate; samutthena—by the rising; dvandva—duality; mohena—by the illusion; bhārata—O descendant of Bharata; sarva—all; bhūtāni—beings; sammoham—delusion; sarge—at birth; yānti—go; parantapa—O destroyer of foes.

O descendant of Bharata, destroyer of foes, all beings are born deluded, bewildered by the dualities arising from desire and hate.

Kṛṣṇa addresses Arjuna here as Bhārata and Parantapa as if to say, “Because you are of noble heritage and well-known for your ability to destroy your enemies, you should not succumb to the influences of desire and hate.” These two sides of the coin of material existence deprive the soul of knowledge of the true nature of the material world. So deluded, one suffers from a wrong sense of values and is hardly fit to understand the truth of the self, much less the truth about Kṛṣṇa.

Kṛṣṇa next qualifies his statement regarding the bewilderment of all beings in this world. There are those who, although physically in the world, are not of it.

Text 28

yeṣāṁ tv anta-gatam pāpam janānāṁ punya-karma-nām/
te dvandva-moha-nirmuktā bhajante mām dṛḍha-vratāḥ//

yeṣāṁ—whose; tu—however; anta-gatam—finished; pāpam—sin; janānāṁ—of the persons; punya-karma-nām—of those who act piously; te—they; dvandva—duality; mohā—delusion; nirmuktāḥ—free; bhajante—adore; mām—me; dṛḍha-vratāḥ—with firm vows.

However, those persons who act piously, in whom evil is finished, being liberated from the delusion of dualities, adore me with firm vows.

As mentioned earlier, piety that gives rise to devotion is piety in relation to bhakti. Opportunities for this kind of piety are created by those who are already devotees of Kṛṣṇa. Baladeva Vidyābhūṣana says in his commentary on this verse that merely by the merciful glance of great devotees this devotional piety is created.
Bhakty-unmukhi-sukṛti takes two forms: sukṛti gained without the recipient’s knowledge (ajñāta-sukṛti) and in a more developed stage, sukṛti earned by acting with some knowledge of the value of devotional life (jñāta-sukṛti). Jñāta-sukṛti matures into śraddhā, which grants one eligibility for the direct culture of bhakti. Under discussion in this verse is a further developmental stage known as niṣṭhā. In this stage, the practitioner has been freed from vice and his faith is thus firm.

This verse reiterates the progression already given earlier in this chapter in verses 16 through 19. Devotionally pious persons approach Kṛṣṇa. Their desires are fulfilled and they gradually lose interest in them by coming to the platform of knowledge of the self, at which time their devotion becomes unwavering.

Kṛṣṇa concludes this chapter by way of introducing the next.

Text 29

Jarā-marāṇa-mokṣāya mām āśritya yatanti ye/
te brahma tad viduḥ kṛṣṇam adhyātmam karma cākhilam//

jarā—old age; marāṇa—death; mokṣāya—for freedom; mām—me; āśritya—resorting; yatanti—endeavor; ye—those who; te—they; brahma—Brahman; tat—actually that; viduḥ—know; kṛṣṇam—everything; adhyātmam—the individual self; karma—activities; ca—also; akhilam—entirely.

Those who strive for freedom from old age and death by resorting to me know Brahman, the individual self, and the principle of karma.

Here Kṛṣṇa says that if anyone wants freedom from death, taking shelter of him (mām āśritya) will bring success. They will realize Brahman and the individual self. Were the individual self and Brahman one and the same in all respects, the two would not have been mentioned separately. Such devotees who realize Brahman and the individual self also understand the principle of karma, having transcended it.

Viśvanātha Cakravartī Ṭhākura comments that in this verse Kṛṣṇa describes a devotee who desires liberation.
Those who know me along with the adhibhūta, the adhidaiva, and the adhiyajña, their minds fixed on me, can know me even at the time of death.

Kṛṣṇa has introduced three topics in the previous verse that require further elaboration: Brahman, adhyātmā, and karma. In this verse he introduces three more: adhibhūta, adhidaiva, and adhiyajña, as well as the idea that by understanding these principles through devotion to Kṛṣṇa one can attain him at the time of death.

Jīva Goswāmī explains in his Kṛṣṇa-sandarbha that this verse reveals the superiority of Kṛṣṇa over the Paramātma situated in the heart of all living beings.12 According to Pāṇini (2.3.19), a word that is accompanied by the word “with” (sa) is secondary to the subject of the verb in a sentence. In the example, “The father came with his son,” “father” is the primary noun in the sentence, and “son” is secondary. Thus, by using the compound noun sādhiyajña, which simply means “with the Supersoul,” Kṛṣṇa indicates that the adhiyajña, or indwelling Supersoul, is secondary to himself, and that he is superior to it.

In the next chapter, Arjuna will ask further about the seven topics introduced in the last two verses of this chapter and Kṛṣṇa will elaborate on them.

12. See Ks. 82, Sarvasaṅvādini commentary.
Arjuna said: O Supreme Person, what is meant by Brahman, what is adhyātma, what is karma, what is adhibhūta, and what is adhidaiva? Who is the adhiyajña and how is he situated within the body, O Madhusūdana, and how are you to be known at the time of death by those who are self-controlled?
Arjuna begins this chapter by asking Kṛṣṇa to elaborate on the seven topics mentioned at the end of the previous chapter: Brahmā, adhyyātmā, karma, adhibhūta, adhidaiva, adhiyajña, and how by understanding them in relation to Kṛṣṇa one can attain the Absolute at the time of death. Kṛṣṇa has rather mysteriously ended the seventh chapter by introducing these terms, some of which we have seen before, such as Brahmā and karma, and others that are familiar in the Upaniṣads but have not yet been discussed in the Gitā: adhyyātmā, adhibhūta, adhidaiva, and adhiyajña. When Arjuna inquires into their meaning, Kṛṣṇa is brief in his replies. The result is that the Gitā’s many commentators have interpreted Kṛṣṇa’s replies in a wide variety of ways.

Here in the first verse of this chapter, Arjuna addresses Kṛṣṇa as Puruṣottama, Supreme Person. By this he indicates that Kṛṣṇa’s opinion is conclusive. This epithet further underscores the nature of the knowledge Kṛṣṇa explains in the middle six chapters of the Gitā: knowledge of God and the means to attain him. This chapter deals specifically with how to attain God at the time of death. It is to be understood that comprehending the first six topics about which Arjuna is asking is a prerequisite for attaining that state of consciousness by which one can remember Kṛṣṇa at the time of death and thus attain him.

The terms Arjuna asks about require explanation. Arjuna wonders if Kṛṣṇa means parañ-brahma when he mentions Brahmā. Does he mean the Paramātma when he mentions adhyyātmā, or does he mean the individual soul? By karma does he mean scriptural rites or social duties? Does he mean the material body when he says adhibhūta? Who is the adhidaiva? Does this refer to the gods or God himself? Who is the adhiyajña—Indra or Viṣṇu—and in what form does he exist? How is one to conceive of adhiyajña during spiritual practice in terms of his being situated within the body?

The answers to Arjuna’s questions must be understood in the context of the two verses that end the seventh chapter. Kṛṣṇa’s answer in verse 3 is related to verse 29 of the previous chapter, and his answer in verse 4 is connected with verse 30 of chapter 7.
The Lord of Śrī said: Brahman is the supreme imperishable; adhyātmā is said to be the nature of the individual self. That action which brings about the birth and growth of things is called karma.

When Kṛṣṇa explains Brahman, he describes it as both infallible (aṅkṣara) and supreme (paramam). The word aṅkṣara is used throughout the Upaniṣads to describe Brahman. Thus Brahman is both differentiated from all things material, the fallible (kṣara), and identified with Kṛṣṇa himself (paramam).¹

Adhyātmā refers to the jīva, who, although embodied, is of the nature of Brahman in that it is consciousness. This jīva has been mentioned earlier in the previous chapter (Bg. 7.5) and will be discussed in detail in chapter 13. According to Gauḍīya Vaiṣṇava theology, the Supreme Brahman as jīva is called vibhīnnaṁśa. The individual self is a particle of one of Brahman’s sākṣī. It is not unqualified Brahman temporarily embodied. It is not supreme (paramam), nor infallible (aṅkṣara), and it does not realize supremacy on transcending bodily identification, although it does realize infallibility in connection with the Supreme Brahman. Later in the fifteenth chapter (Bg. 15.16), Kṛṣṇa describes two types of souls, fallible (kṣara) and infallible (aṅkṣara), both of whom are subordinate to the Supreme Person.

The jīva soul is adhyātmā, he who presides over the body and thus lives in the context (adhi) of the body (ātmā). Here ātmā means the material body. Such a rendering owes itself to the soul’s tendency to misidentify itself with the body.

Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa says that the inherent nature of the self (svabhāva) is the jīvātmā and its desire. Its svabhāva is that aspect of itself that

¹ Jīva Goswāmī understands aṅkṣara as a reference to the Brahman feature of Godhead, and he understands the adhidaiva and adhīyaṇā to refer to the Paramātmā feature of Godhead (Bs. 176).
is characterized by subtle desires from the past that tie it to the material body. He says that Kṛṣṇa calls this svabhāva adhyātma because one’s material desire has the power to bind the soul to the body (ātmā).

Viśvanātha Cakravarti Ṭhākura understands svabhāvo ‘dhyātman in this verse to indicate either the nature of the self conditioned by material influence or the inherent serving nature of the self, its predisposition to the culture of devotion to the all-blissful Godhead, svam bhāvayai param-ātmānam prāpayatīti svabhāvah suddha-jīvāh. In the case of the former, ātmā means the material body. In the latter, ātmā indicates the Paramātmā. In his latter explanation, Viśvanātha Cakravarti Ṭhākura seems to be following the lead of Śrī Jīva Goswāmī in Bhakti-sandarbha (Bs. 216). Śrī Jīva cites this verse in support of the Vaiśṇava conception of sārūpya-mukti (attaining a liberated form like God’s). He says, “Svabhāva refers to the thoughts or meditation (bhāvanā) of the pure soul (sva).” Because such thought is situated in the self, it is called adhyātma.”

Karma is that influence by which the world revolves. It thus gives birth to the world. Visarga denotes creative power. That action on the part of the jīva that is possessed of creative power, or the power to regenerate, is what Kṛṣṇa refers to here as karma. More specifically, by the word karma Kṛṣṇa refers to religious sacrifice governed by the Vedas. Jīva Goswāmī says visarga means “making offerings to the gods” (Bs. 225). This action is to some extent of the nature of self-abnegation, in which one parts with something of his own in honor of a particular god, the overt result of which is heavenly attainment and subsequent rebirth in human society. Thus by extension, karma refers to religious activity. However, Jīva Goswāmī says that the special characteristic (dharma) of religious activity (karma) is that it leads to some association with bhakti. In support of this, he cites Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam (11.19.27), dharma mad-bhakti-kr̥t proktah: “Religious activity is that which leads to my devotion.” Commenting on this verse from Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam, Viśvanātha Cakravarti Ṭhākura says, “An entity’s intrinsic characteristic, its dharma, is that which gives rise to Kṛṣṇa bhakti.” In the words of Śrī Caitanya, the nature of the jīva is service to Kṛṣṇa, jīvera svarūpa haya kṛṣṇera nitya-dāsa (Cc. Madhya 20.108). Thus knowledge of the intrinsic nature (dharma) of an object leads to bhakti, and it is bhakti that brings the animate and inanimate world to life in the fullest sense.

Text 4

अधिमूल्य अथर्व भावः पुरुषाधिनिदेशतत्।
अधियज्ञोऽष्टमेव देहे देहभूतं वर ॥४॥
The adhibhūta is fallible existence, and the adhidaiva, the agency of universal governance, is the divine person. I alone am the adhiyajña, the Lord of sacrifice, situated within the body, O best of embodied beings.

Adhibhūta refers to material existence and the soul’s embodiment. Adhidaiva refers to the divine controlling agency, the gods and goddesses, all of whom move under the direction of the Supreme God. It is thus God represented as the gods and goddesses. The adhiyajña, however, is God himself, the Lord of sacrifice, Viṣṇu, who is nondifferent from Kṛṣṇa, being his expansion, as the śrutī loudly proclaims (yajño vai viṣṇuh). Indeed, sacrifice (yajña) is one of his names. For the sake of conceptualization during meditation he is to be thought of as sitting within the heart, the size of one’s thumb. Distinct from the individual souls and all human faculties including intellect, he is present in those humans who perform sacrifice. Although he is everywhere, his presence as the Lord of sacrifice is known only to those humans who engage in sacrifice. Indirectly, Kṛṣṇa has stressed sacrifice here as imperative for all souls.

In this verse, Kṛṣṇa’s affection for Arjuna surfaces amidst this technical explanation through his address deha-bhṛtām vara, best of the embodied. Kṛṣṇa is situated within the body as one’s friend, and Arjuna, who has been made aware of this and is thus listening to him, is the best of those so embodied. By reminding Arjuna that he is the best of all beings due to being his devotee and friend, Kṛṣṇa is hinting at the qualifications which are needed to remember him at the time of death, the subject of the next verse.

Text 5

अन्तवाले च मामेव स्मरमुक्तवा केत्तेवस्म।
य: प्रयाति स मद्वान्यानि नामयम संजय: ॥०॥

2. Jīva Goswāmī explains that when Kṛṣṇa says he is the Supersoul, this does not mean that he is personally present in this form, rather the Supersoul is Kṛṣṇa’s expansion by which he is partially present (Śarvaśamvādini commentary on Ks. 82).
At the time of death, a person who relinquishes his body, remembering me alone, attains my nature. Of this there is no doubt.

In this verse, Kṛṣṇa begins to answer Arjuna’s last question as to how he can be known at the time of death. The essence of his answer, extending through verse 7, is that he can be known by meditation on or remembrance (śmaran) of himself.

The words mām eva indicate exclusive devotion to Kṛṣṇa. Mad-bhāvam is explained by Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa as mat-svabhāvam (my own nature). Attaining the nature of Kṛṣṇa means to come under the influence of his svarūpa-sakti and thereby participate in his eternal lilā.

The time of death is significant. The implication is that at the time of death the mind is disturbed and difficult to control, but if one remembers Kṛṣṇa even imperfectly at that time one will attain Kṛṣṇa nonetheless. Such remembrance will not result without spiritual practice. Viśvanātha Cakravartī says that here śmaran means knowledge.

Kṛṣṇa continues to assure Arjuna of the efficacy of remembering him at the time of death by saying that one’s consciousness at the time of death determines one’s next life.
O son of Kuntî, whatever state of being a person remembers at the time of relinquishing the body, that state he will attain, being absorbed in its thought.

Our present life is a product of our net consciousness at the end of our previous life. The medium of reincarnation, or transmigration, is the subtle mental body. When the physical body expires, one acquires another one through the vehicle of the mind—the mind is expressed in the form of the new physical body to facilitate one's thoughts and desires.

This verse explains the possibility of transmigration. King/sage Bharata of the Bhågavata, after whom India became known as Bhårata, is the classic example of transmigration cited by most commentators. Unbecoming his stature, he fell prey to attachment for a motherless fawn in the forest and died in thought of the fawn. In his next life he was born as a deer, but due to his spiritual practices he could remember his previous life.

In this verse, Kṛṣṇa continues to assure Arjuna through his manner of address: O son of Kuntî. Kṛṣṇa is overflowing with affection for Arjuna, the son of his father's sister, and he does not hide his partiality toward him. He wants to say to his friend that in this there is no deception—even though Kṛṣṇa is known to deceive, there is no chance of it here. Although Kṛṣṇa has already made it clear that one who remembers him at the time of death attains him, in this verse he further assures Arjuna of this. He does so by stating the general rule that whatever one remembers at the time of death determines one's next life. Next Kṛṣṇa explains that which determines one's thoughts at the time of death and thereby one's future.

Text 7

तस्मात्सर्वेऽकालेऽमानस्मर्युध्या च।
मन्यार्पितांमनोन्योद्वितिमिनीवीरयस्मधाय॥७॥

tasmāt sarveṣu kāleṣu mām anuṣmara yudhya ca/
mayy arpitā-manō-buddhir mām evaisasya asaṁśayah//

tasmāt—therefore; sarveṣu—in all; kāleṣu—in times; mām—me; anu-
smara—remember; yudhya—fight; ca—also; mayi—in me; arpitā—placed;

3. Kṛṣṇa was known to lie and steal in his childhood līlā. He will also break his word for the sake of his devotee, should he deem it necessary. How can one trust such a person? Become his devotee.
Therefore, remember me at all times and fight. With your mind and intellect fixed on me, you shall come to me without doubt.

At the time of death, thinking of anything in particular is difficult. However, tendency resulting from past habit causes remembrance. At the time of death, a person will remember that which he has contemplated throughout his life, especially what he has remembered during difficult times. Fighting implies difficulty. Here Kṛṣṇa advises Arjuna to remember him always, and in particular while fighting.

Fighting also refers to Arjuna’s prescribed duty, which happens to run parallel with Kṛṣṇa’s will, not only in a general religious sense, but relative to the particular circumstances in Kṛṣṇa’s lilā (establishing dharma) as well. He does not want Arjuna to forgo fighting in the name of remembering him. Rather, fighting in this instance constitutes a form of remembrance of Kṛṣṇa, for it is Kṛṣṇa who has advised Arjuna to fight. Fighting, as the prescribed duty of a warrior, will cleanse Arjuna’s heart, enabling him to remember and meditate on Kṛṣṇa.

One will constantly remember that which one loves. Mind and intellect follow the heart. Kṛṣṇa thus implores Arjuna to love him, thereby further exposing his own love and the raison d’être of bhakti: emotion is more powerful than intellect.

For the balance of the chapter Kṛṣṇa explains how to meditate on him. He does so through comparative analysis and discussion of mixed and pure devotion.

Text 8

अभ्यासोऽयोऽयुक्तन् चेतसा नान्यागमिनाः।
परमम पुरुषं दिव्यम् याति परथानुचिन्तयाऽ॥ ॥

abhyaśa-yoga-yuktena cetasā nānya-gāminā/
paramam puruṣam divyam yāti pārthānucintayan//

abhyaśa-yoga—yoga practice; yuktena—being engaged; cetasā—by the mind; na anya-gāminā—without deviation; paramam puruṣam—Supreme Person; divyam—divine; yāti—attains; pārtha—O son of Pṛthā; anucintayan—meditating.
O Pārtha, a person who fixes his mind in yoga practice without deviation, meditating on the divine Supreme Person, attains him.

In this and the following five verses, Kṛṣṇa speaks of yoga mixed with devotion (yoga-miśra-bhakti). He does so to emphasize that success in yoga requires bhakti. He also speaks of yoga-miśra-bhakti and its requirements and techniques to compare it with the path of exclusive devotion.

Here the words abhyāsa-yoga-yuktena indicate a constant flow of thought resulting from practice. When this stream of thought is undeviated by any other thought (nānya-gāminā) and the stream of thought is all in relation to the Supreme Person, one attains that Supreme Being. In the word anucintayan, the prefix anu implies that such meditation should be in accordance with scriptural descriptions of the Supreme Person and it should follow the direction of the succession of spiritual preceptors (sampradāya/paramparā).

The tone of Kṛṣṇa’s voice in this verse continues to be reassuring to Arjuna, if not emphatic that attainment results from devotion. In the next two verses, Kṛṣṇa gives further details as to the nature of devotional meditation and yoga.

Text 9–10

कविः पुराणमनुशासितारः
मणिरीयायसमनुसरेत् यः ।
सर्वस्य धातारभविचिन्यकरः
मातिनवर्ण तमसः परस्तात् ॥६॥
प्रयाणकाले मन्त्राचालेन
भक्त्य युक्तो योगविहेत चेत ।
भूवास्त्वे प्राणात्मकं सम्यक्
स नं परं पुरुषमुपपिनि दित्यम् ॥७॥

kaviṁ purāṇam anuśāsitāram
anor aniṃsam anusmared yah/
sarvasya dhātāram acintya-rūpam
āditya-varṇam tamasah parastāt//
prayāṇa-kāle manasācalena
bhaktyā yukto yoga-balena caiva/
bhruvor madhye prāṇam āvesya samyak
sa tam param puruṣam upaiti divyam//
He who, imbued with devotion and the power of yoga at the time of death, perfectly places the life airs between the eyebrows while constantly meditating on God as the all-knowing seer, the ancient one, the ruler who is smaller than the atom and yet the support of all, of inconceivable form and effulgent like the sun beyond the darkness, attains the divine Supreme Person.

Vedānta-sūtra (4.2.17) discusses the yoga technique of raising the vital force, or life air, from the heart after having controlled it along the suṣumṇā nerve and fixing it on the point between the eyebrows, or the ājñā-cakra. Yoga practitioners will be familiar with this terminology. However, it is important to note that yogic power (yoga-balena) must be accompanied by the integrating force of love and devotion (bhaktyā yukta) for it to produce the desired result.

All of the above yoga terminology and that which follows in the next three verses has been prefaced by a description of the Supreme Person, the object of meditation. He is the all-knowing seer and poet, who speaks the language of love. Although ancient, he does not age. Śrūtis such as Gopāla-tāpani describe him as eternally adolescent. He is the ruler of all. To be so, his ruling power must ultimately be the force of affection, for only love can conquer all. This characterizes the ruling power of Kṛṣṇa, who conquers even Cupid by his irresistible power of attraction and charm. He is smaller than the smallest and bigger than the biggest, and thereby both infinite and infinitesimal, and thus immeasurable. In his Paramātma feature, he both manifests the world and enters the heart of every soul. Yet he appears as Kṛṣṇa (svayam bhagavān) in medium size, apparently measurable. Thus his form is inconceivable (acintya-rūpam). He is effulgent like the sun and
therefore one cannot look at him or see him with material eyes, even while it is he who is the light by which we see and who dispels all darkness.

As Arjuna wonders if there is anything more to this practice of yoga other than fixing the life air between the eyebrows, Kṛṣṇa continues with other technical details of the practice.

Text 11

**I shall speak briefly to you of that infallible goal which knowers of the Vedas describe, into which ascetics free from attachment enter, and desiring which they practice celibacy.**

Text 12–13

sarva-dvārāni samyāmya mano hṛdi nirudhya ca/
| mūrdhnī adhāyātmanāḥ prāṇam āsthitō yoga-dhāraṇām//
| om ity ekākṣaram brahma vyāharaṁ mām anusmāraṁ/
| yah prayāti tyajan deham sa yāti paramāṁ gatim//

sarva-dvārāni—all the gates; samyāmya—controlling; manah—the mind; hṛdi—in the heart; nirudhya—confining; ca—also; mūrdhni—in the head;
A person who is situated in yogic concentration by controlling all the gates of the body, confining the mind within the heart, and fixing the vital force at the top of the head, and then utters om, the single-syllable form of Brahman, and remembers me as he quits the body, attains the supreme goal.

In verse 11 the word aksaram, infallible, is synonymous with om. Thus its utterance is indicated, as it is directly mentioned in verse 13. Kṛṣṇa describes om as monosyllabic to stress the ease of its utterance. It is nondifferent from himself. Otherwise, everything else in this yogic equation is difficult. Celibacy is a prerequisite. Life-long celibacy is implied. The gates of the body refer to the senses of perception: eyes, ears, nose, and mouth (tongue). Controlling these gates or closing them implies not perceiving external objects. Confining the mind in the heart means not contemplating external objects.

Here Kṛṣṇa ends his discussion of yoga-miśra-bhakti with a brief description of the techniques and prerequisites involved. If anything makes success on this path easy or realistic, it is the element of devotion, not any of the techniques or prerequisites described. This practice does not appeal to Arjuna, nor is he practiced in it, whereas its essence, devotion, does appeal to him and is natural for him. Thus Kṛṣṇa next speaks about the path of pure devotion in two verses, contrasting its simplicity with the difficulties involved in yoga-miśra-bhakti.

**Text 14**

अनन्यचेताः सतात्म यो मां स्मरति नित्याशः

तस्याः मुक्तः पार्थ नित्ययुक्तकर्य योगिनः

admin-cetāḥ satataṁ yo māṁ smarati nityāsah/
tasyāham sulabhah pārtha nitya-yuktasya yoginah//

ananya-cetāḥ—whose consciousness is devoid of any consideration; satataṁ—always; yah—one who; māṁ—me; smarati—remembers; nityāsah—
But Pārtha, how easily am I won by one who remembers me constantly with undivided attention, for he is a [true] yogī who is ever united with me.

In this verse Kṛṣṇa’s voice is full of love, and he again addresses Arjuna affectionately as Pārtha. Kṛṣṇa speaks to Arjuna about Arjuna’s own status in yoga. The words ananya-cetāḥ imply consciousness devoid of desire for any goal other than devotion itself or interest in any path other than bhakti.

By use of the word satatam, Kṛṣṇa differentiates between unalloyed bhakti and the yoga-miśra-bhakti he has been explaining. The path of pure devotion is not concerned with time, place, and other details to the same extent that they are important in the paths of karma, jñāna, and yoga. Love has the power to attract the heart of the Absolute, causing him to overlook what might otherwise be a discrepancy. Kṛṣṇa’s use of the word satatam indicates devotion’s application in all circumstances. Chanting Kṛṣṇa’s name in particular is so powerful an expression of love that no rules are attached to it. It can be done at any time, in any place, by anyone. It promotes constant remembrance of Kṛṣṇa like no other practice.

Madhusūdana Sarasvatī acknowledges the distinction between the yoga practice Kṛṣṇa has been describing, with all its requirements and difficult practices, and that which he speaks of in this verse. He explains that the phrase ananya-cetāḥ indicates great veneration and love. He further points out that it is remembrance of God that is the essential ingredient for success, while the aforementioned techniques and prerequisites are nonessential.

No meditation is more powerful than that of a devotee who aspires for an intimate relationship with Kṛṣṇa. Such spiritual relationships capture Kṛṣṇa’s heart. This advanced stage of meditation or remembrance (smarati) is what Kṛṣṇa is alluding to in this verse. He says, tasya yoginah, “For such a yogī (devotee) in intimate spiritual rapport with me (nitya-yuktasya), I am easily attained (tasyāhāṁ sulabhaḥ).”

The words nitya-yuktasya here indicate the devotee who aspires to be eternally united in loving relationship with Kṛṣṇa. Kṛṣṇa assures Arjuna, who has already expressed his lack of confidence in yogic techniques in the sixth chapter, that devotees who constantly remember him easily attain him. This ease is such that they attain Kṛṣṇa regardless of when they
leave the body or whether they have perfected yogic techniques, such as focusing the vital force between the eyebrows. Kṛṣṇa further describes these souls in the next verse in terms of their greatness and level of attainment.

Text 15

ṁām upetya punar janma duḥkha-ālayam asāśvatam/
naṁpnuvanti mahātmānaḥ saṁsiddhiṁ paramāṁ gatāḥ//

ṁām—me; upetya—coming near; punah—again; janma—birth; duḥkha-ālayam—abode of misery; asāśvatam—temporary; na—never; āpnuvanti—reach; mahā-ātmānaḥ—great souls; saṁsiddhim—perfection; para-ṁāṁ—ultimate; gatāḥ—having attained.

Reaching me, these great souls never again experience birth in this temporal abode of misery, for they have attained the ultimate perfection.

In this verse, Kṛṣṇa invokes the term mahātmā (great soul) for the second time. He will do so once again in the next chapter (Bg. 9.13). In each instance he refers to his unalloyed devotees. He does not describe any other type of transcendentalist so flatteringly. Such perfect beings are those rare souls referred to in the third verse of the seventh chapter, the most perfect among the perfect. They come near to Kṛṣṇa in loving relationships of sacred rapture.

Here Kṛṣṇa has summed up material existence in two words, duḥkha-ālayam and asāśvatam. It is miserable and temporary. If a person disagrees with Kṛṣṇa’s description of material existence being an abode of misery and insists that he likes this world, Kṛṣṇa replies that it is then all the more miserable, for one cannot remain here.

It is well known that Kṛṣṇa’s devotees do take birth along with him when he appears in this world. His eternal associates accompany him, and perfected sādhakas take advantage of their association through birth in his lilā. However, in either case they do not experience any misery, nor is the lilā temporary even while appearing in the material world. This is why Kṛṣṇa states that such mahātmās do not take birth in a temporal abode of misery instead of saying that they do not take birth at all.

4. The first time was in 7.19.
While Kṛṣṇa’s devotees do not undergo the misery of rebirth, those who in their next life attain any of the various material planes are not assured the same status. In the next four verses Kṛṣṇa discusses these planes to contrast their attainment with that of his devotees, both unalloyed and yoga-miśra bhaktas.

**Text 16**

आब्राह्मबुवनालोकः पुनरावर्तिनोऽर्जुनः।
माम उपेत्या तु कौन्तेया पुनर्जन्म न बिद्यते॥ १६॥

ā-brahma-bhuvanāl lokāḥ punar āvartimo ’rjuna/
mām upetya tu kaunteya punar janma na vidyate//

ā-brahma-bhuvanāt—all the way up to Brahmā’s realm; lokāḥ—realms of existence; punah—again; āvartinah—rebirths; arjuna—O Arjuna; mām—me; upetya—attaining; tu—but; kaunteya—O son of Kunti; punah janma—rebirth; na—not; vidyate—takes place.

_O Arjuna, all realms of existence up to and including the abode of Brahmā are places from which one must again return. Only one who reaches me is never reborn._

The sacred literature describes many planes of experience, worlds (lokas), corresponding with the development of one’s spiritual consciousness and piety. Brahmā’s realm is considered to be the highest attainment in the material world. Brahmaloka is a realm of pure intellect. For the most part, those dwelling there have attained that plane through the culture of spiritual knowledge, which involves controlling the mental and physical urges. Other sense-controlled persons attain material realms that correspond with their level of spiritual attainment. Just below Brahmaloka, planes such as Mahārloka, Tapaloka, and Siddhaloka are primarily populated by spiritual seekers who in their previous life renounced the procreative urge. These seekers generally evolve to take birth in Brahmaloka, from which they, along with Brahmā at the end of his life, attain liberation, the cessation of birth and death. However, because the possibility exists that one can attain residence in Brahmaloka through immense piety rather than spiritual culture, Kṛṣṇa states that even the highest material realm is subject to rebirth.

Here Kṛṣṇa stresses the futility of material attainment, however great, in comparison with spiritual attainment. While the former, with all of its
frills, ultimately grants only rebirth, the latter begets eternity. Thus there
is really no comparison between the two. Kṛṣṇa wants to say that a life of
spiritual culture is infinitely better than a life motivated by materialistic
values. Those familiar with Hindu cosmography and the importance of
Brahmā, the god of creation, will be astounded by this statement in which
the pious position of the god of creation is belittled. As Kṛṣṇa next explains,
the reason that all material realms are subject to rebirth is that they are
within the influence of time.

Text 17

sahasra-yuga-parśvantam ahar yad brahmaṇo viduḥ/
   rātrim yuga-sahasrāntāṁ te 'ho-rātra-viḍo janāḥ//

sahasra-yuga—one thousand yugas; parśvantam—extent; aḥaḥ—day; yat—
which; brahmaṇaḥ—of Brahmā; viduḥ—they know; rātrim—night; yuga-
sahasra-antāṁ—ending after one thousand yugas; te—they; aḥaḥ-rātra—day
and night; viḍaḥ—knowers; janāḥ—people.

Those who know that the day of Brahmā lasts for a thousand yugas and
that his night lasts for a thousand yugas know what day and night are.

The length of Brahmā’s day is sahasra-yuga, one thousand yuga cycles.
Hindus recognize four ages (yugas), which revolve in cycles from Satya-
yuga to Tretā-yuga to Dwāpara-yuga to Kali-yuga over and over again.
One thousand of these cycles makes up the duration of Brahmā’s day, and
another one thousand cycles his night. One of these cycles alone consists
of 4,320,000 years. Here the Gītā asks us to expand our frame of reference.
It is worth remembering what Kṛṣṇa has said earlier: “Even those who
think they know what day and night are, do not really know what they
are.” (Bg. 2.69)

We have no experience of people living lives the length of Brahmā’s,
although we do have experience of species of insects whose entire life
consists of only the twenty-four hours that make up our day and night.
Brahmā’s life span is as inconceivable to us as ours would be to an insect.
If we were to come in contact with one exemplifying the measure of piety
or spiritual culture required for attaining birth in Brahmā’s realm, it would
make the corresponding birth for such a pious life and its descriptions in 
sacred literature more plausible, for it would be apparent that such a person 
does not belong here in this world among us.

Speaking microcosmically, a life ruled by discriminating intellect is one 
that passes at a slower pace. The discriminating person takes time to make 
a thorough analysis before acting. He investigates with interest even min-
ute aspects of the creation in relation to a bigger, spiritually-based picture. 
The true intellectual is not preoccupied with all the imaginable material 
possibilities, for his fascination with the underlying essence of material 
creation extends his power of discrimination beyond matter. In the material 
hierarchy mentioned in chapter 3 (Bg. 3.42), intellect takes its seat above 
the mind, senses, and sense objects, just beneath the soul.

It may be better for the culture of one’s spiritual life not to rationalize 
away concepts such as the long life of Brahmā. It will no doubt be helpful for 
spiritual advancement to accept the limitations of our experience based as it 
is on the faulty and inconclusive mediums of sense perception and reason.

We may think our days to be long at times, but material life is all too 
short in comparison to eternity. According to this verse, the duration of 
Brahmā’s days and nights are incredibly long from the human standpoint. 
Yet all of them put together are not enough to save him from death. Those 
who know the truth about the days and nights of Brahmā truly know the 
nature of day and night. They know them to be, however long, unable to 
deliver enduring experience. Regardless of just how long Brahmā lives, 
Kṛṣṇa’s main point here is that however long a person lives on any mate-
rial plane, his life is temporary. Thus Kṛṣṇa reminds us of the all-pervading 
influence of time.

As Brahmā is subject to death and even the possibility of rebirth, it is 
understood that those realms below his mentioned in verse 16 are subject 
to the same. These inferior planes are not only those populated primarily by 
spiritual seekers, but also the mental and physical realms populated primar-
ily by those in pursuit of sense enjoyment. In verse 18, Kṛṣṇa discusses the 
particulars of time’s influence on Brahmā’s abode. In verse 19, he speaks 
more specifically about the inferior realms. For the sake of emphasis, Kṛṣṇa 
points out the temporal nature of these domains.

Text 18

अव्यक्ताद्वित्य नमः प्रभवन्यहमये ||

gatavam phalimanyante svayamvakṣam || 18||
With the arrival of the day of Brahmā all things come forth from the unmanifest state; with the arrival of Brahmā’s night, they are reabsorbed into that known as the unmanifest state.

Here the word *avyakta*, the unmanifest, refers to Brahmā in his sleeping state. The worlds of material enjoyment populated by sense enjoyers are manifest during the partial creation of Brahmā’s day. Mental and physical realms are controlled by intellect. During his night they become unmanifest, only to again manifest at the dawn of his next day. They come into being replete with living beings under the influence of *karma*. Kṛṣṇa explains this next to make clear that the material merit of beings under the influence of *karma* is not lost during Brahmā’s night. It is the very force by which they again become manifest.

**Text 19**

Having come into being, O Pārtha, the multitude of creatures is helplessly reabsorbed with the arrival of Brahmā’s night, and they again come into being with the arrival of his day.

The implication of this verse is that there is no such thing as creation in the sense of something being created out of nothing. That which exists
will always exist and that which is nonexistent will never exist. The śruti states that the creator (Brahmā) recreated the sun and moon just as they were before (Ṛg. 10.190.3). Thus there is a perpetuity even to the temporal. The desires and karmic tendencies (saṃskāras) of the living beings remain with them during the unmanifest state and assure that beings under the influence of karma will again manifest to play out their desires. Accordingly, the material manifestation itself manifests along with them to facilitate their desires.

The word avasah in this verse, rendered “helplessly,” describes the condition of one under the influence of ignorance and material desire, which characterizes materially conditioned souls. Kṛṣṇa uses this word in concluding his depiction of the material realms and their inhabitants to indirectly stress his own position. Like those lost in the waves of the ocean, souls drift helplessly in a sea of material desire based on misplaced values arising from ignorance. They are helpless without the intervention of God.

Having described in brief yet compelling verses the futility of material attainment, Kṛṣṇa returns to a description of his own abode, the destination of the devoted. Consistent with his previous assurances, his voice is forceful and emphatic.

**Text 20**

paras tasmāt tu bhāvo 'nyo 'vyaktō 'vyaktāt sanātanaḥ/
yah sa sarvesu bhūteṣu naśyatu na vinaśyati//

**paraḥ**—higher; **tasmāt**—than that; **tu**—however; **bhāvo**—state of being; **anyah**—other; **avyaktaḥ**—unmanifest; **avyaktāt**—than the unmanifest; **sanātanaḥ**—eternal; **yah**—which; **sah**—that; **sarvesu**—in all; **bhūteṣu**—in beings; **naśyatu**—in the losses; **na**—not; **vinaśyati**—perishes.

*However, higher than this unmanifest is another eternal unmanifest, which does not perish when created things perish.*

The other unmanifest (avyaktaḥ) mentioned in this verse is categorically different from Brahmā during his sleep, who has also been called avyakta in verse 18. Because avyakta refers to the person of Brahmā in verse 18, there should be little doubt that the same term used here to indicate the source
of Brahmā also describes a person. This person is *avyakta* in the sense that he is not manifest to the material eye. It is he into whom the entire material manifestation is reabsorbed, as effect becomes unmanifest while in its causal state. When Brahmā sleeps, his creation is dissolved into himself, becoming unmanifest. Similarly, when Viṣṇu sleeps, the entire material manifestation including Brahmā is dissolved into himself.

The word *tu* (however) indicates the categorical difference between the two types of *avyakta*. This *avyakta* is *anya* (of different characteristics). The imperceptible unmanifest has its own distinguishing characteristics. Thus *avyakta* here refers to Viṣṇu, who is ever-existing (*sanātanaḥ*) as is his realm, which is nondifferent from himself.

**Text 21**

अव्याक्तं इत्य उक्तस्मि। यथा प्रायः न निवर्तते तद्भवं परमम्॥२१॥

avyakto 'ksara ity uktas tam āhuh paramāṁ gatim/

yam prāpya na nivartante tad dhāma paramāṁ mama//

*avyaktah*—unmanifest; *aksarah*—infallible; *iti*—thus; *uktah*—said; *tam*—that; *āhuh*—they call; *paramāṁ*—supreme; *gatim*—goal; *yam*—which; *prāpya*—attaining; *na*—not; *nivartante*—return; *tat*—that; *dhāma*—abode; *paramam*—supreme; *mama*—my.

That other unmanifest realm is said to be infallible. They call it the supreme goal, on attaining which one does not return. It is my supreme abode.

Here “they” who say this *avyakta* is infallible and call it the supreme destination are the *Upaniṣads*. They do so in verses such as, “There is nothing higher than the Supreme Person (*puruṣa*). He is the culmination. He is the highest goal.” (Ka. Up. 1.3.11)

According to Madhusūdana Sarasvatī, Kṛṣṇa’s use of *mama dhāma* (my abode) in the sixth case implies nondifference between his abode and himself.⁵ Such is the nature of his abode, although replete with form, qualities, and līlā, it is distinct from the material manifestation and eternal in nature, a veritable world of pure consciousness and bliss. This is an elaborate subject of Vaiśṇava theology.

---

⁵. As in the case of “Rāhu’s head,” when indeed Rāhu is nothing but a head.
Kṛṣṇa concludes this section by echoing verse 14 and reiterating the means of attaining him and his abode.

Text 22

पुरुषः स परः पार्थ भक्तः लभ्यस्तवनन्या।
यस्यानि भूतानि येन सर्वमिदं तन्त्व॥२२॥

puruṣah sa parah pārtha bhaktyā labhyas tv ananyayā/
yasyāntah-sthāni bhūtāni yena sarvam idam tatam//

O Pārtha, the Supreme Person, in whom all things stand and by whom all things are pervaded, is attainable by unalloyed devotion.

The word puruṣa has a number of meanings, but in this case it refers to God’s expansions, the puruṣāvatāras, known most commonly as Nārāyaṇa or Viṣṇu. Nārāyaṇa means “the resting place of all people,” as Kṛṣṇa says here, “in whom all beings stand.” Viṣṇu means “all-pervading,” and it is because God pervades everything that all things rest in him. Kṛṣṇa is the source of Viṣṇu/Nārāyaṇa, but in this verse he is speaking directly of the puruṣa, Viṣṇu, and only indirectly about himself.

However, Kṛṣṇa has also demonstrated that he is all-pervading and the resting place of all things in his pastimes described in Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam. The all-pervading nature of Kṛṣṇa’s form is illustrated in the Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam’s description of his childhood līlā, in which his mother looked into his mouth to see if he had eaten dirt, only to see the entire universe within Kṛṣṇa, including herself looking into his mouth (ŚB. 10.8). In the dāmodara-līlā (ŚB. 10.9), in which Yasodā tried to bind Kṛṣṇa with rope, Kṛṣṇa also demonstrated that all the rope in the world could not fit around his waist. He did this while remaining the same size, thus demonstrating his simultaneous all-pervasive and humanlike nature.

Kṛṣṇa hinted at the subject of yoga-miśra-bhakti in the two concluding verses of chapter 7. He then elaborated on this form of mixed devotion in

6. See ŚB. 1.3.28.
verses 8 through 13 of this chapter. Therein, he stressed devotion to God and meditation on the Supreme Person as the essential elements of this practice. In verse 14 Kṛṣṇa turned from his description of *yoga-miśra-bhakti* to unalloyed *bhakti*, in which even yoga techniques and prerequisites can be dispensed with and by which Kṛṣṇa himself is easily attained. After comparing this with material attainment, Kṛṣṇa spoke further of the nature of the ultimate goal, concluding with this verse. Here he says that attaining him and his own personal abode is possible only by devotion, not by any other means. He says, *bhaktiyā labhyah* (by devotion) *tv ananyayā* (indeed, not by anything else). Viṣṇu or any of his *avatāras’* abodes can be attained only if devotion is the primary factor in one’s particular practice, but Kṛṣṇa is attained only by unalloyed devotion, devoid of even the desire for liberation or one’s own spiritual benefit. Devotion for love’s sake is the emphasis in this verse, as it was in text 14.

Here Kṛṣṇa is once again assuring Arjuna of his success, should he take recourse to unalloyed devotion even while remaining a householder and warrior. Such is the mystical nature of *bhakti*. It is the power of pure love by which the Absolute, the source of all realms material and spiritual, is conquered and rendered humanlike. This humanity is epitomized by his falling in love with his devotee. Afflicted by this love here, Kṛṣṇa addresses Arjuna as Pārtha.

Kṛṣṇa next describes details of the paths to liberation and rebirth. He does so to emphasize the virtue and logic of spiritual practice, and more, the unique position of his unalloyed devotees in relation to the two routes of passage.

**Text 23**

यत्र काले त्वावर्त्तिनावर्त्तिनि चेत्योगिनः।
प्रायात्य यान्ति तं काल वक्ष्यामि भरतरशभा॥२३॥

yatra kāle tv anāvṛttim āvṛttim caiva yoginah/
prayātā yānti tam kālam vakṣyāmi bharatārśabha//

yatra—at which; kāle—in time; tu—indeed; anāvṛttim—nonreturn; āvṛttim—return; ca—also; va—certainly; yoginah—yogis; prayātāh—departing; yānti—attain; tam—that; kālam—time; vakṣyāmi—I shall speak; bharata-rāśabha—O best of the Bharata dynasty.

*O best of the Bharata dynasty, I shall now explain to you those times when yogis departing at death either return or do not return.*
Text 24

Those who know Brahman and depart during fire, light, day, the bright lunar fortnight, and the six months of the sun’s northern solstice go to Brahman.

Text 25

The yogi who departs during smoke, night, the dark lunar fortnight, and the sun’s six month southern solstice attains the lunar light and returns.

Text 26

The yogi who departs during smoke, night, the dark lunar fortnight, and the sun’s six month southern solstice attains the lunar light and returns.
yāti—goes; anāvṛttim—nonreturn; anyayā—by the other; āvartate—returns; punah—again.

These two well-known paths of this world, that of light and that of darkness, are considered primeval. By one, one does not return, by the other, one returns.

In verse 24 Kṛṣṇa describes jñāna-yogīs, who know Brahman. They take the path of light and attain Brahman. In verse 25 Kṛṣṇa describes karma-yogīs, who still have material desire. They take the dark path and return, remaining in samsāra. Having discussed these two paths and their respective travellers, Kṛṣṇa turns his attention to his unalloyed devotees, bhakti-yogīs. They are aware of both the dark and light paths, but take another alternative.

Text 27

naite sṛti pārtha jānan yogī muhyati kaścana/
tasmāt sarvesu kāleśu yoga-yukto bhavārjuna//

Knowing these two paths, the yogi is not confused at all. Therefore, at all times be steadfast in yoga, Arjuna.

After having spoken about pure devotion (ananya-cetāḥ satatam yo mām smarati nityasah) and how his devotees easily (sulabhah) attain his abode, Kṛṣṇa tells Arjuna of two paths taken by departed souls: one in light, the other in darkness.

This section of Śrī Gitā is taken metaphorically by Baladeva Vidyābhūṣāṇa. He also understands it as referring to the paths of devotion mixed with both material desire (the dark path) and desire for liberation (the path of light). Furthermore, this section indirectly underscores by way of contrast the sublime nature of the path of pure devotion. After describing the path of light and that of darkness, Kṛṣṇa remarks that pure devotees need not be concerned with either of them.
Metaphorically, the two paths speak of time (kāla). Śrī Kṛṣṇa says, yatra kāle tv anāvrttim āvrttim caiva yogināḥ prayātā: “I shall now speak of that time at which departing yogīs return and do not return.” Kṛṣṇa appears to be speaking about a particular time, yet in describing the path of light, he mentions not only time, but objects: fire, light, day, the fortnight of the bright moon, uttarāyaṇa (agnir jyotir ahaḥ śuklaḥ śan-māsā uttarāyaṇam). The path of darkness is also described in terms of times and objects: daksināyana, smoke, night, the dark fortnight (dhūmo rātris tathā kṛṣṇah śan-māsā daksināyanaṁ). Had Kṛṣṇa not been speaking of time metaphorically, the objects such as fire, light, and smoke would not be included, as they have nothing to do with time.

What then is Kṛṣṇa describing? By mentioning particular times and objects, he is referring to the deities that preside over them, deities that are designated to assist the soul in its passage (ātivāhika-devas), as mentioned in the Upaniṣads.7 As a grove that has a majority of mangos is called a mango grove, even when other trees are also present there, similarly, since the series of deities that the passing soul meets is predominated by deities of time—the day, fortnight, six months—the word time is used to refer to the entire series of deities.

Stressing two paths, one of return, the other of no return, Kṛṣṇa tells us that in the least we should take the path of no return by way of culturing spiritual knowledge. We should be concerned with this—passing beyond time—not any particular time of passage. More than the details of the paths, Kṛṣṇa stresses that there are two of them: one of return, the other of no return. Those who know these two, he concludes, are not bewildered. He implies in his conclusion that they are not bewildered because they take the path of no return, which is obviously better. Thus the wise follow the path of light, as do most devotees.

However, not all devotees follow the path of light Kṛṣṇa refers to. Here we come to the greater value of understanding this abstract section of the Gītā. It highlights the complexity involved in passage for those on paths other than that of pure devotion. The sublime nature of śuddha-bhakti is that it has the power to attract Kṛṣṇa (kṛṣṇākarsini).8 For those unalloyed (ananya) devotees who have spent their lives pining for Kṛṣṇa (nityayuktasya), as their time of passage approaches, Kṛṣṇa himself loses patience

7. See Govinda Bhāṣya on Vs. 4.3. See also Vs. 4.2.20.
8. Brs. 1.1.17
and cannot wait for them to gradually come to him through the presiding deities on the path of light.

Gopāla-tāpanī (1.23) informs us that Kṛṣṇa directly reveals himself to those who worship him (the cowherd) by the gopāla-mantra. This is confirmed later in the Gitā (12.6–7) when Kṛṣṇa tells Arjuna that mat-parāḥ (those who are attached to me as the highest goal) teśām aham samuddhartā (I personally deliver them) na cirāt (very quickly). In chapter 9 of the Gitā, Kṛṣṇa assures Arjuna that he personally carries his unalloyed devotees (vahāmy aham) as a husband carries his bride across the threshold into the house of prema-bhakti. In chapter 12, verses 6 and 7, Kṛṣṇa also affirms his personal involvement in the deliverance of his unalloyed devotees.

Bādarayana says in his sūtras (4.3.16), višeṣam ca darśayati, implying that the scripture declares a difference between the passing from the world of amanyā devotees and that of others. Nārada Muni’s life and liberation related in his own words in the Bhāgavata (1.6.27–28) also serve to illustrate this difference, as do the words of the Varāha Purāṇa, “By my sweet will I place him on Garuḍa’s shoulders and bring him unhindered to the supreme abode without any need for the path of arcirādī.”

Arcirādī refers to the path of light under discussion, in which the first deity is Arci, the deva of light, the last being four-faced Prajāpati Brahmā. After reaching Brahmā, jñānīs and yogīs attain liberation along with him at the end of his very long life. Altogether there are thirteen deities on the path of light, all of which are not directly mentioned in the Gitā. As the desireless jñānī or yogi leaves his body through the 101st coronary artery, he moves along the path of light from one deity to the next, never to return to birth and death. This path is also tread by some devotees, for only the unalloyed devotees are directly delivered by their Lord.

Thus the import of Śrī Gitā in describing the paths of light and darkness is twofold. Kṛṣṇa tells us that in general we should take the path of light through the culture of spiritual knowledge, lest we for all of our efforts gain but a return ticket to the world of birth and death. Furthermore, he tells us that those who are mahātmās, great souls, while in knowledge of these paths, need not be concerned with either of them, complicated as they are. Their path is simple and expedient, tasyāham sulabhah pārtha.

---

10. Cited in Govinda Bhāṣya 4.3.16.
11. See Bg. 8.15.
Furthermore, as Kṛṣṇa concludes in the next verse, the path of devotion is surpassed by no other practice.

Text 28

vedesu yajñesu tapahsu caiva
dānesu yat punya-phalam pradīṣṭam/
atiyē tat sarvam idam vidītvā
yogī paraṁ sthānam upaitī caḍyam//

vedesu—in the Vedas; yajñesu—in the yajñas; tapahsu—in austerities; ca—also; eva—certainly; dānesu—in charities; yat—which; punya-phalam—fruit of piety; pradīṣṭam—prescribed; atiyē—transcends; tat sarvam—all this; idam—this; vidītvā—knowing; yogī—the yogī; paraṁ—supreme; sthānam—abode; upaitī—attains; ca—also; caḍyam—primal.

Knowing all of this, the yogī transcends whatever results are attained by study of the Vedas, sacrifice, austerity, charity, as well as the fruit of piety. He attains the supreme primal abode.

Such is the virtue of knowing that which Kṛṣṇa teaches Arjuna in this chapter. All of this (sarvam idam)—studying the Vedas, sacrifice, austerity, charity, as well as piety and its fruit—is surpassed by one who understands what Kṛṣṇa teaches in this chapter. That which is surpassed is not limited to the specific practices mentioned. Further implied is that even when performing these acts optimally (under the direction of the guru, at the appropriate time, and so on) the subsequent results are not comparable to understanding this chapter.

This chapter's glory, however, rests not merely on the fact that its knowledge surpasses all of the above, but that one who understands it attains Kṛṣṇa's primal and supreme abode, yogī paraṁ sthānam upaitī caḍyam. The abode of Kṛṣṇa is described throughout the sacred literature: a mystic, poetic land of love, where all things are possible, as all desire is in concert with the Absolute. Where talking is song and walking is dance, one can only
imagine what the song and dance of that place must be, a realm known by only a very few transcendentalists as Goloka.\textsuperscript{12}

The yogi referred to herein is the true spiritual practitioner in general and the unalloyed devotee in particular. Kṛṣṇa himself and his abode are attained only by unalloyed devotion. This is the attainment Kṛṣṇa speaks of here. Thus Kṛṣṇa compellingly concludes this chapter with emphasis on devotion and carries this emphasis into the next, wherein pure devotion reaches its climax, only to overflow into chapter 10.

\textsuperscript{12. Br. Sm. 5.56. The fifth chapter of Br. Sm. describes the abode of Kṛṣṇa, known as Goloka.}
Text 1
śrī-bhagavān uvāca
idam tu te guhyatamam pravakṣyāmy anasūyave/
jñānam vijñāna-sahitam yaj jñātvā mokṣyase 'ṣubhāt//
śrī-bhagavān uvāca—the Lord of Śrī said; idam—this; tu—but; te—to you; guhya-tamam—the most secret; pravakṣyāmi—I shall explain; anasūyave—to the nonenvious; jñānam—theoretical knowledge; vijñāna—realized knowledge; sahitam—with; yat—which; jñātvā—knowing; mokṣyase—you shall be free; asubhāt—from inauspiciousness.

The Lord of Śrī said: O Arjuna, you are nonenvious, and therefore I shall impart this supreme secret to you, in terms of both theory and experience, knowing which you shall be free from inauspiciousness.

Kṛṣṇa begins this chapter with three verses eulogizing the knowledge he will reveal. Here he wants to get Arjuna’s undivided attention, as the knowledge to be revealed is very important. Furthermore, Kṛṣṇa himself is filled with emotion as he begins to speak about that by which he is conquered—pure devotion. Śrīdhara Swāmī says that Kṛṣṇa, having first taught in the previous two chapters that he is attained through devotion alone and by no other means, introduces this chapter to expound his own incomprehensible glory and the extraordinary power of devotion.
Here the word *tu* (but) indicates that this knowledge is more confidential than that which he has already described. After concluding the previous chapter with glorification of that which was revealed therein, here Kṛṣṇa says, “But now I shall impart higher understanding.” Arjuna’s *adhikāra* (eligibility) is also stated: he is nonenvious. Arjuna never tires of hearing the glory of Kṛṣṇa. That is, even after hearing Kṛṣṇa praise himself repeatedly, Arjuna finds no fault in him, nor does he lose interest. Arjuna is thus characterized as both sincere and self-controlled.

The wisdom Kṛṣṇa imparts in this chapter is explained theoretically in scripture. It is the knowledge of his Godhood, knowing which his devotee, through its application, gradually experiences Kṛṣṇa’s sweetness in love. Being the knowledge of pure devotion, it is most confidential (*guhyatamam*), more so than the wisdom of the difference between matter and spirit, the realization of Brahman and Paramātma stressed in the first six chapters, and the culture of devotion mixed with *karma*, *jñāna*, and *yoga* mentioned in the previous two chapters. It is the esoteric mystery of divine love that has surfaced here and there throughout the text and particularly in the previous two chapters. This is the essence of the *Gitā*, and here it will be brought out in detail, both its philosophical underpinning and practical application.

The insight revealed in this chapter is the same divine knowledge that Kṛṣṇa revealed to Brahmā in the original four verses of Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam. There Kṛṣṇa says, *jñānaḥ parama-guhyaṁ me yad vijñāna-samanvitam sara-hasyam:* “Knowledge about me as described in the scriptures is very confidential, and it has to be realized in conjunction with confidential devotional service.” (ŚB. 2.9.31) Gauḍīya Vaiṣṇava ācāryas have consistently rendered *sarahasyam* as “with devotional service.” Both Jīva Gosvāmī and Viśvanātha Cakravarti Ṭhākura have labeled this devotional service *prema-bhakti*. The idea that knowledge culminates in devotion and love was also discussed in the *Gitā’s* seventh chapter (Bg. 7.19).

**Text 2**

राजविद्या राजगुह्या पवित्रभूतमः
प्रत्याक्षवागमं धर्मयं सु-सुखां कर्तुः सुभयमः

raja-vidyā raja-guhyam pavitram idam uttamam/
pratyaksāvagamaṁ dharmyam su-sukham kartum swampayam/

raja-vidyā—the king of knowledge; raja-guhyam—the king of secrets; pavitram—the purifier; idam—this; uttamam—ultimate; pratyakṣa—directly;
avagamam—perceivable; dharmyam—religious; su-sukham—easy; kartum—to practice; avyayam—imperishable.

This is the king of knowledge, the king of secrets, the ultimate purifier. It is directly perceivable, religious, easy to practice, and imperishable.

The knowledge of pure devotion is both the king of knowledge (rāja-vidyā) and the knowledge of kings (rājānām vidyā). The kings of this world are the senses, and one who conquers them is a true king. This knowledge is for such persons, and it will also make such persons kings. What is the knowledge of kings? It is their wisdom—the knowledge by which they are kings in reality. It is that which they keep hidden. Thus it is secret knowledge as well. It is the king of secrets (rāja-guhyā) because it is hidden away in the scripture, and thus it is concealed here in the middle of the Gîtā’s eighteen chapters.

Jiva Goswāmī comments both in his Kṛṣṇa-sandarbha (186) and his commentary on Gopāla-tāpani Upaniṣad (1.5) that the word vidyā refers to the highest bhakti. He cites this verse in explaining Gopāla-tāpani Upaniṣad’s statement, gopijanāvidyā-kalā-preraka: “[Kṛṣṇa] is the master (preraka) of the gopīs, who are potencies (kalā) of the knowledge (vidyā) that is love characterized by compassion.” Śrī Jiva further states in his Gopāla-tāpani commentary: “Those who are the forms or parts (kalāḥ) of the perfect knowledge (a-vidyā) that is loving devotion in a specific mood are the gopi-jana. He who inspires them—who engages them in his personal pastimes—is their lover.” Thus the word vidyā in this verse also indicates the highest devotion.

The word vidyā is often rendered “practical knowledge,” differentiating it from abstract and theoretical knowledge. This common understanding of vidyā finds the word often used in reference to magical spells, which have a practical effect. Bhakti is also practical knowledge that results in the magical effect of loving Kṛṣṇa. It is the magic that transforms all things by way of unveiling their connection with their spiritual origin.

It has been said that Vedānta deals with secret knowledge, not the common knowledge in which the dualities of good, bad, happy, and sad are apparent. It deals with the knowledge of the underlying unity of all

1. Ordinarily, the words rāja-vidyā and rāja-guhyam mean “knowledge of kings” and “the secret of kings”; however, according to Pāṇini Sūtras secondary words (upasarjana) can be placed first. Thus rāja-vidyā and rāja-guhyam mean “the king of knowledge” and “the king of secrets.”
things—knowledge of oneness, as opposed to the knowledge of duality. However, Baladeva Vidyābhūṣāṇa in his Vedānta commentary, Govinda Bhāṣya, alludes to the idea that uncommon, or secret, knowledge is not the mere opposite of common knowledge. Secret knowledge is not concerned merely with the underlying unity of all things, but with the fact that within the unity of Brahman there is simultaneously a variegatedness that does not compromise its unity. Indeed, such knowledge makes the knowledge of the underlying unity of Brahman common knowledge in comparison.

This secret knowledge is directly perceivable (pratyakṣāvagamam). It is rasānanda, the taste and feeling of devotional life. That it is declared religious (dharmyam) indicates that this knowledge is transcendental devotion. Generally, spiritual knowledge retires religious practice. As one’s heart is purified through religious practice, knowledge of the self manifests, and this knowledge frees one from religious duties. This has been taught in the first six chapters of the Gitā. Thus with the word dharmyam, Kṛṣṇa speaks of bhakti as religious life in transcendence replete with knowledge that delivers one from material duality. This dharma is an eternal suprareligious expression—the prema-dharma of devotional life.

Jīva Goswāmī has coined the term acintya-bhedābheda (inconceivable simultaneous identity and difference) to describe the Vedānta of Gauḍīya Vaiṣṇavism. The abheda (identity) is the philosophical reality of the nondifference between God and all things, while the bheda (difference) is Gauḍīya Vedānta’s religious expression in transcendence that makes for an undivided yet variegated Absolute. This doctrine is an apt description of the knowledge of this chapter, love (prema) that is by nature a oneness expressing itself variously.

The knowledge that is bhakti is supremely purifying. Purification involves the clearing of karma. Our karma exists not only in terms of that which we are presently experiencing; it is also stored in seed in the form of desire and acquired tendencies. Whereas knowledge of the self has the power to destroy karma before it bears fruit, it cannot change one’s manifest karma, or prārabdha-karma. Pure devotion, on the other hand, can clear even one’s prārabdha-karma, that which is already bearing fruit in this life.

Kṛṣṇa says that bhakti is easily or happily performed. At the same time, it is imperishable. While most things easily performed do not produce lasting

---

2. See commentary on Vs. 1.1.2.
3. See SB. 3.33.6 and Brs. 1.1.23, citing Padma Purāṇa.
results, this is not the case with śuddha-bhakti. It is easily performed, yet the result is permanent.

Having eulogized its virtues directly, Kṛṣṇa further glorifies bhakti by way of stating the adverse effects that result from not accepting it. He does so in the next verse anticipating Arjuna’s question: “If this path is both the best and easiest, why are there so many souls still in saṁsāra? Why don’t they take to bhakti?”

Text 3

People who do not have faith in this (prema) dharma, O destroyer of enemies, do not attain me. They are reborn on the path of death and transmigration.

Śraddhā (faith) that simply by serving Kṛṣṇa one’s life will be perfect indicates one’s eligibility for bhakti. Rūpa Goswāmī says, ādau śraddhā: bhakti begins with śraddhā (Brs. 1.4.15). Those lacking śraddhā (aśraddadhānāḥ) remain in saṁsāra. They do not take to bhakti because they do not believe what Kṛṣṇa says about it. It is, after all, hard to imagine that the highest thing is so easily attainable. The combination of these two things—exalted status and accessibility—makes for true magnanimity: giving the highest thing to the least qualified. Such magnanimity is nowhere better exemplified than in Śrī Caitanya, who distributed prema-bhakti to anyone and everyone without consideration of their social or religious status.

Here Kṛṣṇa indicates that liberation by any means requires that the element of bhakti be present in one’s practice, and when bhakti itself is unalloyed, one attains the highest form of liberation, prema-dharma.

In the next three texts, Kṛṣṇa begins to discuss the most confidential knowledge by first explaining its metaphysical basis in two verses and then
giving an example to help Arjuna understand the philosophical underpinning of this knowledge.

**Text 4**

Maya tattvam sarvam jagatayam avyaktam

Madhyam sarvapraha nan chah tejvakshanam: \|4||

Mayà tatam idam sarvam jagad avyakta-mûrtinå/

mat-sthåni sarva-bhütåni na cåhaµ teßv avasthitåh//

**This entire creation is pervaded by me in my unmanifest form. All created beings are situated in me, but I am not situated in them.**

In this chapter Krsna will reveal something about the nature of “sweet” devotion, Vraja bhakti. This devotion involves the ultimate manifestation of divinity (Vraja Krsna) relating intimately with his devotees, such that his Godhood is concealed. Were it not concealed, such intimacy could not take place, nor would it be sweet if it did not manifest in relation to the ultimate feature of divinity. When the Supreme Godhead relates with his devotee as if he were not God, and as if his devotee were the highest object of love, this is sweet devotion. Thus sweet devotion has as its background the Godhood of the Absolute. In this verse through the tenth, Krsna speaks of his majesty (aiśvarya), knowledge of which is necessary for entering the realm of sweet devotion, wherein it is ultimately suppressed by the power of devotion itself. The theological basis for this loving devotion is Krsna’s majesty—his Godhood. First philosophy and theology (theory/tattva), then love (realization/bhava).

Krsna says here that although his form is unmanifest, it is all-pervasive. The words avyakta-mûrtinå are significant. Krsna is not ultimately formless and thereby all-pervasive. His form is all-pervasive, although unmanifest to mundane eyes. All beings exist in Krsna, but he is not in them, in that he is not attached to the mundane world as are the living beings. Otherwise, the śruti says, “Having projected it (the world), he entered into it.” (Tai. Up. 2.6) He is in the world, but not of it.
Kṛṣṇa is the cause, the world is the effect. The effect is present in the cause, and the cause invisibly pervades the effect.

Text 5

न च मनस्थानिः भूतानि पत्ये मे योगमेवः।
भूतमूलं च भूतस्यो ममात्मा भूताभावः॥५॥

na ca mat-sthāni bhūtāni paśya me yogam aiśvaram/
bhūta-bhṛn na ca bhūta-stho mamātmā bhūta-bhāvanah//

na—not; ca—also; mat-sthāni—abiding in me; bhūtāni—beings; paśya—behold; me—my; yogam aiśvaram—Godly power; bhūta-bhṛt—the sustainer of beings; na—never; ca—also; bhūta-sthāḥ—in the created beings; mama—my; ātmā—self; bhūta-bhāvanah—the cause of beings.

And yet beings do not abide in me. Behold my Godly power! While I am the sustainer and cause of beings, my Self is not contained in created beings.

Here Kṛṣṇa appears to contradict himself. In the previous verse he said that all beings are within him, yet here he says the opposite: “beings do not abide in me.” Created beings of this world do and do not abide in him at the same time. How does Kṛṣṇa accomplish this impossible task? He says, paśya me yogam aiśvaram: “Behold my Godly power, by which I do the impossible!”

In the metaphysic of the Gauḍīya Vaishnavas, Jīva Gosvāmī has included the word acintya (inconceivable). Kṛṣṇa’s inconceivable sakti reconciles all apparent contradictions (acintya-bhedābheda). He is one with the world while simultaneously different from it. He maintains all living beings without being within them!

While created beings are within their bodies and sustain them due to being attached to them, Kṛṣṇa enters and sustains all without attachment. It is not out of a sense of self-preservation that Kṛṣṇa sustains the world.

Kṛṣṇa next gives an example to help Arjuna understand. However, in doing so, he appears to contradict himself again by saying that all beings do abide in him!

4. Here the word yoga must be understood as power and not spiritual discipline. Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa explains yoga thus: “The etymological root of the word yoga is ‘that which is used in difficult tasks.’ In other words, yoga is Kṛṣṇa’s capacity (dharma) characterized by the determination to fulfill his promises through a body of inconceivable energies.”
yathākāśa-sthitau nityam vāyūḥ sarvatra-go mahān/
tathā sarvāṇi bhūtāni mat-sthānity upadhāraya//

Just as the air blows everywhere, being always situated within the sky, so are all beings situated in me.

While Kṛṣṇa says here that all beings are situated in him, as opposed to having said they are not in the previous verse, he qualifies his statement to explain himself to Arjuna. All beings are in him inasmuch as the wind is contained in space. Although wind is contained in space, space is not attached to or dependent on wind. Although the two, space and wind, have a relationship as sustainer and sustained, they are not in contact with one another. Just as the wind, although everywhere, is always in space, for without space nothing can exist, at the same time wind has no connection with space because space has no parts to be connected with, being all-pervading.

Viśvanātha Cakravartī Ṭhākura explains that this example does not entirely explain the nature of Kṛṣṇa’s relationship with the world, which Kṛṣṇa himself has said he maintains by his mystic opulence, or inconceivable power. The example falls short inasmuch as while both the sky and wind are unconscious, Kṛṣṇa and the living beings are conscious. Consciousness is the basis of attachment, yet Kṛṣṇa remains unattached to that which he sustains. This is the inconceivable mystic reality of Kṛṣṇa’s identity with and difference from the world and the living beings, to which Viśvanātha Cakravartī Ṭhākura says we must simply fold our hands and offer respect, acknowledging Kṛṣṇa’s greatness.

Having explained his greatness in relation to the sustenance of the world, Kṛṣṇa next explains his position in relation to its creation and destruction. He does so in accordance with Arjuna’s mental question concerning the state of affairs at the time of the cosmic dissolution. What happens to all the living beings who abide in Kṛṣṇa at that time?
At the end of a cycle of kalpas, O son of Kunti, all beings enter my material nature; at the beginning of the next cycle, I again send them forth.

Krṣṇa speaks to Arjuna, the son of Kunti, with compassion for the living beings trapped in the endless cycle of material nature, as he explains his position in relation to their plight. He sends them forth through his manifestation as primary creator (Maha-Viśnu). As explained in chapter 4, he then enters the world to liberate them. He does this in his original form as Krṣṇa or as one of his avatāras.

Here kalpa-kṣaye and kalpa-ādau indicate, respectively, the end of the cycle of kalpas that make up Brahmā’s life and the beginning of a new life of Brahmā. The living beings’ merger into Krṣṇa’s material nature involves their being suspended in subtle form as the modes of material nature (guṇas) become unmanifest. This merging of the living beings into the unmanifest state is different than that described in chapter 8 (Bg. 8.18). In chapter 8 Krṣṇa spoke of the partial dissolution of the world at the end of each of Brahmā’s days. Here he is speaking about the complete dissolution of the manifest world at the end of Brahmā’s life.

Krṣṇa next explains how he sends the living beings forth at the beginning of the next cycle of creation, remaining unattached and changeless himself.

Text 8

prakṛtim svām avaṣṭabhya visṛjāmi punah punah/
    bhūta-grāmam imam krṣṇam avaśam prakṛte vaṣāt//
Presiding over my material nature, I again and again send forth this entire aggregate of helpless beings in accordance with their natures.

In this verse, Kṛṣṇa uses the same words he used in chapter 4 (Bg. 4.6), prakṛtiḥ svām avaṣṭabhya. The words adhiṣṭhāya and avaṣṭabhya are synonymous. In chapter 4 Kṛṣṇa was speaking about his own descent as the avatāra. As the avatāra, God enters the world for līlā and remains unaffected by the world’s influence, just as a governor enters a prison but does not become a prisoner. Here Kṛṣṇa is speaking about how as God (Viṣṇu) he rules over material nature in the act of creation.

As he who presides over his own material nature, God sends forth the living beings at the time of creation in accordance with their karma, or acquired natures. Nature itself is the agency through which creation takes place, and though presiding over the creation, God is personally neither transformed nor attached. Deferring to the principle of karma, which he himself has put in place, he allows the living beings to become manifest again in accordance with the desires and qualities they had acquired at the time of dissolution. As such, God remains uninvolved, although he is behind the entire cosmic manifestation.

Text 9

Na ca maṁ tāni karmāni nibadhnanti dhanañjaya/
udāśīna-vad āśinam asaktam teṣu karmasu
t

O Dhanañjaya, these actions do not bind me, as I remain unattached to them like one indifferent.
The Bhagavad-gîtā is based on the Upaniṣads. Thus it preserves the impartiality of the Absolute while introducing the concept of a personal, merciful, loving God. Here Kṛṣṇa describes himself as impartial, yet as we shall see later on in this chapter, he is also merciful and loving at heart. As the great God of justice he is impartial like a high court judge, but in his private life with his intimate friends he is motivated by the spiritual partiality of love. This contrast is brought out in verse 29 of this chapter.

The birth of living beings is a result of beginningless karma, not God’s desire. Kṛṣṇa describes himself as udāsīnavad āsīnam, seated as if neutral. As God he is not affected by partiality. Observing the principle of beginningless karma, God is just. Were he not so, there would be no question of mercy, which involves occasionally overriding justice. Were justice overruled in all cases, there would be no meaning to mercy, and justice would have no say. Thus mercy requires observance of the principle of justice, as it does overruling it. God does just that. Because he remains neutral, he is impartial, yet he is at the same time the doer. Udāsīnavat means “as if neutral.” In reality, he is neutral, active, just, and impartial. In the form of his incarnations he is merciful, and as Kṛṣṇa he is particularly so. Mercifully here, he continues to explain these points to Arjuna in the next verse.

Text 10

mayādhyaṃṣenā prakṛtiḥ sūyate sa-carācaram/
hetunānena kaunteya jagad viparivartate//

mayā—by me; adhyakṣena—as overseer; prakṛtiḥ—material nature; sūyate—brings forth; sa-cara-acaram—both the animate and the inanimate things; hetunā—for the reason; anena—this; kaunteya—O son of Kuntī; jagat—the world; viparivartate—revolves.

Under my supervision, material nature brings forth the world of animate and inanimate things; on account of this, O son of Kuntī, the world revolves.

Here Kṛṣṇa reiterates: he is neutral, yet the doer inasmuch as material nature is dependent on him and by his will she carries out the work of creation. God sanctions and material nature acts, yet because material nature belongs
to and is thus presided over (mayādhyaṅkṣena prakṛtī) by God, he is both the
efficient (nimitta) and ingredient (upādāna) cause of the world.

This verse concludes this section in which Kṛṣṇa explains the theoretical
knowledge of his extraordinary opulence. The theoretical basis of the
reality of Kṛṣṇa’s inconceivable simultaneous identity and difference with
the world has been explained in verses 4 and 5, and Kṛṣṇa has stated his
position clearly, identifying the cosmic life of Viṣṇu as an aspect of himself
in verses 7 and 8. All of this knowledge of tattva is called sambandha-jñāna
in the devotional school of Gauḍīya Vedānta. Such knowledge is essential
for entering a life of pure devotion to Kṛṣṇa, the subject of this chapter.

Hearing Kṛṣṇa speak about himself in this way, Arjuna accepts everything
Kṛṣṇa has said and is overwhelmed. He wonders why people don’t revere

Text 11

अवज्ञानन्ति मां मूढा मानुषी तनुमाधिस्थितम्।
परं भावमज्ञानन्तो मम भूतमहेश्वरम्॥ ११॥

avajānanti mām mūḍhā mānuṣīṁ tanum āśritam/
param bhāvam ajānanto mama bhūta-maheśvaram//

avajānanti—deride; mām—me; mūḍhā—fools; mānuṣīṁ—in a human form;
tanum—a body; āśritam—assuming; param—transcendental; bhāvam—ex-
istence; ajānantaḥ—not knowing; mama—my; bhūta—of all beings; mahā-
īśvaram—the great Lord.

Fools deride me, who have assumed human form, not understanding my
transcendental existence as the great Lord of all beings.

The transcendental nature of Kṛṣṇa’s humanlike form is raised in this
verse. Although he has explained himself to be the source of the world,
it is hard to imagine that he could be so, owing to his human appearance
and the limitation that accompanies the human form. How can he be the
Lord of all beings?

Kṛṣṇa’s acceptance of human form, mānuṣīṁ tanum āśritam, corresponds
with his devotees’ love for him. According to Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam (3.9.11),
God appears in the heart of a mature (paribhāvita) devotee in a particular
form relative to the devotee’s pure love, yad-yad-dhiyā ta urugāya vibhāva-
yanti tat-tad-vapuḥ praṇayase sad-anugrahāya.
God’s appearance in the heart of his devotee is not an event in time, as the form of God is eternally existing, and the bhāva, or love, of the devotee is as well. This bhāva is not a product of spiritual practice, sādhya kābhū naya (Cc. Madhya 22.107). It awakens in the purified heart of the devotee by virtue of God’s grace. Those devoid of this love think that Kṛṣṇa acquired his form at some point in time as a result of previous pious deeds and austerities. Here Kṛṣṇa says that such people are fools.

Love of God has power over God, who fully gives himself to his devotee in his appearance as Kṛṣṇa. As such, Kṛṣṇa’s assuming a humanlike form is spiritual and eternal, although appearing here as though within the jurisdiction of time. Humanlike in appearance, Kṛṣṇa remains the Supreme Godhead.

People often assume that the humanlike appearance of Kṛṣṇa precludes his being the ultimate expression of divinity, the Lord of all beings, avatāras included. People more readily accept a powerful image of the divine rather than a playful one when conceiving of the God of gods. However, play requires power. The more power one has, the more one can play. As mentioned earlier, Viśvanātha Cakravartī Ṭhākura reminds us that playing with his mother in his earthly līlā, Kṛṣṇa once showed her the entire universe within his mouth. In this līlā he demonstrated that Bhagavān is also Brahman (unlimited). He is param-brahma. Playful Kṛṣṇa in humanlike appearance is most powerful. At the very least, he is the Lord of all beings, more, the heart of transcendence.

Arjuna naturally wondered what happens to fools who deride Kṛṣṇa’s humanlike appearance, not acknowledging its spirituality.

Text 12

मोघाशा मोघकर्माणो मोघज्ञाना विचेतसः।
गाढीयामागी च रक्षसी मोहिनी श्रिवा॥ २॥

moghāśā mogha-karmacā mogha-jñānā vicetasah/
rāksasim āsurim caiva prakṛtim mohinim śritāḥ//

moghā-āsāḥ—their hopes are in vain; mogha-karmāṇāḥ—their actions are in vain; mogha-jñānāḥ—their knowledge is in vain; vicetasah—senseless; rāksasim—the hateful and envious; āsurim—ungodly sense enjoyers; ca—and; eva—certainly; prakṛtim—nature; mohinim—bewildering; śritāḥ—taking shelter in.
Their hopes are in vain, their actions are in vain, their knowledge is in vain. They are senseless, taking shelter of the deluding dispositions of fiends and demons.

Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa says that rākṣasas are those who are strongly influenced by ignorance (tamo-guṇa) and thus dominated by a spirit of envy, hatred, and violence. Present-day society’s perpetrators of hate crimes fall into this category. The term āsura indicates one who takes pleasure in the senses, indicating the gross materialist influenced by passion and ignorance (rajo-guṇa and tamo-guṇa) and dominated by pride and desire. The āsuric disposition will be discussed in greater detail in chapter 16.

Viśvanātha Cakravartī explains the words moghāśāḥ, mogha-karmāṇāḥ, and mogha-jnānāḥ in relation to devotees, fruitive workers, and jñānis, respectively. He says that those (mixed) devotees who do not consider God’s form eternal have no hope (mogha-āśāḥ) of attaining liberation. Those desiring material gain and heavenly attainment are also frustrated in their efforts (mogha-karmāṇāḥ). Jñānis desiring liberation cannot attain it (mogha-jnānāḥ).

Implied here is that by offending God, who descends to the world for the upliftment of humanity, people become possessed of the above dispositions in their next life or are so in this life as a result of previous offenses. Those who hope (āśā) that they can derive their desired result from actions irrespective of God’s will fail in their attempts (karma). Both their hopes and actions are in vain, as is their knowledge that appears to support their view. In short, no good can come from deriding the form of God, whereas respecting God is praiseworthy and brings about ultimate good.

**Text 13**

mahātmānas tu mām pārtha daivīm prakṛtim āśritāḥ/ bhajanty ananya-manaso jñātvā bhūtādim avayayam//

mahā-ātmānāḥ—the great souls; tu—however; mām—me; pārtha—O Pārtha; daivīm—divine; prakṛtim—nature; āśritāḥ—having taken shelter of; bhajanti—worship; ananya-manasaḥ—with undeviated mind; jñātvā—knowing; bhūta—of beings; ādim—the origin; avayayam—imperishable.
On the other hand, O Pārtha, those great souls who take refuge in the divine nature worship me with undeviated minds, knowing me to be the origin of all beings and imperishable.

In this verse Kṛṣṇa uses the word mahātmā for the third and last time in the Gītā. Once again he uses it in reference to his unalloyed devotees. Here he describes them as having taken shelter of divine nature (daivīm prakṛtim). This is God’s internal, or primary, potency referred to in the fourth chapter (Bg. 4.6) with regard to the nature of Kṛṣṇa’s descent. As Kṛṣṇa appears under the influence of his internal sakti, so also do his devotees move in this world under its influence.

Bhakti proper is constituted of the ingress of Kṛṣṇa’s divine sakti (svarūpa-sakti) in the heart of the individual soul. Rūpa Gosvāmī has explained this with the words suddha-sattva-viśeṣātmā prema-sūryānśu-sāmya-bhāk (Bṛs. 1.3.1). Bhāva (ecstatic/cognitive spiritual emotion) dawns like rays of the sun of love of God in the hearts of the mature devotees with the ingress of God’s primary sakti. When this occurs, the practitioner’s mind becomes undeviated from thoughts of Kṛṣṇa, knowing him to be the origin of all (bhūtādim) and imperishable (avyayam). Viśvanātha Cakravartī says that avyayam refers to the eternal, cognitive, blissful form of God (saccidānandavigrham), which those mentioned in verse 11 and 12 deride.

In the second half of this verse, internal characteristics of mahātmās are mentioned (bhajanty ananya-manaso). In the first three lines of the next verse, Kṛṣṇa speaks of external characteristics of his unalloyed devotees, followed by a further explanation of the nature of their internal worship. He thus explains that great souls worship him, as well as how they do so.

**Text 14**

satataṁ kīrtayanto mām yatantaṁ ca dṛḍha-vratāḥ/

namasyantaṁ ca mām bhaktyā nitya-yuktā upāsate//

satataṁ—always; kīrtayanto—chanting; mām—me; yatantaṁ—striving; ca—also; dṛḍha-vratāḥ—firmly in their vows; namasyantaṁ—offering obeisances; ca—and; mām—me; bhaktyā—with devotion; nitya-yuktā—continuous longing for union; upāsate—worship.
Always chanting about me, striving firmly in their vows, and offering obeisances unto me with devotion, they worship (me) with continuous longing for union.

The words nitya-yuktā upāsate indicate the aspired-for spiritual relationship with Kṛṣṇa that devotees cultivate inwardly while engaged outwardly in devotional practices. They worship (upāsate) in quest of an eternal (nitya) union in yoga (yuktā). Perpetual union in devotional yoga is a dynamic union in love. It is a union with the Absolute in purpose, in which there is a perpetual loving exchange between God and individual soul. Monistic union is not referred to in this verse. It is discussed separately in the next verse with regard to those who worship Kṛṣṇa by means other than pure devotion. Viṣvanātha Cakravartī Ṭhākura further explains that the words nitya-yuktā indicate that mahātmās aspire for devotional union with Kṛṣṇa and that they will attain it in due course. It appears that Kṛṣṇa refers here not only to those who have attained prema. His love for his devotees causes him to address intermediate bhāva-bhaktas as mahātmās as well.5

The principal expression of devotion mentioned here is chanting about Kṛṣṇa (kīrtayanto mām), as it is spoken of first. Kīrti also indicates fame. Engaging in kīrtana spreads the fame of God. As a by-product of this act, a person becomes famous himself by doing welfare work for others. Kīrtana is para upakāra, the highest welfare work, as the gopīs declare in their own gītā within Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam.6

The word satatam qualifies the practice of kīrtana. As in chapter 8 (Bg. 8.14), satatam here indicates that chanting about Kṛṣṇa is not subject to time and place. It can be performed by everyone at any time. Chanting the sacred name of Kṛṣṇa takes one to the highest spiritual attainment and reaches down to even those who are the least eligible for such attainment. In all the Hindu sacred literature, there is no more efficacious or universal practice mentioned than that of chanting the name of God and Kṛṣṇa in particular. Indeed, this is so much the case that one can find persons of all disciplines and ideals incorporating the chanting of Kṛṣṇa’s name into their particular practice in order to better assure and expedite attaining their desired goal. Here, however, Kṛṣṇa speaks of those who chant for no

---

5. Brs. details three stages of devotion: devotion in practice (sādhana-bhakti), devotion in ecstasy (bhāva-bhakti), and devotion in love of God (prema-bhakti).
6. SB. 10.31. This chapter is also known as Gopi-gītā.
other reason than that they love him. They chant for the sake of chanting. The mahātmās do this both in the stage of practice as well as in the stage of perfection—always, satatam.

Although there are no hard and fast rules for chanting Kṛṣṇa’s name, if there are any favorable conditions or practices that assist one in chanting, mahātmās seek them out and incorporate them into their practice. They observe vows that are favorable to their practice with great determination (dṛḍha-vratāḥ). Devotees of Kṛṣṇa embrace various observances that are said to enhance devotion to Kṛṣṇa, such as fasting on Ekādaśi and honoring holy days.7 Conversely, they avoid offending the name of Kṛṣṇa.8

Kṛṣṇa says that mahātmās bow to him with devotion. Viśvanātha Cakravarti Ṭhākura comments that Kṛṣṇa says namasyantāḥ ca, indicating the practice of paying homage as well as all other expressions of devotion (ca).

When we offer obeisances, we say namah: “not (na) me (ma).” Padma Purāṇa explains the word namah thus: ahankṛtir ma-kārah syān na-kāra tan nisedhakah, “The Sanskrit syllable ma means ‘material ego’; the Sanskrit syllable na means ‘that which forbids’.” Thus obeisances are to be directed to God, by which a person acknowledges that he is forbidden from acting independently from God’s will. Here Kṛṣṇa says, namasyantāḥ ca mām. Mām (me) would be redundant were Kṛṣṇa not invoking it for emphasis: “Offering homage unto me, performing kīrtana about me.”

To make abundantly clear who he considers a mahātmā, Kṛṣṇa next speaks of others who, although they worship him, are not mahātmās.

Text 15

jñāna-yajñena cāpy anye yajanto mām upāsate/
   ekatvena prthaktvena bahudhā viśvato-mukham//

jñāna-yajñena—through knowledge; ca—also; api—certainly; anye—others; yajantah—sacrifice; mām—me; upāsate—worship; ekatvena—in oneness; prthaktvena—as the manifold; bahudhā—diversity; viśvataḥ- mukham—pantheistic.

7. See Brs. 1.2, entire chapter.
8. Padma Purāṇa cites ten offenses one can commit while chanting Kṛṣṇa’s name that are to be avoided, ultimately through nothing other than repeated chanting.
Others also worship me as one with themselves through the sacrifice of knowledge. Other people worship me as the manifold diversity through sacrifice, while another group worships me by viewing the universe as God.

Three types of worshippers are mentioned in this verse, none of whom are eligible for the practices mentioned in the previous verse. Unlike those culturing unalloyed devotion, they are engaged in the sacrifice of knowledge (jñāna-yajñena). Some are engaged in the culture of knowledge of the self’s oneness (ekatvena) with the Absolute. Others worship various gods (prthaktvena), viewing them as symbols representing the one undifferentiated Absolute (Brahman). Others worship manifestations of nature, viewing the universe itself as God (viśvato-mukham).

The sacrifice of knowledge involves the culture of transcendence, which can culminate in either love of God or merely liberation, depending on one’s approach. The first group mentioned in this verse directly cultures the self’s likeness to Brahman. Such persons hardly worship, for worship implies a difference between worshipper and worshipped. Although such persons are in one sense the highest of the three mentioned in this verse due to their being involved in the direct culture of self-knowledge, evaluating from a devotional perspective, Bhaktivedanta Swami Prabhupāda comments that they are the lowest of the three. They have little interest in the devotion that is so dear to Kṛṣṇa, even as a means to a monistic end. If they worship at all, they worship themselves, following such scriptural mandates as “one should think, ‘I am Gopāla.’ ” (Gt. Up. 2.38) in terms of a monistic understanding.9 Viśvanātha Cakravartī Ṭhākura, considering from a neutral standpoint, comments that they are the highest of the three under discussion, having risen above duality.

The second class of worshippers are those who differentiate between God and themselves enough to worship various gods, understanding them to be symbolic representations of Brahman. Although their aim is also monistic, as is that of the first group, their method of approach involves worship other than that of themselves, and their practice thus acknowledges at least a provisional differentiation between themselves and God. They can be considered either lower or higher than the first group, for they are less aware of their oneness with God, yet more involved in worship,

9. According to Jiva Goswāmi, Gauḍīya Vaishnavas understand this section of Gt. Up., in which one is instructed to think, “I am Gopāla,” as follows: “My existence is to his as the rays of the sun are to the sun itself.”
which from the devotional perspective is intrinsic to the very nature of the soul.

The third group consists of those who worship nature as God. While they are less aware of the nature of the self as consciousness, and thus its likeness to God, they are worshipful at every turn. Detailing a gradual course to devotional enlightenment in love of Kṛṣṇa, Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam discusses this type of conceptual orientation to devotional life, considering it to be the first step in God-realization. The Bhāgavatam thus recommends a provisional form of pantheism to promote the sense of worship in general. When viewed from this standpoint, this group is the best of the three. Otherwise, owing to their lack of direct experience of the self as consciousness, they can be considered the lowest of the three.

Kṛṣṇa next elaborates on how he is universally represented (bahudhā viśvato-mukham). This is the second instance in which Kṛṣṇa speaks of himself in this way. He did so earlier in chapter 7 (Bg. 7.8–12). He will do so with greater elaboration in the tenth chapter and actually demonstrate his universal form in chapter 11.

Text 16

Text 16

It is I who am the ritual, the sacrifice, and the offering. I am the medicinal herb, the mantra, and also the ghee. I am the fire, and I am the act of offering.

In this and the next three verses Kṛṣṇa gives some idea of how he can be thought of in the most general way. Here he identifies himself with the ritual, sacrifice, and offering that he previously identified with Brahman (Bg. 4.24). Kratru and yajña are different types of sacrifices, such as Agniṣṭoma and Vaiśvadeva, respectively. Svadhā refers to offerings on behalf of the
deceased, such as the sraddha ceremony. Ausadha is the medicine derived from plants that give their life when harvested. Ghee is clarified butter, which is essential for performing Vedic rituals. Mantra, sacrificial fire, and the act of offering require no explanation. Here Krsna implies that there is nothing in the aggregate of action, agent, and result that is different from him.

Text 17

पिताहमस्य जगते माता धाता पितामहः
वेदं पवित्रम् ऋक्षः साम यजुरेऽव ॥ १७॥

pitaham asya jagata mata dhata pitamahah/
vedyan pavitram omkara rk sama yajur eva ca/

I am the father of the world, its mother, its nurse, and its grandfather;
I am that which is to be known, the purifier, the sacred syllable om, the
Rg, Sama, Yajur, and Atharva Vedas.

Krsna is the father of the universe in that the glance of God is said to inject the seed of consciousness into the womb of material nature. As material nature is a product of God’s secondary sakti, he too is this womb and thereby the mother of all. Dhata is the nurse, the one who feeds.

In another sense, Brahma, the secondary creator, is the father of the universe, whose days and nights generate and dissolve worlds. In consideration of this, Krsna, as the source of Brahma, is the grandfather of all.

Krsna again identifies himself with om, as he did in the seventh chapter (Bg. 7.8). Gopala-tapani Upanisad explains the syllable om in terms of its being identical with the bija-mantra “klim,” as well as how it represents Krsna. Jiva Goswami has also explained om in terms of its signifying Krsna, Radha, and the jiva souls.

By use of the word ca, the Atharva Veda is included with the other three: Rg, Sama, and Yajur.

Text 18

गतिर्यं प्रभु: साध्विनिः: सर्वं महत् ॥
प्रभव: प्रलय: स्थान: निधानं जीवमन्वयम् ॥ १८॥
Yoga of hidden treasure

I am the goal, support, master, witness, abode, refuge, friend, origin, dissolution, maintenance, storehouse, and imperishable seed.

Origin, dissolution, and maintenance affect all material manifestations. Although Kṛṣṇa is the seed, unlike other seeds which disappear with the appearance of the plant, he is imperishable.

Text 19

O Arjuna, I radiate heat; I withhold and send forth rain. I am immortality and I am death, and I am both that which exists and that which does not exist.

With the words sad asat cāham, Kṛṣṇa concludes this section, declaring himself to be everything, as he has earlier in chapter 7 with the words vāsudevaḥ sarvam iti (Bg. 7.19). All that he has mentioned in verses 16 through 19 is an explanation of the words bahudhā viśvato-mukham, the concluding words of verse 15.

In verse 16 Kṛṣṇa begins by identifying himself, as he has in chapter 4 (Bg. 4.24), with sacrifice, and thus Brahman. Next in verses 17 and 18 he speaks of all the aspects of creation as well as the Vedas identifying them with himself. In the present verse, each one of the words is related to the...
functions of one of the universal gods, which as Kṛṣṇa points out here are ultimately dependent on him. Thus tapāmy aham aham varṣam, he is the sun (Sūrya), the rain (Indra), and so on. He is everything that exists and everything that does not ultimately endure—both spiritual and material manifestations (sad asat). “Since I am all these things,” Kṛṣṇa says, “one should worship me as viśvato-mukham (the universe).” This is a good beginning, the end result of which is actually realizing Kṛṣṇa himself to be everything (vāsudeva sarvam iti). One attains this realization by worshiping him exclusively, he who is immortality for those who remember him and death for those who forget his proprietorship.

Having contrasted the worship of those engaged in unalloyed devotion with those who practice the sacrifice of knowledge, Kṛṣṇa next speaks about another class of worshippers: those desirous of material gain. Their approach is not through selfless devotion, nor are they involved in the sacrifice of knowledge for the sake of liberation. While the devotees and jñānis attain love of God and liberation, respectively, those mentioned next do not transcend material existence but remain in the cycle of birth and death. They worship minor gods such as those mentioned above, while unaware of the fact that it is Kṛṣṇa who empowers the gods to bestow benedictions.

Text 20

trai-vidyā māṁ soma-pāh pūta-pāpā
yajñaiṁ īśtvā svāh-gatim prārthayante/
te pūnyam āśādyā surendra-lokamu
āsnanti divyāṁ divi deva-bhogāṁ//

trai-vidyāḥ—the knowers of the three Vedas; māṁ—me; soma-pāḥ—drinkers of soma; pūta—purified; pāpāḥ—sins; yajñaiḥ—through sacrifices; īśtvā—worshipping; svāh-gatim—heavenly attainment; prārthayante—seek; te—they; pūnayam—pious; āśādyā—attaining; sura-indra—of Indra; lokam—the abode; āsnanti—enjoy; divyāṁ—godly; divi—in heaven; deva-bhogāṁ—delights.

Those well versed in the three Vedas seek heavenly attainment after worshipping (me) through sacrifices, drinking soma, and thus becoming
purified of sin. Having acquired the results of their piety, they attain the abode of Indra, where they enjoy godly delights in heaven.

Knowers of the three Vedas—Rg, Sāma, and Yajur—are called Trivedī (traividyāḥ). They are acquainted with the technical rites performed by the Hotā, Adhvaryu, and Udgātā priests. As mentioned in the second chapter (Bg. 2.45), the Vedas mostly deal with the three modes of material nature and not transcendental subject matter. Only the latter portion of the Vedas concerns transcendental knowledge. The Trivedis’ scope of attainment lies within the three material modes. They seek heaven, the abode of Indra.

Indra, as his name indicates, is the “chief” of the gods. Etymologically related to his name is indriya, “senses.” Indra is depicted as the chief of the sense enjoyers whose heavenly delights are the fruits of material piety. Extensive descriptions are found throughout the sacred literature of subtle, heavenly material abodes, where mind rather than the physical body predominates with all of its imaginable delights. Such descriptions, replete with details of rituals designed for attaining heavenly abodes, offer compelling impetus for a pious life. Their value pales, however, when viewed in juxtaposition to eternal life and love of Godhead.

Here Kṛṣṇa says that Trivedis also worship him. They do so through their offerings to various gods who represent the cosmic order. As such, their worship of Kṛṣṇa is very indirect. It is devoid of knowledge of who Kṛṣṇa is or the fact that they are indirectly worshipping him. Those outside of the Vedic worldview who worship God for material advancement fall in a general sense within the category of the worshippers mentioned herein. The result of their worship is further detailed in the next verse.

Text 21

te taṁ bhūktvā svarga-lokaṁ viśālaṁ
kṣine punye martya-lokaṁ visanti/
evam trayi-dharmam anuprapannā
gatāgatāṁ kāma-kāmā labhante//
After having enjoyed the vast heavenly realm, when their merit is exhausted, they enter the world of mortals once again. Thus those following the religion of the three Vedas, desiring material pleasure, obtain a reward that comes and goes.

Under scrutiny this path is not desirable. Although the heavenly realm is sometimes billed as immortal, such scriptural propaganda constitutes exaggeration with a view to inspire pious acts. The scripture takes a license in this regard. A life in which six of our months equal twelve heavenly hours is indeed long, but, again, when compared with eternity and love of God, it falls short, its participants doomed to earthly return.

At this point, Arjuna wonders who takes care of Kṛṣṇa's devotees' material needs. If they make no arrangement to secure material necessities, as those mentioned in this and the previous verse do in excess, how will their basic needs be met? In answer to this, Kṛṣṇa returns to speaking directly about his unalloyed devotees, having compared them with jñānis and those on the karma-mārga.

Text 22

अनन्यायः cintayanto māṁ ye janāḥ paryupāsate/
   teṣāṁ nityābhiyuktānāṁ yoga-kṣemaṁ vahāmy aham//

ananyāḥ—without deviation; cintayantah—concentrating; mām—on me; ye—those who; janāḥ—persons; paryupāsate—worship; teṣām—of them; nitya—always; abhiyuktānām—united; yoga-kṣemaṁ—acquisition; vahāmi—carry; aham—I.

For those persons who worship me, directing their thoughts to me without deviation, who are always united with me in (bhakti) yoga, I carry what they lack and preserve what they have.
Here the word \textit{nityābhīyuktānām} indicates unalloyed devotion. Those who are ever united with Kṛṣṇa in \textit{yoga} are the \textit{mahātmās} mentioned earlier. As it did in verse 13, here \textit{ananyāḥ} also indicates interest in nothing other than devotion.

Kṛṣṇa has not stopped speaking either directly or indirectly about his unalloyed devotees since his first mention of them in verse 13. Here, as in verses 13 and 14, he speaks directly about them, describing how dear they are to him. As such, Kṛṣṇa’s heart is in his throat as he speaks lovingly, revealing his most prominent quality—he is \textit{bhakta-vatsala}, partial to his devotees, ruled by their love.

How do those devotees who are so concerned with Kṛṣṇa’s service that they neglect their bodily necessities survive? Kṛṣṇa says that he himself serves them by carrying what they lack and preserving what they have. Kṛṣṇa sees their bodies as extensions of his own. Although he is indirectly the maintainer of everyone, he personally cares for his devotees. Kṛṣṇa uses the word \textit{vahāmi} (I carry) in this verse rather than \textit{karomi} (I do) to dispel the idea that he accomplishes the task of maintaining his devotees through an agent rather than doing it personally. Viśvanātha Cakravartī Ṭhākura says that he does so “just like a householder ‘carries’ the burden (\textit{bhāram} means ‘weight’) of maintaining his wife and children.” In carrying the burden of his devotees’ maintenance, Kṛṣṇa is not burdened by this labor of love. Neither do his devotees ask him to provide for them. They simply love and serve him, and as they enter into a union of love with him, they are maintained as though they were his own bodily parts. Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa cites this verse in his commentary to \textit{Vedānta-sūtra} (3.4.44) where a similar discussion takes place.

To further stress unalloyed devotion to himself, Kṛṣṇa continues his discussion of various modes of worship. In doing so, he answers the possible doubt of Arjuna: “But as there is really no other God than you, worshippers of Indra and other gods are your devotees as well. Why then should they rise to heaven only to return again, whereas other devotees attain you?”

\textbf{Text 23}

\begin{verbatim}
Ye 'py anya-devatā-bhaktā yajante śraddhayānvitāḥ/
Te 'pi mām eva kaunteya yajanty avidhi-pūrvakam//
\end{verbatim}
Even those who worship other gods with faith also worship only me, O son of Kunti, although they do so improperly.

The word avidhi-pūrvakam means “not according to rule.” Here Kṛṣṇa speaks of improper worship in terms of the worshipper being unaware that it is he whom one worships when one worships other gods, who are manifestations of Kṛṣṇa for particular material purposes. “Other gods” here does not refer to Kṛṣṇa’s avatāras.

The result of improper worship is discussed next, followed by a general yet important statement regarding the results of different types of worship.

For I am the enjoyer and master of all sacrifices, but not knowing me in truth, they fall down.

Kṛṣṇa enjoys the fruit of all sacrifices through the agency of the gods, and as the master of all sacrifice, he awards results through them as well. Not knowing this, such ignorant worshippers, after attaining heaven through the aforementioned dark path, fall down, as detailed earlier in chapter 8 (Bg. 8.25). It is implied in this verse that those who worship the gods while understanding them to be representatives of Kṛṣṇa do eventually attain liberation through the path of light.
Text 25

Those devoted to the gods go to the gods; those devoted to the ancestors go to the ancestors; those devoted to the ghosts go to the ghosts; those who worship me surely attain me.

All forms of worship are not equal. Worshippers of the gods worship in the material mode of goodness (sattva-guna). Those who worship the ancestors worship in the mode of passion (rajo-guna). Worshippers of ghosts and spirits worship in the mode of ignorance (tamo-guna).

Kṛṣṇa’s emphasis on the certainty (api) of attaining him through worship of himself indicates an attainment from which one does not return to another birth. Such worship is not material in quality (nirguna).

Here Kṛṣṇa indirectly says that although in general the effort of worship is similar, the object to which it is directed determines the result. If anything, the effort and requisite paraphernalia for worship of other gods is considerable in comparison to that required for worshipping Kṛṣṇa. He thus goes on to detail the simplicity of his worship.

Text 26

Patraṁ puspam phalam toyam yo me bhaktyā prayacchati/
   tad aham bhakty-upahṛtam aśnāmi prayatātmanah//
If anyone offers me with devotion and purity a leaf, a flower, a fruit, or water, I accept that offering of devotion.

Here we are reminded of the eulogy of the king of knowledge at the beginning of this chapter. There Kṛṣṇa described the knowledge of pure devotion as easy to perform yet bearing imperishable fruit, susukham kartum avayayam.

The mention of items in the singular emphasizes just how little in terms of external offerings is necessary to satisfy Kṛṣṇa: one leaf, one flower, one fruit, or water, all of which are available to everyone, is sufficient. All four items are not necessary, nor more than any one of them. Kṛṣṇa’s statement is not limited to these four items. They merely represent that which is easily available to anyone. By saying “anyone” (yah), Kṛṣṇa means that he will accept the offering of a person from any background if they take to devotional life.

Here it is implied that while the offering itself in terms of its material ingredients is somehow important to the gods, this is not the case in the worship of Kṛṣṇa. By offering the gods valuable material ingredients that one is attached to, one at least enters the arena of sacrifice. The ultimate sacrifice, however, is called for in unalloyed devotion to Kṛṣṇa. One must offer one’s heart.

Kṛṣṇa is self-satisfied, the one who has everything. What then can we give him? We can give him our hearts, for his own heart has been stolen by the love of his devotees. It is the devotion with which one offers that he accepts, and thus devotion is mentioned twice in this verse, which as in verses 13, 14, and 22 speaks of the pure devotion that is the heart of this chapter.

While devotion is the essential ingredient, prayatātmanāh indicates that the offering should be done with a pure heart, or in accordance with standards of purity such as cleanliness. In the optimum, Kṛṣṇa refers here to offerings that are an act of devotion from start to finish; in which, for example, the devotee plants, grows, picks, prepares, and offers the fruit to him. Such preoccupation with Kṛṣṇa’s service assures purity of heart and gives Kṛṣṇa an appetite.

At this point, Kṛṣṇa is barely able to contain himself as he glorifies and explains how dear pure devotion and his devotees are to him—paraṁ-brahma.

Text 27

यन्त्रोपि यत्रन्तरसि यज्ञुलोपि दत्तसि यतः ।
यत्सप्यत्सि कौन्ते तन्त्रुच्चः मद्दर्पणम् ||२७||
Whatever you do, whatever you eat, whatever you offer or give away, whatever austerities you perform, O son of Kuntî, do that as an offering unto me.

Having said “whoever offers me” in the previous verse, Kṛṣṇa understands that not everyone is capable of offering themselves to him in unalloyed devotion. Thus in this verse, without straying from his emphasis on devotion, he proposes how others who are not pure in heart can nonetheless make offerings unto him. He says that although such offerings may not be offered with purity of heart or be perfect in terms of standards and ingredients, they should be offered anyway. However, he does not say that he will necessarily accept these offerings; nonetheless, whatever devotion is present will gradually purify the offerer, bringing him eventually to the standard of pure devotion. The resultant sanctity of such persons and their destination are described next.

Text 28

śubha-śubha-phalair evam mokṣyase karma-bandhanaiḥ/
sannyāsa-yoga-yuktātma vimukto mām upaisyasi/
Here Kṛṣṇa explains that a person who offers whatever he does to him, whether his actions are scripturally enjoined or not, will gradually become liberated from the bondage of karma. Reaching thereby the stage of knowledge and concomitant detachment (sannyāsa), he attains devotional union with Kṛṣṇa and liberation. Śaṅkara says, “Sannyāsa-yoga means actions done as offerings to Kṛṣṇa, sannyāsa implying the offering, yoga the action itself that is being offered.”

Here vimukti indicates more than the general idea of liberation (mukti), in which one is freed from karmic bondage alone. Vimukti refers as well to positive attainment, devotional liberation in love of God.¹⁰

In the first six chapters, Kṛṣṇa detailed gradual progress from niskāma-karma-yoga to jñāna to bhakti in order to stress that bhakti is liberated yoga and thus its highest expression. Here he highlights another feature of bhakti’s superexcellence. Speaking from his heart, he says that bhakti is so efficacious that nonliberated persons can engage in some form of it and by this alone pass through karmic bondage and attain knowledge and bhakti proper. In the previous verse Kṛṣṇa suggests that one offer him the fruits not only of one’s prescribed duties as enjoined in scripture, but of any activities. This is a mixed form of devotion in which one offers the fruits of one’s activities and not first oneself, as in the case of the pure devotion detailed in verse 26. In that verse the offering pales in comparison to the devotion and the devotee has no life of his own. He belongs to Kṛṣṇa, and more, Kṛṣṇa belongs to him. In this section, on the other hand, there is scope for one’s own separate life, given one offers the fruits of one’s work to Kṛṣṇa. One has to start somewhere, and Kṛṣṇa recommends that one do so with some form of devotion.

With all this talk of devotion, Kṛṣṇa has begun to appear partial, a quality that seems unbecoming for God. In the next verse, Kṛṣṇa refutes this notion only to enlighten Arjuna concerning the nature of spiritual partiality.

**Text 29**

samo 'ham sarva-bhūteṣu na me dvesyo 'sti na priyah/
    ye bhajanti tu mām bhaktyā mayi te teṣu cāpy aham//

¹⁰. See SB. 10.9.20.
I am impartial to all beings. I hate no one and I favor no one. However, those who worship me with devotion are in me, and I am also in them.

In the first two lines of this verse, Kṛṣṇa speaks as the Paramātmā, the Supreme Soul situated within the heart of all beings. In the last two, Kṛṣṇa himself, Bhagavān, is speaking. As Paramātmā, God is the impartial witness; as Bhagavān, he is partial to his devotees. While partiality on the part of Paramātmā would be a blemish, partiality toward his devotees is the greatest ornament of Bhagavān.

God is free from ordinary attachment and aversion. To rise above these two misperceptions, which blind one to the equality of all souls, is the beginning of actual spiritual life. Attachment and aversion are two sides of the same coin of false currency—ignorance (avidyā). Thus Kṛṣṇa first declares his impartiality as the just Lord of all beings who dispenses equally the bitter and sweet fruits from the karmic tree of life.

The apparent contradiction in this verse can be resolved in two ways. As stated above, Kṛṣṇa is speaking from different aspects of himself, Paramātmā and Bhagavān. Moreover, Bhagavān encourages everyone to become his devotee.

Although philosophically Kṛṣṇa is impartial, when viewed with devotional eyes he is partial, and this partiality is what makes him Bhagavān. It is partiality that fuels the land of divine love. One devotee is partial to Rāma, another Kṛṣṇa, and Kṛṣṇa is partial to all those who are partial to him. He is in them and they are in him, as one holds a dear one within one’s heart. The question as to whether living beings are one with God or different from him is transcended, because bhakti introduces another option. Love is complete self-giving and total interpenetration, and thus Kṛṣṇa abides in his loving devotees and they in him. In this equation the Advaita notion of the so-called fixed, motionless state of Brahman finds no scope. In bhakti there is a complete union in love that preserves the individuality of both the soul and God. This is experienced only by the soul who has already achieved liberation.
Krṣṇa’s love for his devotees also takes the form of his not liking one who is envious of them. This, after all, is the nature of love. While divine love is often considered to transcend such partiality, Krṣṇa’s love for his devotees transcends the general conception of divine love. When Bhagavān’s attention is drawn toward one who envies his devotee, such attention, even when wrathful, is more beneficial for the envious than no attention at all. Everyone has the impartial attention of Paramātmā, but the Lord with līlā—Bhagavān, and more, Krṣṇa himself (svayaṁ bhagavān)—only interacts with his devotees, and as a by-product of that interaction, with those inimical to them.

Having briefly defended himself against the charge of partiality, only to openly admit his preference for his devotees, announcing it to the public, Krṣṇa continues unabated to the end of this chapter, extolling the virtues of devotion to himself. Beginning with verse 26 and culminating in the thirty-fourth and final verse, we come to the high point of the Gītā, which is again reiterated in its closing words, nine chapters later.

Text 30–31

Even if a person of very bad behavior worships me with undivided devotion, he is to be thought of as saintly, for he has the proper resolution.
He quickly becomes righteous and attains lasting peace. O son of Kunti, declare it boldly that no devotee of mine is ever lost.

In these two verses the extent of bhakti's power to award salvation are feelingly expressed by the connoisseur of love, Śrī Kṛṣṇa. Kṛṣṇa says here that the sinner (sudurācāraḥ), worshipping him exclusively (ananya-bhāk), is definitely a saint (sādhur eva) despite his bad character, owing to his resignation (vyavasitah) to the service/worship of Kṛṣṇa. For emphasis, the word mantavyah, “he is to be thought of (as saintly),” is spoken as if it were a law with undesirable consequences that arrests those who disregard it. One may get the impression from this statement that bhakti, even in its immature stage of practice, is in some sense antinomian. Kṛṣṇa appears to be saying that his devotees are not bound by moral obligation. Understandably, these verses have been explained in numerous ways to qualify what Kṛṣṇa is saying so that one cannot cite them to support bad character in the name of bhakti. However, in evoking these explanations, one must be careful not to undermine the power of bhakti, which is the spirit of the text.

Characteristically, Viśvanātha Cakravartī Ṭhākura emphasizes the power of bhakti, siding largely with the reasoning that the devotee, owing to his devotion, is to be considered above the law. In such a generous rendering, what is stressed is the ideal of the devotee—that which he will become—as opposed to judging him by his present condition, much less his past. His devotional ideal, which represents his svarūpa-lakṣaṇa, or principal characteristic, overrides his marginal characteristic of bad character.

Śrīdhara Swāmī’s rendering of ananya-bhāk is such that it does away with an apparent contradiction. If a devotee is ananya-bhāk, meaning undeviating in pure devotional life, this contradicts sudurācāra (very badly misbehaved). How can one be undeviating in the sense of bhai jate mām ananya bhāk and ananyās cintayanto mām, found, respectively, in verses 30 and 22, and at the same time misbehave? To avoid this difficulty, Śrīdhara Swāmī explains ananya-bhāk as devotion to Kṛṣṇa alone and not to any other god or goddess. Viśvanātha Cakravartī Ṭhākura adds to this “unencumbered by any practice other than devotion, such as jñāna or karma, and without desire for anything other than Kṛṣṇa, such as worldly power or riches.” This could easily apply to an intermediate devotee.

Following Śrīdhara Swāmī’s lead, an ananya bhakta could also be a neophyte devotee, for such devotees are devoted to Kṛṣṇa alone. Beginners have some love for Kṛṣṇa, but their sense of the reality of Kṛṣṇa has not yet
developed to the point of seeing the world in relation to him. True morality beyond convention is the result of seeing God in the world. The neophyte may lack strong moral fiber due to his underdeveloped realization of the all-encompassing nature of his object of love. Still he is properly situated to realize this in due course and become righteous thereby in all respects.

Due to being in the present tense, the words ksīpram bhavati dharmātmā in verse 31 are understood by Viśvanātha Cakravartī to indicate the immediate or continued attainment of righteous status. Thus, the person who chooses to serve no one other than Kṛṣṇa, even if he is very badly behaved, must be considered saintly. As for the blemish resulting from his misbehavior, he is immediately rectified owing to his repentance and continued resolve. One who thinks otherwise is himself condemned, having ignored Kṛṣṇa’s order, which is a scriptural mandate.

Viśvanātha Cakravartī Ṭhākura says that, should one agree with the above understanding on the condition that the devotee in question actually does become righteous (bhavati dharmātmā), giving up his bad character, this conditional acceptance of his words invokes Kṛṣṇa’s wrath. The thought that someone will take such a position makes Kṛṣṇa say, kaunteya pratijānihi na me bhakta˙ praçacyati: “O son of Kuntī, declare it boldly that no devotee of mine is ever lost.” Thus even if the devotee is not seen to rectify himself, still he is to be considered saintly. Kṛṣṇa orders Arjuna to declare this fact publicly because his devotee’s promise will never be broken, as Kṛṣṇa sees to this even more than upholding his own promises. Following Śrīdhara Svāmī, Viśvanātha Cakravartī says the spirit of Kṛṣṇa’s words is “publicly declare it boldly with cymbals and drums like a town crier.” The result will be that the public will worship one who does so.

Although Viśvanātha Cakravartī Ṭhākura’s comments are the liberal side of the pendulum, it should be noted that the wayward devotee he sees in these verses is always remorseful for his misbehavior. Even if he cannot give up his wrongdoing, he continues to condemn himself for it. Thus even Cakravartī Ṭhākura does not give a license for flouting the moral law in the name of devotion.

Conservative explanations of these verses are in no shortage. In his Bhakti-sandarbha, Jīva Goswāmī says that the verses are intended to instill initial faith in unalloyed bhakti, on attaining which one evolves to deeper faith, faith in scriptural descriptions regarding the proper practice of bhakti.

There is no dearth of scriptural statements condemning wrongdoing of all kinds. Jīva Goswāmī says that the understanding that devotees are
absolved from transgressions is the opinion of those persons who are scripturally uneducated. For Śrī Jīva, the words api cet in verse 30 mean “even though,” indicating that real misbehavior on the part of the devoted is indeed a blemish and an aberration.

Api cet can also mean “even if.” Even if a devotee does something improper in the name of devotion, such as deceiving another to involve them in Kṛṣṇa’s service, he should be considered saintly. Or if a devotee comes from a background steeped in vice, his lack of moral culture may carry over into his new devotional life. For this he should not be condemned, because his heart is in the right place. In this way, it is possible to make less of the nature of the transgression Kṛṣṇa describes, as it is possible to make more of bhakti’s dearness to Kṛṣṇa and its resultant efficacy.

Another understanding is that “even if” implies that verse 30 speaks of only a hypothetical case in which a devotee does that which for an ananya-bhakta is not possible. Undeviating (ananya) devotees (bhaktas) simply do not engage in moral transgressions. If such a devotee exhibits the impossible, then his misbehavior may be an arrangement of Kṛṣṇa for his own purpose. Kṛṣṇa may cause a near-perfect devotee to fall, after which the devotee rises up with the humility necessary to attain the perfectional stage of devotion.

A third solution to this quandary can be drawn from Jīva Goswāmi’s discussion of rāgānugā-bhakti (sacred passionate love) in his Bhakti-sandarbha. Śrī Jīva cites verse 30 to support the idea that devotees on the path of rāgānugā-bhakti are absolved from following the religious codes detailed in the dharma-sāstra. Ordinarily, violation of these codes is considered irreligious. However, because the devotee has come under the jurisdiction of bhakti, the supreme expression of dharma (prema-dharma), he need not be concerned with lesser religious mandates. Indeed, this is the conclusion of the Gītā, wherein Kṛṣṇa implores Arjuna to forgo all dharma and surrender unto him to attain prema (Bg. 18.66). Kedarnātha Bhaktivinoda Ṭhākura has used this logic to offer a unique and charming resolution to the apparent contradiction arising from Kṛṣṇa’s use of the words ananya-bhāk and sudurācāra to describe the same devotee.

Bhaktivinoda Ṭhākura renders ananya-bhāk in terms of its meaning found in verse 13, indicating not only one who worships Kṛṣṇa and no other God, but one who worships Kṛṣṇa with the highest standard of devotion—an unalloyed devotee. How can an unalloyed devotee be immoral? He also finds an apparent contradiction in the idea that an unalloyed devotee, after somehow acting inappropriately, would then become righteous
(dharmātmā). This implies that after falling from the plane of unalloyed devotion, he is reestablished in the plane of religion, which lies in between moral transgression and unalloyed devotion.

Ṭhākura Bhaktivinoda harmonizes all of the above points by applying these verses to Kṛṣṇa's gopīs, who are ananya-bhaktas, yet immoral in terms of violating socioreligious codes. They went to Kṛṣṇa following their hearts, ravaged by the sound of Kṛṣṇa’s flute. In doing so, they violated religious mandates with regard to marital fidelity. Although they were ananya-bhāk to the extreme, they were morally corrupt to the mundane religious mind, which does not understand the significance of Kṛṣṇa.

How then did the gopīs become religiously reformed? As there is no instance of this, nor would it ever be an appropriate theological conclusion, Bhaktivinoda Ṭhākura says that it is not the gopīs who become righteous. He who proclaims the purity of the gopīs’ apparent misbehavior—the forgoing of dharma-sāstra in pursuit of sacred passionate love—immediately becomes righteous by speaking about their so-called violation. And by glorifying their apparent transgression everywhere, he attains salvation (saśvac-chāntim nigacchati). In other words, “One (who declares it boldly that my unalloyed devotee is never fallen) quickly becomes righteous and attains lasting peace.”

Having glorified even those on the path of devotion who appear to have fallen from the path itself, Kṛṣṇa next makes it clear that the path of devotion can deliver those who are born in less opportune circumstances for spiritual practice owing to their previous life’s actions.

Text 32

मां हि पार्थ व्यपाश्रये ये ’पि स्युह पाप-योनयाह/  
स्रियो वैश्यास्यः शुद्रस्तितिः यान्ति परं गतिम॥3॥

māṁ—me; hi—certainly; pārtha—O Pārtha; vyapāśritya—taking refuge; ye—those who; api—also; syuḥ—are; pāpa-yonayah—lowborn; striyāḥ—women; vaśyāḥ—merchants; tathā—also; śudrāḥ—working-class men; te api—even they; yānti—go; parāṁ—highest; gatim—goal.

It is certain, O Pārtha, that those who take refuge in me, even the lowborn, women, merchants, as well as the working class, attain the highest goal.
In this verse Kṛṣṇa says that even the lowborn, who due to impiety in their previous life have taken such births, regardless of what they harvest from the seeds they have sown in the present or past, can overcome their impiety if they take shelter of him in devotion. The sacred literature cites numerous examples of animal killers and animals themselves being so delivered by the direct and indirect influence of bhakti.

Women are mentioned in this verse because of the social impediment to their study of the Vedas in times gone by, as well as the fact that a woman’s birth can subject one to the kind of discrimination they have suffered from over the centuries.

Merchants are notorious for stretching the truth, and the laborers for their lack of interest in and qualification for scriptural study. Regardless of the background of all of the above, Kṛṣṇa does not withhold himself from them should they try to love him. Indeed, they will surpass others of greater material qualification who take paths other than bhakti.

Text 33

कि पुनर ब्रह्मानाः पुन्याः भक्ताः राजस्यसत्वा ।
अनित्यमस्यूल ठोक्रं मिम प्राय्ण्य भजस्व माम् //33//

kim punar brāhmaṇāḥ punyāḥ bhaktāḥ rāja-ṛjayās tathā/
anityam asukham lokam imam prāpya bhajasva mām//

kim—how much; punah—more; brāhmaṇāḥ—priestly; punyāḥ—pure; bhaktāḥ—devotees; rāja-ṛṣayaḥ—saintly kings; tathā—also; anityam—ephemeral; asukham—unhappy; lokam—world; imam—this; prāpya—having attained; bhajasva—devote yourself; mām—to me.

How much more is this the case for the pure priests and saintly kings! You have been born in this ephemeral and unhappy world, now devote yourself to me.

The words lokam imam prāpya here imply that attaining human birth in this world is itself difficult. Imam lokam means both “this world” and “this body.” Kṛṣṇa refers to human birth in this world, which is attained after many, many births. The human body is fit for attaining higher goals that are not attainable in other births. Yet it is itself ephemeral (anityam).11 So

11. Here Kṛṣṇa describes the world as anityam (noneternal), not mithyā (false), as does Śaṅkara.
too is the world. Because of this and because one can only be aware of this fact in human birth, Kṛṣṇa says, “How much one should strive through devotion to me for that which is human life’s perfection! One should do so now, while the gift of human life lasts, and one should not be distracted from this undertaking by that which surrounds one in the name of happiness, for in reality the world is unhappy (asukham)—both the world (sense objects) and the body made of senses bent on enjoying sense objects.”

Just how one—anyone—can devote himself to Kṛṣṇa is described next, as Kṛṣṇa concludes this chapter with great spiritual emotion.

Text 34

man-manā bhava mad-bhakto mad-yājī mām namaskuru/
mām evaisyasi yuktvaivam ātmānam mat-parāyanah//

mat-manāḥ—thinking of me; bhava—become; mat—my; bhaktah—devotee; mat—my; yājī—one who sacrifices; mām—to me; namaskuru—offer obeisance; mām—to me; eva—alone; esyasi—you will come; yuktvā—being absorbed; evam—thus; ātmānam—your soul; mat-parāyanah—devoted to me.

Fix your mind on me. Be my devotee! Sacrifice for me. Offer obeisance unto me. Absorbed thus in me alone, you shall come to me.

One whose mind is fixed on Kṛṣṇa is one who is Kṛṣṇa’s devotee. Thus devotion proper requires more than the physical act of service. We are where our minds are regardless of where we appear to be physically. Both Baladeva Vidyābhūṣāṇa and Madhusūdana Sarasvati give the example of a king’s servant, who although serving the king physically has his mind on his own family. Thus Kṛṣṇa says one should both devote oneself to him and think of him. The word bhava is an imperative in this regard, as if Kṛṣṇa is commanding and empowering one to be his devotee by the force of his heartfelt words.

Kṛṣṇa says that such a devotee should sacrifice for him. This is the heart of worship and the basis of love. Love arises out of sacrifice, labor’s beautiful child. As in text 14, here again Kṛṣṇa says mām namaskuru: “Offer obeisance unto me,” symbolizing the offering of nothing less than one’s entire self, mind, body, and speech, as all of these are involved in the act of obeisance.
This verse is the essence and conclusion of the *Bhagavad-gītā* and it is repeated almost verbatim in the sixty-fifth verse of the eighteenth chapter. Preceding it there in verse 64, Kṛṣṇa describes this knowledge and path of *bhakti* as *sarva-guhyatamam*, the most confidential knowledge. Although many paths have been discussed and recommended at different times thus far, here they are all superseded as Kṛṣṇa fully opens his heart to Arjuna.

At the end of chapter 6 Kṛṣṇa revealed that his idea of the perfectly integrated being was his devotee. Thus he implored Arjuna to be a devotee. In chapters 7 through 9 different kinds of devotees are discussed: *karma-miśra*, *jñāna-miśra*, *yoga-miśra*, and unalloyed *bhaktas*. As Kṛṣṇa concludes this chapter, he makes it clear that his ideal person is not merely his devotee, but an unalloyed devotee.

When all is said and done, spiritual life is as simple as this verse makes it out to be. Devotion, love, the heart’s domain, rules over all. It is the path, the ocean into which all rivers must flow and are worthy of rafting only if they reach her shore.
Chapter Ten

विभूतियोग:  
Vibhūti-yoga  
YOGA OF DIVINE MANIFESTATION

Text 1

श्रीभगवानुवाच  
भृगु एव महाबाहो शुरु मे परम मन:।  
यतंते प्रीयमाणाय वक्ष्यामि हितकामयाय॥०॥

śrī-bhagavān uvāca  
bhūya eva mahā-bāho śṛṇu me paramam vacah/  
yat te 'ham priyamāṇāya vakṣyāmi hita-kāmyayā/

śrī-bhagavān uvāca—the Lord of Śrī said; bhūyāḥ—again; eva—certainly;  
mahā-bāho—O mighty-armed one; śṛṇu—listen; me—my; pāramam—su-  
preme; vacah—advice; yat—which; te—to you; aham—I; priyamāṇāya—to  
the beloved one; vakṣyāmi—I shall speak; hita-kāmyayā—desiring your  
welfare.

The Lord of Śrī said: O mighty-armed one, listen again to my supreme  
advice, which I shall speak to you, beloved one, desiring your welfare.

In this chapter, Kṛṣṇa continues to speak confidentially to Arjuna. He has  
not given Arjuna a chance to ask any questions due to his own enthusiasm  
to reveal to Arjuna that which will ground him in devotion—confidential  
knowledge of his opulence and knowledge of the nature of devotion itself.  
Kṛṣṇa says “listen again” (bhūyāḥ), indicating that he has more to say about  
himself than he has revealed so far. Kṛṣṇa has spoken of his opulence in  
previous chapters, and in this chapter he will say more about it. Knowing  
Kṛṣṇa to be the Supreme Being inspires one to worship him and to properly  
regard his līlās, which are otherwise difficult to understand. The confidential  
knowledge of this chapter is an extension of that revealed in the previous
chapter, and it reaches its apex in verses 8 through 11. Viśvanātha Cakravartī Ṭhākura comments that the knowledge of this chapter is superior to what has been given thus far. This is the meaning of the words paramam vacah. Krṣṇa says that he reveals this knowledge “to you who love me” (priyamānāya), referring to Arjuna.

Here Krṣṇa speaks to Arjuna in terms of their friendly relationship (sakhya-rasa). The word hita-kāmyayā means “desiring welfare.” As his dear friend, Krṣṇa desires Arjuna’s welfare. He is not speaking for his own benefit, nor has he anything to gain from his speaking. He speaks out of love for Arjuna and all of his devotees, who like Arjuna take pleasure in hearing his advice.

As this chapter begins, Krṣṇa addresses Arjuna as mighty-armed, implying that although he is competent in military science, more than this is required for understanding what he will reveal about himself in this chapter. Although Arjuna is competent, and Krṣṇa has already spoken about his opulence, Arjuna must pay special attention to Krṣṇa’s supreme advice. It is so confidential that it is unknown even to the gods and sages.

Text 2

Neither the gods nor the great sages know my origin. Indeed, I am in all respects the source of the gods and great sages.

As it is difficult to know the source of one’s birth unless informed about it, similarly, although the gods and sages know of him and even worship him, they do not know what he will reveal about himself in this chapter. Krṣṇa, Arjuna’s chariot driver, is the source of everything including the gods and great sages, and he answers to the devotional necessity of his devotees.
The gods are bewildered about Kṛṣṇa, as confirmed in the opening stanza of Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam, muhyanti yat sūrayah (ŚB. 1.1.1). This is illustrated later in the same Purāṇa by Brahmā’s and Indra’s confusion about Kṛṣṇa. The great sages referred to here are Brahmā and others who are referred to again in verse 6. They are said to be omniscient, yet what Kṛṣṇa tells Arjuna in this chapter is still unknown to them. Unlike the gods, the sages have no material attachment and are thus wise. However, their intellect is controlled by their source, and thus without Kṛṣṇa’s grace they cannot know him in all respects. They are confused about his origin, for although Kṛṣṇa appears to take birth as the son of Devakī, he is at the same time birthless.

Kṛṣṇa next tells Arjuna the partial result of knowing him in truth, and he will reveal the entire fruit in verse 7.

Text 3

yo mām ajam anādiṁ ca vetti loka-mahēśvaram/
asaṁmūḍhaṁ sa martyeṣu sarva-pāpaiḥ pramucyate//

yah—one who; mām—me; ajam—birthless; anādim—beginningless; ca—and; vetti—knows; loka—world; mahā-īśvaram—the great Lord; asammuḍhaṁ—undeluded; saḥ—he; martyeṣu—of mortals; sarva-pāpaiḥ—from all evils; pramucyate—is released.

He who undeluded among mortals knows me as birthless and beginningless, the great Lord of the world, is released from all evils.

Kṛṣṇa tells Arjuna that he is birthless (ajam), even while appearing to have taken birth. The mystery of his apparent birth and the result of understanding its spiritual nature was discussed in chapter 4 (Bg. 4.9). While Kṛṣṇa previously mentioned his birth and the fact that one who understands it in truth attains liberation, in this chapter Kṛṣṇa emphasizes that one who understands such opulence as his birthlessness becomes his devotee, thereby becoming liberated. The means to liberation is devotion, initially fueled by understanding Kṛṣṇa’s opulence. While knowledge of Kṛṣṇa’s opulence

leads to devotion, hearing of it is itself devotion as well. Thus devotion is both the means and end of spiritual life.

To distinguish himself from Brahmå, who is commonly known as aja, Kṛṣṇa adds that he is also beginningless (anādim), a quality not found in Brahmå. Also implied is the fact that, unlike Brahmå, Kṛṣṇa’s existence does not come to an end. By stating that he is the Lord of the world (loka-maheśvaram), Kṛṣṇa distinguishes himself from eternally liberated souls (nitya-muktas). They are birthless and beginningless, and their lives never come to an end. However, they are not lords of the world.

While the result of knowing these things about Kṛṣṇa is devotion, it first takes the form of liberating one from all inauspicious karmic reactions (sarva-pāpaiḥ). This is the natural result of destroying the cause of improper action—ignorance of Kṛṣṇa’s proprietorship (loka-maheśvaram)—for improper action amounts to acting as though one were the proprietor. Thus one with this knowledge is undeluded (asamāmudhah) in this world and acts accordingly in devotion. To entirely uproot ignorance of his proprietorship, Kṛṣṇa elaborates on this feature of himself as the Lord of the world (loka-maheśvaram) in the next three verses.

Text 4–5

buddhir jñānam asaµmoha˙ kßamå satyam dama˙ çama˙/
  sukham du˙kham bhavo ’bhåvo bhayam cåbhayam eva ca//
  ahimså samatå tu߆is tapo dånam yaśo ’yasah/
  bhavanti bhåvå bhütånåµ matta eva prthak-vidhå˙//

buddhiḥ—intelligence; jñānam—knowledge; asamāmohā—freedom from delusion; kßamā—forgiveness; satyam—truthfulness; damaḥ—self-control; çamaḥ—tranquillity; sukham—happiness; duhkham—misery; bhavah—existence; abhåvah—nonexistence; bhayam—fear; ca—and; abhayam—fearlessness; eva—indeed; ca—and; ahimsā—nonviolence; samatā—impartiality; tušṭih—satisfaction; tapah—austerity; dånam—charity; yaśah—fame; ayasah—infamy; bhavanti—arise; bhåvå—dispositions; bhütånām—of living entities; mattaḥ—from me; eva—certainly; prthak-vidhåḥ—various.
Intelligence, knowledge, freedom from delusion, forgiveness, truthfulness, self-control, tranquillity, happiness, misery, existence, nonexistence, fear, fearlessness, nonviolence, impartiality, satisfaction, austerity, charity, fame, infamy—indeed, all of these various dispositions found in living beings arise from me.

Jiva Goswami cites these two verses in his Bhagavat-sandarbha (102) as evidence that the Absolute, although beyond words according to the sruti, can nonetheless be described to an extent. It is not that we cannot say anything about God, but that not enough can be said to fully describe him. Such descriptions make up the greater balance of the scripture. The dispositions mentioned in this verse arise from him and are found in him in their purest expression. Thus God has all of the above qualities.

Here Krsna explains first that even the qualities of the sages—proper discrimination (buddhi), scriptural knowledge of the difference between matter and spirit (jñānam), and freedom from delusion (asāmāmoham)—arise from him. As such, they cannot in and of themselves reveal him in full. They are needed for spiritual progress, but are insufficient in terms of attaining ultimate beatitude, which requires God’s grace.

Forgiveness (kṣamā) involves remaining unperturbed in mind when abused by others and possessing the power to punish abusers yet refraining from doing so. It is the foremost quality of the brāhmaṇas. Truthfulness refers to speaking of something as it is understood through valid evidence (pramāna), principally that of sacred literature. Truthfulness also requires that one’s mind and actions be in concert with one’s speech. Self-control (dama) refers to restraining the external senses by withdrawing them from sense objects, and tranquillity (śamah) refers to controlling the internal organ, the mind. All of these dispositions are products of the material influence of goodness (sattva-guna) and have no expression in the other modes of nature.

Happiness (sukham) is of different kinds relative to the influence of material nature. Happiness arising from sattva-guna is the feeling derived from the performance of virtuous acts. Misery (duḥkham) is the pain arising from nonvirtuous acts, which ultimately appears when the superficial happiness derived from such acts dissipates. Existence (bhavah) and nonexistence (abhāvah) refer to birth and death.

2. See Ka. Up. 2.15.
Fear (bhayam) is the all-pervading experience of material existence, in which we appear threatened with the possibility of nonexistence at every moment. Fearlessness (abhayam) appears in all modes of nature. In sattva-guna it arises from knowledge. In rajo-guna it appears as the foolishness of risking one’s life for fame, and in tamo-guna it appears when one should be afraid.

Nonviolence (ahimsā) refers ultimately to not hindering the spiritual progress of any living being—not merely refraining from physical violence, which, although rarely, has its positive application even in spiritual practice in the instance of protecting saints and the sacred in general. Impartiality (samatā) is sattvic and refers to equal vision and a state of mind that is free from attraction and repulsion. Satisfaction (tuṣṭīḥ) arises in both passion and goodness, with and without cause, respectively. It causes one to feel “this is enough” with regard to material enjoyment. Austerity (tapah) appears in all modes of nature. Only that sanctioned by the scripture is recommended. Charity (dāna) appears in both goodness and passion. In goodness it is offered in consideration of one’s capacity and among deserving people with due respect and in consideration of appropriate times and places. Fame (yaśah) in goodness arises from praise that is a result of virtue, and infamy (ayaśah) is to be known for one’s vices.

Krṣṇa says here that all of the above dispositions certainly (eva) arise (bhavanti) from me (mattaṁ), and thus he continues to explain how he is the Lord of the world (loka-maheśvaram).

Text 6

महर्षय: सप्त पुर्वे चतुरो नववत्त्वाः ।
महानामानसा जाता येषां लोकं समा: प्रजा: ||6||

maharsayah sapta pūrve catvāro manavas tathā/
mad-bhāvā mānasā jātā yesāṁ loka imāḥ prajāḥ//

mahā-rsayah—the great sages; sapta—seven; pūrve—previously; catvārah—four; manavah—Manus; tathā—as well; mat-bhāvāḥ—originated in me; mānasāḥ—from the mind; jātā—born; yesām—of whom; loke—in the world; imāḥ—these; prajāḥ—creatures.

The seven great sages of old, as well as the four (Kumāras) and the Manus from whom the world’s creatures have come, originated in me, born of my mind.
With this verse, in which he refers to the seven sages of Vedic lore—Bhrigu, Marīci, Atri, Anāgīrā, Pulāstya, Pulaha, and Kratu—Krṣṇa concludes his brief explanation of how he is the Lord of the world. These great sages, as well as “the four,” referring to the four Kumāras, are considered the mental sons of Prajāpati Brahmā, who represents Krṣṇa in the act of creation. They are pure in terms of their birth. The Manus mentioned here are progenitors who are fourteen in number. Those acquainted with these persons and their prominence in Vedic literature with regard to universal affairs, both procreation and the dissemination of knowledge, will appreciate the significance of the one who is their source.

In the next verse Krṣṇa explains the ripened fruit of knowing his position as the origin of all of the above, as well as the yoga of devotion, under discussion since the previous chapter.

Text 7

एनां विभूतिः योगं च मम यो वेति तत्त्वत: ।
साधिक्रिक्षपेन योगेन युज्यते नात्र संस्कारः ||७||

etāṁ vibhūtim yogam ca mama yo vetti tattvataḥ/
so ’vikampena yogena yujyate nātra samśayaḥ//

etām—this; vibhūtim—opulence; yogam—yoga; ca—and; mama—my; yah—one who; vetti—knows; tattvataḥ—in truth; saḥ—he; avikampena—by unwavering; yogena—by yoga; yujyate—is united; na—not; atra—here; samśayaḥ—doubt.

One who knows my opulence and power in truth is united with me in unwavering yoga; of this there is no doubt.

The fruit of understanding both Krṣṇa’s opulence (vibhūtim) and his power (yogam ca mama) is that one becomes fixed (avikampena) in the culture of devotional yoga (yogena yujyate). Here Krṣṇa assures Arjuna of this (nātra samśayaḥ).

Bhakti in practice is either anīṣṭhā (wavering) or niṣṭhā (unwavering). One reaches the stage of niṣṭhā through acquiring knowledge in relation to Krṣṇa along with engaging in devotional practices. This knowledge is both tat-padārtha-jñāna and tvam-padārtha-jñāna, knowledge of God and knowledge of the individual soul (tat tvam asi). Beginning with chapter 7, Krṣṇa has revealed tat-padārtha-jñāna; tvam-padārtha-jñāna was revealed in
the first six chapters. The practice of *bhakti* arising out of a proper conceptual orientation as to the position of Kṛṣṇa, his relation to the world and the individual souls and their relationship with one another, eventually unites one with Kṛṣṇa in love.

Having spoken about his opulence and his personal *yoga* of devotion, Kṛṣṇa, brimming with spiritual emotion, next elaborates in four essential verses on his position as the source of everything as well as on the nature of *bhakti* proper.

**Text 8**

*aham sarvasya prabhavo mattah sarvam pravartate/
iti matvā bhajante māṁ budhā bhava-samanvitāḥ/*

*aḥaṁ—I; sarvasya—of everything; prabhavah—the source; mattah—from me; sarvam—everything; pravartate—proceeds; iti—thus; matvā—considering; bhajante—adore; māṁ—me; budhāḥ—the wise; bhava-samanvitāḥ—imbued with love.*

*I am the source of everything; all proceeds from me. Realizing this, the wise imbued with love adore me.*

Viśvanātha Cakravartī Ṭhākura has called verses 8 through 11 the *catuḥ-sloki* of the *Bhagavad-gītā*, playing off the well-known four (*catur*) essential verses (*sloka*) of the *Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam* (*ŚB. 2.9.33–36*), originally spoken by Kṛṣṇa to Brahmā. All four verses have a general meaning for practicing devotees (*sādhakas*), as well as an esoteric meaning relative to Kṛṣṇa’s devotees of Vraja and the *gopīs* and their followers in particular. They deal with the nature of devotion that follows the realization of the first two lines of this verse, in which Kṛṣṇa, as he does in the *Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam*, proclaims himself to be the original Supreme Person (*svayaṁ bhagavān*).

Kṛṣṇa first says, “I (*aham*) am the source (*prabhavo*) of everything (*sarvasya*), and everything (*sarvam*) proceeds (*pravartate*) from me (*mattah*).” Here Kṛṣṇa declares himself to be both the efficient and ingredient cause of

---

3. *ŚB. 1.3.28*. See also *ŚB. 1.1.1*. In this verse Kṛṣṇa is described as the source of everything (*jāmādyasya yataḥ*), who is to be meditated on in devotion (*satyaṁ paraṁ dhimahi*).
the world. In pottery, the potter and the clay are the efficient and ingredient causes, respectively. However, in the case of the world, all systems of Vedānta recognize Brahman to be both causes, efficient and ingredient.

Not only is Kṛṣṇa the source of both the material and spiritual worlds, he oversees their maintenance as well. The spiritual domain is maintained by his incarnations and expansions. The material world is presided over by his expansion as Paramātmā. Brahmā and Śiva, his partial incarnations (guṇavatāras), create and destroy the material world, respectively. Furthermore, order in the civilized world, by the direction of the sacred Vedas, emanates from him as well. Kṛṣṇa is the Godhead himself (svayam bhagavān). Those who understand this are wise, the expression of which is their devotion to him. This is the general import.

The deeper meaning reveals that he who is svayam bhagavān, the original Godhead from whom all other expressions of divinity emanate is dhira-lalita Kṛṣṇa of Vraja, the playful Casanova subjugated by Rādhā’s love. Dhira-prasānta Kṛṣṇa of Dwārakā (Dwārakeśa Kṛṣṇa), the sober statesman who gives Upaniṣadic council to Arjuna on the battlefield, is a partial manifestation of Kṛṣṇa of Vraja. Although Kṛṣṇa of the Gītā preaches a sermon of love, the full face of love (mukhya-rasa) is expressed in Vraja alone. The fullest expression of love is the source of all other expressions of love. Thus in this verse, Kṛṣṇa of Vraja is speaking, as Dwārakeśa Kṛṣṇa’s mind shifts from the battlefield to Vraja due to the influence of sacred Kurukṣetra.

Earlier in Kurukṣetra, Dwārakeśa Kṛṣṇa met with Rādhā and others from Vraja after killing the evil king Kaṁsa. They came to Kurukṣetra, as he did, to observe the solar eclipse. Amidst royal paraphernalia, entourage, and elephants, Dwārakeśa Kṛṣṇa, the ever-youthful prince, met with the beloved devotees of Vraja. Reminded of their love, he admitted that he was entirely purchased by them. At that time, his mother, Devakī, seeing the love of his so-called foster mother of Vraja by whom he had been raised, acknowledged that Kṛṣṇa was in fact Yaśodā’s son in consideration of the intensity of her love. To Nanda and Yaśodā of Vraja, prince Kṛṣṇa was just their young boy, his princely paraphernalia merely an ornament.

Śrī Rādhā and the gopīs drew the dhira-lalita nāyaka of Vraja from Kṛṣṇa’s heart, reminding Kṛṣṇa of their youthful days of love in carefree Vraja: frolicking in its beautiful forests, Mount Govardhana, and the sandy banks of the Yamunā. They were not attracted to Kṛṣṇa’s regal attire, for he remained to them their adolescent love. They were not city girls, and the formalities of high society held no attraction for them. Their Kṛṣṇa was not a prince to
bow before, rather he who bowed to their love, attesting to its supremacy. For the gopīs, Kṛṣṇa was, although the best of them, a mere village boy of Vraja, and by the force of their love, Kṛṣṇa admitted to the gopīs that even in the midst of princely life his heart was always with them, subjugated by their love. It is thus through the lens of love, sacred aesthetic rapture, that Śrī Caitanya’s disciples have envisioned Vraja’s dhīra-lalita Kṛṣṇa at sacred Kurukṣetra in this verse, a vision of love (bhāva- samanvītaḥ) philosophically grounded (budhā).

Spiritual love that knows no reason cares little for the Godhood of Godhead, yet it is this kind of love that brings one in touch with the fullest expression of the Absolute, the source of everything and its feeling, the Supreme God. At the same time, according to this verse, initially it is knowledge of Kṛṣṇa’s supremacy and thus his supreme capacity to love that inspires one to approach him in absolute love—to give fully of oneself.

In the language of Rūpa Goswāmī, the fullest expression of the Absolute is Kṛṣṇa, who is akhila-rasāmyra-murtih, the reservoir of loving reciprocation in sacred aesthetic rapture (Brs. 1.1.1). Thus svayam bhagavān Kṛṣṇa, after explaining his position as the source of all, speaks in the second half of this verse about the type of devotion he relishes—and by which he is realized.

Through the sacred literature Kṛṣṇa explains his own devotional yoga. B. R. Śrīdhara Deva Goswāmī comments that the words mattaḥ sarvam pravartate in this verse indicate, “Every attempt and movement begins with me, including the methods by which everyone worships and serves me in devotion.” Kṛṣṇa reveals himself through the methods of devotion he himself has given in the scripture. Study of the scripture in and of itself does not reveal him, but therein Kṛṣṇa reveals the means by which he can be known, his grace, and the means of attracting this grace, acts of devotion under the guidance of Śrī guru.

B. R. Śrīdhara Deva Goswāmī cites the famous Bhāgavata verse in which Kṛṣṇa identifies the guru with himself, ācāryam mām vijāniyāt: “I am the guru (ācārya).” (ŚB. 11.17.27) Thus it is Kṛṣṇa himself who teaches his devotional yoga to one who understands (budhā) him as svayam bhagavān, the origin of all. He does so through his potency, Śrī Rādhā, who for the Gauḍīyas is represented by Śrī guru, for she knows Kṛṣṇa like no one else. She knows everything about him: the original person, svayam bhagavān.

4. See ŚB. 10.32.22.
5. See ŚB. 10.82.44.
Under her influence, the influence of Vraja bhakti, devotees worship Kṛṣṇa imbued with spontaneous love (bhāva-samanvitāḥ).

Bhāva-samanvitāḥ indicates the sacred path of passionate love (rāgānugabhakti). This is the path demarcated by Śrī Caitanya. B. R. Śridhara Deva Goswāmī remarks that the insight into the ultimacy of Vraja Kṛṣṇa is mentioned in the Bhāgavata (11.5.32) in relation to the worship of Śrī Caitanya himself, yajanti hi sumedhasah. Endowed with divine wisdom begetting subtle theistic intelligence, devotees worship Śrī Caitanya as the combined form of Rādhā and Kṛṣṇa by means of sankirtana (chanting God’s name in unison). Such wisdom is described in this verse as budhā, and the subsequent worship as bhāva-samanvitāḥ.

The words budhā and bhāva-samanvitāḥ indicate the essence of bhakti. It is a wise existence, wise love, in which one is cognizant of one’s relationship with Kṛṣṇa and joyfully functions in that loving relationship. This takes place on firm existential ground. Rūpa Goswāmī describes that one possessed of bhāva is under the influence of the cognitive (saµvit) and joy (hlādinī) features of Kṛṣṇa’s primary sakti, which is also composed of an existential feature (sandhinī). This is budhā bhāva-samanvitāḥ.

A feeling existence is not always a wise one. Misplaced feeling amounts to the experience of material existence, an existence rooted in ignorance. When our feeling (bhāva) is wise (budhā), due to its being reposed in the perfect object of love that Kṛṣṇa describes himself to be in this verse, we dwell in a corresponding eternal existence. Bhāva means feeling, love, as well as existence. Our love is our existence. Kṛṣṇa next describes how his loving devotees exist and express their love for him.

Text 9

mac-cittā mad-gata-prānāḥ bodhayantah parasparam/
kathayantah ca mām nityam tusyanti ca ramanti ca//

mat-cittāḥ—those whose minds are fixed on me; mat-gata-prānāḥ—those whose lives are absorbed in me; bodhayantah—enlightening; parasparam—one another; kathayantah—speaking; ca—and; mām—me; nityam—always; tusyanti—they derive satisfaction; ca—and; ramanti—they rejoice; ca—also.

6. Brs. 1.3.1
Those whose minds are fixed on me and whose lives are absorbed in me derive satisfaction and delight from enlightening one another and always speaking of me.

Even in Kṛṣṇa’s absence from Vraja, his devotees continued to exist only for him. Their minds were fixed on him (mac-cittā), and their lives absorbed in him, their very life breath (mad-gata-prāṇā). They eternally discussed only Kṛṣṇa and his Vraja līlās (kathayantaś ca māṁ nityam). From this they derived great satisfaction (tusyanti) even in his absence, and the gopīs’ hearts grew fonder for him in conjugal love (ramanti).

Here Kṛṣṇa continues to think of his devotees in Vraja and those aspiring for their standard of devotion. Although they derive satisfaction even in his separation by constantly speaking about him in their own assembly and ministering to the public about him as well, this is so because it increases their anticipation of meeting with him, in which they feel his presence.

Madhusūdana Saraswatī, following Śaṅkara himself, acknowledges that the word ramanti in this verse implies the delight of love that a young girl feels for a young boy, as the gopīs felt for Kṛṣṇa. Śaṅkara says, “They [devotees] find their contentment and delight as though they have met with their beloved.” Ramanti speaks of the gopīs and those in this world who tread the path of rāgānuga-bhakti in search of Kṛṣṇa following in the wake of the gopīs’ love. It speaks of union with Kṛṣṇa through longing in separation, the dark night of the soul. As Kṛṣṇa continues to explain, such devotees constantly worship him, and he assists them in their efforts for union with him.

**Text 10**

तेषां सततयुक्तानां भजातां प्रीतिपूर्वकः।
ददामि बुद्धियोगः तं येन मामं उपयांति ते॥१०॥

tēṣāṁ satata-yuktānāṁ bhajatāṁ prīti-pūrvakam/
dadāmi buddhi-yogam tāṁ yena mām uṣpayānti te//

tēṣāṁ—to them; satata-yuktānāṁ—constantly devoted; bhajatāṁ—to those who worship; prīti-pūrvakam—with love; dadāmi—I give; buddhi-yogam—power of discrimination; tāṁ—it; yena—by which; mām—(to) me; uṣpayānti—they come; te—they.

To those who are constantly devoted, who worship me with love, I give the power of discrimination by which they come to me.
Madhusūdana Sarasvatī acknowledges that the words satata-yuktānām indicate those who are ever devoted to Kṛṣṇa, as well as that prīti-pūrvakam indicates selfless love. Regarding the previous verse, he says that the contentment (tusyanti) of the devotees under discussion is such that they feel, “We have attained everything through this much [devotion] alone. There is no need for anything else to be achieved.” However, in contradiction to this he writes in his commentary on the present verse that Kṛṣṇa gives (dadāmi) the power of discrimination, the yoga of wisdom (buddhi-yoga or jñāna-yoga) to such selfless devotees. This implies that bhakti is merely the means to jñāna and thereby salvation. According to Adwaita Vedānta, upon attaining salvation, devotion retires. This implies that in and of itself bhakti does not bear the fruit of absolute contentment, yet Kṛṣṇa himself has already instructed Arjuna at the close of the ninth chapter that his devotees come to him by devotion alone (Bg. 9.34). Knowledge and detachment are concomitant factors of devotion. Thus in a general sense, the power of discrimination that Kṛṣṇa gives his devotees is the cognitive aspect of bhakti proper. He gives them knowledge of their eternal relationship with him, and cultivating this relationship, his devotees come to him. From his use of the term buddhi-yogam in this verse, it is apparent that Kṛṣṇa’s use of the same term earlier in the second chapter (Bg. 2.39), while overtly referring to niṣkāma-karma-yoga, implies bhakti-yoga. The full sense of buddhi-yoga is bhakti.

Kṛṣṇadāsa Kavirāja Goswāmī cites this verse three times in Caitanya-caritāmṛta. In his initial citing he connects it with the Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam’s catuḥ-slokī in the context of explaining the nature of the instructing guru (śikṣā-guru), who enlightens one with transcendental knowledge. In his commentary on Kavirāja Goswāmī’s citation, Bhaktivedanta Swami Prabhupāda writes, “The Lord declares that by enlightenment in theistic knowledge he awards attachment for him to those who constantly engage in his transcendental loving service. This awakening of divine consciousness enthralls a devotee, who thus relishes his eternal transcendental mellow (rasa).”

Relative to Kṛṣṇa’s emotional state from which this verse issues, there is a deeper meaning to consider. For one who is constantly (satatam) devoted (yuktānām) to Kṛṣṇa, worshipping him (bhajatām) with love (prīti-pūrvakam), what need does such a devotee have for power of discrimination

7. See ŚB. 1.2.7.
(buddhi-yogam) or even attachment for Kṛṣṇa in terms of sacred aesthetic rapture, when this attachment is the very basis of their perpetual loving worship? Such devotees are not practitioners, they are Kṛṣṇa’s devotees of Vraja, who embody the ideals of natural, inborn spontaneous love (rāgātmika).⁹ Here Kṛṣṇa is speaking of the gopīs in particular, as he flows into this verse from the previous one on the nectar ocean of the word ramanti (conjugal love) and its implications. The gopīs have already discriminated between matter and spirit, and exercised powerful discrimination within that which is spiritual as well, choosing, for example, Kṛṣṇa over Narāyaṇa. What further need do they have for the power of discrimination? Having already attained Kṛṣṇa, the words yena māṁ upayanti te (they come to me) in this verse also appear redundant. Furthermore, the term buddhi-yoga in the Gītā’s second chapter, verse 39, is often understood to indicate niṣkāma-karma-yoga, detached action within the context of scripturally prescribed duties.¹⁰ What need do elevated devotees such as the gopīs have for practicing detachment or prescribed duties?

If we take buddhi-yoga to mean niṣkāma-karma-yoga, we will have to think that Kṛṣṇa inspires the gopīs in selfless action, for they attend to household affairs and their socioreligious duties responsibly lest their family members become suspicious. They do so with no attachment whatsoever to the results, their minds absorbed in the hope of meeting secretly with Kṛṣṇa. Because they do meet him in the dead of night when all of the other devotees of Vraja’s līlā sleep and dream of Kṛṣṇa but have no active service, the gopīs’ loving service is sometimes referred to as “twenty-four hour” service in Kṛṣṇa’s nitya-līlā (satata-yuktānām).

Those who hear dhīra-lalita Kṛṣṇa of Vraja, pūrṇatama svayam bhagavān, speaking in this verse understand buddhi-yogam in light of Kṛṣṇa’s Vraja līlā. Kṛṣṇa is the paramour of the gopīs. They cannot meet with him openly. How do they meet with him? Kṛṣṇa gives them the power of discrimination through his sidelong glances as to how to steal away in the night and meet him (māṁ upayanti) on the banks of the Yamunā.

Text 11

9. See Brs. 1.2.271–289.
10. In this edition buddhi-yoga in Bg. 2.39 has been explained to indicate bhakti in accordance with the commentary of Visvanātha Cakravartī Thākura.
Out of compassion for them, I, dwelling within their soul, destroy the darkness born of ignorance with the effulgent lamp of knowledge.

Kṛṣṇa shows compassion to practitioners on the path of devotion by illuminating their hearts with the highest knowledge of himself and their relationship with him. This knowledge is not of the nature of sattva-guṇa. It is transcendental. Kṛṣṇa reveals it from within the devotee who keeps him on the altar of his heart.

While other means of removing ignorance are available to those on paths other than unalloyed bhakti, Kṛṣṇa’s devotees rely solely on him for destroying their ignorance. Thus he is personally involved in removing the ignorance of only his devotees, and only in their hearts does he personally dwell, witnessing their trials and tribulations life after life. As his devotees search for him everywhere, begging from door to door on his behalf, suffering ridicule, and shedding tears for him, he is aware of all these things. He knows the trouble they take to come to him, and it is difficult for him to bear. Thus he illumines their path, holding a lamp to their dark night of separation, revealing himself within their hearts and enabling them to realize all that they have heard about him from scripture. As jñāna also refers to scriptural knowledge, the lamp of knowledge (jñāna-dīpā) also refers to Kṛṣṇa’s illuminating from within his devotee’s heart the esoteric meaning of the sacred literature, its deepest import regarding the practice of rāgānuga-bhakti.

Relative to Vraja bhakti and the feeling of this verse, Kṛṣṇa continues to speak of the Vraja gopīs and how their love affects him. In consideration of this, the present verse appears to suffer from the same inconsistency found in the previous verse. What need do the Vraja gopīs have for the lamplight of knowledge (jñāna-dīpa)? This is the query of B. R. Śrīdhara Deva Goswāmi, who bases his esoteric rendering on Viśvanātha Cakravarti’s claim that the jñāna mentioned in this verse is not the knowledge of this world (sattva-guṇa) leading to purity and transcendental realization,
but rather vilakṣaṇa-jñāna, “extraordinary knowledge.” B. R. Śrīdhara Deva Goswāmī goes on to offer an alternative translation based on the words teśām evānuksamārtham, which have been rendered above as “out of compassion for them.” He informs us that it can also be rendered, “I want their favor, I aspire for the favor of those devotees of the highest order. Being conquered by the love of those devotees, when I cannot tolerate their pain of separation, I at once come running to satisfy them, and reveal to them with special light, special consciousness, ‘I have returned to you—see me now.’ With powerful brilliance (jñāna-dīpena) I show them my presence when they are very much in need of me, and I relieve their pain of separation.” Perhaps the best example in all of the sacred literature of Kṛṣṇa’s brightening the dark night of the soul’s separation from him is Kṛṣṇa’s return to the gopīs after his disappearance during the rāsa-līlā (ŚB. 10.32.2).

Silenced by Kṛṣṇa’s speech and concerned by his sudden pause as he drifted emotionally from the battlefield, Arjuna considered how to bring Kṛṣṇa back to the present reality. He does so in seven verses of his own by praising and accepting what Kṛṣṇa had said about his Godliness and asking Kṛṣṇa to continue in this vein.

**Texts 12–13**

arjuna uvāca

param brahma param dhāma pavitraṁ paramaṁ bhavān/

puruṣam sāsvataṁ divyam ādi-devam ajam vibhum/

āhus tvāṁ rśayah sarve devaṁ varṣir nāradas tathā/

asito devalo vyāsah svayam caiva braviṣi me//

arjunah uvāca—Arjuna said; param—supreme; brahma—Brahman; param—supreme; dhāma—abode; pavitraṁ—purifier; paramaṁ—supreme; bhavān— you; puruṣam—person; sāsvataṁ—eternal; divyam—divine; ādi-devam—the primal God; ajam—unborn; vibhum—omnipresent; āhuḥ—they say; tvāṁ— you; rśayah—the sages; sarve—all; deva-rṣih—the sage among the gods; nāradah—Nārada; tathā—also; asitah—Asita; devalah—Devala; vyāsah—Vyāsa; svayam—yourself; ca—also; eva—certainly; braviṣi—you say; me—(to) me.
Arjuna said: You are the Supreme Brahman, the supreme abode, the supreme purifier, the eternal divine person, the primal God, unborn and omnipresent, for all the sages (including) Nārada, Asita, Devala, and Vyāsa (Krṣṇa-dvāipāyana) say so, as have you yourself (just now).

Arjuna speaks here for the first time since the second verse of the eighth chapter. He does so after Krṣṇa’s speech has reached a crescendo, rendering him speechless, his mind no longer on the battlefield. Arjuna brings Krṣṇa back by speaking of his opulence, confirming aloud that he has understood what Krṣṇa has said about himself. Thus the topic reverts from devotion back to its initial impetus: knowledge of Krṣṇa’s opulence. This topic will continue almost to the end of the eleventh chapter. At the end of the eleventh chapter and throughout the twelfth, the discussion will revert back to devotion.

For one interested in a life of devotion, the importance of knowing Krṣṇa’s opulence cannot be underestimated. Thus there is considerable emphasis on this in the Gītā’s middle six chapters dealing with devotion. At the same time, the knowledge of Krṣṇa’s opulence, while initially important, ultimately takes a subordinate position to devotion itself. This is the import of the balance of chapters 10 and 11.

Before asking Krṣṇa to continue to speak about his opulence, Arjuna praises him in terms of that which he has said about his majesty earlier. Praising Krṣṇa as the Supreme Brahman (paraṁ brahma) and the supreme abode (paraṁ dhāma) is in striking contrast to Krṣṇa’s characterization of himself as one dependent on his devotees (teṣām evānukampārtham). Arjuna’s speech effectively brings Krṣṇa down from the lofty love of Vraja to continue his discourse. At the conclusion of the Gītā, Krṣṇa will again drift to Vraja, thus bringing the Song of God to a close.

The sages referred to in this verse are many. Their praises of Krṣṇa are found throughout the sacred literature. Those mentioned by name are particularly prominent, and among them Nārada is preeminent.¹¹

Text 14

सर्वेऽन्तरं यन्मः यन्मानं वद्यसि केषलः ।
न हि ते भगवन् व्यक्तिः सर्वदृढ्यस्तति न दानवः ॥ १४॥

¹¹ Nārada is the famous devaṛsi, sage among the gods, described throughout the Purāṇas. He is said to have authored the Nārada-bhakti-sūtra, an important treatise on devotion. Krṣṇa is his Deity.
O Keśava, I accept all that you have said as true, for, O Blessed One, neither the gods nor the demons know your glorious manifestation!

Addressing Kṛṣṇa as Keśava and Bhagavân, Arjuna acknowledges Kṛṣṇa’s omniscience. Thus he says, “I accept all that you have said, and I know that you are aware of my acceptance, being omniscient.” Gauḍīya commentators, as well as Madhusūdana Saraswatī, understand the name Keśava to indicate supremacy over Brahmā (ka) and Śiva (īṣa). Madhusūdana Saraswatī glorifies Keśava as “He who looks upon Brahmā and Śiva with compassion, even though they rule over all.” This person is the Blessed Lord (Bhagavân).

In this verse, Arjuna confirms that which Kṛṣṇa said in the second verse of this chapter regarding the gods being unaware of Kṛṣṇa’s position. Mention of the demons’ ignorance is for the purpose of including everyone in between. Implied also is the ignorance of the sages in this regard—even though they know Kṛṣṇa as the Supreme Brahman—for they do not know how he can be the son of Devaki.

Text 15

svayam evātmanātmānam vettha tvam puruṣottama/
   bhūta-bhāvana bhūteṣa deva-deva jagat-pate//

You alone know yourself through your own power, O best of persons, cause of the welfare of beings, Lord of beings, God of gods, Lord of the universe.
Arjuna attests to Krṣṇa’s supremacy by saying first that, unlike others who know themselves by the help of the gods or sages, Krṣṇa, being above them, knows himself in full by his own power alone. He knows himself by dint of his primary sakti.

Arjuna’s pronouncement is in response to any possible playful rebuttal of Krṣṇa such as, “How can I know that which no one else knows?” Following this challenge, Arjuna addresses Krṣṇa as Puruṣottama, “best of persons.” Madhusūdana Sarasvatī says, “O Puruṣottama, in comparison with you all persons without exception are inferior. Therefore what is impossible for them is surely possible for you.”

After declaring Krṣṇa to be the Supreme Person, Arjuna substantiates his claim by explaining the position of the Puruṣottama. He is the one who brings other beings into existence (bhūta-bhāvana) and causes their welfare, the benevolent father of all. He is the Lord of the created (bhūtesa) as well. He is the God of gods (deva-deva), the one who is worshipped by all the devas, and the Lord of the universe (jagat-pate), by virtue of manifesting the Vedas which govern its inhabitants.

Text 16

वक्तूमाहंस्यशेषेन दिव्या यामविभूतयायः |
याभिः विभूतिभिः लोकानं इमां त्वम व्याप्यते स्थितसि || 16 ||

vaktum arhasya aśeṣena divyā hy ātma-vibhūtayah/
yābhir vibhūtibhir lokān imāms tvam vyāpya tiṣṭhasi/

vaktum arhasi—please speak; aśeṣena—completely; divyāh—divine; hi—certainly; ātma—your own; vibhūtayah—manifestations; yābhīḥ—by which; vibhūtibhiḥ—by the manifestations; lokān—all the worlds; imāṁ—these; tvam—you; vyāpya—pervading; tiṣṭhasi—you abide.

Please speak without reservation about the divine manifestations by which you pervade all the worlds and abide in them.

Arjuna asks Krṣṇa to speak further about his divine manifestations (ātma-vibhūtayah) so that he can better follow Krṣṇa’s advice to always think of him. He should do so, Arjuna says, without reservation (aśeṣena), as friend to friend even though Krṣṇa is God and Arjuna his devotee. As will be clear from Krṣṇa’s reply, which takes one through the majority of chapter 11, such descriptions are for beginners to help them understand the glory
of Krṣṇa, he who pervades everything and is represented as the best and essence of all things. Thinking of these representations of Krṣṇa in material nature as such, one naturally begins to think of Krṣṇa himself.

Text 17

कथं विद्यामहं योगिम् त्वम विचिन्तित्वम्।
केसु केसु च भवेशु चिन्त्यो भगवन् मयः॥ १७॥

katham vidyām aham ẏogīṁ tvāṁ sadā paricintayan/
keṣu keṣu ca bhāvesu cintyo ’si bhagavan mayā/

katham—how; vidyām—shall I know; aham—I; ẏogīṁ—O mystic; tvāṁ—you;
sadā—constantly; paricintayan—meditating on; keṣu keṣu—in what various;
ca—and; bhāvesu—aspects of being; cintyāḥ asi—you are to be thought of;
bhagavan—O Blessed One; mayā—by me.

O mystic, how can I know you in constant meditation, and in what various aspects of being am I to think of you, O Blessed One?

By contemplating Krṣṇa though his various manifestations mentioned in this chapter and in chapters 7 and 9 that parallel these descriptions, one comes to appreciate the personal form of Krṣṇa as the source of all being, the supreme mystic who possesses the sakti known as yoga-māyā. At that time, one can meditate on his personal name, form, and līlās without distraction, one’s heart sufficiently purified. This is the verdict of Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam (2.2.14), and particularly the commentary of Viśvanātha Cakravartī Ṭhākura. As an introduction to the theology of the Bhāgavata, Śrī Gītā suggests the same course.

The Bhāgavata cautions that those without love for the personality of Godhead should not meditate on his personal form. Such persons are advised to meditate first on the universal form of God (viśva-rūpa), in which his form is imagined in terms of the mountains, seas, sun, moon, and so on. Viśvanātha Cakravartī goes further in commenting that those whose intelligence is still impure should not even meditate on the four-armed form of Viṣṇu. Thus out of his own humility and under the influence of Krṣṇa’s divine bewilderment for the sake of teaching others through him, Arjuna asks Krṣṇa how he can meditate on his divine universal manifestations. Arjuna considers himself dull and unfit to understand the opulence of Krṣṇa, when even gods and sages have difficulty. Thus
he asks the following question, which leads to the description of Kṛṣṇa’s universal form.

**Text 18**

vistareṇaṭmano yogam vibhūtim ca janārdana/
bhūyaḥ kathaya tṛptir hi śrṇvato nāsti me 'mṛtam/

vistareṇa—in detail; ātmanaḥ—your; yogam—mystic power; vibhūtim—opulence; ca—and; janārdana—O Janārdana; bhūyaḥ—again; kathaya—tell; tṛptih—satisfaction; hi—certainly; śrṇvataḥ—of hearing; na asti—there is not; me—my; amṛtam—nectar.

**O Janārdana, tell me again in detail of your mystic power and opulence, for I am never satiated hearing your nectar.**

Although Kṛṣṇa has already stated that he is the source of everything, Arjuna asks to hear about this metaphysical truth in greater detail. Arjuna’s question is practical, and it is further justified by his addressing Kṛṣṇa as Janārdana. Madhusūdana Saraswati explains “Janārdana” as one who is prayed to (ardana) by all people (jana). Madhusūdana Saraswati further notes the use of three figures of speech in this verse,\(^\text{12}\) the combined effect of which indicates great eagerness on the part of Arjuna resulting from his experience of overwhelming sweetness in his exchange with Kṛṣṇa thus far.

Viṣvanātha Cakravarti says that by addressing Kṛṣṇa as Janārdana, Arjuna is saying, “By your nectarean instruction you make persons (jana) like myself hungry for more and thus make us beg you to continue.” Here ardayeṣe is taken as synonymous with yācayasi, “make us beg.” This is a recondite use of the verb. An example of this usage is found in Raghuvamśa (5.17). Viṣvanātha Cakravarti Ṭhākura says that Arjuna, more than praying, is begging Kṛṣṇa to satisfy his greed to hear more about him. His thirst remains unquenched even in the midst of the flow of immortal nectar he has been drinking through his ears. His addressing Kṛṣṇa as Janārdana thus

\(^{12}\) Rūpaka, apahnuti, and atisayokti. The rūpaka (metaphor) is “nectar.” The apahnuti (concealment) is in the fact that Kṛṣṇa’s speech itself is not mentioned as the element being compared to nectar. The atisayokti (hyperbole) is in identifying Kṛṣṇa’s words with nectar.
reveals that he is qualified for more than meditation on Kṛṣṇa’s universal form, for his greed to hear is a sign of his love for Kṛṣṇa.

Arjuna has endeared himself to Kṛṣṇa by making this request and thus Kṛṣṇa elaborates on his opulence.

**Text 19**

The Lord of Śrī said: Listen as I explain to you only those divine manifestations of my Self that are prominent, for there is no end to the extent of my opulence.

As Arjuna is charmed by Kṛṣṇa’s words, so too is Kṛṣṇa charmed by Arjuna’s request. Thus he consents to it using the word *hanta*, an affectionate affirmation. However, Kṛṣṇa qualifies his response in two ways. The word *prādhānyataḥ* means both those manifestations that are “most prominent” as well as “in the order of their prominence.” Thus Kṛṣṇa begins in the next verse by mentioning his manifestation as the Supersoul.

**Text 20**

I am the Self; Guḍākṣa—O Guḍākṣa; sarva-bhūta—of all beings; āsaya-sthitah—abiding in the heart; ahām—I; ādiḥ—the beginning; ca—and; madhyam—middle; ca—and; bhūtānām—of all beings; antah—end; eva—certainly; ca—and.
I am the Self, O Guḍākeśa, abiding in the hearts of all beings. Of all beings I am the beginning, middle, and end.

Krṣṇa addresses Arjuna as Guḍākeśa, indicating his qualification for meditation. He is one who has conquered sleep and is thus qualified in the least to meditate on the four-armed form of Krṣṇa as Paramātmā. Krṣṇa says, “I, svayam bhagavān, am the Supersoul in all souls’ hearts.” In this way he makes it clear that the Paramātmā (ātma) is a manifestation of himself. It is through his Paramātmā feature that Krṣṇa is the cause (ādi) of the world and the living beings. Through this feature he further oversees the maintenance of material existence in its middle phase (madhyam) and sees to its annihilation in the end (antaḥ).

Having spoken first of the qualification for internal meditation on the form of God, Krṣṇa next speaks at length of how less qualified persons can begin to contemplate him.

Text 21

आदित्यानां विष्णु-ज्योतिः सर्वसूचिन्।
मरिचिरसर्वसूचिनिः नक्षत्राणां सदी॥ ॥

ādityānāṃ aham viṣṇur jyotistham raviṁ aṁśumān/
maricir marutāṁ asmi nakṣatranām aham śaśī//

ādityānāṃ—of the Ādityas; aham—I; viṣṇuh—Viṣṇu; jyotisthām—of lights; raviḥ—the sun; aṁśu-mān—radiant; maricīḥ—Marici; marutāṁ—of the Maruts; asmi—I am; nakṣatrāṇām—of the stars; aham—I; śaśī—the moon.

Of the Ādityas I am Viṣṇu; of lights, the radiant sun; of the Maruts I am Marici; of heavenly bodies I am the moon.

The Viṣṇu among the twelve ādityas is the incarnation known as Vāmaṇa. Later Krṣṇa will also mention Rāma and Vāsudeva within the list of his opulences (vibhūtis). However, incarnations of Krṣṇa such as Vāmaṇa and Rāma and expansions such as Vāsudeva are not Krṣṇa’s vibhūtis but God himself. They are included in this section because of their appearing in the material world as if part of it.

Text 22

vedāṇāः सामवेदोपस्मि तेवानामस्मि वासवः।
हिन्दूर्याणां मन्नामस्मि भूलानामस्मि चेतना॥ ॥

बेदानां सामवेदोपस्मि तेवानामस्मि वासवः।
हिन्दूर्याणां मन्नामस्मि भूलानामस्मि चेतना॥ ॥
Of the Vedas I am the Sāma Veda; of the gods I am Indra. Of the senses I am the mind, and of the living beings I am consciousness.

The Sāma Veda is originally derived from the Rg Veda. It consists of hymns of praise and is very beautiful. Indra is the chief (indra) of the gods. The mind is the sixth sense, the most powerful and subtle of all. That which is the essence of living beings is consciousness.

Text 23

Of the Rudras I am Śaṅkara; of the Yakṣas I am Kuvera. Of the Vasus I am fire (Agni), and of mountains I am Meru.

The eleven Rudras are manifestations of Śiva. Śaṅkara is Śiva himself. Kuvera is the treasurer of the gods and a ghostly associate of Śiva. Agni is the god of fire, and Meru the mythic mountain of the Himalayas involved in such things as creation.
Of priests, O Pārtha, know me to be the chief, Bṛhaspati. Of military commanders I am Skanda; of bodies of water I am the ocean.

Indra is the king of the gods and Bṛhaspati is his priest. The sense of the unlimited experienced when gazing at the ocean reminds one of God.

Text 25

Of the great sages I am Bṛgu; of utterances the single syllable (om); of sacrifices I am japa; of that which is immovable I am the Himālayas.

Japa refers to the sacrifice of inaudibly reciting one’s mantra, an important aspect of spiritual practice.

Text 26

Of the godly seers I am Nārada; of all trees; of Gandharvas;
citraratnah—Citraratha; siddhānām—of the siddhas; kapilāh munih—Kapila Muni.

Of trees I am the Aśvattha (Pippala tree); of the godly seers I am Nārada; of Gandharvas (heavenly musicians) I am Citraratha; of the siddhas I am Kapila.

Text 27
उष्णसम्बन्धाना विढ्ठ माम मूलोढाम्।
एगवतं गजेन्द्रणां नराणां च नाराधिपाम्।।२७॥
uccaiḥśravasam aśvānāṁ viddhi māṁ amṛtodbhavam/
airāvatam gajendrānāṁ narānāṁ ca narādhipām//

Of horses I am the Thunderbolt; of cows I am the wish-fulfilling Kāmadhenu.

Text 28
आयुधाणामह वज्र श्रेण्यार्थमिस्य कामधुक।
प्रजनास्तिम कन्दर्पम् सर्पान्तमिस्य वासुकिः।।२८॥
āyudhānāṁ aham vajram dhenunāṁ asmi kāmadhuk/
prajanaś cāśmi kandarpah sarpānāṁ asmi vāsukih//

Of weapons I am the thunderbolt; of cows I am the wish-fulfilling Kāmadhenu.
The thunderbolt is considered to be the weapon of Indra, king of the gods. The magical kāmadhenu is well known in Purānic lore, as is the serpent Vāsuki.

**Text 29**

अनंताः कस्म नागान्म वरुणो यदासाम अहम/
पित्राः अर्याः कस्म यमाः संयमाताम अहम//

anantaḥ—Ananta; ca—and; asmi—I am; nāgānām—of nāgas; varūnaḥ—Varuṇa; yādasām—of aquatics; aham—I; pitrām—of the ancestors; aryām—Aryām; ca—and; asmi—I am; yamā—Yama; saṁyamatām—of all regulators; aham—I.

Of nāgas I am Ananta; of aquatics, Varuṇa. Of the ancestors I am Aryaṁ, and of those who punish and reward I am Yama.

Varuṇa and Aryaṁ are the leaders of their constituents: aquatics and ancestors, respectively. Yama is the god to whom the soul must account at death.

**Text 30**

प्रहलादाः कस्म दायित्यान्म काल कलयाताम अहम/
मर्गानम ca mrgeṇḍro ’ham vainateyas ca paksinām//

prahlādaḥ—Prahlāda; ca—and; asmi—I am; daityānām—of demons; kālaḥ—time; kalayātām—of calculators; aham—I; mṛgaṇām—of animals; ca—and; mrga-ndraḥ—the lion; aham—I; vainateyāḥ—Garuḍa; ca—and; paksinām—of birds.

Of demons I am Prahlāda; of calculators I am time. Of animals I am the lion, and of birds, Garuḍa.

Prahlāda, a great devotee, was born in a family of demons. His name indicates one who delights all. Garuḍa is the carrier of Viṣṇu.
Text 31

Of purifiers I am the wind; of warriors I am Rāma; of fish I am the shark; of rivers I am the Ganges.

Text 32

Of creations I am the beginning, middle, and end; of knowledge I am knowledge of the Supreme Self; among speakers I am words that are unbiased and in pursuit of the truth.

Earlier Kṛṣṇa told Arjuna that he was the beginning, middle, and end of the created beings. Here he says he is the same for the insentient.

The word vādah refers to debate in which both parties are concerned not with merely asserting their opinion, but rather with reaching the proper conclusion.
akṣarānām a-kāro ’smi dvandvah sāmāsikasya ca/
    aham evāksayah kālo dhātāhām viṣvato-mukhah//

akṣarānām—of letters; a-kāraḥ—the letter a; asmi—I am; dvandvah—the dual; sāmāsikasya—of compound words; ca—and; aham—I; eva—certainly; aksayah—endless; kālaḥ—time; dhātā—the dispenser; aham—I; viṣvataḥ-mukhah—facing all directions (Brahmā).

Of letters I am the letter a, and of compound words I am the dual. I alone am endless time and the universal dispenser facing in all directions.

According to śruti, the sound a is said to pervade all speech (Ai. Ā. 2.3.7.13). It is the first letter in the Sanskrit alphabet, a-kāra, and inherent in every consonant of the Sanskrit alphabet. Dvandva is the compound in which the meaning of both words compounded are equally dominant. An example of the dvandva compound is “Rādhā-Kṛṣṇa.” In all other Sanskrit compounds either the first word predominates (avyayībhāva), the second (tatpurusa), or some other word than those in the compound itself (bahuvrīhi).

In this verse eternal time is referred to as opposed to the form of time mentioned in verse 30 that causes decay.

Text 34

mrtyuh sarva-haraś cāham udbhavaś ca bhavisyatām/
    kīrtih śrīr vāk ca nārinām smṛtir medhā dhrātih kśamā//

mrtyuh—death; sarva-harah—destroyer of all; ca—and; aham—I; udbhavaḥ—source; ca—and; bhavisyatām—of future manifestations; kīrtih—fame; śrīḥ—prosperity; vāk—speech; ca—and; nārinām—of women; smṛtih—memory; medhā—intelligence; dhrātih—forfitude; kśamā—forbearance.

I am death, destroyer of all; I am the source of all things yet to be. Of women I am fame, prosperity, speech, memory, intelligence, fortitude, and forbearance.

Fame, prosperity, speech, memory, intelligence, fortitude, and forbearance are considered the seven wives of dharma. As qualities they are very desirable and usually best expressed by women. Speech (vāk) is also identified
with the Sanskrit language, which is said to be capable of expressing all ideas.

**Text 35**

brhat-sāma tathā sāmnām gāyatrī chandasām aham/
māsanām mārga-sīrso 'ham ītunām kusumākarah/

brhat-sāma—the Brhat-sāma; tathā—also; sāmnām—of the Sāma Veda hymns; gāyatrī—the Gāyatrī; chandasām—of meters; aham—I; māsanām—of months; mārga-sīrṣa—Mārga-sīrṣa; aham—I; ītunām—of seasons; kusumākarah—flower-bearing (spring).

**Of the Vedic hymns I am Brhat-sāma; of meters, Gāyatrī; of months, Mārga-sīrṣa; of seasons, flower-bearing spring.**

The Brhat-sāma is that part of the Sāma Veda that originates in the Rg Veda mantra beginning with tvāmīddhi havāmahe (Rg 6.46.1).

Gāyatrī is the prototype of all Vedic mantras. Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa says, “Of all the metrically bound Vedic mantras, I am the Gāyatrī, which is the best of all due to being the initiation into second birth of the brāhmaṇas.” According to the Upaniṣads, Gāyatrī is identified with Brahman, and according to Gauḍīya Vedānta with the service of Rādhā.

Mārga-sīrṣa (November/December) is a harvest month for paddy. It follows Karttika, the month representing Rādhā.

**Text 36**

dyūtaṁ chalayatāṁ asmi tejas tejasvināṁ aham/
jayo 'smi vyavasāyō 'smi sattvavatām aham/

dyūtaṁ—gambling; chalayatāṁ—of cheaters; asmi—I am; tejah—influence; tejasvināṁ—of the influential; aham—I; jayō—victory; asmi—I am; vyavasāyō—effort; asmi—I; sattvavatām—goodness; sattva-vatām—of the good; aham—I.
Of cheaters I am gambling, and influence among the influential. I am victory, effort, and the goodness of the good.

Text 37

व्रजिनां वायुदेवोर्द्धाम पाण्डवानां धनाङ्गः।
पुन्नीनामण्ये व्यसम: कवीलामुखेन कवि॥३७॥

व्रजिनाम् वासुदेवो 'स्मि पाण्डवानाम् धनाङ्गजयायह।
muninām āpy aham vyāsah kavinām uśanā kavih//

व्रजिनाम्—of Vṛṣṇis; vāsudevah—Vāsudeva; asmi—I am; pāṇḍavānām—of the Pāṇḍavas; dhanaṅjayaḥ—Arjuna; munīnām—of the sages; api—also; aham—I; vyāsah—Vyāsa; kavinām—of poets; uśanā—Uśanā; kavih—the poet.

Of Vṛṣṇis I am Vāsudeva; of the Pāṇḍavas, Dhanāṅjaya (Arjuna); of the wise I am Vyāsa; of poets, Uśanā.

Jīva Goswāmī considers Vāsudeva to refer to Kṛṣṇa’s first expansion, Balarāma.

Text 38

दांडो दमयताम अस्मि नितिर अस्मि जिगिसताम।
maunam caivāsī guhyānām jñānam jñānavatām aham//

dandho damayatām asmi nitir asmi jīgaṣatām/
maunam caivāsī guhyānām jñānam jñānavatām aham//

dandah—rod; damayatām—of punishers; asmi—I am; nitiḥ—guidance; asmi—I am; jīgaṣatām—of those who seek victory; maunam—silence; ca—and; eva—also; asmi—I am; guhyānām—of secret things; jñānam—wisdom; jñāna-vatām—of the wise; aham—I.

Of punishers I am the rod of chastisement; of victors I am the guidance they follow. Of secret things I am silence, and of the wise I am wisdom.

Text 39

यवापिसर्वभूतानां बीजं तदहमर्जुन।
न नद्यन्त विना यस्यान्मयो भृतं चराचरम॥३९॥

यवापिसर्वभूतानां बीजं तदहमर्जुन।
न नद्यन्त विना यस्यान्मयो भृतं चराचरम॥३९॥
yac cāpi sarva-bhūtānāṁ bijāṁ tad aham arjuna/
na tad asti vinā yat syān mayā bhūtāṁ cara-caram//

Furthermore, O Arjuna, I am the seed of all existence. There is nothing moving or unmoving that can exist without me.

Text 40

nānto ’sti mama divyānāṁ vibhūtināṁ parantapa/
esa tūdesataḥ prokto vibhūteḥ vistaraḥ mayā\n
O conqueror of enemies, there is no end to my divine manifestation. What I have told you is merely an indication of the extent of my opulence.

Text 41

yad yad vibhūtimat sattvam śrīmad ūrjitam eva vā/
tat tad evāvagacca tvam mama tejo-'ṁśa-sambhavam//

Know that in all cases whatever in existence is powerful, glorious, and beautiful issues from but a spark of my splendor.
Text 42

अथ वा बहुनैतन किं ज्ञातेन तवार्जुन ।
विस्ताब्याहितं कृस्ममेकक्षोऽस्त्रित्वोऽजगत् ॥४२॥

atha vā bahumaitena kim jñātena tavārjuna/
viṣṭabhyaḥam idam kṛtsnam ekāṁśena sthito jagat/

atha vā—or; bahunā—with extensive; etena—with this; kim—what; jñātena—with knowledge; tava—your; arjuna—O Arjuna; viṣṭabhya—sustaining; aham—I; idam—this; kṛtsnam—entire; eka—one; āṁśena—by a portion; sthitah—constantly; jagat—universe.

But what need is there for all this extensive knowledge, Arjuna? I sustain this entire universe by a mere portion of myself!

Kṛṣṇa concludes this section by referring back to its beginning in verse 20. There Kṛṣṇa began describing his divine manifestations by mentioning the Paramātmā. Here in verses 41 and 42 he describes the Paramātmā as a fraction (aṁśa), or plenary portion, of himself, by which the entire material manifestation is pervaded. Thus Kṛṣṇa has reiterated that he is the source of everything, including the Paramātmā, who is but a spark of his splendor. From this verse it should be clear that Kṛṣṇa is not an incarnation of the Paramātmā in the form of Mahā-Viśnū.

At the close of this chapter, Arjuna is overwhelmed at the thought of his friend’s opulence—the fact that Kṛṣṇa is the source of Viśnū, who is his mere plenary portion. This awe inspires the next chapter.
Chapter Eleven

विश्वरूपदर्शन्योगः:
‘Viṣṇa-Rūpa-Darśana-yoga’

YOGA OF THEOPHANY

Text 1

अर्जुन उवाच

मदनुग्रहय परम गुहयात्मसांजितम।
यत्वयोऽवयवन मोहोऽध्यं विगन्तो मम॥१॥

arjuna uvāca
mad-anugrahāya paramāṁ guhyam adhyātma-saṁjñitam/
yat tvayoktaṁ vacas tena moho 'yaṁ vigato mama//

arjunah uvāca—Arjuna said; mat-anugrahāya—out of fondness for me; paramam—supreme; guhyam—secret; adhyātma—Supreme Self; saṁjñitam—known as; yat—what; tvayā—by you; uktam—spoken; vacaḥ—words; tena—by that; mohah—illusion; ayam—this; vigataḥ—is gone; mama—my.

Arjuna said: Out of fondness for me you have spoken about your secret, supreme nature. Thus my delusion is gone.

As this chapter opens, Arjuna is overwhelmed: on the one hand his heart has been melted by Kṛṣṇa’s affection (anugrahāya); on the other he is awe-struck by the fact that Kṛṣṇa, his dear friend, is the source of the universal God (Paramātmā). Kṛṣṇa’s fondness for Arjuna as a devotee and friend caused him to reveal confidential, spiritual knowledge about himself, and Arjuna’s awareness of this honor causes him to tremble and this affects his speech. Arjuna’s trembling is demonstrated by the metrical irregularity in the first line of this verse. The extra syllable that appears there would normally be considered a blemish, but because this irregularity serves to illustrate Arjuna’s emotional state, it is in fact an ornament.

The nature of Arjuna’s love for Kṛṣṇa is such that the opulence of Kṛṣṇa’s Godhood can sometimes overshadow Arjuna’s emotion of friendship. This
begins to happen in this verse and fully manifests later in the chapter. The love of Vraja never suffers when a display of Kṛṣṇa’s opulence appears. When Kṛṣṇa lifted Vraja’s Mount Govardhana to protect his devotees from Indra’s torrential rains, the young cowherds lifted their sticks to help him. In spite of Kṛṣṇa’s extraordinary display of majesty, they never lost sight of him as their friend, and thus they tried to help him. The nature of the cowherds’ love for Kṛṣṇa and that of the gopīs of Vraja is so intensely intimate that it can never be covered by knowledge of the fact that Kṛṣṇa is God. Arjuna’s love on the other hand is mixed with a sense of Kṛṣṇa’s Godhood. Thus as we shall see, when Kṛṣṇa manifests his opulence further, Arjuna questions the appropriateness of his intimate friendly behavior with Kṛṣṇa.¹

When Arjuna says that his delusion is now gone (moho ’yam vigato mama), he refers to his delusion regarding both the nature of the self (tvam) and the nature of God (tat). With regard to the self, he had been thinking earlier in terms of bodily egoic concerns. Now he understands that he is the soul within the body. Significantly, his understanding of this is voiced after Kṛṣṇa has revealed knowledge of his Godhood. The implication is that self-realization is most effectively accomplished in the context of pursuing God-realization and that upon realization of the individual soul, one continues to be interested in God himself. This is the path of devotion, as opposed to niskāma-karma-yoga or jñāna-yoga aimed merely at self-realization.

Regarding Arjuna’s delusion about God, he had been thinking of Kṛṣṇa as his friend. While this kind of spiritual delusion is ultimately desirable, owing to Kṛṣṇa’s speech about his opulence it has now receded to the back of Arjuna’s mind. At this point in Śrī Gītā, no reader should be in confusion about the Godhood of Arjuna’s chariot driver. As mentioned in the previous chapter, knowledge of Kṛṣṇa’s Godhood is both initially necessary for inspiring a life of devotion to him and unnecessary, if not bothersome, to those exalted souls who develop intimate spiritual love for him. In chapter 11 Arjuna demonstrates this devotional psychology by first continuing to ask about Kṛṣṇa’s extraordinary opulence, only to be bothered by it when it fully manifests later in the chapter.

Text 2

भवाययः हि भूतानां भुवनम् विस्तत्राणो मया।
तत: कमल्यपताश्च महान्यमपि चाल्ययमृ॥२॥

¹ See Bg. 11.41.
bhavapyayau hi bhutam shruta vistaraso maya/

tvattah kamala-patraka mahaemyam api caavyayam/

bhava-apyayau—origin and dissolution; hi—indeed; bhutam—of beings; 
shruta—have been heard; vistarasha—in detail; maya—by me; tvatta—from 
you; kamala-patra-aksa—O you whose eyes resemble the petals of the lotus; 
mahaemyam—glory; api—also; ca—and; avyayam—imperishable.

I have heard in detail from you, whose eyes resemble the petals of the 
lotus, about the origin and dissolution of beings, as well as of your im-
perishable glory.

Arjuna says that he has heard in detail (vistarasha), for Krsna has repeat-
edly described himself as the origin and dissolution of all beings in chapters 
7 through 10 and stated his eternal glories again and again. The name 
Kamala-patraka (lotus-eyed one) reveals Arjuna’s affection for Krsna, who 
he lovingly describes as one whose eyes are elongated like the petals of the 
lotus and reddish at their ends, thus appearing very charming to the mind.

Text 3

Evam etad yathatha tvam atmaman paramesvara/

drastum icchami te rupam aiśvaram puruṣottama/

evam—thus; etat—this; yathaa—as; atha—you say; tvam—you; atmam—
yourself; parama-isvara—O Supreme Lord; drastum—to see; ichami—I wish; 
ete—your; rupam—form; aiśvaram—opulent; puruṣa-uttama—O Supreme 
Person.

O Supreme Lord, as you speak of yourself so you are. O Supreme Person!

I wish to see the form of your opulence.

Arjuna wants Krsna to know that he himself has absolutely no doubt about 
Krsna’s position at this point. Thus he addresses him as Paramesvara indi-
cating Krsna’s omniscience as if to say, “As you who are omniscient surely 
know, I personally have no doubt about what you have said about yourself.” 
Arjuna speaks in this way to preface his request in this verse.
Arjuna does not doubt Kṛṣṇa and therefore insist on seeing so that he might believe. He believes and reasons that he is thereby qualified to see. Indeed, by addressing Kṛṣṇa as Paramesvara, Arjuna further indicates that Kṛṣṇa himself residing within Arjuna’s heart has awakened the desire to see Kṛṣṇa’s godly form (rūpam aīśvaram); otherwise, Arjuna was satisfied seeing Kṛṣṇa as līlā-puruṣottama.

That which Arjuna desires to see as prompted from within by Kṛṣṇa himself is a form that is rarely seen in this world. Thus even while Arjuna desires to see it, he doubts the possibility of doing so, not due to any inability on the part of Kṛṣṇa, but out of his own humility and assumed lack of qualification. Baladeva Vidyabhūṣāna says that Arjuna, having heard Kṛṣṇa say at the end of the previous chapter that by a mere portion of himself he holds up the universe, wishes to see that form.

**Text 4**

\[ manyase yadi tac chakyaṁ mayā draṣṭum iti prabho/ \\
\quad yogesvara tato me tvam darṣayātmānam avyayam// \\
\]

*manyase*—you think; *yadi*—if; *tat*—that; *sakyam*—possible; *mayā*—by me; *draṣṭum*—to see; *iti*—thus; *prabho*—O Lord; *yoga-īśvara*—O master of mystics; *tataḥ*—then; *me*—to me; *tvam*—you; *darṣaya*—show; *ātmānam*—your self; *avyayam*—imperishable.

**O Lord, if you think it is possible for me to behold this, O master of mystics, then show me your imperishable Self.**

Arjuna finishes his request in this verse, indicating that although what he has requested may be impossible, it will be possible because Kṛṣṇa is the supreme mystic. Indeed, Kṛṣṇa next blesses Arjuna with the capacity to see his universal form (*viśva-rūpa*).
The Lord of Śri said: O Pārtha, behold my variegated, exceedingly wonderful, multicolored, and multishaped forms in their hundreds and thousands.

Kṛṣṇa tells Arjuna to behold (paśya) his godly form in this and the next three verses as if to bless him with the ability to see it. At the same time, paśya, being in the imperative mood, cautions Arjuna to be heedful of what Kṛṣṇa will reveal, for it is exceedingly wonderful (divyāni). Although the form he will reveal is one, it is full of variety and thus spoken of in the plural. It is of different colors (varṇa) and shapes (ākṛtīni) relative to the arrangement of limbs. Having mentioned the form that he will reveal, Kṛṣṇa next describes it in brief in two verses to help Arjuna understand what he will see.

Behold the Ādityas, Vasus, Rudras, the two Āsvins, as well as the Maruts, and others. Behold, O Bhārata, many wonderful things never before seen!

The Ādityas, Vasus, Rudras, Āsvins, and Maruts are various types of heavenly beings mentioned in the previous chapter, all of whom will be visible...
in the form Kṛṣṇa intends to reveal. The heavenly beings named here clarify what Kṛṣṇa meant when he spoke of hundreds of thousands of forms in the previous verse. By the word adṛṣṭa-pūrṇa (never seen before) Kṛṣṇa seeks to clarify “exceedingly wonderful” (divyāṇi) used in the previous verse. The form he will reveal has never been seen previously by any human being. The entire universe is contained within it.

**Text 7**

इहाकथं जगन्नृत्तं पश्याता सच्चारम्।
मम देहे गुडाकेश यशान्यङ्गमुनिच्छति ||

**Text 8**

न तु मां सक्मे दृश्यमनेव स्वच्छुपा।
दिव्यम् ददामि ते चक्षुḥ पाया ते योगम आिष्वरम् ||

**However, you are not capable of seeing me in this form with your own eyes. I grant you a divine vision: behold my mystic opulence!**

Arjuna was not capable of seeing Kṛṣṇa’s viśva-rūpa, thus Kṛṣṇa granted him divine eyes. This is curious, for Arjuna was already seeing the divine
personal form of Kṛṣṇa, a form that, as we shall see at the conclusion of this chapter, is more difficult to see than Kṛṣṇa’s viṣṇa-rūpa. Although the viṣṇa-rūpa was never seen before in human society, it is possible for the gods to see it. Thus Kṛṣṇa granted Arjuna celestial, godly (divyam) vision. However, Arjuna’s desire to see the viṣṇa-rūpa did not change his mind’s eye, which remained focused on the Lord of his heart, Pārthasārathi Kṛṣṇa.

Bracing himself as he related this event to Dhritarāṣṭra, Sañjaya next describes Kṛṣṇa’s viṣṇa-rūpa to the king, who was anxious to know what Arjuna saw. Previous to Kṛṣṇa’s speaking the Gīta, Dhritarāṣṭra had seen a partial manifestation of this form himself, and even this partial manifestation of the viṣṇa-rūpa had overwhelmed him.

Text 9

Sañjaya said: Having spoken in this way, O King, the master of mysticism, Hari, revealed his supremely opulent form to the son of Pṛthā.

Texts 10–11

Aneka-vaktra-nayanam anekādbhuta-darśanam/
aneka-divyābharaṇam divyānekoṭi-yātiruddham//
divyā-mālyāmbara-dharam divya-gandhānulepanam/
sarvāścaryā-mayaṁ devam anantaṁ viṣvato-mukham//
In this form were many faces and eyes, many wonderful visions, divine ornaments, and uplifted divine weapons. It wore divine garlands and garments, was anointed with divine scents, abounded in many wonders; it was resplendent, limitless, and its faces were turned in every direction.

If a thousand suns were to rise in the sky all at once, such splendor might resemble the splendor of that exalted being.

If a thousand suns were to rise in the sky all at once, such splendor might resemble the splendor of that exalted being.
Then and there the son of Pāṇḍu beheld the entire universal diversity in one place within the body of the God of gods.

Text 14

ततः स विस्मयाविश्वा हर्षरोमा धनान्धजयाह/ 
प्राणम्य शिरसा देवम् कृतान्यजलिह अभासता/।

tataḥ—then; saḥ—he; vismayāviśṭaḥ—amazed; hṛṣṭa-romā—his hairs standing on end; dhanañjayaḥ—Dhanañjaya; pranamya—offering obeisances; śirasā—with the head; devam—to the Lord; kṛta-aṇjaliḥ—with folded palms; abhāsata—he said.

Then, filled with wonder, his hairs standing on end, bowing his head to the Lord with his palms folded, Dhanañjaya said:

Here Arjuna, who is known as Dhanañjaya because of his fire-like brilliance, is amazed (vismayāviśṭaḥ). This amazement, which is both the basis of aesthetic rapture and the dominant emotion (sthāyī-bhāva) in this verse, is nourished by the other ingredients of rasa. The cause and object of the loving emotion (viśayālambana-vibhāva) is Kṛṣṇa. The stimulus (uddīpana) is Kṛṣṇa manifesting his viśva-rūpa. The external expressions of rasa (anubhāvas) are Arjuna’s bowed head and folded hands, while his horripilation is his ecstatic transformation (sāttvika-bhāva). Arjuna’s amazement is augmented by implied auxiliary emotions (sañcārī-bhāvas) of excitement, inertness, delight, and so on. Arjuna himself is the vessel of love (aśrayālambana-vibhāva). Here his sakhyā-bhāva has receded into the background.

Text 15

अर्जुन उपाच 
पत्र्यामिदेशास्तव देव देह 
सवैस्तथा भूतविषयस्मान्।

2. Madhusūdana Sarasvatī says that besides the common meaning of Dhanañjaya as winner of wealth, the word also means fire. He does not explain how this is so. However, according to Monier Williams it is used in this way in the Katha Upaniṣad.

3. Sāhitya-darpāna (2.33) explains that all expressions of aesthetic rapture can be reduced to “amazement.”
arjuna uvāca
paśyāmi devāṁs tava deva dehe
   sarvāṁs tathā bhūta-viśeṣa-saṅghāṇ/
brahmāṇam iṣāṁ kamalāsana-stham
   rṣīṁs ca sarvān uragāṁs ca divyān//

arjunah uvāca—Arjuna said; paśyāmi—I see; devān—the gods; tava—your; dehe—in the body; sarvān—all; tathā—also; bhūta-viśeṣa-saṅghāṇ—varieties of beings assembled; brahmāṇam—Brahmā; iṣāṁ—lord; kamala-āsana-stham—on a lotus seat; rṣīṁ—great sages; ca—and; sarvān—all; uragān—serpents; ca—also; divyān—divine.

Arjuna said: O God, I see in your body the gods and all varieties of beings assembled—Brahmā on a lotus seat and all the sages and divine serpents.

Text 16

aneka-bāhūdara-vaktra-netram
   paśyāmi tvāṁ sarvato ’nanta-rūpam/
naṁtaṁ na madhyam na punas tavādīm
   paśyāmi viśveśvara viśva-rūpa//

aneka—many; bāhu—arm; udara—belly; vaktra—mouth; netram—eye; paśyāmi—I see; tvāṁ—you; sarvataḥ—everywhere; ananta-rūpam—infinite form; na antam—no end; na madhyam—no middle; na punah—nor again; tava—your; ādim—beginning; paśyāmi—I see; viśva-īṣvara—O Lord of the universe; viśva-rūpa—cosmic form.

I see your limitless form, with innumerable arms, bellies, mouths, and eyes in every direction. O Lord of the Universe, O universal form! I see no end and no middle to this form, nor can I find again its beginning.
Here the words na punas tavādīm indicate that Arjuna was able to see the beginning, but now, in the maelstrom of ever-multiplying forms, he can no longer find the beginning of this form, what to speak of the middle or end.

**Text 17**

किरितिनां गदितं चक्रिण च
tevatāpi sarvato diptimantam।
परमेष्टेः त्वा दुर्निरीक्ष्य समन्ताद
tīrthānārka-diptyam aprameyam॥ १७॥

*kirītinaṁ gadīṁ cakrīnaṁ ca*
tevatāpi sarvato diptimantam/
*paśyāmi tvām durnirikṣyam samantād*
diptānalārka-dyutim aprameyam//

*kirītinaṁ—crowned; gadīṁ—with a club; cakrīnaṁ—with a discus; ca—and; tejāḥ—mass of brilliance; sarvataḥ—all around; dipti—glowing; paśyāmi—I see; tvāṁ—you; durnirikṣyam—difficult to behold; samantāt—everywhere; diptānalārka—blazing fire; arka—sun; dyutim—radiance; aprameyam—immeasurable.*

**Though you are impossible to see, I behold you crowned, armed with a club and bearing a discus, a mass of brilliance glowing all around you on all sides like the immeasurable radiance of blazing fire and the sun.**

**Text 18**

त्वमक्षरं परं विदितव्यम
tvam akṣaram paramam veditavyam
त्वम आयस्यa विषवसयa परं nidlānam/
tvam asya viśvasya param nīḍānam/
त्वम अवययम aśāvatā-dharma-goptā
tvam avyayaḥ sāśvata-dharma-goptā
सनातनस्य पुरुषो मलो में
tvam sanātanaṁ tvām puruṣo mato me//

*tvam—you; akṣaram—unchanging; paramam—supreme; veditavyam—to be known; tvam—you; asya—of this; viśvasya—of everything; param—supreme; nīḍānam—resting place; tvam—you; avyayaḥ—imperishable;*
sāsvata-dharma-gopta—defender of eternal dharma; sanātanah—eternal; tvam—you; puruṣah—person; mataḥ me—this is my opinion.

You are the unchanging, the supreme object of knowledge, the ultimate resting place of all, the imperishable defender of eternal dharma, known to me as the eternal person.

Text 19

अनादिमध्यानंतरविषयं
मनन्तवाहुः संविसंयन्ततम ||
पश्चायम् न्यां दीर्घादुराश्रवक्तः
ङ्क्लेत्रसा विश्रुभिदं तपन्तम् ||19||

anādi-madhyāntam ananta-vīryam
ananta-bāhum śasi-sūrya-netram/
pasyāmi tvām dipta-hūtāsa-vaktram
sva-tejasā viśvam idam tapantam///

anādi—without beginning; madhya—middle; antam—end; ananta—infinite; vīryam—power; ananta—innumerable; bāhum—arm; śasi—moon; sūrya—sun; netram—eye; pasyāmi—I see; tvām—you; dipta—blazing; hutāsa-vaktram—with fire in your mouth; sva-tejasā—with your brilliance; viśvam—universe; idam—this; tapantam—scorching.

I behold you without beginning, middle, or end, with infinite power, with innumerable arms, with the sun and moon as your eyes, with a mouth like blazing fire, scorching the universe with its brilliance.

Text 20

द्यावापृथिध्योरितमन्यं हि
व्याप्तं तत्बेक्षनं दिशक्ष सन्तवः ||
वृद्धानुतं रूपमुरं तत्वें
लोकश्च व्यव्यधिः महामन् ||20||

dyāv ā-prthivyōr idam antaram hi
vyāptam tvayaikena diśas ca sarvāh/
drṣtvādbhutam rūpam ugram tavēdam
loka-trayam pravyathitaṁ mahātman///
You pervade the space between heaven and earth in every direction. O noble one, the three worlds tremble when they see your awesome and frightening form.

Here Arjuna hints that he has seen enough by addressing Kṛṣṇa as mahā-ātman and speaking of the fear of others, including his own fear.

Text 21

अमी हि व्या सुरसाध्वा विशिष्टि
केचिद्वितीयं प्राज्ञ्यते गुणिति।
स्वस्तीयुक्ता महाभिषेकात्मकः
स्वस्तिति व्या स्वाति: पुष्कलाभि:॥२१॥

ami hi tvām sura-saṅghā viṣānti
kecid bhītāḥ prāṇjalya gṛṇaṁ/ti
svastity uktvā maharṣi-saṅghaṁ
stuvanti tvām stutibhiḥ puṣkalabhīḥ//

ami—those; hi—certainly; tvām—you; sura-saṅghā—hosts of gods; viṣānti—they enter; kecit—some; bhītāḥ—fear stricken; prāṇjalyaḥ—with folded palms; gṛṇaṁ—they praise; svastity—auspiciousness; iti—thus; uktvā—saying; mahā-rṣi—great sage; saṅghaṁ—hosts of perfect beings; stuvanti—they praise; tvām—you; stutibhiḥ—with hymns; puṣkalabhīḥ—abundant.

The host of gods enter into you. Fear stricken, some praise you with folded palms, while groups of perfected ṛṣis praise you with meaningful hymns saying, “May all auspiciousness prevail throughout the universe.”

Text 22

मन्त्रादन्यं वसौ ये च साध्या
विश्रावः भ्रुण्यो मन्त्रश्चोपपाठः।
गन्धर्ववशयाः सुरसिद्धिसम्मा
वीक्षन्ते व्या वियम्भाः सर्वं॥२२॥

mantradanyā vasau yē ca saḍhya
viśravaḥ bhṛṇyaṁ mantras ca upapāthah
ghanḍarvaśayaḥ surasiddhāṁ
viśkhaṇte āṁ viyambhāṁ sarvam॥२२॥
The Rudras, Ādityas, Vasus, Sādhyas, Viṣvedevas, Aśvins, Maruts, ancestors, Gandharvas, Yakṣas, demons, and Siddhas see you and are all struck with wonder.

Having seen your great form, which has many mouths, eyes, arms, thighs, feet, and bellies, and which bears many teeth, O mighty-armed, the world trembles, as do I.

Having tasted the sacred aesthetic rapture of astonishment, Arjuna begins to experience the divine rasa of fear (bhayānaka).
O Viṣṇu! Merely by seeing you who are blazing and touching the sky, multicolored, mouth gaping, with enormous fiery eyes, I tremble at the core of my being. I find neither courage nor peace.

Having seen your mouths made frightening by many teeth and glowing like the fire of universal destruction, I have lost my sense of
direction and find no comfort. Be merciful, O God of gods, abode of the universe.

Texts 26–27

Ami ca tvām dhṛtarāṣṭrasya putrāḥ
sarve sahaivāvani-pāla-sanghaiḥ/
bhīṣmo dronah sūta-putras tathāsau
sahāsmadiyaīr api yodha-mukhyaiḥ/
vaktrāṇi te tvaramāṇā visānti
damśṭra-kaṭālāṇi bhayānakaṁi/
kecid vilagnā daśanāntaṁresu
sandṛśyante cūrṇitaṁ uuttamāṅgaiṁ/

ambi—those; ca—also; tvām—you; dhṛtarāṣṭrasya—of Dhṛtarāṣṭra; putrāḥ—the sons; sarve—all; saha—with; eva—indeed; avani-pāla—earthly king; sanghaiḥ—with the multitude; bhīṣmaḥ—Bhīṣma; dronah—Droṇaḥ; sūta-putrah—Karna; tathā—also; asau—that; saha—with; asmadiyaḥ—with our; api—also; yodha-mukhyaiḥ—with chief warriors; vaktrāṇi—mouths; te—your; tvaramāṇāḥ—rapidly; visānti—they enter; damśṭra-kaṭālāṇi—gaping with teeth; bhayānakaṁi—fearful; kecit—some; vilagnāḥ—clinging; daśana-antaṁresu—between the teeth; sandṛśyante—they are seen; cūrṇitaṁ—with crushed; uttama-āṅgaiḥ—with heads.

All the sons of Dhṛtarāṣṭra, along with the multitude of earthly kings such as Bhīṣma, Drona, and Karna, the son of a chariot driver, together with the principal warriors on our side, are rushing headlong into your fearfully gaping mouths with their many teeth. Some of them appear to have had their heads crushed and are now caught between those teeth.
At the beginning of this chapter (Bg. 11.7), Kṛṣṇa promised Arjuna that he would also show him anything else he wanted to see (yac cānyad draṣṭum icchasi). He now fulfills this promise by revealing to him what he desired to know—the outcome of the battle.

Text 28

yathā nadiṁnā bhaṁbhuṇeṇa
samudreṇaṁvaṁbhur duṛviṁn ।

Tathā tvaṁ nālaṁkārīa
viśaṁnī vaṁnaṇyaṁvaṁvijnaṁnī ॥२८॥

yathā—as; nadiṁnā—of rivers; bhaṁvah—many; ambu-vegāḥ—currents; samudram—ocean; eva—certainly; abhimukhāḥ—toward; dravantī—they flow; tathā—similarly; tava—your; amī—these; nara-loka-virāḥ—worldly heroes; viśanti—they enter; vakrāṇī—mouths; abhivijvalanti—flaming.

As rivers’ currents rush toward the sea, so do these worldly heroes enter your flaming mouths.

Text 29

yathā pradīptam jvalanam pataṅgā
viśanti nāṣāya samṛddha-vegāḥ/
tathāiva nāṣāya viśanti lokās

Tavāpi vakrāṇī samṛddha-vegāḥ//

yathā—as; pradīptam—blazing; jvalanam—fire; pataṅgāḥ—moths; viśanti—they enter; nāṣāya—for destruction; samṛddha-vegāḥ—with increasing speed; tathā eva—similarly; nāṣāya—for destruction; viśanti—they enter; lokāḥ—worlds; tava—your; api—also; vakrāṇī—mouths; samṛddha-vegāḥ—swiftly.
All the worlds rush into your mouths, just like moths swiftly entering a blazing fire to be destroyed.

Baladeva Vidyābhūṣāṇa explains that as rivers flow into the sea without their own volition, being carried there by external forces, so too were great souls like Bhīṣma and Droṇa to meet with their destruction in the battle. They were never inimical to Kṛṣṇa or the Pāṇḍavas, but found themselves on the side of the opposition by force of circumstance. On the other hand, moths enter the fire consciously, so this comparison applies to Duryodhana, who in spite of knowing that the Pāṇḍavas were protected by Kṛṣṇa and even that he was the Supreme Person, still made deliberate efforts to destroy the Pāṇḍavas and thereby challenge Kṛṣṇa.

Text 30

lelihyase grasamānaṁ samantāt
lokān samagrān vadanair jvaladbhiṁ/
tejobhir āpūrya jagat samagran
bhāsas tavogrāṁ pratapanti viṣṇo//

lelihyase—you lick; grasamānaṁ—devouring; samantāt—from all sides; lokān—people; samagrān—all; vadanaiṁ—with mouths; jvaladbhiṁ—with flaming; tejobhiṁ—with splendor; āpūrya—filling; jagat—universe; samagram—all; bhāsah—rays; tava—your; ugrāḥ—terrible; pratapanti—they scorch; viṣṇo—O Viṣṇu.

You lick your lips while devouring all creatures from all sides with your flaming mouths. O Viṣṇu, filling the entire universe with splendor, your terrible rays are scorching it.

Baladeva Vidyābhūṣāṇa says that “by saying ‘Viṣṇu’ Arjuna refers to the all-pervading nature of God, stressing that it is impossible for anyone to escape the Lord of time.”
Text 31

Tell me who you of such terrible form are. Homage to you, O best of gods, be merciful. I want to understand you, O primal one. Indeed, I cannot comprehend your actions.

In verse 20 Kṛṣṇa began to reveal his form of all-devouring time (kāla-rūpa, an aspect of his viśvarūpa), which brought fear to the heart of Arjuna. In response to Arjuna’s inquiry, Kṛṣṇa will explain this form in the next three verses.

Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa comments that Arjuna’s use of the word ugra (terrible) indicates Arjuna’s underlying request: he now wants Kṛṣṇa to withdraw this form.

Text 32

śrī-bhagavān uvāca
kālo ’smi loka-kṣaya-kṛt pravṛddho
lokān samāhartum iha pravṛttah/
ṛte 'pi tvāṁ na bhavisyanti sarve
ye 'vasthitāḥ pratyani kesu yodhāḥ/

śrī-bhagavān uvāca—the Lord of Śrī said; kālaḥ—time; asmi—I am;
loka—world; ksaya-kṛt—destroyer; pravṛddhaḥ—powerful; lokān—people;
samāhartum—to annihilate; iha—in this world; pravṛttah—come forth;
ṛte—without; api—even; tvāṁ—you; na—not; bhavisyanti—they will be;
sarve—all; ye—who; avasthitāḥ—arrayed; prati-anikesu—in the opposite
ranks; yodhāḥ—soldiers.

The Lord of Śrī said: I am time, powerful destroyer of the world, who
has come forth to annihilate everyone. Even without your taking part,
all those arrayed in the opposing ranks will be slain!

Text 33

तस्मात त्वम उत्तिष्ठा यशो लभस्वा
जित्वासु त्रृणं भुक्स्वा राज्यं समृद्धम्।
परेत्यं निहत्त च निमित्त-मात्रम् भवं साव्य-सैनिन्॥३३॥

tasmāt tvam uttiṣṭha yaśo labhasva
jītvā sattrūṇ bhūkṣva rājyaṁ sāmrāddham/
mayaivaite nihatāḥ pūrvam eva
nimitta-mātram bhava savya-sācin//

tasmāt—therefore; tvam—you; uttiṣṭha—rise up; yaśah—fame; labhasva—
gain; jītvā—conquering; sattrūṇ—enemies; bhūkṣva—enjoy; rājyaṁ—king-
dom; sāmrāddham—prosperous; mayā—by me; eva—certainly; ete—these;
nihatāḥ—killed; pūrvam eva—previously; nimitta-mātram—instrument;
bhava—be; savya-sācin—O Savyasācī.

Therefore rise up and become glorious. Defeat your enemies and enjoy a
prosperous kingdom. These opposing warriors have already been killed
by me and you will be but an instrument taking the credit, O Savyasācī.

Text 34

त्रोण च भीष्मं च जयद्रथं च
कर्षा तथान्यानपि योधवीरान्।
Dronam ca bhismam ca jayadratham ca
   karnam tathanyān api yodha-virān/
   mayā hatāṁs tvam jahi mā vyathiṣṭhā
   yudhyasva jetāi rane sapatnān//

dronam ca—also Drona; bhismam ca—also Bhīṣma; jayadratham ca—also Jayadratha; karnam—Karna; tathā—as well; anyān—others; api—certainly; yodha-virān—warriors; mayā—by me; hatāṁ—killed; tvam—you; jahi—kill; mā—not; vyathiṣṭhā—be afraid; yudhyasva—fight; jetā asi—you will conquer; rane—in battle; sapatnān—enemies.

_Drona, Bhīṣma, Jayadratha, as well as Karna and other heroic warriors, have already been killed by me. Do not be afraid! Fight! You shall conquer the enemy in battle._

Kṛṣṇa, in the form of time personified, tells Arjuna that no one escapes his will. Time reveals its ultimate proprietorship by devouring all, and those who appear to destroy are merely the instruments by which he achieves his ends. Here Kṛṣṇa informs Arjuna that he need not fear, for the outcome of the battle will be that all of the opposing warriors will be slain. Kṛṣṇa thus confirms Duryodhana’s words in chapter 1 (Bg. 1.9) when, unwittingly inspired by the goddess of learning, he predicted that all of his soldiers would lay down their lives for him.

The might of Drona, Bhīṣma, and Karna is indirectly underscored in this verse, as Kṛṣṇa answers the mental doubt of Arjuna regarding the possibility of their being slain, even in the face of time. Bhīṣma in particular had been blessed with the power of choosing the time at which he would die, and Jayadratha was once benedicted by Śiva with the power to diffuse the Pāṇḍavas. Thus Arjuna’s doubt is dispelled by the force of Kṛṣṇa’s proclamation imploring him to fight.

Although it is time, God’s hand, that takes the life of all, people identify with the apparent cause of death, God’s instrument. Thus Savyasācī Arjuna, the ambidextrous archer, will become famous in the eyes of common people for slaying great heroic warriors superior in prowess to himself. He will become famous among the learned and devoted for his willingness to be an instrument in God’s hands.
Krṣṇa has justified Arjuna’s fighting in many ways, but here for the first time he says that he should do so because he wants him to be his instrument. This implies that God has work to do in this world and that persons can be his instruments through which he executes it. If God has work to do in this world, then to that extent the world itself has value. However, we learned from chapter 4 (Bg. 4.7–8) that God’s primary purpose for being in the world is mitigating his devotees’ pangs of separation for him. Secondarily, in the course of tendering to the devoted, he vanquishes the ungodly. This is the work that Krṣṇa wants Arjuna to be instrumental in. He is not really concerned with Arjuna’s fighting for dharma’s sake and all that dharma ordinarily implies. He clarifies this in chapter 18 (Bg. 18.66).

Text 35

सन्जय उवाच
एतच्चुज्ज्वला वचन केशवस्य
कृतान्तिर्वेपमानं कीर्ति
नमस्कृतव भूय एवाह कृष्णं
सगदगद भीतभीतं प्रणामं ||35||

sañjaya uvāca
etac chrutvā vacanam keśavasya
kṛtānjaliṁ vepamānaṁ kirīti/
namaskṛtvā bhūya evāha krṣṇam
sa-gadgadāṁ bhīta-bhitāṁ pranamyā/

sañjayaḥ uvāca—Sañjaya said; etat—this; śrutvā—on hearing; vacanam—speech; keśavasya—of Keśava; kṛta-anjaliṁ—with folded palms; vepamānaṁ—trembling; kirīti—Arjuna; namaskṛtvā—offering homage; bhūyah—again; eva—thus; āha—said; kṛṣṇam—(to) Krṣṇa; sa-gadgadāṁ—in a faltering voice; bhīta-bhitāṁ—fearful; pranamyā—offering obeisances.

Sañjaya said: Upon hearing Keśava’s speech, Kirīti (Arjuna), trembling with folded palms, offered homage in fear, prostrated himself, and spoke to Krṣṇa in a faltering voice.

Arjuna, the great archer whose head was decorated with the valuable helmet of gold and jewels (Kirīti) given to him by Indra, bowed again and again to Krṣṇa, as ecstatic symptoms (sāttvika-bhāvas) such as tears, choking of the voice, and trembling decorated his body. When a person’s eyes become
tearful owing to fear and delight, his throat chokes slightly causing his voice to falter. This is called gadgada.

Text 36

अर्जुन उवाच
स्थाने ह्रशिकेषा तव प्रकीर्त्या
जगत प्रहस्यते अनुराज्यते का
रक्षामि भीतानि दिशो द्रवानि
सर्वे नमस्यानि का सिद्धस्वानः। ॥३६॥

Arjuna uvāca
sthāne hṛṣikeṣa tava prakīrtyā
jagat prahṛṣyaty anurajyate ca/
rakṣāmi bhītaṇi diśo dravanti
sarve namasyanti ca siddha-saṅghāḥ//

Arjuna said: O Hṛṣikeṣa, it is appropriate that the entire universe should be joyful on hearing you praised and thus become attracted to you. At the same time, the demoniac, terrified, flee in all directions and the host of perfected beings reverently bows down before you.

In this verse, Arjuna begins to regain his sense of friendship with Kṛṣṇa and thus speaks to him about the joy he experiences on hearing Kṛṣṇa’s glories. Here he remembers that the viśva-rūpa is a manifestation of Kṛṣṇa, who is his intimate friend sitting on his chariot. Arjuna reasons that, other than the demoniac, all people experience joy on hearing Kṛṣṇa’s glories, and that it is appropriate that the demoniac flee in his presence, as it is for the perfected souls to perpetually bow before him. Arjuna’s conclusion is derived from his direct experience, as he saw demons fleeing in the presence of Kṛṣṇa’s viśva-rūpa and gods offering obeisances.

In the next two verses, Arjuna states why it is appropriate to offer homage to Kṛṣṇa and then he proceeds to do so in verses 39 through 46.
And why should they not bow before you, O exalted one, who are even greater than Brahmā being the original creator? O infinite one, God of gods, you are the abode of the universe, the imperishable, the manifest and the unmanifest, and that which lies beyond both.

Arjuna addresses Kṛṣṇa as mahātma in this verse. Mahātma literally means “great soul.” Madhusūdana Saraswati says that Arjuna uses this word to indicate the greatness (mahān) of Kṛṣṇa’s heart (ātmā). This is foremost in Arjuna’s mind. Otherwise, the reason (kasmāt) that Kṛṣṇa is worthy of the praise of all siddhas is clear. He is even greater (gariyase) than Brahmā, who presides over the highest material planet inhabited by perfected souls. He is the original creator (ādikarte). He is the source of the creative elements that Brahmā employs in his act of creation, having derived the power to create from Kṛṣṇa. Kṛṣṇa is the God of gods (deva-iša) and the abode of the universe (jagannivāsa). He is aksaram, the infallible Brahman, and he is all that is manifest as well as all that is unmanifest, both existence and nonexistence (sat-asat) and that which lies beyond them.
You are the original God, the oldest person, the ultimate resting place of the entire universe. You are the knower and you are that which is to be known, the supreme abode. You of limitless form pervade the entire universe!

Feeling love for Kṛṣṇa amidst the awe-inspiring display of the viṣva-rūpa, Arjuna desires to offer something to Kṛṣṇa. However, realizing that Kṛṣṇa himself is everything, Arjuna offers only his obeisances again and again.

Text 39

vāyuṁ yamo 'gnir vārunah saśāṅkah
prajāpatīṁ tvam praptāṁhaṁ ca/
namo namas te 'stu sahasra-krtyah
punāḥ ca bhūyo 'pi namo namas te/

vāyuḥ—Vāyu; yamah—Yama; agnih—Agni; vārunah—Varuṇa; sāsa-aṅkah— the moon; prajāpatih—Lord of beings; tvam—you; praptāmaḥ—great-grandfather; ca—also; namah namah—salutations again and again; te—to you; astu—let there be; sahasra-krtyah—a thousand times; punah ca—and again; bhūyah—again; api—also; namah namah te—repeated homage to you.
You are Vāyu, Yama, Agni, Varuṇa, the moon, the Lord of beings, and the great-grandfather. Salutations to you thousands of times; again and again, homage to you.

The various gods mentioned in this verse represent air (Vāyu), death (Yama), fire (Agni), and water (Varuṇa). The Lord of beings (prajāpati) is Brahmā. The moon (ṛṣaṅkah) indicates the heavenly constellations. By his offering of repeated obeisances Arjuna demonstrates his humility. He feels unable to adequately glorify Kṛṣṇa, whose glory is unlimited.

Text 40

Obeisances to you from the front and from behind. Obeisances to you on all sides as well, O all in all. You are infinite might and limitless valor. As you pervade all, you are everything.

While some warriors such as Bhīma are powerful by virtue of their strength, others like Droṇa are powerful by dint of their valor and skill in fighting. Here Arjuna says that Kṛṣṇa is superior in both ways. Kṛṣṇa has unlimited strength (ananta-vīrya) and immeasurable valor (amita-vikrama).

Baladeva Vidyābhūṣāṇa cites this verse in his commentary on Vedānta-sūtra 1.1.30. This sūtra is part of a discussion regarding the sense in which the śruti proclaims identity between the individual soul (jīvātmā) and God. God is one with all souls and all things, yet this oneness is not an absolute
oneness. In this verse Arjuna says, sarvaṁ samāpnośi tato ’si sarvah: “As you pervade all, you are everything.” Thus while realizing that Kṛṣṇa is everything, Arjuna qualifies this understanding by stating that Kṛṣṇa is so in as much as he pervades everything. All the parts of one’s body are one’s body, but the body and its parts are also different. My hand is my body, but it is also my hand.

Texts 41–42

Forgive me for things I may have rashly said in ignorance of your majesty. Out of negligence or even affection, I may have thought of you as an
ordinary friend and addressed you, “O Kṛṣṇa, O Yādava, O comrade!” O Acyuta, O immeasurable one, I ask forgiveness of you for having treated you disrespectfully by joking with you while playing, resting, sitting, or eating together, either privately or in front of other companions.

As Arjuna remembers his friendly relationship with Kṛṣṇa, he reflects on it in light of the obvious Godhood of his friend. It is apparent from this verse that although the opulence of Godhead is the background of the sweet relationship his devotees have with him, should it come to the foreground, sweet intimacy is impaired. If Kṛṣṇa were not God, his relationship with others would not be particularly charming. The fact that he is God, yet acts otherwise in love, is the charm of the Absolute. For this charm to manifest, the opulence of the Absolute must be suppressed. In the face of the opulence of the Absolute, Arjuna, although remembering his intimate relationship with Kṛṣṇa, questions the appropriateness of it.

Baladeva Vidyābhūṣāṇa says that Arjuna’s address “O Kṛṣṇa” devoid of any honorific preface such as “Śrī” is irreverent. Ordinary people and the general class of devotees should take note of this. Addressing Kṛṣṇa “O Yādava!” as Arjuna often did also shows irreverence because on the one hand the Yādavas were minor kings, not emperors like the Kauravas or Pāṇḍavas, and furthermore, Kṛṣṇa was not even the king, but only a prince. Such an address implies superiority on the part of Arjuna, as does Arjuna’s calling Kṛṣṇa “friend,” as if Arjuna were in a position to benefit Kṛṣṇa. Viṣvanātha Cakravarti Ṭhākura says that the name Kṛṣṇa describes the Lord in terms of his being the son of Vasudeva, who was a minister and not a warrior like Arjuna’s father, either Pāṇḍu or Indra. Thus Arjuna laments that he has disrespected God (acyuta), the infallible and immeasurable (aprameyam). Arjuna’s addressing Kṛṣṇa in this verse as Acyuta also implies that even though Arjuna was disrespectful in his dealing with Kṛṣṇa, Kṛṣṇa remained unruffled, a testimony to his greatness and the compassion that Arjuna seeks to draw on in this verse.

However, Arjuna’s affectionate address in which Kṛṣṇa is referred to as a subordinate is hardly offensive. Indeed, his affectionate use of epithets and his intimate dealings, although not to be imitated, are more pleasing to Kṛṣṇa than Arjuna’s deferential prayers. Here we glimpse the exalted devotional status of Arjuna, who continues to glorify Kṛṣṇa in terms of his opulence.
Text 43

पितासि लोकस्य चराचरस्य
त्वमस्य पूज्यश्च गरियाऽनः।
न त्वमाः प्यायं धिक: कुऽस्यो
लोकस्य प्रभावः ॥ ४३ ॥

पिता lokasya carācarasya
tvam asya pūjyaḥ ca gurur gariyān/
na tvat-samo 'sty abhyadhikah kuto 'nyo
loka-traye 'py apratima-prabhāval//

You are the father of the world, of all things, moving and motionless. You are worshippable, the most venerable guru. There is no one like you in the three worlds. How could anyone be greater, O you of unrivaled power.

Text 44

तस्मात प्रणाम्य प्रणीद्याय कायम
प्रसादये नामहीनस्मैद्याम्।
पितेव पुजस्य सत्वन सद्यु:।
श्रियं प्रियायाहिस सदौ सोधुः ॥ ४४ ॥

tasmāt praṇāmya praṇidhāya kāyam
prasādaye tvām aham iśam idyām/
piteva putrasya sakheva sakhyuḥ
priyah priyāyārhasi deva sodhum//

tasmāt—therefore; praṇāmya—bowing down; praṇidhāya—prostrating; kāyam—body; prasādaye—I ask forgiveness; tvām—you; aham—I; iśam—Lord; idyam—worshippable; pitā iva—like a father; putrasya—of a son; sakhā iva—like a friend; sakhyuḥ—of a friend; priyah—a lover; priyāyah—to the beloved; arhasi—you should; deva—O God; sodhum—to be merciful.
I therefore prostrate myself on the ground before you in surrender, O Lord. O God, please be merciful to me and tolerate my offenses, just as a father tolerates his son, a friend his friend, and a lover his beloved.

Text 45–46

I am thrilled to have seen this form, which has never been seen before. Now, O God of gods, shelter of the universe, be merciful and show me your familiar form. I want to see you in that form adorned with a crown, armed with club, discus in hand. O thousand-armed one, O you of cosmic form, show me that four-armed form.
Kṛṣṇa appeared to Vasudeva and Devaki in a four-armed form. This four-armed form is an expansion of svayaṁ bhagavān Kṛṣṇa of Vraja. In the language of Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam (10.3.11) it is described as kṛṣṇāvatāra, an avatāra of Kṛṣṇa. This is significant, as it explains that the four-armed form of Kṛṣṇa is an expansion of his two-armed humanlike form. This four-armed form is an opulent form of Kṛṣṇa. Arjuna saw it within the viśva-rūpa. Here he desires to see it again, a godly yet beautiful form, and be relieved of the vision of the viśva-rūpa before seeing Kṛṣṇa’s beautiful two-armed form again. The theological implication of this sequence should be clear. From worship of the viśva-rūpa, it becomes possible to conceive of the four-armed Viṣṇu feature of Godhead in awe and reverence. Passing this stage, one can realize the two-armed Kṛṣṇa. Arjuna’s desire to see Kṛṣṇa’s four-armed form as he had heard of it from others and seen within the viśva-rūpa instructs us further about the opulence of Kṛṣṇa, the summum bonum of the Absolute.

Text 47

śrī-bhagavān uvāca
mayā prasannena tavārjunedaṁ
rūpam param darṣitam ātma-yogat/
tejo-mayam viśvam anantam ādyaṁ
yan me tvad anyena na drṣṭa-pūrvam//

śrī-bhagavān uvāca—the Lord of Śrī said; mayā—by me; prasannena—by being merciful; tava—of you; arjuna—O Arjuna; idam—this; rūpam—form; param—supreme; darṣitam—shown; ātma-yogat—by my spiritual power; tejāh-mayam—effulgent; viśvam—universal; anantam—unlimited; ādyaṁ—primal; yat—which; me—my; tvat anyena—besides you; na drṣṭa-pūrvam—not seen before.

The Lord of Śrī said: Out of my mercy I have manifested this supreme form by the influence of my own spiritual power. This primal form of mine is effulgent, universal, and unlimited. It has never been seen before by anyone other than you.
Krṣṇa says that he manifested the viṣva-rūpa by his own spiritual power (ātmamayogā). Here he refers to his primary energy by which he reveals or hides himself. Earlier in the Mahābhārata Krṣṇa revealed a partial manifestation of his viṣva-rūpa to Duryodhana that did not include his kāla-rūpa. Thus this particular form revealed to Arjuna had never been seen before by any human being. It was, however, visible to the gods because they are also devotees.

Text 48

न वेदायज्ञाध्यायनार्थ दानार्थ
नं च क्रियाभिन्न तपोभिस्त्री:।
एवंरूपः सक्यमहः नृसेनकः
द्रास्तुः न्यदन्येन कुम्भवीर ॥४८॥

na veda-yajñādhyayanair na dānair
da kriyābhira na tapobhir ugraiḥ/evam-rūpah sakyā aham nr-loke

drāṣṭum tvad anyena kuru-pravirā/}

na—not; veda-yajña—Vedic sacrifice; adhyayanaḥ—by Vedic study; na—not; dānaiḥ—by charity; na—not; ca—also; kriyābhīḥ—by ritualistic acts; na—not; tapobhiḥ—by austerities; ugraiḥ—by severe; evam-rūpah—in such form; sakyah—I can; aham—I; nr-loke—in the world of men; draṣṭum—to see (to be seen); tvat—than you; anyena—by another; kuru-pravirā—O best among the Kuru heroes.

Other than you, no one in human society can see me in this form, not through performing Vedic sacrifice, nor through studying the Vedas, charity, ritualistic acts, or severe austerities.

Arjuna was able to see this form of Krṣṇa because of Krṣṇa’s special grace. In fact, it is grace that makes it possible to see any of Krṣṇa’s forms (dīvyaṁ dadāmi te cakṣuh). Devotion is a separate goal from the achievement of mystical visions, but both mystical visions and devotion (or the restoration of one’s “natural state”) are both the result of grace. However, the experience of the mysterium tremendum is more of a disruption than a desired ideal to the devotee. The end of devotion is the deepening of devotion. The mystical experience of God’s omnipresence is a gift that serves that end. By the same token, the feeling of separation also serves that end. Indeed, all of God’s actions serve that end in one way or another.
Text 49

Be free from fear and the bewilderment that came upon you as a result of seeing this awesome form of mine. With joyful heart once again behold my human form.

Text 50

sañjaya uvāca

Sañjaya said; ity—thus; arjunam—Arjuna; vāsudevah—Kṛṣṇa; tathā—thus; uktvā—having spoken; svakam—own; rūpam—form; darśayāṁ āsa—he showed; bhūyah—again; āśvāsayaṁ āsa—he pacified; ca—and; bhītam—frightened; enam—him; bhūtvā—becoming; punah—again; saumya-vapur—gentle form; mahā-ātmā—the great one.
Sañjaya said: Having spoken thus to Arjuna, Vāsudeva Kṛṣṇa gave Arjuna darśana of his own four-armed form again. Then once again he of compassionate heart resumed his gentle, wonderful, two-armed, humanlike form, pacifying the frightened Arjuna.

In the Mahābhārata, it is mentioned that some persons saw Kṛṣṇa appear in a four-armed form on the battlefield of Kurukṣetra. However, because of Arjuna’s relationship with him as a friend (sakhya-rasa), Kṛṣṇa always appeared to him in a two-armed form. Friendship is exchanged between equals. Had Arjuna been accustomed to associating with Kṛṣṇa in his four-armed form, he would never have sat with him on the same bed, he would never have joked with him and addressed him, “O Yādava, O Kṛṣṇa, O Sakhā.” It was Kṛṣṇa in his two-armed form who showed Arjuna the viśvā-rūpa and this same two-armed Kṛṣṇa here showed Arjuna the four-armed form at his request. This verse states that after so doing, Kṛṣṇa resumed his saumya-vapu, a reference to his two-armed, humanlike form. Sañjaya does not say that Kṛṣṇa then manifested his two-armed form, because it is Kṛṣṇa in this form who has been revealing other aspects of himself in the viśva-rūpa and the catur-bhuja. In the second line of this verse Sañjaya says that Kṛṣṇa again (bhūyah) showed (darśayām āsa) Arjuna his own form (svakam rūpaṁ). This refers to his four-armed form. In the third and fourth lines, Sañjaya says that Kṛṣṇa again (punah) assumed his two-armed form and thus pacified (āsvāsrayāṁ āsa) Arjuna. If Kṛṣṇa’s pacifying Arjuna did not involve resuming this form, this verse would suffer from repetition. This understanding is further supported by the following verse. It will be made even more clear in the subsequent verse, where the two-armed humanlike form of Kṛṣṇa is glorified as the most rare and difficult to see, more so than either the viśva-rūpa or the four-armed form of Kṛṣṇa.

Text 51

अर्जुन उवाच
drṣṭvedam mānuṣam rūpam tava saumyaṁ janārdana/
idānim asmi samvrttaḥ sa-cetāḥ prakṛtim gataḥ/

arjuna uvāca

11.50
Arjuna said: Now that I see this gentle human form of yours, O Janârdana, I am composed and restored to my natural state.

The Lord of Śrī said: This form of mine you are beholding is very difficult to see. Even the gods constantly long to see it.

In this verse, the word drśtavân is a perfect participle that can be rendered either in reference to the present form that Arjuna is seeing or in reference to the viśva-rūpa that Arjuna has seen. In either case the significance is the same: Kṛṣṇa’s two-armed form is higher than his viśva-rūpa.
viśva-rūpa, because Arjuna cares more for it, even after seeing the viśva-rūpa that is so difficult to see. If we take a more literal approach to the language of the verse and render drṣṭavān in reference to the viśva-rūpa, as some commentators have, we cannot ignore the feeling of this section. Arjuna lost interest in the viśva-rūpa and not the beatific vision of Kṛṣṇa’s humanlike form.

Furthermore, Kṛṣṇa has also mentioned that the gods constantly desire to see the form under discussion. While there are no scriptural references supporting the idea that the gods always desire to see the viśva-rūpa, there are many prayers in the Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam in which the gods pray to see the form of Kṛṣṇa.4

Finally text 53 also confirms that in this verse Kṛṣṇa is speaking of his humanlike form, inasmuch as it would be repetitive were it referring to the viśva-rūpa, for in text 48 Kṛṣṇa has already said that it is not possible to see the viśva-rūpa through study of the Vedas, etc.

Text 53

नाह वेदायतः तपस्या न पत्रेषा न च ज्ञात्या।
शक्यायेव विद्वाङ्गो द्रश्यावः सत्तायेऽव यथा।||53||

nāhaṁ vedaṁ na tapasā na dārena na ca ājayā/
śakya evam-vidhāṁ draśṭum drṣṭavān asi māṁ yathā//

na—not; aham—I; vedaiḥ—by study of the Vedas; na—not; tapasā—by austerity; na—not; dārena—by charity; na—not; ca—and; ājayā—by sacrifice; śakyaḥ—I can; evam-vidhāḥ—in this form; draśṭum—to see; drṣṭavān—seeing; asi— you are; mām—me; yathā—as.

Not by study of the Vedas, not by austerity, not by giving in charity, not even by sacrifice can I be seen in this form as you have seen me.

In his introductory notes to chapter 12, Madhusūdana Saraswatī says that after the revelation of the cosmic form, the entity with form (two-armed Kṛṣṇa) has been referred to in this verse. Viśvanātha Cakravartī comments that if anyone wants to see Kṛṣṇa in his eternal two-armed humanlike form as Arjuna did, he cannot do so by any of the practices mentioned in this verse, even if they consider the vision of this form to be the perfection of human endeavor.

4. See ŚB. 10.2, entire chapter.
Text 54

bhaktyā tv ananyayā śakya aham evam-vidho ’rjuna/
jñātum draśtuṁ ca tattvena praveśtuṁ ca parantapā/

bhaktyā—by devotion; tu—but; ananyayā—by unalloyed; śakya—I can; aham—I; evam-vidhāḥ—in this form; arjuna—O Arjuna; jñātum—to know; draśtuṁ—to see; ca—and; tattvena—in fact; praveśtuṁ—to attain; ca—also; parantapā—O Parantapa.

Only by unalloyed devotion can one actually see and understand this form and attain me, O Parantapa.

If verses 52 through 54 are taken to be in reference to the viśva-rūpa, they are indirectly glorifying not only Kṛṣṇa’s humanlike form, but devotion to Kṛṣṇa as well. The word praveśuṁ in this verse can also be rendered “entered into.” Should one desire to enter into the viśva-rūpa and attain liberation without concern for attaining a transcendental relationship with Kṛṣṇa, here Kṛṣṇa emphatically declares that this can only be accomplished by devotion.

Text 55

mat-karma-kṛn mat-paramo mad-bhaktah saṅga-varjitaḥ/
nirvairah sarva-bhūtesu yah sa māṁ eti pāṇḍava/

mat-karma-kṛt—doing work for me; mat-paramāḥ—considering me the highest; mat-bhaktah—devoted to me; saṅga-varjitaḥ—abandoning attachment; nirvairah—free from enmity; sarva-bhūtesu—toward all living beings; yah—who; saḥ—he; māṁ—to me; eti—comes; pāṇḍava—O son of Pāṇḍu.

A person who acts for me, considers me the highest object of attainment, devotes himself to me, abandons all attachment, and frees himself from enmity toward any living being comes to me, O son of Pāṇḍu.

As this chapter ends Kṛṣṇa glorifies unalloyed bhakti. He stressed this at the beginning of chapter 7 and again in chapter 8. In chapter 9 he personally
became overwhelmed while speaking about his devotees and devotion. His emotional state overflowed into chapter 10. Following this, Arjuna brought him back to practical reality by asking him about his majesty—his Godhood. Kṛṣṇa theorized about this for the balance of chapter 10, and then, at Arjuna’s request, he translated theory into experience—jñāna into vijñāna. Properly understood, the overwhelming revelation of his Godhood in this chapter has indirectly served to underscore the charm and beauty of unalloyed devotion. Thus we turn to the last of the six middle chapters dealing with the Gītā’s devotional theology.
Text 1

Arjuna uvāca
evāṁ satata-yuktā ēvam paryūpāsate/
   ye cāpy āksaram avyaktam teṣām ke yoga-vittamāḥ

Arjuna said: Who has the best understanding of yoga, those devotees
who worship you and are thus always united with you in love or those
who worship the imperishable unmanifest?

The middle six chapters of the Gītā are introduced with the final verse of
the sixth chapter. Therein Kṛṣṇa tells Arjuna that devotion to himself is
the highest form of yoga (Bg. 6.47). Thus in this verse, Arjuna seems to be
asking a question that has already been answered. He does so for further
clarification about worship and its object. Although Kṛṣṇa has already stated
unequivocally that his devotee is the best yogī, here Arjuna gives him the
opportunity to make a similar definitive statement regarding the highest
object of worship as well.

Kṛṣṇa has just finished demonstrating that his personal form is a higher
manifestation of divinity than his virāṭa-rūpa. This virāṭa-rūpa was discussed
theoretically in chapter 9 when Kṛṣṇa spoke of pantheists (Bg. 9.15–19), and upon Arjuna’s request he elaborated on this in chapter 10 leading up to the theophany of chapter 11. As chapter 12 commences with further glorification of Kṛṣṇa’s personal form, any confusion remaining about this issue after reading chapter 11 is put to rest. Now Kṛṣṇa will explain that his personal form is also a higher manifestation of Godhead than his Brahman feature.

Here Arjuna clearly refers to the highest of devotees by his use of the words satata-yuktāṁ, which Kṛṣṇa used to describe them earlier in chapter 10 (Bg. 10.10). They are attached to Kṛṣṇa’s beautiful form. They are the mahātmaṁs of chapters 8 (Bg. 8.15) and 9 (Bg. 9.13–14). On the other hand, Arjuna refers here to jñāna-yogīs, whose object of meditation is the formless aksara. Just before he mentioned pantheism, Kṛṣṇa spoke of those who worship him through the sacrifice of knowledge (jñāna-yajñena). These jñāna-yogīs are more spiritually developed than the other types of worshippers discussed in chapter 9. Are these jñāna-yogīs also better yogīs than Kṛṣṇa’s devotees, the mahātmaṁs? Arjuna wants to know which worshipper is the best yogī (yoga-vittamāṁ), and accordingly, whether the beautiful form of Śrī Kṛṣṇa that Arjuna loves so dearly—the mahātmaṁs’ object of worship—is a higher ideal than the Brahman feature of God, the aksara adored by the jñāna-yogīs.

In his commentary on this verse, Rāmānuja makes the argument that the word aksara does not refer to Brahman, for Brahman and Kṛṣṇa are synonymous in the Gītā. Nowhere in the Gītā, nor anywhere in the scripture, is Brahman described as superior to the person of Kṛṣṇa. Because Kṛṣṇa is Brahman, Rāmānuja opines that Arjuna cannot be asking if worship of Kṛṣṇa or worship of Brahman is superior. Thus he understands aksara to refer to the individual soul.

Rāmānuja’s argument is aimed at exposing the fault in Śaṅkara’s explanation of this and the following verses concerning Arjuna’s question. Śaṅkara reasons that Brahman is a superior expression of the Absolute. If there is any superiority to the form of Kṛṣṇa, Śaṅkara attributes it to the idea that this form facilitates liberation for those unable to meditate without conceptualization. Thus Śaṅkara restricts Kṛṣṇa’s answer to address only what he considers the relative superiority of worship for those not qualified to meditate on the unmanifsto, indeterminate Brahman.

Śaṅkara’s argument is the lens through which he looks at all the scriptural references glorifying the form of God and devotion to it. It appears first
in his highly interpretive explanation of Vedānta-sūtra 1.1.17. This sūtra appears in a section in which Brahman is described as having qualities. It begins with the statement ānandamayo 'bhyaśāt, “Brahman is joyful.” (Vs. 1.1.12) Sūtra 1.1.13 states that Brahman is not made of joy (a creation), but rather possessed of an abundance of joy. Evidence for this is offered in 1.1.14, which states that since Brahman is designated elsewhere as the cause of joy (Taittirīya Upaniṣad 2.7) he must be full of joy. Sūtra 1.1.15 states that the scripture of joy (Taittirīya Upaniṣad) also celebrates Brahman as being joyful. Following this sūtra in 1.1.16, that which is Brahman and joyful is distinguished from the individual soul. The Brahman who is joyful is also described in the scripture as being the creator. Thus it is Brahman who is described as joyful and not the individual soul, for only Brahman is described as possessing the ability to create the world. Sūtra 1.1.17 then states that the individual soul and Brahman are declared to be different, bheda-vyapadesāc ca. Even Śaṅkara himself admits that sūtras 1.1.16–17 concern the difference between Brahman and the individual soul. However, Śaṅkara adds his own comment, declaring that the difference only exists on a lower level of reality (vyavahāric), whereas in ultimate reality (paramārthic) this illusion of difference ceases to exist. However, nowhere in Vedānta-sūtra is there any reference to Śaṅkara’s two levels of reality and thus two levels of Brahman—a provisional manifestation of the Absolute (Krṣṇa/the avatāra/īśvara) and an ultimate reality (unmanifest, indeterminate Brahman).

Thus Śaṅkara appears to have attached his own doctrine to the sūtras. In this doctrine he calls his provisional manifestation of Brahman “saguna Brahman,” Brahman with material adjuncts. The form of Krṣṇa as saguna Brahman is thus considered a manifestation of Brahman constituted of the material quality of sattva that serves the purpose of helping individual souls realize the illusion of their individuality, at which time the form and person of the avatāra is dispensed with as the enlightened realizes himself to be Brahman.

According to Śaṅkara, those not qualified to meditate on aksara Brahman should worship his idea of saguna Brahman to gradually qualify themselves for meditation on the formless Brahman. This idea has no basis in the sūtras, nor does it find any support in the Gītā. Indeed, this section of the text in particular clearly establishes the supremacy of the form and person of Krṣṇa over the aksara Brahman and reiterates the ultimacy of devotional yoga.

Thus, according to the Gītā, if there is any difference between Brahman and Krṣṇa, it is that Krṣṇa is superior to Brahman. Gauḍīya commentators, while agreeing wholeheartedly with Rāmānuja as to Krṣṇa’s identity with
Brahman, lay stress on the fact that Kṛṣṇa asserts himself to be a superior manifestation of Brahman. Arjuna states this earlier (Bg. 10.12), and Kṛṣṇa will do so later in the text (Bg. 14.27, 15.18). He is the Supreme Person, whose aura is Brahman.

It seems unlikely that Kṛṣṇa would be referring to the individual soul here by his use of the word aksara. This word has been used repeatedly in the Gītā in reference to the Brahman feature of Godhead, and Kṛṣṇa has consistently identified himself with Brahman. If we understand Brahman to be an aspect of Bhagavān that is subsumed within the person of Kṛṣṇa, as understood by the Gauḍīya Vaiṣṇavas, the contradiction that Rāmānuja perceives in rendering aksara as Brahman is removed. Arjuna is asking about the Brahman feature of Kṛṣṇa and Kṛṣṇa himself.

The path of the jñāna-yogīs leads to realization of Kṛṣṇa’s aura and the individual soul’s oneness with the Absolute, whereas the superior path of devotion to Kṛṣṇa’s personal form leads to realization of his person and the jīva’s simultaneous identity with and difference from God that makes possible a life of eternal love.

Thus it comes as no surprise that Kṛṣṇa replies to Arjuna stating his preference for the adoration of his devotees who worship his personal feature over meditation on his Brahman feature. Kṛṣṇa will explain that the path of devotion is more pleasing to him and easier as well. However, should one be unable to take directly to it, Kṛṣṇa recommends other alternatives leading gradually to unalloyed devotion. He then concludes this chapter with eight verses describing the qualities of his devotees.

**Text 2**

*Śrībhagavān uvāca*

mayy āvēṣya mano ye māṁ nitya-yuktā upāsate/

sraddhayā parayopetās te me yuktatamā matāḥ/

*sri-bhagavān uvāca*—the Lord of Śri said; *mayi*—upon me; āvēṣya—fixing; *manah*—mind; *ye*—who; *māṁ*—me; *nitya*—eternally; *yuktāḥ*—united; *upāsate*—they worship; *sraddhayā*—with faith; *parayā*—with supreme; *upetāḥ*—possessed; *te*—they; *me*—to me; *yukta-tamāḥ*—most devoted; *matāḥ*—are considered.
The Lord of Śrī said: Those who are eternally united with me in worship, their minds absorbed in me, possessed of supreme faith—I consider them to be the most devoted to me.

Viśvanātha Cakravartī Ṣhākura comments that here Kṛṣṇa is speaking of his form of Śyāmasundara. This is the most worshippable form of Kṛṣṇa. It generally refers to his Vraja līlā. Thus the Ṣhākura makes the connection between this verse and the famous catuḥ-śloki of chapter 10 (Bg. 10.8–11), and verse 10 of that section in particular. Again, the words satata-yuktāḥ, in the previous verse are reminiscent of satata-yuktānāṁ of Bg. 10.10.

The following verse, in which Kṛṣṇa also acknowledges the worship of his Brahman feature and his reciprocation with those who prefer this, reminds one of the gradation of transcendent experience referred to in chapter 4 (Bg. 4.11).

**Texts 3–4**

ye tv āksaram anirdeśyam avyaktaṁ paryupāsate/
sarvatra-gam acintyam ca kūṭa-stham acalaṁ dhruvam//
sanniyamya-grāmam sarvatra sama-buddhayah/
te prāpnuvanti mām eva sarva-bhūta-hite ratāḥ//

ye—who; tu—however; āksaram—imperishable; anirdeśyam—inexplicable; avyaktaṁ—inmanis; paryupāsate—they worship; sarvatra-gam—all-pervading; acintyam—incomprehensible; ca—and; kūṭa-stham—unchanging; acalaṁ—immovable; dhruvam—fixed; sanniyamya—controlling; indriya-grāmam—all the senses; sarvatra—on all sides; sama-buddhayah—even-minded; te—they; prāpnuvanti—they attain; mām—me; eva—certainly; sarva-bhūta-hite—in the welfare of all beings; ratāḥ—engaged.

However, those who worship the imperishable, the inexplicable, the unmanifest, which is all-pervading and incomprehensible, the unchanging, the immovable, the fixed, with all of the senses controlled, even-minded in all things, and engaged in the welfare of all beings, also attain me.
The attainment of those who worship the unmanifest Brahman feature of the Absolute is self-realization, in which one identifies with Brahman. Rāmānuja comments that the description of Brahman in this verse corresponds with the description of the individual soul found in chapter 2 (Bg. 2.19–30). In Brahman realization one realizes oneself to be of the nature of consciousness, that which pervades all. This reality escapes description. Brahman is undifferentiated and formless, the antithesis of material manifestations, the great reality that lies beneath the illusory appearance of material phenomenon.

Those who realize Brahman must have complete control of their senses and develop equanimity of mind. They are engaged in the welfare of all beings because the more one goes within oneself the more one helps others by way of abandoning the life of exploitation. One helps others by teaching fearlessness through one’s example. The welfare of others also becomes identified with one’s own welfare, as one’s sense of self emerges from duality.

Significantly, this verse in response to Arjuna’s inquiry about devotion speaks of those who worship (upāsate) Brahman. Although the method of worshipping Brahman is meditation, the very spirit of this meditation is worship and devotion. Without devotion, no one can attain Brahman realization. Worshippers of Brahman attain Kṛṣṇa in the sense that they attain Brahman, which is nondifferent from him—his feature of all-pervading consciousness.

Ṭhākura Bhaktivinoda comments that those described in this verse, while engaged in philanthropic work (sarva-bhūta-hite) sometimes render service to great devotees. As a result of this, they too eventually become devotees and attain Kṛṣṇa personally. However, in whatever sense they attain Kṛṣṇa, they do so with great difficulty and thus their path is inferior.

Text 5

kleśo ’dhikataras teṣām avyaktāsaka-cetasāṁ/
avyaktā hi gatir duḥkham deha-vadbhir avāpyate//

kleśah—tribulation; adhika-tarah—greater; teṣām—of them; avyakta—unmanifested; āsakta—attached; cetasāṁ—of those whose minds; avyaktā—unmanifest; hi—certainly; gatih—path, goal; duḥkham—with difficulty; deha-vadbhīḥ—by the embodied; avāpyate—is attained.
Those whose minds are attached to the unmanifest undergo excessive tribulation, for the path that leads to the unmanifest is only attained with great difficulty by embodied beings.

This verse reveals that the superiority of the path of devotion to a personal God over worship of the impersonal unmanifest feature of the Absolute includes its ease of practice. Worship of the Brahman feature of the Absolute is difficult, for it is not easy to conceptualize an undifferentiated ultimate reality, much less engage in its worship. Embodied beings (dehavadbhīh) are accustomed to contemplating and contacting sense objects. To refrain entirely from this and in its place fix the mind on a theoretical reality that is without form, qualities, and so on, is difficult, whereas meditation on Kṛṣṇa, the eternal adolescent transcendental Cupid, is comparatively easy.

While on one hand it is easy to think of Kṛṣṇa in comparison to conceptualizing his Brahman feature, on the other hand it is not easy to conceive of an Absolute who, although all-pervasive, has form and moves from place to place in līlā. The Vaiṣṇava conception of Kṛṣṇa as the para-brahma is not for the less intelligent. While thinking of Kṛṣṇa in a simplistic sense may be easy, understanding his ontology is not. Comparatively, the Adwaita philosophy is easy to understand, inasmuch as it posits an Absolute that is the mere antithesis of the illusory world of form and variety—a formless Absolute. When we speak of spiritual form that is all-pervasive, devoid of material qualities yet replete with spiritual attributes, we have taken a step up into ultimate reality (nirguṇa Brahman), not down to a so-called Brahman with material qualities (Śaṅkara’s saguṇa Brahman).

The word gatiḥ in this verse means both “goal” and “path.” It should not be misunderstood to indicate that the ultimate goal of spiritual culture is realization of the unmanifest Brahman feature of divinity. This misunderstanding contradicts the teaching of the Gītā as to the paramount position of the Puruṣottama, Kṛṣṇa himself. Kṛṣṇa is not saying that the ultimate goal of attaining the unmanifest, formless, nirguṇa Brahman is difficult for the embodied, who are thus advised to take an easier path, that of worshipping so-called saguṇa Brahman represented as Kṛṣṇa until they are no longer in need of such a conceptual aid. This Advaitin understanding of Kṛṣṇa’s answer requires one to import foreign ideas into the text of the Gītā for it to make any sense, notions brought to the text by the reader that are not found anywhere in the scripture. The foremost example of this is Śaṅkara’s notion of saguṇa Brahman as a provisional manifestation of the Absolute.
that he inserts in his commentary on *Vedānta-sūtra* and unceremoniously identifies Krṣṇa with in his *Gītā Bhāṣya*.

Contrary to the Advaitan position, *Vedānta-sūtra* (1.1.10) states, *gati-sāmānyāt*: “Saguṇa Brahmān is not taught anywhere in the *Vedas*, which consistently describe only nirguṇa Brahmān.” If it is difficult to conceive of the unmanifest nirguṇa Brahmān, it is that much more difficult to conceive of Krṣṇa in terms of his form and person being nirguṇa. However, this is the super-esoteric teaching of the *Bhagavad-gītā*, one that only the most intelligent devotees can understand. Nowhere does the scripture advocate meditation on the form of God only to later abandon this practice in favor of something higher. It should be abundantly clear from the text of the Gītā itself that Krṣṇa is more than a provisional manifestation of reality. He is the ultimate object of love and the highest attainment. In the next two verses he contrasts the difficulties involved in worshipping the unmanifest with the expediency of the path of devotion centered on his personality.

**Texts 6–7**

```
ye tu sarvāṇi karmāṇi mayi samyāsyā mat-parāḥ/
    ananvyaiva yogena mām dhyāyanta upāsate//
    teṣām aham samuddhartaṁ mṛtyu-saṁśāra-sāgarāt/
    bhavāmi na cirat pārtha mayy āvesita-cetasām//
```

ye—who; tu—however; sarvāṇi—all; karmāṇi—actions; mayi—in me; samyāsyā—renouncing; mat-parāḥ—regarding me as the Supreme; ananyena—without distraction; eva—certainly; yogena—by yoga; mām—me; dhyāyantah—meditating on; upāsate—they worship; teṣām—of them; aham—I; samuddharta—deliverer; mṛtyu-saṁśāra—the cycle of birth and death; sāgarāt—from the ocean; bhavāmi—I become; na cirat—swiftly; pārtha—O son of Pṛthā; mayi—in me; āvesita—fixed; cetasām—of those whose minds.

But, O Pārtha, I swiftly deliver those whose consciousness is absorbed in me, who renounce all actions in service to me, who regard me as the
Supreme, and who worship and meditate on me in undistracted yoga. I lift them from the ocean of birth and death.

While worship of the unmanifest aspect of the Absolute is difficult, here Kṛṣṇa says that worship of him personally with the sense that he is the ultimate manifestation of divinity bears results expeditiously. The difficulty involved in conceptualizing Brahman involves the limitations of the mind, whereas the difficulty in conceptualizing the personal deity involves intellectual limitations. Realizing the personal Deity also involves greater emotional commitment (upāsate). The bhakti school teaches that the emotional aspect of the living being is grounded in reality, and this in turn accounts for its ease of practice. Bhakti in practice is efficacious because it more closely resembles the true state of the living being in eternity.

Instead of renouncing all action, devotees of Kṛṣṇa act only for him. They worship him and meditate on his name, form, spiritual qualities, and līlā. In this way they become absorbed in Kṛṣṇa consciousness, and Kṛṣṇa swiftly delivers them from birth and death. While others aspire for liberation, Kṛṣṇa’s devotees aspire only to serve him, and thus he personally delivers them from saṁsāra. As difficult as it is to acquire brahma-jñāna, Kṛṣṇa says in this verse that even if his devotees do not have it, he delivers them anyway.

Kṛṣṇa’s endearing conclusion to his answer reminds us of the position of his devotees described in chapter 8 with regard to the paths of light and darkness. Kṛṣṇa’s devotees transcend both of them, as Kṛṣṇa himself cannot bear their separation and is thus compelled to personally deliver them. He is the imperishable and more, and he is first and foremost a God of grace, assisting the individual soul in every stage of its development. Thus in the next three verses Kṛṣṇa enjoins Arjuna to pursue a life in love of God.

**Text 8**

मन्यन्य मन्य आचरण निवेदन वृद्धि निवेदन ।
निवसिताकर्म मन्यन्य अनुष्ठान न संस्कृतः। II.21

mayy eva mana ādhat-sva mayi buddhiṁ niveśaya/
nivasisyasi mayy eva ata ūrdhvaṁ na saṁsārayah//

mayi—on me; eva—certainly; manah—mind; ādhat-sva—keep; mayi—on me; buddhiṁ—intelligence; niveśaya—cause to enter; nivasisyasi—you will reside; mayi—in me; eva—thus; atah ūrdhvaṁ—henceforth; na—not; saṁsārayaḥ—doubt.
Fix your mind exclusively on me and place your intelligence in me. Thus without a doubt you will reside with me henceforth.

After answering Arjuna’s question definitively, Kṛṣṇa speaks in this verse in the imperative (ādhatṣva, niveśaya) as if issuing a mandate. Thus Kṛṣṇa underscores his answer by ordering Arjuna to fix his mind on his personal form and to place his intellect in him.

Viśvanātha Cakravartī Ṭhākura comments that the words mayy eva (exclusively on me) in this verse prohibit Arjuna from meditating on the unmanifest aspect of Kṛṣṇa (akṣara). The word eva is used to emphasize that one should fix the mind exclusively on the beautiful threefold bending form of Kṛṣṇa (mayi). Such constant remembrance of Kṛṣṇa (mana ādhatṣva) should be supported by proper discrimination in conjunction with scripture that serves to give rise to actual meditation on Kṛṣṇa. This reflective discrimination is the import of the words mayi buddhīṃ niveśaya. Constant remembrance is often referred to as nididhyāsana, and reflective discrimination as manana.

Verse 8 is the first of four verses in which Kṛṣṇa begins to summarize the import of chapters 6 through 11, throughout which he has emphasized the yoga of devotion to himself. In the Gauḍīya tradition, the yoga of devotion is of two types: the path of ritual (vaidhi-bhakti) and the path of love (rāgānugā-bhakti).

In this verse Kṛṣṇa stresses the highest form of devotion, in which one’s intelligence is naturally absorbed in reflecting on Kṛṣṇa and all that is related to him, and following this, one’s mind is absorbed in meditation through spontaneous remembrance of his divine līlā. Advanced devotees on the path of love are capable of controlling their minds in trance. They are the subject of this verse, whereas those who are not proficient in this method but are qualified to practice it are the subject of the following verse.

**Text 9**

अथ चित्तं समाधातूं न शक्नोषि मयि स्तिरम्।
अभ्यासयोगेन ततो मामिच्छायथ धनान्याय।

atha cittaṃ samādhātum na śaknoṣi mayi sthiram/
abhyāsa-yogena tato mām icchāptum dhanañjaya//

atha—if however; cittaṃ—mind; samādhātum—to fix; na—not; śaknoṣi—you are able; mayi—on me; sthiram—steadily; abhyāsa-yogena—by yoga practice;
Yoga of Devotion

However, if you are unable to fix your mind on me, O Dhanañjaya, then try to attain me by discipline in practice.

The words abhyāsa-yogena speak of the practice (abhyāsa) of uniting (yoga) the mind with Kṛṣṇa, that which Kṛṣṇa recommends in the previous verse. Previously in chapter 6 Kṛṣṇa also recommended practice with regard to fixing the mind on himself, abhyāsena tu kaunteya (Bg. 6.35). As he did in chapter 6, here Kṛṣṇa speaks again of samādhi (samādhiḥ). Practice in remembering Kṛṣṇa means to again and again, from wherever the mind wanders, bring it back to the form of Kṛṣṇa. This struggle is the essence of yoga practice, by which one wins the wealth of spontaneous meditation described in the previous verse. Kṛṣṇa addresses Arjuna in this verse as Dhanañjaya, winner of wealth, that he might be further inspired to win the wealth of an inner life in love of Kṛṣṇa.

Should one find it difficult to live the inner life of sitting in yoga-sādhana, Kṛṣṇa next recommends external engagement in devotion by which one’s heart becomes purified, qualifying one for the internal devotional culture recommended in this verse.

Text 10

If you are unable to practice even this, hold my work as the supreme object. Merely by acting for my sake you will attain perfection.

If a devotee cannot sit regularly in devotional yoga practicing fixing his mind on Kṛṣṇa, he should keep his external senses busy in Kṛṣṇa’s work. He should
open temples for Kṛṣṇa, plant the sacred Tulasī so dear to Kṛṣṇa, serve his advanced devotees, and so on. He should absorb himself in Kṛṣṇa’s work, putting aside all other considerations. This devotional work is so potent that even without conquering the mind a person engaged in it can attain perfection by Kṛṣṇa’s grace. Otherwise, the mind of a person doing Kṛṣṇa’s work will naturally come under control, and gradually he will be able to practice remembering Kṛṣṇa constantly leading to spontaneous meditation. When he engages in Kṛṣṇa’s work and the rituals related to this work with a view to tread the path of love, he will gradually advance to the point of being eligible for internal service on the path of love. Although the path of ritual has its own end wherein a devotee attains love of God steeped in a sense of his majesty, it can also be engaged in with a view to attain love of Kṛṣṇa in intimacy. When one engages in vaishñi-bhakti with a desire to progress to the direct culture of rāga-nūgā-bhakti, centering his devotional culture on chanting the name of Kṛṣṇa, his success is sure. In this regard, in his song Kṛṣṇa-nāma dhare kata bala, Bhaktivinoda Thākura sings, viññi-mārga-rata-jane svādhīnatā-ratna-dāne rāga-mārge karān pravesa: “That person who is fixed in following vaishñi-bhakti attains the jewel of independence (through the grace of Kṛṣṇa nāma), by which he is placed on the path of rāga-nūgā-bhakti.” In the same song, Bhaktivinoda Thākura clearly explains that experience of one’s internal spiritual form (svarūpa) required for the culture of rāga-nūgā-bhakti proper is revealed by the grace of Kṛṣṇa nāma:

śātā vikaṣi punah dekhāya nija rūpa guna citta hari laya kṛṣṇa pāśa pūrṇa vikaṣita haṇa vraje more jāya lañā dekhāya nija svarūpa vilāsa

“When the name is even slightly revealed it shows me my own spiritual form and characteristics. It steals my mind and takes it to Kṛṣṇa’s side. When the name is fully revealed, it takes me directly to Vraja, where it shows me my personal role in the eternal pastimes.”

Thus in verses 8 through 10, Kṛṣṇa speaks directly about engagement in bhakti-yoga, both internal and external. Those who are not yet qualified for this engagement are discussed next.

Text 11

abhātad apy asakto 'si kartuṁ mad-yogam āśritah/
śarvā-karma-phala-tyāgam tataḥ kuru yatātmavān//
But if even this is not possible for you, then, taking shelter of my yoga, act with self-restraint, renouncing all the fruits of action.

In this verse Kṛṣṇa recommends niṣkāma-karma-yoga in which the fruits of one’s actions are offered to God. He calls this kind of karma-yoga “my yoga” (mad-yogam). Here Kṛṣṇa makes clear that his advocacy of karma-yoga throughout the first six chapters has been an advocacy of a form of bhakti. Viṣvanātha Cakravartī Ṭhākura calls this expression of bhakti-yoga selfless action offered to God, bhagavad-arpita-niṣkāma-karma-yoga. This kind of bhakti will develop into the bhakti of doing Kṛṣṇa’s work suggested in the previous verse. This external engagement in bhakti in turn qualifies one for internal practices in devotional yoga. Spiritual culture proper really begins with renunciation of the fruits of action. The more the fruits of one’s work are directed to God, and the more realization of the nature of the self and Godhead develops with the ingress of knowledge and ultimately love, one’s progress is determined.

With this verse Kṛṣṇa concludes his summary of the spiritual disciplines he personally recommends in the Gītā. Having concluded with stress on renunciation of the fruit of one’s actions for the pleasure of God, he next glorifies further this foundational principle of spiritual life that leads to bhakti.

Text 12

śreyaḥ—better; hi—certainly; jñānam—knowledge; abhyāsāt—than practice; jñānāt—than knowledge; dhyānam—meditation; visīṣyate—is superior; dhyānāt—than meditation; karma-phala-tyāgah—renunciation of the fruit of action; tyāgāt—from renunciation; śāntih—peace; anantaram—immediately afterward.
Knowledge is better than practice, and meditation is superior to knowledge. From meditation comes renunciation of the fruit of action, from which peace quickly follows.

The general understanding of this verse is that knowledge of the self is better than mere practice that is devoid of this knowledge. This principle has been discussed in chapter 4. One who has sufficient knowledge of the self can actually meditate. This is brought out in chapter 6.

Better than self-knowledge is meditation (dhyāna) on the Paramātmā. This is a step from self-realization in the direction of God-realization. However, superior to this gradual process is renunciation of the fruit of one’s work for the satisfaction of God, for this leads directly to liberation, bhakti, and God-realization. Śrīdhara Svāmī says, “From such renunciation of the fruit of action through the consequent nonattachment to work and its fruits, coupled with God’s grace, liberation from material existence comes about immediately.”

In this understanding, the meditation and practice under discussion here are different from that mentioned in verses 8 and 9, respectively. Indeed, this explanation seems to ignore the previous four verses and speak more of that which has been taught in the Gitā thus far. In contrast, both Baladeva Vidyābhūṣāṇa and Viśvanātha Cakravartī have offered novel interpretations of this verse that explain it in relation to verses 8 through 11 of this chapter.

Baladeva Vidyābhūṣāṇa understands the words śreyaṁ and viśisyate in this verse to mean “better” in the sense of being easier or more recommendable. Thus he says that this verse praises the karma-yoga mentioned in the previous verse (sarva-karma-phala-tyāgam) as being easy for beginners and leading naturally to spiritual realization. For those incapable of meditation (dhyāna), it is better to engage in karma-yoga. Meditation is recommended for those without self-knowledge, and the culture of self-knowledge is recommended for those who cannot practice the abhyāsa-yoga mentioned in verse 9. Thus karma-yoga leads to meditation and the knowledge of self-realization, which in turn leads to God-realization and the highest bhakti.

Viśvanātha Cakravartī interprets this verse differently. He says knowledge/reflection (mananam) that gives rise to meditation (nīdhiyāsana) on Kṛṣṇa is better than the abhyāsa-yoga that leads to reflection and meditation. This knowledge or reflection on Kṛṣṇa’s significance is what he referred to in verse 8 with the words mayi buddhiṁ niveśaya. It is better than the practice that precedes it because when continued reflection manifests,
success in meditation is more readily achieved. Better than reflection is actual meditation itself. Why is this so? Because meditation on Kṛṣṇa destroys all desire for material gain or even liberation, and thus the peace arising from indifference to material life becomes manifest automatically in Kṛṣṇa's devotee, whose mind and senses interact only with his name, form, qualities, and pastimes. Viśvanātha Cakravartī justifies his rendering by explaining that the words ācārya and viśiṣyate “govern the ablatives (of comparison) in the first hemstitch, while the two ablatives in the second are governed by the indeclinable anantaram (after).” Thus he reads dhyānāt anantaram as “from dhyāna comes tyāga; from tyāga comes śantī,” rather than the more standard rendering: “better than dhyāna is renunciation,” which is followed by Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa and others.

Kṛṣṇa next describes the glories of his devotees, enumerating thirty-five of their qualities from text 13 to the end of the chapter. Thus we learn from the following verses what a devotee becomes like after attaining the peace mentioned in this verse.

**Texts 13–14**

adveṣṭā sarva-bhūtānām maitraḥ karunā eva ca/
"nirmamo nirahankārah sama-duḥkha-sukhā kṣamī//
santuṣṭāḥ satatām yogī yatātmā dṛḍha-niścayāḥ/
"mayy arpitā-manuṣṇāḥ yo mad-bhaktaḥ sa me priyāh//

adveṣṭā—nonenvious; sarva-bhūtānām—toward all living entities; maitraḥ—friendly; karunā—compassionate; eva—certainly; ca—also; nirmamah—free from possessiveness; nirahankārah—free from egotism; sama—equal; duḥkha—pain; sukhā—pleasure; kṣamī—patient; santuṣṭāḥ—satisfied; satatām—always; yogī—yogi; yatātmā—self-controlled; dṛḍha-niścayāḥ—firm in his resolve; mayī—on me; arpitā—fixed; manuṣṇāḥ—mind; buddhiḥ—intelligence; yah—who; mat-bhaktaḥ—my devotee; saḥ—he; me—to me; priyāḥ—dear.

_He who hates no one, who is friendly and compassionate, free from possessiveness and egotism, equal in the face of pain and pleasure, patient,
who is a yogi who is always satisfied, self-controlled, and firm in his resolve, whose mind and intellect are fixed on me, and who is thus my devotee is dear to me.

In this section Kṛṣṇa describes the internal symptoms of his devotees, while stressing the very root of the advanced devotees’ spiritual qualities, that which causes them to manifest—devotion to Kṛṣṇa. The spirit here is Kṛṣṇa’s pleasure in describing his devotees. Kṛṣṇa drives home the point that devotion to himself in and of itself gives rise to all good qualities, ornamenting the soul of his devotee. Rather than attempt to acquire any of these qualities independently, one should do so in the context of loving Kṛṣṇa. The measure by which one can understand one’s success in loving him is the extent to which the qualities mentioned in these and the following verses manifest in one. At the same time, developing these qualities is part of the attempt to love Kṛṣṇa.

The exalted qualities described in verses 13 through 20 are ultimately those of God-realized souls. The word satatam (always) in this verse should be connected with all of the qualities mentioned. Thus these are not qualities that manifest from time to time in one’s mind. Many of these qualities are shared by self-realized souls, and thus it is apparent that Kṛṣṇa’s devotees have passed through the self-realization or enlightenment experienced by jñānis and the Buddhists. One should not misunderstand and think that their devotion is merely a means to attain the general conception of enlightenment. It is the eternal function of the soul—its intrinsic characteristic—that endears the soul to God. Again and again in this section Kṛṣṇa says that those who he is describing are his devotees and that such devotees are dear to him.

Although a semblance of some of the qualities mentioned in this section may appear in those who are not self-realized or God-realized, they are comparable to the honesty one sometimes finds in thieves as they divide their loot. Without devotion to Kṛṣṇa, in which one acknowledges God’s absolute proprietorship, one lives contrary to reality.

Text 15

यस्मात्रोऽदिनेऽन्ते लोको लोकालोकधिनेः च यः ॥ ।
हर्षामर्शाभयोद्वेगायः स च में प्रियः ॥१५॥

yasmān nodvijate loko lokān nodvijate ca yah/
  harṣāmaraśa-bhayodvegāy mukto yah sa ca me priyah/
He by whom no one is put into difficulty, and who is never disturbed by anyone, who is free from happiness, impatience, fear, and agitation, is dear to me.

Madhusūdana Sarasvati comments that the second use of the word ca in this verse refers back to the phrase “my devotee” in the previous verse. Thus Kṛṣṇa continues to speak only of his devotees. It is they who possess these qualities, and thus it is clear that they more than anyone else are the sthita-prajñā persons Kṛṣṇa described in the second chapter (Bg. 2.55–72)—even more than the liberated jñānis.

Text 16

My devotee who strives not for any result and is pure, expert, impartial, and free from desire and anxiety is very dear to me.

Text 17

My devotee who strives not for any result and is pure, expert, impartial, and free from desire and anxiety is very dear to me.
yah—who; na—not; hṛṣyati—he rejoices; na—not; dveṣṭi—he frets; na—not; soteric—he laments; na—not; kāṅkṣati—he hankers; subha—good; asubha—evil; parityāgī—renouncer; bhakti-mān—filled with devotion; yah—who; sah—he; me—to me; priyah—dear.

One who neither rejoices nor frets, neither hankers nor laments, who has renounced both good and evil, and is filled with devotion to me is dear to me.

The words na hṛṣyati na dveṣṭi are an elaboration on the phrase “equal in the face of pain and pleasure” found in verse 13. Similarly the phrase subhāsubha-parityāgī elaborates on the phrase “who strives not for any result” found in verse 16.

Texts 18–19

samah satrau ca mitre ca tathā mānāpamānayoh/
sitoṣna-sukha-duḥkhesu samah saṅga-vivarjitaḥ//
tulya-nindā-stutir mauni santuṣṭo yena kenacit/
aniketaḥ sthira-matir bhaktimān me priyo naraḥ//
samah—equal; satrau—to an enemy; ca—and; mitre—to a friend; ca—also; tathā—so; māna-apamānayoh—in honor and disgrace; sita-uṣna-sukha-duḥkhesu—in cold, heat, pleasure, and pain; samah—equipoised; saṅga-vivarjitaḥ—free from attachment; tulya—equal; nindā—blame; stutih—praise; mauni—silent; santuṣṭaḥ—satisfied; yena kenacit—with anything; aniketaḥ—having no residence; sthira—steady; matih—mind; bhakti-mān—engaged in devotion; me—to me; priyah—dear; naraḥ—man.

One who is equal to friends and enemies, equipoised in honor and disgrace, alike in heat and cold, pleasure and pain, free from attachment, indifferent to blame and praise, controlled in speech, satisfied in gain without endeavor, without any fixed residence, even-minded, fully engaged in acts of devotion, this person is dear to me.
Text 20

Indeed, I love those who, endowed with faith in my supremacy, are devoted to me.

The nectar-like spiritual culture (dharmāṁrtam) is prema-dharma. Dharma means “one’s intrinsic characteristic.” The wetness of water is its dharma. In this sense the dharma of the individual soul is service. In material life the soul renders service to material objects. When a fortunate soul reposes its inherent serving tendency in the perfect object of service and love—Kṛṣṇa—it experiences dharma as both perpetual and sweet. The word amṛta means both eternal and ambrosial. When the soul expresses its serving nature in relation to temporary material objects, such service is neither eternal nor sweet. Although this improperly directed service is perpetual in the sense that in material life one continues to serve one material object after another, it is not sweet. The fruit of this life is repeated birth and death, not the nectar of immortality and divine love.

Rāmānujācārya says that the seven verses under discussion in this section refer to Kṛṣṇa’s devotees who come to bhakti through karma-yoga. He understands verses 13 through 19 to refer to the karma-yogi, whereas he sees verse 20 to be a reference to the bhakti-yogi. All of these verses follow the glorification of karma-yoga in verse 12. However, verse 20 is distinguished from the rest by the word tu, which can mean “but” or “however.” It is also distinguished from the others in this section by the word atīva (extremely). There is no doubt that the devotee proper, as opposed to one whose devotion is mixed with worldly involvement (karma), is dearest to Kṛṣṇa. Thus Rāmānuja sees a devotional gradation in this section that reaches its zenith in the final verse.
While Rāmānujācārya plays down Kṛṣṇa’s repeated emphasis on his devotees in verses 13 through 19, Viśvanātha Cakravartī Thākura sees all of the qualities mentioned in verses 13 through 19 to be present in the special devotee mentioned in verse 20. He understands each of the preceding verses to refer to a particular devotee who possesses only the qualities mentioned in that verse. Thus like Rāmānuja, Viśvanātha Cakravartī also sees a gradation of devotion within these verses, but his reading finds room only for bhakti-yoga in all of the verses under discussion. However, both Rāmānujācārya and Viśvanātha Cakravartī agree that the karma-yoga that Kṛṣṇa has spoken of in previous chapters and in verse 11 of this chapter leads naturally to bhakti-yoga and that bhakti is undoubtedly the supreme form of practice and attainment.
Text 1

अर्जुन uvāca

प्रकृति पुरुषस्य चेतन क्षेत्रं क्षेत्रज्ञम् च।
एतद्वेदात्मायम् ज्ञानं ज्ञेयम् च केशव॥॥

arjuna uvāca

prakṛtim puruṣam caiva kṣetram kṣetra-jñam eva ca/
etad veditum icchāmi jñānam jñeyam ca keśavam//

Arjuna said: O Keśava, I would like to know about prakṛti and puruṣa,
the field of activity, the knower of that field, knowledge, and that which
is to be known.

This chapter delineates the nature of the knowledge of Kṛṣṇa’s dear devotees. It begins the final six chapters of the Bhagavad-gitā. In this final section of the Gītā, Kṛṣṇa instructs Arjuna in greater detail regarding the knowledge referred to in the previous chapters: the initial fruit of niskāma-karma-yoga and the mystic insight concomitant to bhakti. Niskāma-karma-yoga blossoms with the awakening of knowledge, and then, with the help of bhakti, it blooms into liberation and the flower and fruit of post-liberated parā bhakti. Thus as karma-yoga properly practiced leads ultimately to bhakti, so too does the culture of knowledge. This is brought out more fully in chapters 13 through 18.
In his introduction to this section, Visvanātha Cakravartī Ṭhākura offers obeisances to bhakti by whose grace, he says, knowledge and action become fruitful. Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa says that the knowledge found in this section—knowledge of material nature, the living entity, God, their relationship, and so on—is the gateway to the devotion that has been explained previously.

While the ignorant and materially attached person can through association with devotees take to the path of bhakti, bhakti proper stands on the ground of detachment and knowledge. As mentioned previously in chapters 2 and 9, the glory of bhakti is twofold. Bhakti devī is generous in that she extends herself to the least qualified persons and at the same time she is the most exalted form of yoga, knowledge and detachment being concomitant to her mature expression. Now may those whose faith in bhakti has been aroused from the previous six chapters, those touched by her generosity, better understand the knowledge she is possessed of and her liberated status.

Arjuna’s inquiry prepares the ground for Kṛṣṇa’s philosophical discourse. It enables Kṛṣṇa to summarize much of what has been discussed thus far, clarify this subject matter for the balance of the text, and reach a conclusion. Thus the entire scheme of the Gītā is indicated in the introduction to this chapter.

Text 2

śrī-bhagavān uvāca

idam sariram kaunteya kṣetram ity abhidhiyate/
etat yo vetti tam prāhūk kṣetra-jñā iti tad-vidah//

śrī-bhagavān uvāca—the Lord of Śrī said; idam—this; sariram—body; kaunteya—O son of Kuntī; kṣetram—the field; iti—thus; abhidhiyate—it is called; etat—this; yah—who; vetti—knows; tam—him; prāhūk—they call; kṣetra-jñāḥ—the knower of the field; iti—thus; tat-vidah—those who know this.

1. See commentaries on Bh. 2.39 and 9.28.
2. Arjuna’s inquiry in the first verse is not found in all editions.
The Lord of Śrī said: This body, O Arjuna, is considered to be the field of activity. One who knows this field is called the knower of the field by the self-realized.

The field and knower of the field were discussed earlier in the seventh chapter in terms of their representing the secondary (aparā prakṛti) and intermediate (parā prakṛti) potencies of God, respectively (Bg. 7.4–5). The difference between the soul constituted of consciousness and the body constituted of matter was also discussed in chapter 2 (Bg. 2.11–30) and was an important theme throughout the first six chapters.

With a view to explain further the nature of the body constituted of matter and the soul constituted of consciousness, Kṛṣṇa invokes in this chapter the metaphor of a field, which represents the material circumstance the soul finds itself in life after life—the material body. The fruits of action represent the crops that are repeatedly harvested. The true knower of this field is one who knows what the body actually is and is thus not involved with its illusory harvest of happiness and distress.

The material body is “sarīram,” or that which is subject to deterioration. Kṛṣṇa says idam sarīram, “this body,” indicating that the body, though near to the soul, is different from it. One who knows that this body, which is very near to the soul (in terms of misidentification), is actually different from the soul and thus realizes that one is separate from this (idam) body, is the knower of the bodily field.

The body and all material manifestations are experienced, whereas the soul is the experiencer. The soul knows itself by first understanding its categorical difference from the body. The body and its extensions are the object of the soul’s subjective experience. The soul is the subject who experiences the object of the body. Should its object of experience be another soul rather than a material manifestation, this brings to light the reality of a plurality of souls. Amidst the eternal plurality of souls, the Supreme Soul (Paramātma) represents the supersubjective reality discussed in the next verse. He too in a deeper sense is the knower of the field, and he gives his opinion as to what constitutes knowledge.

Text 3

श्रेयस्त भारत
श्रेयस्तम्योऽनि यत्नानि मन्म मम ||३३||
kṣetra-jñāṁ caṁ māṁ viddhi sarva-kṣetreṣu bhārata/
kṣetra-kṣetra-jñayor jñānam yat taj jñānam matam mama//

kṣetra-jñāṁ—the knower of the field; ca—also; api—certainly; māṁ—me; viddhi—know; sarva—all; kṣetreṣu—in the fields; bhārata—O descendant of Bharata; kṣetra-kṣetra-jñayoh—of the field and the knower of the field; jñānam—knowledge; yat—which; tat—that; jñānam—knowledge; matam—opinion; mama—my.

O descendant of Bharata, know that I am also the knower in all fields. Knowledge of the field and its knower is actual knowledge. This is my opinion.

In this verse Kṛṣṇa establishes himself as the knower in all bodies, representing the immanence of the Absolute in his Paramātmā feature. He dwells within the heart of all individual souls. The straightforward reading of kṣetra-jñāṁ caṁ māṁ viddhi sarva-kṣetreṣu is “know also that I am the knower of the field in all fields.” In the previous verse Kṛṣṇa establishes that the individual soul is the knower of the field of his body. Here, in identifying himself as the knower of the bodily field as well, Kṛṣṇa makes an important distinction. He is the knower of all bodily fields. He knows all fields and all the individual knowers of those fields. He knows the individual knowers, the souls of each bodily field, who are the treasure hidden in the bodily field, the self hidden in the heart. The individual soul is the knower of his own body in the complete sense only when he is self-realized and thus has realized the hidden treasure of the bodily field—his own soul. The individual soul’s success in this treasure hunt is dependent on the supreme knower of all bodily fields, who knows all fields and the treasure that lies within them. By his grace the individual soul can become a knower of the field in a complete sense. He can know that the purpose of his human body is to facilitate self-realization and God-realization, and he can attain these ends.

The understanding of Kṛṣṇa’s words in this verse that reveals him to be the supreme knower of all bodily fields and thus different from the individual soul is supported by the Upaniṣadic background that this chapter draws from considerably. For example, in the Śvetāsvatara Upaniṣad (1.6–12) we find the following: “Forgiven by him with his grace he then becomes immortal…. But when the love of God comes down upon her, then she finds her own immortal life…. The two—the knower and the
nonknower, God and non-God—are eternal; the one remains entangled in the objects, the enjoyer, the other, the infinite omnipresent one, remains passive. . . . There is the soul of man with wisdom and unwisdom, power and powerlessness; there is nature, prakrti, which is creation for the sake of the soul; and there is God— Infinite, omnipresent—who watches the work of creation. When a man knows the three he knows Brahman. . . . Matter in time passes away, but God is forever in eternity, and he rules both matter and soul. . . . When one sees God and the world and the soul, one sees the Three: one sees Brahman.”

The Adwaita reading of this verse interprets Krsna to be equating the Paramatma with the atm by his use of the word ca—“Understand the knower in all fields also (ca) to be me.” According to this understanding, the ksetrajña (individual soul) mentioned in the previous verse is ultimately God. For Saṅkara, the sense that there are many souls, or a jiva soul and God, is a product of illusion. However, Śrī Jīva Gosvāmī in his Paramātmā-sandarbha challenges this rendering on the basis of Sanskrit grammar, logic, and the scriptural canon. Following his lead Viśvanātha Cakravartī Ṭhākura and Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa also challenge it. Rāmānuja also replies to Saṅkara’s lengthy interpretive commentary with his own commentary, one longer than his commentary on any other verse of the Bhagavad-gītā.

Jīva Goswāmī says that the word ca should be understood thus: “By the words ksetrajñaṃ cāpi māṃ viddhi in this verse, which in prose order become māṃ ca ksetrajñaṃ viddhi, Kṛṣṇa says, ‘Know me to also be the ksetrajña, as the ksetrajña in all fields (sarva-kṣetresu).’” Evidence that the knower of all bodily fields is a personal God and not an undifferentiated spiritual substance is found later in this chapter where the object of knowledge (jñeya) is described as possessing characteristics. Jīva Goswāmī cites verses 13 and 14 in this regard. He also cites verse 10, in which knowledge (jñāna) is described as “constant unalloyed yoga in devotion to me.” Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa concurs with Jīva Goswāmī, and Viśvanātha Cakravartī points to chapter 15 (Bg. 15.17)—in which Kṛṣṇa describes two purusas—to counter the idea that there is only one knower of the bodily field.

In the previous verse Kṛṣṇa said that the wise/jñānis (tad-viśāh) opine that the body and soul are different. In the present verse Kṛṣṇa offers his own opinion, which is a further development of this idea. It is the opinion of Kṛṣṇa (mataṁ mama) that knowledge constitutes knowing spirit and matter, and that spirit is twofold as jivātmā and Paramātmā. Jivātmā and matter are the intermediate and secondary potencies of the Godhead, respectively.
Knowing God involves knowing his potencies as well. Kṛṣṇa elaborates on these subjects for the balance of the chapter.

Text 4

Now hear from me in brief about the field, its nature, its transformations, its origins, as well as its knower and its influence.

In discussing the bodily field (tat-kṣetram) in greater depth, what it is in terms of its elemental constituents as a manifestation of the totality of the material nature must be analyzed, as well as its insentient nature and relationship to desire. What its transformations (yad-vikāri) in the form of the senses are must also be discussed. It must also be determined from what conjunction it arises (yat). Who its knower is and what his potencies are (sa ca yo yat-prabhāvaḥ ca) must also be discussed. These are the topics that follow in the course of Kṛṣṇa’s answering the balance of Arjuna’s questions.

In this verse Kṛṣṇa tells Arjuna that the deliberation on matter and spirit that he will embark on further deals with a topic that is endless. Thus he will speak about these topics only briefly (samāsena). In the next verse he refers Arjuna to Vedaṇṭa-sūtra and other source material should he be interested in any further discussion. In doing so he also implies that, should one speak on these topics, one should support one’s position with reference to the sūtras and scriptural canon in general, as well as to others who are reputed for their knowledge.

Text 5
It has been sung of in various ways by sages, in various sacred hymns of the Vedas, and particularly in the Brahma-sūtras replete with conclusive logic.

Sages such as Parāśara, Vasiṣṭha, Patañjali, and others have spoken from different angles about the questions raised in the previous verse. It is also understood as the import of the Vedic hymns that superficially appear to be concerned with only material enjoyment in religious life. The word chandobhiḥ may also refer to the Chandogya Upaniṣad and thus to the later portion of the Vedas. Lastly, it has been directly discussed in the aphorisms of the Brahma-sūtras in a convincing manner through a rigorous and unified presentation as if to debate the matter.

In the following two verses Kṛṣṇa begins to elaborate on the bodily field.

**Texts 6–7**

mahā-bhūtāny ahaṅkāro buddhir avyaktam eva ca/
indriyāni daśaikam ca pañca cendriya-gocarāḥ/
icchā dveṣaḥ sukham duḥkhham saṅghātaḥ cetanā dhṛtiḥ/
etat kṣetram samāsena sa-vikāram udahṛtam//

mahā-bhūtāni—the great elements; ahaṅkāra—egoism; buddhi—intelligence; avyaktam—unmanifest; eva—certainly; ca—and; indriyāṇi—senses; daśa-ekam—eleven; ca—and; pañca—five; ca—and; indriya-gocarāḥ—sense objects; icchā—desire; dveṣaḥ—repulsion; sukham—pleasure; duḥkhham—pain; saṅghātaḥ—the organic whole; cetanā—consciousness; dhṛtiḥ—
conviction; etat—this; ksetram—field; samāsena—in brief; sa-vikāram—with modifications; udāhṛtam—explained.

The great elements, egoism, intellect, the unmanifest, the ten senses and the mind, the five sense objects, desire, repulsion, pleasure, pain, the organic whole, consciousness, and conviction—in brief these are considered to be the field and its modifications.

The great elements (mahā-bhūtas) are five in number. They were first mentioned in the Gitā in chapter 7 (Bg. 7.4), where Kṛṣṇa defined the ontological status of his secondary potency, material nature. Everything spoken of in verses 6 and 7 was mentioned in sūtra form in chapter 7. Earth, water, fire, air, and ether (space) are the mahā-bhūtas. They manifest from egoism (ahaṁkāra), whose characteristic is self-identification with objects. Ahamkāra originates from buddhi, collective intellect, or the mahat, the great. It has the characteristic of ascertainment and also involves the Absolute’s visualization of the world that precedes its will to become many. The unmanifest (avyaktam) is also known as pradhāna, the unmanifest condition of the three modes of material nature. This pradhāna is the source of the mahat. It represents the māyā-çakti in its totality, the secondary potency of God.

The ten and one (daśāikam) mentioned in this verse are the senses, both motor and perceptual—hands, legs, anus, genital, mouth, ear, skin, eyes, tongue, and nose—and the mind. The five objects of the senses (pañca cendriya-gocarāḥ) are sound, touch, form, taste, and smell. These are sense objects in that they are made known by the perceptual senses and are modes of action for the motor senses.

Desire, repulsion, pleasure, pain, consciousness, and conviction mentioned in these verses refer to qualities of the self as they are reflected through the mind in the bodily field. Desire, repulsion, pleasure, and pain are mental modifications. Hankering to acquire pleasure is known as desire (icchā), and repulsion (dveṣāḥ) with regard to that which causes pain is its polar opposite. True happiness (sukham) has virtue as its cause, and actual suffering (duḥkham) originates in vice.

The organic whole (saµghåta) is the aggregate of the material constituents in the form of the body itself. Consciousness (cetanā) here refers to the mental modification that expresses the true nature of things arising from valid evidence, such as the scriptural canon. Conviction (dhṛtyih) is the mental modification that allows one to carry on in difficult circumstances.
Such is the field of activity together with its transformations (sa-vikāram) in the form of birth, growth, maintenance, generation, dwindling, and death. He who is the witness of these transformations cannot himself be part of them. This witness is the knower of the field and the knower of all fields as jīvātmā and Paramātmā, respectively. The two knowers are further discussed in the following five verses in terms of sādhana, or practices leading to the knowledge that enables one to understand them.

Texts 8–12

amānitvam adambhitvam ahiṃsā ksāntir ārjavam/
ācāryopāsanam saucam sthaīryam ātma-vinigrahaḥ//
indriyārtheṣu vairāgyam anahankāra eva ca/
janma-mṛtyu-jarā-vyādhi-duṣkha-doṣanudarśanam//
asaktir anabhisvaṃgah putra-dāra-grhādiṣu/
nityam ca sama-cittavam iṣṭaniṣṭopattiṣu//
mayi cānanyā-yogena bhaktir avyabhicārini/
vivikta-deśa-sevītvam aratī jana-samsāḍi//
adhyātma-jñāna-nityatvam tattva-jñāna-darśanam/
etaj jñānam iti proktam ajñānam yat ato 'nyathā//

amānitvam—humility; adambhitvam—unpretentiousness; ahiṃsā—nonviolence; ksāntiḥ—tolerance; ārjavam—simplicity; ācārya-upāsanam—serving the guru; saucam—cleanliness; sthaīryam—persistence; ātma-vinigrahaḥ—self-restraint; indriya-artheṣu—toward the senses; vairāgyam—renunciation; anahankāra—absence of egotism; eva—certainly; ca—and; janma—birth; mṛtyu—death; jarā—old age; vyādhi—disease; duhkha—pain; doṣa—shortcoming; anudarśanam—contemplation; asaktiḥ—detachment; anabhisvaṃgah—freedom from entanglement; putra—son; dāra—wife;
Humility, unpretentiousness, nonviolence, patience, simplicity, service to the guru, cleanliness, persistence, self-restraint, renunciation of sense objects, absence of egotism, repeated contemplation of the painful shortcomings of birth, death, old age, and disease, detachment, freedom from the entanglement of family life, equanimity of mind with regard to that which is desirable and undesirable, unswerving exclusive yoga in devotion to me, resorting to secluded places, disinterest in social gatherings, steadiness in self-realization, keeping in sight the purpose of philosophy—this is said to be knowledge. Ignorance is that which is contrary to this.

Having completed his discussion on the unconscious bodily field, Kṛṣṇa speaks of the qualities which when cultivated bear the fruit of self-knowledge and God-realization before he speaks in greater detail about the two conscious entities (kṣetrajña) themselves. Thus he includes this culture in that which he defines as knowledge. Most important in this list of virtues is “unswerving exclusive yoga in devotion to me” (mayi cānanya yogena bhaktir avyabhicārīni). From this all other virtues follow like maidservants in service to the queen of bhakti.

Having discussed knowledge and the practices leading to it, next Kṛṣṇa speaks about the object of knowledge—the two knowers of the bodily field.

Text 13

jñeyaṁ yat tat pravakṣyāmi yaj jñātvāṁṛtam aśnute/ anādi mat-paraṁ brahma na sat tan nāsad ucyate//
I shall clearly explain that which is to be known, knowing which one attains the nectar of immortality. It is beginningless Brahman, it is ruled by me, and it lies beyond cause and effect.

Verses 13 through 19 describe the object of knowledge. They sometimes speak of the jīvātmā and sometimes the Absolute in one or another of its threefold features: Bhagavān, Paramātmā, or Brahman.

The words anādi mat-param in this verse lend themselves to a number of different interpretations. Rāmānujācārya understands this verse to be speaking of the jīvātmā’s essential nature whose ultimate attainment and support is the Supreme Soul (mat-param). Both Bhaktivedanta Swami Prabhupāda and B. R. Śrīdhara Deva Goswāmī read these words as Rāmānuja does, understanding them to indicate that beginningless Brahman, in the form of either the jīvātmā or the Brahman feature of the Godhead, is subordinate to Kṛṣṇa. Madhusūdana Sarasvatī acknowledges the obvious validity of understanding these words in this way; however, he does not concede that it is valid to do so in this verse in consideration of the context, which in his estimation is a description of nirviśeṣa-brahma, the Advaitin notion of ultimate reality. Thus he renders anādi mat-param as “the Supreme Brahman is without beginning.” However, his sense of the context involves his own failure to acknowledge that Kṛṣṇa is speaking of two knowers of the bodily field in verses 2 and 3 of this chapter. Indeed, Jīva Goswāmī understands this verse to support his insights on verse 3. He also understands the following verse to be similarly supportive of the idea that there are two knowers of the bodily field.

Understanding this verse to say either “beginningless Brahman, ruled by me” or “the beginningless Supreme Brahman” works well in terms of the Vaiṣṇava understanding of the Absolute. The latter rendering, although consistent with the doctrine of Adwaita Vedānta, need not indicate unqualified Monism. In chapter 10 Arjuna addressed Kṛṣṇa as param brahma, the Supreme Brahman, who both the jīvātmā and the Brahman feature of the Absolute are subordinate to. The very word Brahman means “the greatest, the Supreme.” Thus the words “Supreme Brahman” are somewhat
redundant unless they refer to something greater than the greatest, its support. This is Bhagavân Śrī Kṛṣṇa, the full-fledged expression of that which is spirit, the ground of the spiritual ground of being, who clearly says as much in chapter 14 (Bg. 14.27). He is beginningless and exists beyond the karmic plane of cause and effect. Knowing him in any of his transcendental features, one attains the nectar of immortality. He is Bhagavân (param brāhma) whose features of Paramātmā and Brahman represent his cognitive and existential aspects, respectively. This threefold collective of the nondual Absolute makes for an ultimate reality that exists (Brahman), is cognitive of its existence (Paramātmā), and whose only purpose is joy (Bhagavân).³

Text 14

Everywhere are his hands, legs, eyes, heads, faces, and ears. In this way, he exists, pervading all.

Here Kṛṣṇa speaks once again in Upaniṣadic language, as he did earlier (Bg. 2.16, 8.9–10). Indeed, this same verse is found in the Śvetāsvatara Upaniṣad (3.16). Moreover, all of the verses in this seven-verse section of the Gitā resemble the third chapter of this famous śruti’s description of the Cosmic Person. Introducing its section describing the Cosmic Person, Śvetāsvatara Upaniṣad (3.11) says about that which it proceeds to describe, sa bhagavān tasmāt sarva-gataḥ śivah: “He is Bhagavān, and therefore omnipresent and auspicious.” In the Śvetāsvatara Upaniṣad verses echoed here in the Gitā, all three aspects of the Absolute are described, and thus they are also described in these verses of Bhagavad-gitā.

³. See SB. 1.2.11.
The present verse speaks of either the Bhagavân, Paramātmā, or Brahman feature of the Absolute, the object of knowledge. It may also be understood to refer to the jīvātmā through whom God experiences the world of the material senses. In accordance with Gauḍīya Vedānta, God is simultaneously one with and different from the jīvātmā.

Brahman is all-pervading. Here Kṛṣṇa speaks of the all-pervading feature of the Godhead. As Paramātmā resides in the hearts of all jīvas and in every atom, this verse also speaks of this feature of the Godhead. How does this verse speak of Bhagavân? It is he whose hands reach out anywhere and everywhere to accept the offerings of his devotees. With his feet he goes wherever his devotees make prostrations to him, standing before them. Wherever his devotees sing his praise or pray to him he hears them, and with his eyes he takes pleasure in watching his devotees serve him in diverse ways. His devotees also see him everywhere. Thus he is possessed of organs that are uncommon.

It is mentioned in Caitanya Bhāgavata (Madhya 10.115–133) that Adwaita Ācārya had difficulty coming up with an interpretation of this verse that was conducive to bhakti, but that Śrī Caitanya appeared to him in a dream and told him how it should be understood. The implication of his explanation is that the entire world when seen for what it is presents unlimited opportunity to satisfy the senses of God/Bhagavân.

Text 15

\[ \text{He manifests the functions of the senses while free from all senses, detached yet maintaining all, without qualities yet enjoying qualities.} \]

The first half of this verse is also found in Śvetāsvatara Upaniṣad (3.17). God manifests the senses of the living beings in this world, yet he himself
is not controlled by them. Although detached, he nonetheless maintains all. Although he is devoid of material qualities and thus above the three modes of nature (triguna), he enjoys in līlā and exhibits transcendental qualities. When the śruti says that the Absolute has no qualities (nirguna), this means that God has no material qualities. God does have spiritual qualities, form, and līlā. If this were not so, numerous śruti statements about them would be nullified.

Text 16

बहिरं अताः का भुतानाम अराम चारम एवा चारम एवा चारम एवा चारम
सुक्षमवत तद अविभप्यार्य दुरस्थान चांतिके नत सत ॥ ५ ॥

bahir antā ca bhūtānāṁ acaram eva ca/ sūkṣmatvāt tad avijñeyāṁ dūra-stham cāntike ca tat/

bahir—outside; antā—inside; ca—and; bhūtānāṁ—of all beings; acaram—not moving; caram—moving; eva—also; ca—and; sūkṣmatvāt—being subtle; tat—that; avijñeyam—incomprehensible; dūra-stham—far; ca—and; antike—near; ca—and; tat—that.

He is outside and inside all beings. He moves and yet remains still. Being subtle, he is incomprehensible; he is far, yet near as well.

Text 17

अविभक्तम च पुनर्दुर्बिभक्तिम च स्थितम ॥
पुनर्मर्दे च तत्ज्ञयं ग्रासिष्य प्रभविष्य च ॥ ९ ॥

avibhaktam ca bhūtesu vibhaktam iva ca sthitam/
bhūta-bhartr ca taj jñeyam grasiṣṇu prabhavisṇu ca/

avibhaktam—undivided; ca—and; bhūtesu—in living beings; vibhaktam—divided; iva—as if; ca—and; sthitam—situated; bhūta-bhartr—maintainer of beings; ca—and; tat—that; jñeyam—to be known; grasiṣṇu—devourer; prabhavisṇu—creator; ca—and.

He is undivided in living beings, and yet remains as if divided. He is to be known as the destroyer and the creator.

Text 18

म्योनिमामिष्ट तत्म्योदितस्मस: परमुच्चाये ॥
ज्ञान देवेय ज्ञानगम्य हृदि सर्वस्य विज्ञयम ॥ १८ ॥
He is also said to be the light of lights that is beyond darkness. He is knowledge, the object of knowledge, and the goal of knowledge. In a special way he is situated in everyone’s heart.

God is the light of lights—“Being illumined by whom the sun shines.” (Tai. Br. 3.12.9.7) In chapter 15 Kṛṣṇa identifies himself as this light, “I am the light in the sun, moon, and fire.” (Bg. 15.12) It is he who illumines even the light of the soul—consciousness—by which one perceives. This soul is the light of the world and it too is illumined by him. Wherever he shines, darkness cannot stand. From the darkness of our ignorance we must go to light, tamasi mā jyotir gamah.

The word jñāna-gamyam implies direct, conscious experience of God. It also means “attained by knowledge.” Viśvanātha Cakravartī Ṭhākura comments that this knowledge, by which God is attained, is concomitant to bhakti. In the language of Gauḍīya Vedānta it is sambandha-jñāna. The aforementioned means of attaining knowledge which are centered on “unswerving exclusive yoga in devotion to me” can also be considered in this regard.

The word viṣṭhitam indicates that God is situated in a special way within the heart. For meditation, yogīs conceive of him as seated in their hearts in a four-handed form. He also appears in the hearts of his devotees in a form that corresponds with their love for him.

Text 19

iti kṣetram tathā jñānam jñeyam coktam samāsataḥ/
mad-bhakta etad vijñāya mad-bhāvayopapadyate
Thus the field of activities, knowledge, and the object of knowledge have been briefly described. Understanding this, my devotee attains love for me.

This section beginning with verse 4 is an apt description of ultimate reality in accordance with Gauḍīya Vedānta’s religio-philosophical acintya-bhedābheda-tattva. Here we find an ultimate object of knowledge that is both one with the jīvātma and matter yet different from them at the same time. This object of knowledge moves but remains still. It has no qualities but enjoys qualities. He is near yet far away. In him all contradictions are resolved.

It should be noted that only the devotee of Godhead, the bhakti-yogī, can realize the Bhagavān feature of Godhead. Kṛṣṇa says his devotee attains “love for me (mad-bhāva),” and this love is uncommon. In the very least it involves realized knowledge of Brahma and Paramātma, and thus it has understanding and thereby transcendence of material existence and the bodily field as its ground. Though bhakti-devi is generous in offering herself, she is not attained cheaply. Here again, as we heard in the tenth chapter (Bg. 10.8), Kṛṣṇa informs us that attaining bhāva (love) requires that one take the trouble to understand its underlying tattva (philosophy).

Having answered Arjuna’s questions regarding the bodily field, its knower, knowledge, and the object of knowledge in brief, Kṛṣṇa replies next to Arjuna’s question concerning the predominating and predominated aspects of reality, puruṣa and prakṛti. In doing so, he speaks further of the bodily field, its transformations, its origin, its knower, and the potencies of the knower of the field. In this section Kṛṣṇa also reveals that the origin of the bodily field mentioned in verse 4 is the conjunction of the puruṣa and prakṛti. This discussion covers the next five verses.

Text 20

prakṛtim puruṣam caiva viddhy anādi ubhāv api/
    vikārāṁ ca guṇāṁ caiva viddhi prakṛti-sambhavān//

prakṛtim—nature; puruṣam—person; ca—and; eva—certainly; viddhi—know; anādi—without beginning; ubhāv—which; api—also; vikārāṁ—transforma-
Know that both prakṛti and puruṣa are without beginning, and know as well that the transformations and the guṇas arise from prakṛti.

The predominated reality is prakṛti, material nature. It represents the secondary potency of God in its totality. It is the macrocosm of the microcosmic bodily field. Kṛṣṇa’s intermediate potency, although also prakṛti in the sense that it is predominated by him, is considered parā-prakṛti, a superior conscious prakṛti. Because the intermediate potency consists of consciousness and has the power to animate the secondary potency, in relation to that potency it is considered predominating. Thus the intermediate potency is also sometimes referred to as puruṣa. God is the absolute puruṣa, and the jīvātmā is a qualified puruṣa.

Both prakṛti and the qualified puruṣa are beginningless, being potencies (śakti) of God, the supreme puruṣa. As God has no source other than himself, and prakṛti and puruṣa are his secondary and intermediate potencies, they too are beginningless. Neither is created or destroyed. These potencies combine by God’s arrangement to make the world, and thus the transformations of the senses, objects, and mind, as well as matter’s threefold modus operandi, the guṇas, are born from the womb of prakṛti. While material nature is subject to such transformation, the puruṣa is not.

Text 21

कार्यकारणकऽति हेतुः प्रकृतिरुच्यते।
पुरुषः सुखदुःखानां भोक्तः हेतुरुच्यते॥ २ ॥

kārya-kāraṇa-kartṛtvē hetuḥ prakṛtir ucyate/
puruṣah sukha-duḥkhānāṁ bhokṛtvā hetur ucyate//
kārya—effect; kāraṇa—cause; kartṛtvē—in the matter of the agent; hetuḥ—cause; prakṛtirḥ—nature; ucyate—it is said; puruṣah—the puruṣa; sukha—happiness; duḥkhānām—distress; bhokṛtvē—in experiencing; hetuḥ—the cause; ucyate—it is said.

Prakṛti is said to be the agent of transformation that brings about the effect of the body and its senses, which are the means to experience, whereas the puruṣa is said to be the cause of the actual experiences of happiness and distress.
In this verse the word *kārya* refers to the effect of the material body, and *kāraṇa* refers to the senses that make possible the material experiences of happiness and distress. With respect to these transformations, material nature is the agent (*kartaṇe*). The qualified *purusā*, on the other hand, is the cause of the experiences of joy and sorrow. He experiences the mental modifications that happiness and distress are a manifestation of. Thus the qualified *purusā* is the experiencer, the enjoyer (*bhoktaṇe*), and as Kṛṣṇa explains further in the following verse, his association with material nature is the reason behind his material experience and continued state of bewilderment.

**Text 22**

>The puruṣa, situated in prakṛti, thus experiences the qualities born of material nature. Association with these qualities is the cause of his taking birth in good and evil wombs.

The individual soul as a qualified *puruṣa* takes on a particular form and corresponding nature that are a karmic product of *prakṛti*. This form is a result of his deeds, his karma. In this condition the soul is attached to particular experiences of material happiness and is adverse to distress—transformations of *prakṛti*. Thus the soul acts in pursuit of happiness and avoidance of distress. To fully realize his aspirations, he takes birth again and again. The duration of a particular body is a result of his previous *karma*, and each subsequent one is the result of his continued aspirations.

The words *sad-asad-yoni* imply human birth, because human life is a mixed experience of good and bad, as opposed to the life of the gods or the lower species who experience happiness (the result of good) and distress (the result of evil), respectively. They also refer to the possibility of taking
birth as a god or in one of the lower species where there is less facility for enjoyment. Thus they speak of both reincarnation and transmigration.

After describing the qualified puruṣa and the prakṛti,Krṣṇa next discusses the position of the Paramātmā, the supreme puruṣa.

**Text 23**

उपद्रङ्गुन्मत्ता च भरती भोज्या महेश्वरः।
परमात्मता चाणुको देहात्मिन पुरुषः परः ||२३||

upadraṅgaṇumantā ca bhartā bhoktā maheśvarah/
paramātmeti cāpy ukto dehe 'smin puruṣah parah//

upadraṅga—witness; anumantā—he who gives consent; ca—and; bhartā—maintainer; bhoktā—enjoyer; mahā-iśvarah—the great controller; paramātma—the Supreme Soul; iti—thus; ca—and; api—in deed; uktaḥ—it is said; dehe—in the body; asmin—this; puruṣah—puruṣa; parah—supreme.

**The superior puruṣa in this body who witnesses, sanctions, maintains, and protects is the supreme controller and enjoyer and is called the Paramātmā.**

In this verse Krṣṇa speaks about the para-puruṣa, differentiating him from the qualified puruṣa he speaks of in the previous verses of this section. He is the Paramātmā, described earlier as the knower of all bodily fields. He is the master of both prakṛti and the qualified puruṣa, in comparison with whom the qualified puruṣa is often referred to as parā-prakṛti, his position being so vastly different from that of the para-puruṣa. In its enlightened state, the qualified puruṣa understands itself to be a predominated and not predominating ontological reality, a status reserved for the para-puruṣa.

The para-puruṣa’s consent is required for the individual soul to enjoy the fruit of its work. The soul’s liberation from its delusion of being the enjoyer of matter also requires the grace of the para-puruṣa. Krṣṇa speaks of the para-puruṣa in this verse to shed light on the nature of the relationship between the Paramātmā and the individual soul. The latter is a predominated reality, albeit a sentient one and thus different from the predominated reality of prakṛti, and the former is the absolute predominator.

Krṣṇa concludes this short section with the following verse, in which the fruit of understanding these verses is stated.
Text 24

One who thus understands the puruṣa and prakṛti, as well as the guṇas, is not born again, regardless of his present position.

According to Viśvanātha Cakravartī, by use of the word ca in this verse the jīvātmā is also included in that which if understood affords liberation. Here the emphasis is on actually realizing the truth about these four—the individual soul, God, prakṛti, and its three guṇas. Mention of the guṇas prepares us for the following chapter, where they are discussed in greater detail.

Understanding means realizing the significance of the four subjects of this verse. One who has done so attains liberation regardless of his present position with regard to his prārabdha-karma, even if one should transgress scriptural injunctions. The use of api further underscores the certainty of liberation for those who do not transgress.

Since verse 19, Kṛṣṇa has not spoken of any path to liberation other than bhakti. Indeed, this is the emphasis of this chapter, in which the knowledge that is concomitant to mature bhakti is being discussed. At this point Arjuna wonders if there are any alternative disciplines by which one can attain liberation.

Text 25

dhyānenātmanī paśyantī kecid ātmānāṁ ātmanāḥ
anye sāṁkhyena yogena karma-yogena cāparyā
dhyānena—by meditation; ātmanī—within the self; paśyantī—they see; kecit—some; ātmānam—the Self; ātmanā—by the mind; anye—others;
Deliberation on matter and spirit 43513.26

sānkhyena—by introspection; yogena—by yoga; karma-yogena—by karma-yoga; ca—and; apare—others.

Some see the Self within the self through meditation. Others do so through introspection, and still others through karma-yoga.

In this verse Kṛṣṇa reiterates what he spoke of at length in the first six chapters of the Gitā. More than speaking of different paths, Kṛṣṇa is speaking of a development from nīskāma-karma-yoga to knowledge and meditation, by which the Paramātmā is realized.

Śrīdhara Swāmī comments that while all of the above are to be practiced in sequence, they are considered different paths only with respect to differences in eligibility of the practitioner. As we have seen in the earlier chapters, all of these practices need to be mixed with bhakti for them to bring about liberation, and as stated in verse 19 of this chapter, love of Kṛṣṇa is attainable only by unalloyed devotion.

Text 26

anye tv evam ajānantah śrutvānyebhyā upāsate/
te 'pi cātitaranti eva mṛtyum śrutī-parāyanāḥ//

anye—others; tu—however; evam—thus; ajānantah—not knowing; śrutvā—by hearing; anyebhyāḥ—from others; upāsate—they worship; te—they; api—also; ca—and; atitaranti—they transcend; eva—certainly; mṛtyum—death; śrutī-parāyanāḥ—devoted to what they hear.

Other people, however, who do not know these things, worship having heard from others, and they, who venerate what they have heard, also transcend death.

Those who are not inclined to study these topics in depth and feel themselves unfit for meditation and even nīskāma-karma-yoga can also gradually transcend death if they are inclined to hear from authorities. Through such hearing they come directly to devotion and attain liberation.

For the balance of the chapter Kṛṣṇa recapitulates what has been taught thus far stressing how the qualified puruṣa can disentangle itself from prakṛti.
Text 27

Yañatsatttvāyaṁ kṛitiṁ sattvam sthāvara-jāngamam ।
Kṣetra-kṣetra-jña-samyoget tad viddhi bharata-rśabha//

Yañat—inasmuch; sañjāyate—it comes into being; kiñcit—anything; sattvam—existence; sthāvara—unmoving; jaṅgamam—moving; kṣetra—field; kṣetra-jña—the knower of the field; samyoget—by the union; tat viddhi—know this; bharata-rśabha—O best of the Bhāratas.

Know, O descendant of Bharata, that whatever comes into being, be it moving or unmoving, is a result of the union of the field and the knower of the field.

Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa comments that the union of prakṛti and the qualified puruṣa is beginningless (anādi). Although the relationship between the individual soul and material nature in the form of body after body is beginningless, it is not eternal. It can be brought to an end with the intervention and subsequent knowledge of the supreme puruṣa.

This verse reiterates the teaching of verse 22: contact with the modes of material nature is the cause of repeated birth and death. The union of the field and its knower gives birth to the world. Following this, Kṛṣṇa explains further what he said in verse 24 by telling Arjuna once again about that which disentangles the knower from its bodily field.

Text 28

Samam sarvesu bhūteṣu tiṣṭhantam parameśvaram/
Vinaśyatsv avinaśyantam yah paśyati sa paśyati//

Samam—equally; sarvesu—in all; bhūteṣu—in beings; tiṣṭhan-tam—abiding; parameśvaram—the Supreme God; vinaśyatsv—in the perishing; avinaśyantam—not perishing; yah—who; paśyati—he sees; saḥ—he; paśyati—he sees.

One who sees the Supreme God abiding equally in all beings—not perishing when they perish—truly sees.
The illusioned living entity is described here as being perishable (vinaśyatsu) in terms of his sense of bodily identification. This identity does not endure or exist in a real sense. It is here today and gone tomorrow. Along with the illusioned soul, the material manifestation is implied in this verse, its characteristics being the opposite of the Supreme God. One who clearly sees both the illusioned soul and the material manifestation through the eye of the scripture and similarly sees the Supreme God (parameśvaram), who by contrast exists (tūśthantam) and is thus not perishable (avinaśyantam) and is the same (samam), not changing, this person sees things as they are. The result of attaining this vision is described next.

**Text 29**

समं पश्यन हि सर्वत्र समवृह्यतमीष्रम् । ।

न हिनस्त्यामनामां ततो याति परां गतिम् ॥२९॥

samam paśyan hi sarvatra samavasthitam iśvaram/

na hinasty atmanātmānam tato yāti parām gatim//

**Seeing the Supreme God situated equally everywhere, one does not degrade oneself by the mind. Hence one attains the supreme goal.**

Here ātmā means self as well as mind. However, it can also read “one does not degrade the self by the self,” meaning that the person of enlightened vision who sees God everywhere does not out of ignorance deny the existence of the soul, either jīvātmā or Paramātmā. This is the opinion of Śrīdhara Swāmī.

**Text 30**

प्रकृत्यावं कर्मशि क्रियामाणि सर्वसः ।

य: पश्यति तथामान्यकर्मकालं स पश्यति ॥३०॥

prakṛtyaiva ca karmāni kriyaṁañāni sarvaśah/

yah paśyati tathātmānam akartāram sa paśyati//

**by material nature; eva—alone; ca—and; karmāni—actions; kriyaṁañāni—carried out; sarvaśah—in all respects; yah—who; paśyati—he**
sees; tathā—also; ātmānam—himself; akartāram—the non-doer; saḥ—he; paśyati—he sees.

One who sees that all actions are carried out by material nature alone, and thus that the soul is not the doer, actually sees.

Text 31

Yadā bhūtā-prthāg-bhāvam eka-stham anupaśyati/
tata eva ca vistāram brahma sampadyate tadā//

yadā—when; bhūta—being; prthāg-bhāvam—separated state; eka-stham—situated in one; anupaśyati—one sees; tataḥ eva—thereafter; ca—and; vistāram—expansion; brahma—Brahman; sampadyate—he attains; tadā—at that time.

At the time one sees that the various states of being rest in one thing—material nature—and that they manifest from that same material nature, one attains transcendence.

The illusion of bodily difference springs from material nature, which generates a different body for each soul in accordance with its karma. The underlying unity of all souls, the commonality that unifies them as units of consciousness over and above their apparent differences as men, women, animals, and so on, is masked by the appearance of difference produced by material nature. The unity of all beings is realized when one sees that all bodies are products of the one material nature from which they rise and into which they dissipate. When one understands this, one sees from the vantage point of Brahman.

Text 32

Anādītvān nirguṇatvāt paramātmāyam avyayah/
śarīra-stho 'pi kaunteya na karoti na lipyate//
This imperishable Supreme Soul is beginningless and free from the influence of the modes of material nature. Even though situated within the body, O son of Kunti, he does not act, nor is he tainted.

Discussion of the Paramātmā was introduced in verse 28. While the individual soul like the Paramātmā is also imperishable, beginningless, and a nondoer who is not tainted by material nature even though situated within the body, it is not free from the influence of the material modes of nature (nirguṇatvāt), as is the Paramātmā. This is the difference between the two.

Kṛṣṇa next gives examples in the following two verses to help Arjuna understand how, like the Paramātmā, the jīvātmā does not mix with the body even though seated within it.

Text 33

As the all-pervading sky owing to its subtlety does not mix with anything, similarly the soul although seated in the body is not materially tainted under any circumstance.

Text 34
yathā prakāśayati ekaṁ kṛtsnam lokam imam raviḥ/
kṣetram kṣetri tathā kṛtsnam prakāśayati bhārataḥ//
yathā—as; prakāśayati—it illuminates; ekaṁ—one; kṛtsnam—entire; lokam—world; imam—this; raviḥ—sun; kṣetram—field; kṣetri—the owner of the field; tathā—similarly; kṛtsnam—all; prakāśayati—it illuminates; bhārata—O descendant of Bharata.

As the sun alone illuminates this entire world, similarly the owner of the field illuminates the entire field, O descendant of Bharata.

Text 35

kṣetra-kṣetrajñayo evam antaram jñāna-caksūṣā/
bhūta-prakṛti-mokṣaṁ ca ye vidūḥ yānti te param//
kṣetra-kṣetra-jñayoh—of the field and the knower of the field; evam—thus; antaram—the difference; jñāna-caksūṣā—through the eye of knowledge; bhūta—living entity; prakṛti—material nature; mokṣaṁ—liberation; ca—and; ye—who; vidūḥ—they know; yānti—they attain; te—they; param—supreme.

Those who see through the eye of knowledge the difference between the field and the knower of the field and thus know the means to the living entity’s liberation from material nature attain the Supreme themselves.
Text 1

śrī-bhagavān uvāca
paraṁ bhūyaḥ pravakṣyāmi jñānānāṁ jñānam uttamam/
yat jñātvā munayaḥ sarve paraṁ siddhim ito gatāḥ//

śrī-bhagavān uvāca—the Lord of Śrī said; param—highest; bhūyah—again; pravakṣyāmi—I shall explain; jñānānāṁ—of knowledge; jñānam—knowledge; uttamam—highest; yat—which; jñātvā—knowing; munayaḥ—sages; sarve—all; paraṁ—highest; siddhim—perfection; itaḥ—from here; gatāḥ—gone.

The Lord of Śrī said: I shall explain further the highest knowledge, the best knowledge, knowing which all the sages have gone from here to the highest perfection.

In the previous chapter Kṛṣṇa established that all material manifestations are a product of the interaction between the field and the knower of the field—matter and consciousness (Bg. 13.27). He also clearly explained that God pervades and dwells in every being. In this chapter Kṛṣṇa further establishes how God controls consciousness and matter and their interaction. They are not independent from God in their production of the world, as they are considered to be in Sāṅkhya philosophy. Kṛṣṇa will also speak about God’s transcendent status as opposed to his immanent status in relation to material nature. Following this, Kṛṣṇa elaborates on the guṇas
of material nature mentioned in the previous chapter (Bg. 13.20–24),
explaining their nature and how they bind the soul. In mentioning the
gunas in chapter 13, Kṛṣṇa said that understanding them is vital to libera-
tion. Indeed, transcending material nature’s influence implies that one has
understood it. Thus after discussing the modes of material nature in detail,
Kṛṣṇa concludes this chapter by emphasizing devotion to himself as the
means to transcend them. He explains the symptoms of one who has done
so and asserts once again his supreme position, stating that even Brahman
is subordinate to himself.¹

To insure Arjuna’s rapt attention, Kṛṣṇa speaks two introductory verses
that glorify the knowledge that he will present in this chapter. The word
bhūyaya means “again/further,” and param can be rendered “next.” Thus here
Kṛṣṇa speaks further of the knowledge he has touched on elsewhere. An
alternate understanding is that by use of the word bhūyaya, Kṛṣṇa is indicating
that the knowledge of this chapter is that supreme (param) knowledge of
devo tion he has been discussing throughout the Gītā. While the knowledge
itself is excellent, here Kṛṣṇa says that its fruit is also so, jñānānāṁ jñānam
uttamam. In accordance with the emphasis of the Gītā’s final six chapters,
this knowledge constitutes sambandha-jñāna, knowledge that forms the
underpinning of a devotional life that leads to liberation and love of God.

Text 2

Taking refuge of this knowledge and attaining a nature similar to mine,
souls are neither born at the time of creation, nor disturbed at the time
of dissolution.

¹. Kṛṣṇa states that there is nothing higher than himself in Bg. 7.7, that he personally
is the source of everything in Bg. 10.8, and that Brahman is subordinate to himself in Bg.
13.13, as he does in this chapter in verse 27.
The word *sarge* in this verse refers to the creation of the world. *Pralaye* refers to its dissolution. In between these two, the *jivátmá* passes through innumerable incarnations. Souls who take shelter of spiritual knowledge pass beyond the individual cycle of birth and death, as well as the larger cycle of the cosmic creation and dissolution. When the world is reborn, they are not. They attain a spiritual nature like that of Kṛṣṇa. In the opinion of Śridhara Svāmī, whom Viśvanātha Cakravarti Ṭhākura follows in this verse, the specific language here regarding this attainment (*mama sādharmyam āgatā˙*) refers to the liberated status known as *sārūpya-mukti.*

Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa comments that the use of the plural case in this verse indicates that the plurality of *jivás* is eternal.

How those who do not take shelter of spiritual knowledge and devotion are repeatedly placed within the womb of material nature, which gives them their material bodies, and how they are subsequently bound by the three *guna*s is broached by Kṛṣṇa in the following three verses.

**Text 3**

मम योनिमहत् ब्रह्मा नरिन्तरं गर्भं द्विध्राम्यहम्।
सम्भवः सर्वभूतानां ततो भवति भारत।

*mama yonir mahad brahma tasmin garbham dadhāmy aham/
sambhavaḥ sarva-bhūtānāṁ tato bhavati bhārata//*

*mama—my; yonih—womb; mahat—great; brahma—nourisher; tasmin—in that; garbham—ovum; dadhāmi—I place; aham—I; sambhavah—origin; sarva-bhūtānām—of all beings; tataḥ—thereafter; bhavati—it comes to exist; bhārata—O descendant of Bharata.*

_O Bhārata, the great nourisher, my material nature, is the womb that I impregnate, enabling all beings to come into existence._

The womb (*yonih*) of material nature is Kṛṣṇa’s secondary power. She is great (*mahat*), greater than the effect that ensues from her womb. In using the word *mahat* Kṛṣṇa differentiates his teaching from that of the Nyāya and Vaiśeṣika schools, in which it is considered that the cause is always

2. There are five types of liberation mentioned in the *Śrimad-Bhāgavatam*. Four of them are clearly devotional in nature, the fifth is less so. Of these, *sārūpya-mukti* refers to the status of attaining a body like that of Viśnū. Such liberated souls attend Viśnū/Nārāyaṇa in Vaikuṇṭha. For more on this see SB. 3.15.14.
subtler and smaller than the effect. They reason that because the cause is subtler than its effect, that which is supremely great cannot be the cause of anything.

The word brahma is derived from the root brh, which means to expand. Material nature is described here as brahma because she is the great nourisher (mahad brahma) consisting of the three gunas that nourishes all created beings. She belongs to God. She is his womb for the sake of generating the world. Once she is impregnated, she is the great cause of the expansion that is the world.

Through visualization followed by will, God impregnates the womb of material nature with the seed of the living beings. God makes sankalpa, a wish, “I shall become many,” endowing material nature with this resolve. God’s mystic glance of consciousness fathers all beings, be they gods or goddesses, men or women, animals or plants. The universality of his fatherhood is stated next for emphasis.

**Text 4**

sarva-yoniṣu kaunteya mūrtayaṁ sambhavanti yāḥ/

tāsāṁ brahma mahad yonir aham bija-pradaṁ pitā//

sarva-yoniṣu—in all wombs; kaunteya—O son of Kunti; mūrtayaḥ—the forms; sambhavanti—they become manifest; yāḥ—which; tāsāṁ—of them; brahma—material nature; mahat yonih—great womb; aham—I; bija-pradaḥ—seed-giving; pitā—father.

**O son of Kunti, all wombs and the forms that manifest from them issue from the womb of material nature, and I am the seed-giving father.**

Should Arjuna doubt that all the diverse forms of the living beings have a single origin, Kṛṣṇa stresses here that he is the only father and material nature the only mother of all beings in this world. God fathers all beings, not only in the sense of doing so at the time of creation in a macrocosmic sense, but within the creation in a microscopic sense as well. No birth would be possible without his will. This is the import of this verse.

However, Arjuna wonders about the binding agent between matter and spirit, for Kṛṣṇa has repeatedly stressed the categorical difference between
the two. How does the soul remain involved with matter other than by the force of its desire? Thus Kṛṣṇa speaks in detail about that binding influence inherent in matter and activated by consciousness that ties the soul to the bodily concept of life.

Text 5

सत्त्वं रजस्तमाद्वः गुणां प्रकृतिसम्भवाः।
निबध्नति महाभो देहे देहिनयत्वयम्॥८॥

sattvam rajas tama iti gunāḥ prakṛti-sambhavāḥ/
nibadhnanti mahā-bāho dehe dehinam avyayam//

sattvam—sattva; rajah—rajas; tamah—tamas; iti—thus; gunāḥ—qualities; prakṛti—material nature; sambhavāḥ—born; nibadhnanti—they bind; mahā-bāho—O mighty-armed one; dehe—in the body; dehinam—the embodied; avyayam—imperishable.

Sattva, rajas, and tamas, the qualities born of material nature, bind the imperishable yet embodied being to the body itself, O mighty-armed one.

The word guna means “rope.” The three ropes of material nature intertwined bind the embodied soul tightly. Guna also means “quality.” A particular combination of the gunas represents a specific strand or quality of matter and its ability to conduct enlightened thought (sattva), increase material longing (rajas), or immobilize (tamas).

Sattva is the intelligible essence that is part of the makeup of all things. Intelligibility is a characteristic of any existing object. An object is said to exist because it manifests itself to our intelligence and thus we comprehend it. That which enables an object to do so is its sattva. This sattva is possessed of the tendency to continually manifest itself.

Objects do not merely exist or make themselves manifest. All objects act and react and thus accomplish something. They do so because they are constituted of not merely intelligible material, but an energetic essence as well. This energetic essence that gives objects the power to act is called rajas.

Other than intelligible essence and energetic essence, all objects also possess inertia. While the energetic essence of one object enables it to overcome others, the resistance offered by other objects is the essence of inertia inherent in those objects. All objects are partially constituted of inertia. This inertia is called tamas. Thus intelligible essence, energetic
essence, and inertia essence, roughly analogous to mind stuff,3 energy, and mass, are involved in the makeup of all material manifestations. These three constituents are the three guṇas. They govern the world of physical as well as psychic action.

In the thought world, tāmas is represented as ignorance. Our passion to succeed and accomplish objectives is a result of rajas. Sattva represents our ability to comprehend and the state of actual clarity that gives rise to virtue and stability of character. Sattva begets peacefulness, rajas gives rise to restlessness, and tāmas appears as lethargy.

While most systems of thought are dualistic, they often also include a third state that is the suppression, negation, or balance of two polar opposites. Freud’s Eros and Thanatos are roughly analogous to the longing of rajas and the psychic inertia of tāmas that represents the need to forget oneself in intoxication and other diversions. Freud teaches that the sublimation of these two influences involves harnessing them, enabling a person to accomplish positive goals. This sublimation resembles the balance that sattva implies. In contrast to the Gītā’s culture of sattva, Freud’s cultivation of sublimation does not result in the transcendence of passion, but it does result in deferred pleasure, which is a characteristic of sattva mentioned in chapter 18 (Bg. 18.37).

Taoism’s yin and yang parallel the Gītā’s rajas and tāmas with the exception that in Taoism yang is cast in a somewhat more positive light than the Gītā’s tāmas. Yang is the period of rest that gives rise to new creativity. However, it is worth noting that there is a place for and thus a positive side to tāmas as well. The Taoist yin eventually turns into yang, just as rajas often degenerates into tāmas. When rajas predominates, as it does in our goal-oriented culture, it often results in destruction of the very society it created. Industrialization may end up destroying ecosystems and species, including our own.

The ideal in Taoist thinking is the state of equilibrium between yin and yang. This closely resembles the Gītā’s sattva, which is predominated over by Viṣṇu, who maintains the world by keeping the forces of passion (creation) and ignorance (destruction) in check.

The Gītā’s sattva is not transcendental. It is the mode of material nature that best facilitates the pursuit of transcendence. Thus the need to culture sattva is stressed later in this chapter and in subsequent chapters as well.

3. This is a term coined by Eddington in his Nature of the Physical World.
The Gîtā teaches that a psychologically well-adjusted person is aware of the particular influence the gunas exert on his psyche and thus acts in consideration of these influences. This basic awareness is itself the influence of sattva, which subtly governs the Gîtā’s varnāśrama social system. In the Gîtā’s vision, the essential first step of goodness is to be situated in one’s prescribed duty, a duty that corresponds with one’s psychology. By being properly placed, one finds a sense of harmony with one’s materially conditioned self that makes the cultivation of other aspects of goodness possible. One whose actions are not determined in consideration of one’s psychology will be out of balance and thus more easily fall prey to the influences of passion and ignorance. At the same time, sattva itself must also be transcended because it keeps us from ultimate freedom in loving union with God. Under its influence, one often remains a prisoner to tradition, rather than realizing the spiritual tradition’s essential message.

Those whose psyche is predominated by sattva can to that extent directly and naturally pursue transcendental life, whereas those dominated by rajas and tamas will find this course more difficult. Although to the extent that persons do practice they will be benefited, their ability to practice properly is often impeded by psychological dysfunctions resulting from being out of balance. This notion of the gunas and their relation to spiritual culture and psychological well-being fits well with the model of transpersonal psychology, in which the necessity of being a psychologically well-adjusted person or developing along these lines is considered a prerequisite or parallel discipline intended to compliment spiritual culture proper.

In this verse Krśna says that the gunas arise from material nature. They constitute its very fabric. However, because the gunas are not different from material nature, the question arises as to how they are born (prakṛti-sambhavāḥ) of it. Prior to the manifestation of the world, the gunas of prakṛti exist within God in a state of equilibrium. Each of the gunas holds the others in check as God rests figuratively on the causal ocean (kārana-samudra) on the eve of creation. As he awakens, the cosmic mind of the Paramātma is at first still. Then thought commences like a seed that first roots itself. This is followed by the sprouting of actual thought, visualization of that thought, and finally the will to enact the thought. The flowering of the first thought of the Paramātma is the will to expand, “I shall become many.” (Ch. Up. 6.2.3) This thought disturbs the equilibrium of the gunas and thus causes their birth. Material nature begins to manifest along with the jīvas, and the desire of the jīvas meets with the binding agent of the three gunas.
The creation of the world is more of an expansion than it is a creation in the strict sense. As we learned in the previous chapter, both the secondary and intermediate powers of God, the ingredients of the world, are beginningless. They are never created or destroyed. The two come together through the above-mentioned process, and after some time this process is reversed. The material manifestation returns to an unmanifest condition. This reversal is the inevitable result of disturbing the original state of equilibrium. Once disturbed, all that evolves from the state of equilibrium tends ultimately toward returning from instability to stability. Returning to the state of equilibrium, the gunas rest. The gross material manifestation returns to its subllest state of equilibrium. The notion of a universe that plays itself out until it reverses its outward motion and returns to an unmanifest condition is roughly analogous to the modern scientific principle of entropy.

The individual units of consciousness also return to their source, and the desires of the jivas become dormant, their individuality obscured, as the heterogeneous multiplicity returns to a homogeneous rest. God rests during the cosmic night of creation, presumably tired of the love affair of the world. When he awakens, he again sets it in motion out of compassion for the jiva souls, who once again are afforded the opportunity to love him.

It is out of love for the jivas that God wills to become many again (lokavat tu lilä-kaivalyam, Vs. 2.1.33), and thus the jivas evolve from a plane of undifferentiated consciousness in which their individuality is dormant into an individual unit of will, a reflection (cid-abhāsa) of God’s image with the stamp of his consciousness. From homogeneity, heterogeneity emerges again. The jivas, units of will, meet material nature and express themselves in relation to her. This creates a problem for them, for these individual units of will, unlike their source, are weak in relation to material nature. Their likeness to God is qualitative, their difference quantitative. They cannot control material nature as God can.

To facilitate the jivas, God himself manifests within the world along with revealed knowledge. With the help of this knowledge, the jivas can deal with material nature such that they ultimately rise above the gunas’ influence to know the love of God and share in that love with him. Although this is the plan of God, father of all souls, each soul, being an imprint of God, is constituted of will, and this will can be misused. Compared to material nature, the jiva is small. It can become overwhelmed by material nature’s influence. If the jiva does not take guidance from scripture, it is lost to bondage. As God is motivated from the start by love, the need for his intervention
arises, and thus his descent as the *avatar*. To this end the *Bhagavad-gītā* is spoken, that the *jīvas* might know the love of their divine source.

The material predicament can be viewed as an unavoidable consequence of God’s love. The Paramātmā who presides over material nature manifests the *jīvas* out of love. The consequence of this act of love is the activation of the material nature and the *guṇas*, which in turn driven by time (kāla) provide a field of activity for the *jīvas*. This field, however, is insufficient to fulfill the *jīvas*’ search for love, nor are the *jīvas* competent to deal with her influence alone, yet they are often unwilling to take help. To realize their potential for love, they must meet their maker. Helplessly searching the field, they cannot find themselves or their source. Bound by the three *guṇas*, the *jīvas*’ only hope lies in God’s act of salvation.

Over the next three verses, Kṛṣṇa discusses each of the *guṇas* and the nature of their influence.

**Text 6**

*वति सत्त्वं निर्मलत्वात् प्रकाशक्षमनामयम्।
सुखसंगेन बाध्यन्ति ज्ञानसंगेन चानागः॥६॥*

*tatra sattvasvam nirmalatvāt prakāśakam anāmayam/
sukha-sangena badhṇāti jñāna-sangena cānagha//*

Of these, *sattva* is free of impurity. It is illuminating and without sorrow. O sinless one, it binds through attachment to happiness and knowledge.

The unadulterated influence of *sattva* on the soul is purification, illumination, and happiness. *Sattva* is transparent and luminous like a crystal. It is free from impurity and thus produces purity, and it is free from sorrow and thus gives rise to happiness. *Anāmayam* also means freedom from disease. Under *sattva*’s influence one does not engage in activities that cause distress or ignorance. The illuminating effects of *sattva* are such that under its influence the *jīvatma* can observe the transformations occurring from *rajas* and *tamas*. *Sattva* effects a sense of detachment, and its influence is conducive to spiritual practice.
However, in spite of *sattva*’s virtue, it is nonetheless binding for the soul. It too must be transcended, for it produces attachment to the mental modifications that cause knowledge and happiness to manifest. It thus gives rise to a sense of complacency and mental serenity; however, because it produces attachment to happiness and knowledge, it also causes one to be attached to the means of producing them. Although *sattva* is useful for spiritual pursuit, when not channeled toward transcendence itself, one becomes susceptible to the influences of *rajas* and *tamas*, which are not conducive to spiritual practice.

When the *jīvātmā* identifies itself with the material body, the influence of *sattva* causes it to think “I am happy” and “I know,” when in fact the qualities of happiness and knowledge are products of material nature, as described in the seventh verse of the previous chapter. Characteristics of the object (material nature) cannot be characteristics of the subject (the soul). Thus the identification and attachment resulting from *sattva* amounts to ignorance. Attachment to happiness and knowledge causes pride and the descent into *rajas*. Here Kṛṣṇa implores sinless Arjuna (*anagha*) not to be bound even by *sattva*, much less come under the influence of the two lower *gunas*.

**Text 7**

रजो रागात्मकम् विद्धिः तृष्णा-सांग-समुद्भवम्।
निबध्नती कौन्तेय वर्मयं संगेन देहिनम्॥७॥

*rajo rāgātmakam viddhi trṣṇā-saṅga-samudbhavam/
 tan nibadhnaṁi kaunteya karma-saṅgena dehinam//*

rajah—*rajas*; rāga-ātmakam—characterized by passion; viddhi—know; trṣṇā—hankering; saṅga—attachment; samudbhavam—born of; tat—that; nibadhnaṁ—it binds; kaunteya—O son of Kunti; karma-saṅgena—by attachment to action; dehinam—the embodied.

Know that the nature of *rajas* is passion born of hankering and attachment. This binds the embodied, O son of Kunti, by attachment to action.

The root word *raṇj* from which *rajas* is derived means to color. *Rajas* colors the clear crystal (*nirmala*) of the sattvic heart with longing (*trṣṇa*) and attachment (*rāga*) to action in pursuit of such longings. Under the influence of *rajas* one hankers for what one does not have and experiences attachment
for what one possesses. It causes attachment to the fruits of one’s work and to work itself (karma-śaṅgena).

Rajas is the birthplace of sense desires (kāma). In the third chapter (Bg. 3.37), Kṛṣṇa describes kāma born of rajas to be the greatest enemy of the soul. When we try to attain sense objects we are attached to, we also become attached to the means of acquiring them. This in turn gives birth to more desires and more work in a never-ending, ever-increasing spiral. Under the influence of rajas, the soul, although not the agent of action, thinks, “I shall do this; I shall enjoy the fruit of my work.”

Text 8

ṭमस्यत्जानं विद्भि मोहनं सब्देहिनाम्।
प्रमादालास्यनिद्राभिलाह्यानि भारतं॥८॥

tamas tv ajñāna-jam viddhi mohanam sarva-dehinām/
pramādālasya-nidrābhīs tan nibadhnāti bhārata/

tamah—tamas; tu—however; ajñāna-jam—born of ignorance; viddhi—know; mohanam—delusion; sarva-dehinām—of all embodied beings; pramādā-
ālasya-nidrābhiḥ—through madness, lethargy, and sleep; tat—that; nibadhnāti—it binds; bhārata—O descendant of Bharata.

On the other hand, know that tamas is born of the ignorance that de-
ludes all embodied beings. O descendant of Bharata, it binds through
madness, lethargy, and sleep.

Kṛṣṇa differentiates tamas from rajas and sattva here by the word tu (how-
ever). The qualities of tamas are the antithesis of sattva and rajas. Madness (pramāda) is the opposite of sattva’s illuminating influence that produces accurate understanding. Lethargy (ālasya) opposes the tendency to act that is characteristic of rajas. Sleep (nidrā) opposes both sattva and rajas. Tamas, born of ignorance, has the power to cover the soul and thus produce a delusion (mohanam).

Text 9

सत्त्वम् सुखे साध्यति रजः कर्मणि भारत।
ज्ञानमात्रं तु नाम: प्रमादे साध्यायतु॥९॥

sattvam sukhe sañjayati rajaḥ karmanī bhārata/
jñānam āvṛtya tu tamah pramāde sañjayaty uta/
sattvam—sattva; sukhe—in happiness; sañjayati—it causes attachment; raja˙—rajas; karmani—in action; bhårata—O descendant of Bharata; jñānam—knowledge; ārtya—covering; tu—but; tamah—tamas; pramāde—in delusion; sañjayati—it causes attachment; uta—indeed.

O descendant of Bharata, whereas sattva causes attachment to happiness and rajas attachment to action, tamas, covering knowledge, leads to delusion.

Sattva causes attachment to happiness, while rajas causes attachment to action. Tamas often covers actual knowledge, even as one is on the verge of understanding. In this way it produces misunderstanding, engendering attachment to acts contrary to one’s moral obligations and spiritual pursuit. These are the most important effects of the three guṇas.

Text 10

rajas tama˙ caḥbhīhubya sattvam bhavati bhårata/
raja˙ sattvam tamaš caiva tamah sattvam rajas tathā//

raja˙—rajas; tamah—tamas; ca—and; abhīhubya—overpowering; sattvam—sattva; bhavati—becomes; bhårata—O descendant of Bharata; raja˙—rajas; sattvam—sattva; tamah—tamas; ca—and; eva—similarly; tamah—tamas; sattvam—sattva; raja˙—rajas; tathā—thus.

O descendant of Bharata, sattva increases by subduing rajas and tamas; rajas increases by overpowering sattva and tamas; similarly, tamas increases by overpowering sattva and rajas.

Each of the guṇas is characterized by mutually contradictory effects, and they are all present at the same time. However, they never fully cancel one another out. They influence the soul with varying potency resulting from past karma. Each guṇa succeeds in influencing a person by temporarily overpowering the other guṇas. The three guṇas are in constant flux, vying for dominance, and prārabdha-karma is the driving force of this apparent competition. The dominant influence of a particular guṇa is observable through external symptoms. Krṣna speaks of these symptoms in the following three verses.
When the light of knowledge shines through all the gates of the body, it should be understood that sattva is dominant.

Knowledge occurs when the bodily gates of the senses in touch with sense objects are combined with proper discrimination resulting in intellectual illumination. Detachment brought about by sattva affords one the ability to be objective and thus know a thing for what it is without coloring it by attachment, which results in loss of objectivity.

The word uta (etcetera) implies that when happiness appears through the senses, this too is indicative of sattva’s influence. Baladeva Vidyabhūṣaṇa says, “The word uta should be taken in the sense of api (also), that one should also know [that sattva is predominant] by other signs, such as happiness [appearing in the gates of the body].” Viśvanātha Cakravartī Thākura says that the word uta indicates that the happiness of sattva is generated by the soul. Sattva sheds light on the soul.
Greed, constant endeavor, ambitious undertakings, restlessness, and hankering are born when the influence of rajas is dominant, O best of the Bharatas.

Lobha refers to insatiable desire that increases constantly, even after the object of one's desire is attained. A person influenced by this product of rajas is unable to part with his money enough to donate a portion of it for spiritual or other beneficial causes. If he does come to part with it, he does not entirely let go of it, attaching to it his particular desire as to how he would like it spent.

Text 13

Aprakāśaḥ apravṛttiḥ ca pramāḍaḥ moḥa eva ca/
tamasya etāni jāyante viveśdhe kuru-nandana/

Aprakāśaḥ—darkness; apravṛttiḥ—inactivity; ca—and; pramāḍaḥ—bewilderment; moḥa—delusion; eva—certainly; ca—and; tamasi—in tamas; etāni—these; jāyante—they arise; viveśdhe—in the dominance; kuru-nandana—O descendant of Kuru.

O descendant of the Kuru dynasty, when tamas predominates surely darkness, inactivity, bewilderment, and delusion are born.

Aprakāśa refers to the condition in which proper understanding does not arise despite good instruction. It also refers to the lack of discrimination that leads one to accept conclusions that are opposed to the scriptural canon. Apravṛtti indicates unwillingness to engage in any undertaking whatsoever or not caring about anything. Pramāḍa is the unwillingness to accept as true something that is staring one in the face. By use of the word ca in conjunction with moḥa, sleep and other characteristics of ignorance are implied. The emphasis expressed through the word eva implies that moḥa (illusion) illustrates the complete manifestation of ignorance.

It is important that the spiritual practitioner be aware of the external symptoms of the three guṇas. Such awareness better enables him to cultivate the influence of sattva for the sake of spiritual progress. Rising above
rajas and tamas enables one to think clearly and pursue transcendence of the gunas altogether.

The extent to which one is influenced by any of these gunas at the time of death determines one’s next birth. Krṣṇa speaks about this in the following two verses.

Text 14

yadā sattve pravṛddhe tu pralayaṁ yāti deha-bhṛt/
   tadottama-vidām lokāṁ amalāṁ pratipadyate//

yadā—when; sattve—in sattva; pravṛddhe—in the dominance; tu—but; pralayaṁ—death; yāti—he goes; deha-bhṛt—the embodied; tadā—at that time; uttama-vidām—of those who know the ultimate; lokāṁ—the worlds; amalāṁ—pure; pratipadyate—he attains.

When the embodied being dies under the influence of sattva, he attains the pure worlds of those who adore the ultimate.

The word uttama-vidām indicates those who adore (vidām) the ultimate/highest (uttamam). The pure worlds (lokāṁ amalāṁ) are the heavenly realms of religious pleasure and beyond where happiness and spiritual pursuit predominate, respectively. According to Hindu cosmology, beyond material heaven attained by the pious, planets of spiritual practice exist where God is perpetually worshipped and meditated on with a view to attain him. One who dies under the influence of sattva attains such destinations.

Text 15

rajasī pralayaṁ gatvā karma-saṁgīsu jāyate/
   tathā pralīnas tamasi mūḍha-yoniśu jāyate//

rajasī—in rajas; pralayaṁ—death; gatvā—going; karma-saṁgīsu—among those attached to fruitive activities; jāyate—he is born; tathā—similarly; pralīnas—dying; tamasi—in tamas; mūḍha-yoniśu—in the womb of the deluded; jāyate—he is born.
When one dies under the influence of rajas, he is born among those attached to fruitive activity. Similarly, when one dies under the influence of tamas, he takes birth from the wombs of deluded fools.

Those attached to fruitive activity (karma-sāngisu) are human beings. The deluded fools (madha) are animals and humans who act like them, as well as still lower species of life.

Text 16

It is said that the result of virtuous action is pure and accomplished through sattva. The result of work in rajas is sorrow, and the result of work in tamas, ignorance.

The result of action performed under the influence of sattva is pure (nirmalam). It is happiness that is not colored by rajas or tamas. In rajas, action brings predominantly unhappy results. Whatever happiness is derived from action under the influence of rajas is eventually transformed into sorrow. Action performed under the influence of tamas produces ignorance. Such activity is synonymous with vice.

A detailed explanation of the characteristics of activities that are performed under the influence of the different guṇas is found in chapter 18 (Bg. 18.23–25). Regarding the reason for the various results of actions performed under the guṇas’ influence, Kṛṣṇa reiterates in the next verse what he discussed in verses 11 through 13.

Text 17
From *sattva* knowledge is born, and from *rajas* avarice is born. From *tamas* error, delusion, as well as ignorance are born.

The effects of sattvic work are purity and happiness because from it knowledge is born. The effect of *rajas* is sorrow because from *rajas* hankering without end is born. Working under the influence of *tamas* produces ignorance because from *tamas* ignorance is born. Ignorance produces more ignorance, whereas according to earlier verses (Bg. 2.62–3, 3.37), *rajas* tends to degrade into ignorance over time. Later in chapter 16 (Bg. 16.19) this is also indicated. *Rajas* can be transformed directly into *tamas* or *sattva*.

**Text 18**

उर्ध्वम् गच्छन्ति सत्वस्य मध्ये तिष्ठन्ति राजसः।
जग्नयंगुणवृत्तस्य अथो गच्छन्ति तामसः॥१८॥

*ūrdhvam* gacchanti sattva-sthā madhye tiṣṭhanti rājasāḥ/
jaghnaya-guṇa-vṛtti-sthā adho gacchanti tāmasāḥ//

*ūrdhvam*—upwards; gacchanti—they go; sattva-sthā—those established in *sattva*; madhye—in the middle; tiṣṭhanti—they remain; rājasāḥ—those in *rajas*; jaghnya—lowest; guṇa—quality; vṛtti-sthā—in the condition; adhah—downwards; gacchanti—they go; tāmasāḥ—those in *tamas*.

**Those established in *sattva* go upwards; those in *rajas* remain mediocre; those in *tamas*, the lowest quality, go downwards.**

In verse 15 Kṛṣṇa spoke of dying in a particular *guna* and the birth that results from it. In this verse he speaks of one’s lifestyle, which generally determines one’s consciousness at the time of death.

Those whose lives are established in *sattva* go upwards in their next life to take birth in planets of the pious and spiritually inclined. Those established
in rajas remain in the middle planetary system, which includes earth. Those established in tamas go down, taking lower births. This verse may also apply to one’s social status within this life. Unbridled passion is not enough for material advancement. Sense control, the influence of sattva, must harness rajasic energy. If it does not, this energy will degrade into tamas.

Thus far in this chapter Krishna has spoken of God’s position as the seed-giving father of material existence, as well as of the guṇas and how they bind the soul. In the next two verses, he turns Arjuna’s attention to the means to transcend the guṇas and attain a spiritual nature like that of God.

**Text 19**

नान्यं गुणेभ्यं कर्तारं यदा दृश्तानुपाश्यati

गुणेभ्यं परम वेति मद्भावं सो भिक्षुदिगच्छति

nānyam guṇēbhyah kartāram yadā draśṭānupaśyati/

guṇēbhyah ca param vetti mad-bhāvam so ’dhigacchati//

na—not; anyam—other; guṇēbhyah—than the guṇas; kartāram—agent; yadā—when; draśṭā—perceiver; anupaśyati—sees; guṇēbhyah—than the guṇas; ca—and; param—higher; vetti—he knows; mat-bhāvam—my nature; saḥ—he; adhigacchati—he attains.

When the perceiver sees no other agent of action than the guṇas and knows what is beyond the guṇas, he attains a nature like my own.

In the word anupaśyati the prefix anu implies that the seer (draśṭā) sees (paśyati) with the help of God (anu). He is not independent in the act of perceiving. When by the grace of God a person develops acute power of discrimination and thus sees that the guṇas are the agents of all actions and that he is only the witness, he attains self-realization. Such a person sees that all of the bodily organs are but transformations of the guṇas and thus different from himself. When he sees further that not only he himself is above the guṇas, but that God is above them and never comes under their influence, he attains God-realization (mad-bhāvam). Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa says that mad-bhāvam indicates the quality of Krishna that is eternally liberated or the qualification to enter into the highest devotion. Viśvanātha Cakravarti refers to verse 26 of this chapter to further explain the meaning of mad-bhāvam—post-liberated bhakti.
Text 20

When the embodied being transcends these three guṇas from which the body originates, released from birth, death, old age, and their distress, he attains the nectar of immortality.

Text 21

Arjuna said: O Lord, by what symptoms is one who has transcended these three guṇas recognized? How does he conduct himself, and how does he transcend the three guṇas?

In verses 19 and 20 Kṛṣṇa speaks of the jīvanmukta, one who is liberated while still embodied. In this verse Arjuna asks further about such persons. Although his questions are similar to those asked in chapter 2 (Bg. 2.54), here Arjuna’s inquiry is primarily concerned with the means by which one transcends the guṇas. Arjuna also wants to know if the liberated soul
is independent of scriptural guidelines or enjoined to follow them. Kṛṣṇa answers in the following five verses.

**Texts 22–25**

Śrībhagavānuvāca

prakāśaṁ ca pravṛttim ca moham eva ca pāṇḍava/
na dveṣti sampravṛttāni na nivṛttāni kāṅkṣati//
udāsīna-vad āśino gunair yo na vicālyate/
gunāḥ varṣanta ity evam yo ’vatiṣṭhati neṅgate//
sama-duhkha-sukhaṁ svā-sthāṁ svā-loṣṭāṁ kāṅcanaṁ/
tulya-priyāpriyo dhīraṁ tulya-nindāma-saṁstutih//
māṇapamānyoṁ tulyas tulyo mitrāri-pakṣayoh/
sarvārambhaparītyāṁī guruṁtīṁ s ucyate//

śrī-bhagavān uvāca—The Lord of Śrī said; prakāśaṁ—illumination; ca—and; pravṛttim—activity; ca—and; moham—delusion; eva ca—and; pāṇḍava—O son of Pāṇḍu; na—not; dveṣti—dislikes; sampravṛttāni—presences; na—not; nivṛttāni—absences; kāṅkṣati—he desires; udāsīna-vat—as if neutral; āśinaḥ—seated; gunāḥ—by the gunas; yah—who; na—not; vicālyate—he is disturbed; gunāḥ—the gunas; varṣanta—they are operative; iti evam—thus; yah—who; avatīṣṭhati—he remains; na—not; inṅgate—he flickers; samaṁ—equal; duḥkhaṁ—sorrow; sukhaṁ—happiness; svā-sthāṁ—situated in himself; samaṁ—equally; loṣta—a lump of earth; asmaṁ—stone; kāṅcanaṁ—gold; tulyaṁ—equally disposed; priyaṁ—dear; apriyāḥ—not dear; dhīraḥ—steady; tulyaṁ—equal; nindāḥ—blame; āṭma-saṁstutiḥ—praise of himself; māṇa-apamāṇayoḥ—in honor and dishonor; tulyaṁ—equal; tulyaṁ—equal; mitraḥ—friend; ariḥ—enemy; pakṣayoh—to the parties; sarvaḥ—all; āraṁbhaḥ—undertaking; parītyāṁ—renouncer; guna-atītah—gone beyond the gunas; saḥ—he; ucyate—is said.
The Lord of Śrī said: O son of Pāṇḍu, one who does not like or dislike the presence or absence of illumination, activity, or delusion, who is seated as though indifferent, undisturbed by the guṇas, thinking “only the guṇas are operative,” who thus remains steady, to whom happiness and sorrow are equal, who dwells in the self, to whom a lump of earth, a stone, and gold are the same, who regards equally the desirable and undesirable, who is steadfast, to whom blame and praise are equal, to whom honor and dishonor are the same, who treats alike friend and foe, and who has renounced all material undertakings—such a person is said to have transcended the guṇas.

The symptoms mentioned in verse 22 are perceivable only to oneself. Others cannot observe them. They are internal symptoms of liberated souls, as opposed to their outward conduct, which is discussed in the subsequent verses.

The influx of the guṇas in the form of illumination (sattva), activity (rajas), and delusion (tamas) is experienced by the jīvanmukta, as is its absence. In either condition he remains aloof, knowing these influences to be merely the interaction of the guṇas. He may be illuminated with knowledge or deluded by sensual information, mistaking a rope for a snake, but all of this has no bearing on his self, and he remains acutely aware of this.

The conduct of the self-realized is observable criterion. Their conduct is to be emulated in practice, whereas it is second nature for them. Next Kṛṣṇa describes how they arrive at this status.

Text 26

Mā ca yo ’vyabhicāreṇa bhakti-yogena sevate/
   sa guṇān samatītyaitān brahma-bhūyāya kalpate//
mām ca yo ’vyabhicāreṇa bhakti-yogena sevate/
    sa guṇān samatītyaitān brahma-bhūyāya kalpate//

mām—me; ca—and; yah—who; avyabhicāreṇa—exclusively; bhakti-yogena—by devotional yoga; sevate—he serves; saḥ—he; guṇān—the guṇas; samatītya—transcending; etāṁ—these; brahma-bhūyāya—to absorption in Brahman; kalpate—he is fit.

One who serves me exclusively with the yoga of constant devotion, having transcended the guṇas, is fit for liberation.
Here Kṛṣṇa answers Arjuna’s third question regarding the means of liberation. Viśvanātha Cakravartī comments that the word ca in this verse is used for the sake of emphasizing that devotion is the only means to attain transcendence.

Those who are able by the grace of God to perceive the difference between themselves and the guṇas will attain liberation, should they engage in constant devotion to Kṛṣṇa. Others who do not take to devotion will not. Those who attain Brahman realization do so by combining their power of discrimination with devotion to the one who is beyond the guṇas (God). Regarding the unalloyed devotees, they are already situated in Brahman merely by their devotion to Kṛṣṇa, for as we shall see in the final verse of this chapter, Brahman realization is subordinate to God (Paramātmā/Bhagavān) realization.

Should Arjuna wonder how Kṛṣṇa’s devotees will attain Brahman, Kṛṣṇa speaks the concluding verse of this chapter. Should anyone else wonder how devotion to Kṛṣṇa, who to the philosophically untrained, nondevotional eye appears to be a mere human, can bear the fruit of Brahman realization, Kṛṣṇa next states, as he did in the previous chapter (Bg. 13.13), that Brahman itself is subordinate to him.

**Text 27**

ब्रह्मानो हि प्रतिष्ठाहाम अभित्यस्यावयायस्य ।
शाश्वस्य च धर्मस्य भूत्वायकान्तिकस्य ।२७॥

*brahmaḥ*—of Brahman; *hi*—certainly; *pratisthā*—the basis; *aham*—I; *amṛtasya*—of the immortal; *avyayasya*—of the imperishable; *ca*—and; *śāsvatasya*—of the everlasting; *ca*—and; *dharmasya*—of dharma; *sukhasya*—of happiness; *aikāntikasya*—of absolute; *ca*—and.

*For I am the basis of Brahman, the immortal, the imperishable, everlasting dharma, and absolute bliss.*

Here Kṛṣṇa informs Arjuna that his unalloyed devotees, who approach him with devotion from the very beginning of their spiritual practice, upon attaining him automatically attain Brahman. Brahman, Kṛṣṇa says here, is subordinate to himself. It rests on him. He is its foundation. Who
knows Kṛṣṇa, Bhagavān, knows Brahman in full. The reverse, however, is not necessarily true.

As Kṛṣṇa is the support of Brahman, so too is he the support of the immortal, the imperishable, everlasting dharma, and absolute bliss. One may ask, “What is everlasting dharma (sāsvatasya ca dharmasya)?” The Vaiṣṇavas reply that all paths other than bhakti terminate on delivering their result. Bhakti alone manifests both in practice and perfection. Its sadhana and sadhya are the same. The only difference is that one is unripe bhakti, the other ripe.

From this chapter it is clear that relative material existence resulting from attachment to the guṇas is easily transcended by devotion to Kṛṣṇa, either unalloyed or mixed with jñāna. Indeed, Kṛṣṇa never really speaks of any means other than bhakti.
Text 1

The Lord of Śrī said: It is said that there is an imperishable asvattha tree with its roots above and branches below, and whose leaves are the Vedic hymns. One who knows this tree knows all there is to be known.

Kṛṣṇa concluded the previous chapter by stating that Brahman is subordinate to himself. He is the Supreme Person. He also taught Arjuna that devotion to himself is the means to transcend the guṇas. His devotees attain Brahman realization in the course of their devotion to him. After having so clearly stated his supremely exalted position, Kṛṣṇa finds Arjuna wonder struck as the present chapter commences. In this chapter he elaborates on the position of the Supreme Being and thus clarifies how it is that one who becomes his devotee realizes Brahman. In the course of doing so, he also speaks further about the nature of the material world and the need for renunciation.
In the first four verses that introduce this chapter, Kṛṣṇa compares the material world to an aśvattha tree. The sacred aśvattha tree is sometimes considered to be the banyan, pippala, or fig tree, all of which are from the same family. From the further description of it in the following verse, it appears that the banyan tree with its branches that extend downward forming new roots, and subsequently becoming a veritable forest of its own, most closely resembles the tree Kṛṣṇa is referring to.

The word aśvattha, derived from the words aśva and stha, first appears in the Vedas, where it refers to that which a horse (aśva) is tethered to (stha). The material world is strong like this post and capable of tying down the unbridled spirit of the soul.

Several commentators have brought out another meaning of aśvattha. The Sanskrit word çvas means tomorrow. That which lasts until tomorrow is śvattha. Aśvattha is thus that which will not last until tomorrow.

Although Kṛṣṇa also describes this tree as imperishable (avyayam), this is in relation to its bewildering potency for those who do not seek to cut it down. Such persons remain in saṁsāra, chasing the aśvattha tree of material existence, which, while perpetual in an overall sense, is at the same time here today and gone tomorrow in terms of its varied manifestations. While it remains for those intent on material life, it has no tomorrow for the liberated.

In Kṛṣṇa’s aśvattha metaphor, he has turned the sacred tree upside down. Bhaktivedanta Swami Prabhupāda comments that we all have experience of an upside-down tree when we visit the bank of a river and see one reflected in the water. Similarly the upside-down aśvattha tree of this verse represents the material world, where the priorities have been turned upside down. This is the nature of the material world compared here to the aśvattha tree.

The metaphorical aśvattha’s roots extend upwards (ürdhva-mūlam), as the material world is rooted (mūlam) in the Supreme Being, who is the highest (ürdhva) cause of all causes. Śrīdharācārya comments that this Supreme Person is superior to both the perishable material manifestation and the imperishable soul. Kṛṣṇa states this himself later in this chapter. Indeed, this is the import of the entire chapter.

The aśvattha’s branches extend downward and represent the variegated, many-branched material experience, the various forms of material life. The real life within the tree of material experience is its leaves, representing the Vedic hymns, from which the world is said to manifest. Katha Upaniṣad says that a tree is beautified by its leaves. The leaves of the Gitā’s aśvattha
tree beautify it because from the Vedic rites the karmic world of material prospect expands. From these leaves one can achieve the four goals of human life: righteousness (dharma), wealth (artha), material desire (kåma), and liberation (mokṣa). Because the aśvattha tree provides facility for attaining these goals, it is the best of trees, and Kṛṣṇa himself has said in the tenth chapter of the Gītā, “Of trees I am the aśvattha.” (Bg. 10.26)

However, in spite of its virtue, the aśvattha tree must be cut down if one is to succeed in human life by attaining love of God. The word vṛkṣa (tree) is related with the verbal root brḥ (to uproot). One who knows this tree knows the import of the Vedas and thus endeavors to cut it down. To this end, the present chapter stresses renunciation, without which liberation is not possible. Renunciation is the ax by which the aśvattha tree is cut down. While discrimination between matter and consciousness has been discussed in the previous two chapters, the renunciation that gives rise to proper discrimination is highlighted in this chapter. Detachment from an object affords the objectivity required to understand its nature. Preliminary discrimination leads to renunciation, and this renunciation begets mature discrimination. Both of these can be helpful to one beginning the path of devotion,¹ while devotion itself also brings about knowledge and detachment.

Text 2

अध्रुत्र व्र्ग्मण्यन्न्ययाधनार्थयानि
गुणपूज्यते विषयप्रवलाला: ॥
अध्रु मूलान्यन्न्ययाधनानिनि
कर्मानुप्रलयनि मनुष्यलोके ॥२॥

adhaś cordhwam prasṛtās tasya sākhā
guna-pravṛddhā visaya-pravālāh/
adhaś ca mūlānī anusantatāni
karmānubandhini manuṣya-loke//

adhaḥ—downward; ca—and; urdhvam—upward; prasṛtāḥ—spread; tasya—its; sākhāḥ—branches; guṇa-pravṛddhā—nourished by the guṇas; visaya—sense object; pravālāḥ—twigs; adhaḥ—downward; ca—and; mūlānī—roots; anusantatāni—extended; karma-anubandhini—engendering action; manuṣya-loke—in human society.

¹. See Brs. 1.2.248.
This tree’s branches, nourished by the guṇas, spread above and below and have sense objects as its twigs. It also has roots of karmic reaction that reach downward in human society.

The figurative aśvattha tree has branches that grow downward and take root in the ground of material existence. These are its secondary roots (mūḷāṇi). Normally they would grow upwards toward the principal roots of this upside-down tree, but here they are described as growing downward as well, indicating further the bewildering nature of the tree of material existence. Indeed, the word ca (adhaś ca mūḷāṇi) indicates that the secondary roots of this tree are spread in all directions. These secondary roots symbolize desires that cause work and take humanity to different branches of the tree, thus entangling everyone in karmic reactions (karmānubandhīṇi). The perpetuation of karma springs from the human form of life.

The branches of the aśvattha tree extend up and down and represent higher and lower forms of life, respectively. They are nourished by the guṇas. The tender twigs and buds represent sense objects that first catch one’s attention. As buds appear on the ends of branches, so do the sense objects connect with the external extremities of the body, the senses.

Texts 3–4

न रूपमस्येह तथोपलभ्यते
नान्तो न चादिन्च च समप्रलिङ्गाः।
अधुन्यमेव सुविरूध्मूलः।
मसमस्यणं वृद्धेन चिन्त्या॥३॥
ततः पदं त्यंस्मिर्यातिवियः
यस्मिन् गता न निन्वतित्ति भूयः।
तमेव चारं पुरां च प्रपोऽयः
यतः प्रवृत्तिः प्रयुत्ति पुराणी॥४॥

na rūpaṁ asyeha tathopalabhyaṁ
nānto na ca dādāṁ na ca sampratiṣṭhāṁ/
aśvattham enaṁ su-virūḏha-mūlaṁ
asanga-sastraṇa ṛdheṇa chittvāḥ//
tataḥ padam tat parimārgitavyaṁ
yasmin gatā na nivartanti bhūyaṁ/
tam eva cādyāṁ puruṣaṁ prapadye
yataḥ pravṛttīṁ prasṛtāṁ purāṇi//
na—not; rūpam—form; asya—of it; iha—in this world; tathā—also; upalabhyate—it can be perceived; na—not; antah—end; na—not; ca—also; ādīh—beginning; na—not; ca—also; sampratīsthā—foundation; aśvattham—aśvattha tree; enam—this; su-virūḍha—fully grown; mūlam—root; aṣaṅgā-sastraṇa—by the weapon of detachment; dṛḍhena—by strong; chitt-vā—cutting; tataḥ—thereafter; padam—goal; tat—that; parimārgitavyam—to be pursued; yasmin—where; gataḥ—gone; na—not; nivartanti—they return; bhūyāḥ—again; tam—that; eva—certainly; ca—also; ādyam—original; pūruṣam—person; prapade—I surrender; yataḥ—from whom; pravṛttiḥ—activity; prasṛtā—extended; purāṇī—old.

This tree’s form is not perceptible in this world—not its beginning, end, or foundation. Cut down this deeply rooted aśvattha tree with the ax of detachment and pursue that place which having attained one never returns, thinking, “I surrender to the original person from whom the primordial activities of creation expand.”

The aśvattha tree of this world is imperceptible for one entangled in its branches. Although it is difficult to see it (upalabhyate na) for what it is, and although its secondary roots of our desires are deeply rooted (su-virūḍha), it should nonetheless be cut down with the weapon of detachment (asaṅga-sastraṇa). Detachment is the proper ax to use on this imperceptible tree, for its imperceptibility stems from our entanglement within it. If we draw back from it to gaze upon it with an eye of detachment, we can see it objectively and know its true nature. The extent to which one is attached to an object is as much as one’s eye of objectivity is obscured. Thus detachment reveals the nature of the world and the necessity to uproot ourselves from it.

After cutting ourselves free from the roots of material desire, we must search out the primary root of the tree of material existence, the Supreme Being, and take shelter of him. When we cut the roots of material attachment, we cannot hold on to any of the branches of the tree of material existence. Empty-handed, weightlessly drifting on the air of detachment, we must grab on to the primary root of this tree and become grounded in surrender and devotion to the Supreme Person, thus entering the land of no return. Kṛṣṇa next describes the characteristics of those who enter his abode.
The undeluded who are free from pride, illusion, and the fault of attachment, who are ever devoted to spirituality, have turned away from material desire, and are free from the dualities of pleasure and pain attain that imperishable abode.

That supreme abode of mine is not illumined by the sun, the moon, or fire. Having gone there, no one returns.
is made of consciousness and thus it is not perceptible to inert things, such as the senses and mind.

Krṣṇa says that the light of the sun cannot reveal it. The sun is the predominating deity of the eyes. This implies that the eyes as well as all of the physical senses are not suitable instruments for perceiving God’s abode. Fire is the predominating deity of speech. Thus speech is not capable of fully describing the nature of God’s abode. In other words, one can never say enough about it—its glory is unlimited.

As the physical senses are limited in their capacity to perceive the nature of God’s abode, so too is the psychic sense, the mind. The moon is the predominating deity of the mind, and here Krṣṇa says that it cannot illumine his abode. Going there requires going beyond the mind, and once there one never returns to the petty world of the mind.

Viśvanātha Cakravarti Ṭhākura comments that the sun and moon also represent heat and cold, and thus Krṣṇa’s abode, being constructed out of nondual consciousness, is beyond these dualities. Consciousness is the principal ingredient of his abode. This verse clearly elaborates on Krṣṇa’s concluding statement of the previous chapter, where he declared Brahman, nondual consciousness, to be subordinate to himself.

After alluding to his primary potency, Krṣṇa next describes his intermediate potency in terms of its becoming subordinate to his secondary potency. While the individual soul has the potential of attaining Krṣṇa’s abode, it is under the influence of material illusion and thus bound by the mind and senses.

**Text 7**

ममावांशों जीवलोकके जीवज्ञतः सनातनः।
मनः-प्रकृतिनिद्रायणि प्रकृतिस्थानि कर्षति॥

*mamaivāmśo jīva-loke jīva-bhūtaḥ sanātanaḥ/
manah-saṣṭhāṁindriyāṁi prakṛti-sthāni karsati/*

In this world the individual soul, who is an eternal fragment of myself, drags with him the senses and the mind, which belong to material nature.
The pure soul can enter the abode of God and never return to the material world. However, a person who has not realized his actual position in relation to the material mind and senses can never enter the land of no return, Kṛṣṇa’s abode. The reason for this is stated in the present verse. He is shackled by his identification with the mind and senses and thus returns or takes birth again and again.

Here Kṛṣṇa stresses the eternal individuality (jīva-bhūtah sanātanah) of the jīva soul. Although it is eternal, because it is a mere fragment of God (mamaivāṁso), it struggles in connection with material nature. Unlike God, it is not capable of fully controlling material nature. What is the nature of its struggle? The jīva soul drags with it the burden of the mind and senses owing to misidentification with them. As a prisoner drags his shackles with him wherever he goes, so the deluded jīva, although essentially different from matter, drags the ball and chain of his material mind and senses with him life after life. The jīva’s struggle is ultimately not with anything external to itself. Its burden is its own mind and senses alone, which prevent it from seeing things as they are.

In this verse, the senses Kṛṣṇa speaks of are those that, along with the sixth sense, the mind, make up the subtle body. What we perceive as senses, the openings on the physical body, are in fact outlets for our actual senses. It is in this subtle body that the jīva soul moves from one physical body to another, carrying misconceptions about who and what it is. Kṛṣṇa gives an analogy in the next verse to describe how this takes place.

Text 8

When acquiring a body, its master, the soul, takes these senses and mind with him from the body he leaves, just as the wind carries aromas from their source. In this way he attains a new body.
The word īśvara in this verse refers to the soul, who considers himself the master of his body, rather than a servant of God. Here it is used almost sarcastically, for the soul gives up and takes new bodies without any control. However, should the embodied soul change his disposition and think himself the servant of God, he actually becomes the master of his mind and body. Otherwise in illusion he thinks himself the master, even while he is forced to move from one body to another, life after life.

The illusioned soul’s movement is like the wind, which has no choice in the matter of which fragrance it will carry, nor in where it blows—making the word īśvara even more poignant. Like the wind the soul moves along with his subtle body to another physical body. What he does in the physical body he inhabits is described next.

**Text 9**

श्रोत्रं caksuh sparśanam ca rasanam ghrānam eva ca/
adhiśthāya manās cāyam viśayān upasevate//

śrotram—hearing; cakṣuh—sight; sparśanam—touch; ca—also; rasanam—taste; ghrānam—smell; eva—also; ca—and; adhiśthāya—presiding over; manah—mind; ca—also; ayam—he; viśayān—sense objects; upasevate—he enjoys.

*Presiding over the ears, eyes, the organs of touch, taste, and smell, as well as the mind, the soul enjoys sense objects.*

Once within the physical body the presiding soul enjoys sense objects by the medium of mind through the external senses. The external senses of the physical body contact sense objects and thus relay messages to the mind. The mind in turn likes or dislikes them, and the world of material duality is born. The above interactions are imperceptible to the deluded soul, whose vision, or lack of it, is next contrasted with that of the wise.

**Text 10**

उत्कृष्टमन्त्र स्मायं वायूवणां वा गुणानिश्चितम्।
विमृष्ठा नानुपरयानि पदयानि ज्ञानचक्रः॥१०॥

*UTKRTAMANTRASMYAMASYA VAVRANAMVAA GUNANISHCHITAM|RIMRUSTHAA NAANUPARASYAPADAYANIPADAYANISJNAANCARKHAH॥१०॥*
The deluded can neither see that the soul is transmigrating, nor understand the nature of its experience under the influence of the guṇas. The wise can see all of this with eyes of knowledge.

Yogis striving to see the soul situated within themselves can do so, but those lacking discrimination, whose minds are not pure, cannot, even though they try.

In verse 10 Kṛṣṇa explains that only those with eyes of knowledge can understand the position of the soul. In this verse he explains why this is so: their minds are pure. This is the implication of jñāna-cakṣuḥ (eyes of knowledge) mentioned in verse 10. The pure mind sees with eyes of knowledge.

Having described why the jīva associated with matter returns to the darkness of birth and death rather than enter his self-luminous abode, Kṛṣṇa speaks in the next four verses about his position as the Supreme Being to whom even Brahman is subordinate. Devotion to him enables the jīva to leave the world of birth and death (sāṁsāra).
Know that I am the light in the sun, moon, and fire that illumines the world.

In verse 6 Kṛṣṇa says that his abode is self-luminous. Here he says further that the material world is not so. It is he who illumines it through the sun, moon, and fire. Neither he nor his abode are dependent on these material manifestations. They shed light on his nature if we think of them in the terms they are described here.

If we understand that the sun is illumined by God, we can understand something about the position of God by contemplating the sun. As he is the light in the sun, so also is he the light in the moon and fire, by which food is nourished and prepared, respectively. Through these material manifestations—sun, moon, and fire—the world is made livable.

Text 13

I also enter the world through my power and sustain all beings. Becoming the moon, the source of flavor, I cause all plants to flourish.
aham vaiśvānaro bhūtvā prāṇināṁ deham āśritah/
prāṇāpāṇa-samāyuktah pacāmy annaṁ catur-vidham//

Becoming the fire of digestion, I reside in the bodies of all living entities; then, in conjunction with the life airs, both incoming and outgoing, I digest the four kinds of food.

Having spoken about his position from a macrocosmic (samaṣṭi) orientation in the previous two verses, Kṛṣṇa explains in this and the following verse how we are dependent on him from the microcosmic (vyāṣṭi) perspective as well. Not only is he the light in the sun by which we see, the moon by which plants are nourished and made succulent, and fire by which they are prepared, he is also present within every being as the digestive fire by which food is assimilated and its energy distributed throughout the body.

The fire in the stomach is increased by prāṇa and apāṇa, two of the five life airs located in the heart and intestines, respectively. The four kinds of food mentioned here are those that are chewed (bhakṣya), such as bread, those drunk (bhojya), such as soup, those licked (lehya), such as honey, and those sucked (ecoṣya), such as sugarcane.

Text 15

sarvasya cāham hṛdi sanniviṣṭo
matāḥ smṛtir jñānam apohamāṁ ca/
vedaiś ca sarvair aham eva vedyo
vedānta-kṛd veda-vid eva cāham//

sarvasya—of all; ca—and; aham—I; hṛdi—in the heart; sanniviṣṭaḥ—situated; mattaḥ—from me; smṛtīḥ—remembrance; jñānam—knowledge; apohanaṁ—forgetfulness; ca—and; vedaiḥ—by the Vedas; ca—also; sarvaiḥ—by all; aham—I; eva—certainly; vedyāḥ—knowable; vedānta-kṛt—the compiler
of the Vedānta; veda-vit—the knower of the Vedas; eva—certainly; ca—and; aham—I.

I am seated in the hearts of all; from me come knowledge, remembrance, and forgetfulness. I alone am to be known by the Vedas. Indeed, I am the compiler of the Vedānta and the knower of the Vedas as well.

In verses 12 through 14, Kṛṣṇa explained how the living beings are physically dependent on him. In this verse, he explains that we are dependent on him for our intellectual life as well. He enters the heart of all beings, the vital center from which every human function proceeds and without which no activity can be performed. From this strategic position he provides the knowledge we need to proceed in any endeavor. He gives us remembrance of our saṃskara and thus prompts us to act accordingly. He also gives rise to the living beings’ forgetfulness, which allows them to continue in ignorance in accordance with their desire.

In the second half of this verse Kṛṣṇa instructs Arjuna regarding his role in the lives of those concerned with liberation from material existence. He tells Arjuna that he is that which is to be known from the study of the Vedas, which ultimately teach about liberation and love of God. The Vedas exist for the purpose of guiding souls within the world so that they will ultimately come to realize their own nature and thus transcend material existence. Although the Vedas appear to deal with many subjects and the propitiation of many gods for many purposes, careful study of the Vedic texts in consideration of their underlying unity reveals that the Vedas posit one object of knowledge, Kṛṣṇa. Bhaktivedanta Swami Prabhupāda implies in his commentary that they do so in a threefold manner by giving knowledge of our relationship with God and matter (sambandha-tattva), the means to disentangle ourselves from matter (abhidheya-tattva), and the fruit of this in the form of love of God (prayojana-tattva).

The first attempt to demonstrate the concordance of the Upaniṣads, the concluding portion of the Vedas, is the Vedānta-sūtra. Here Kṛṣṇa says that he in the form of Veda Vyāsa is the compiler of the sūtras. It is well known that the legendary Vyāsa, who is said to have compiled the Vedas, is an avatāra of Kṛṣṇa.

Although previously Kṛṣṇa said that one who knows the tree of material existence knows the Vedas, this knowing is dependent on Kṛṣṇa, and thus he is the only independent knower.
Hearing Kṛṣṇa assert his position as the knower of the Vedas, Arjuna wants to ask Kṛṣṇa about their import. He takes the natural and direct approach to understanding this complex body of mantras and texts, inquiring from one who understands it. In response to his friend’s mental inquiry, Kṛṣṇa further stresses his supreme authority in the next three texts, shedding light on the nature of the jīva soul’s relationship with him (sambandha-tattva). Kṛṣṇa then discusses the Vedic means for attaining him (abhidheya-tattva) and the goal of the Vedas (prayojana-tattva) in the final two verses of this chapter.

Text 16

In the Vedas there are two types of puruṣas, the fallible and the infallible. The fallible are all beings; the unchanging is called infallible.

Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa suggests an alternative meaning to the word loke in this verse. He says that it does not refer to the world, but rather to the Vedas. The Vedas are that by which we see the truth, and the word loke here is derived from the Sanskrit verbal root lok (to see). Thus, referring to the Vedas mentioned in the previous verse, Kṛṣṇa says, “Two types of puruṣas are discussed in the Vedas. One of these classes of puruṣa is fallible, the other is infallible.” Viśvanātha Cakravarti renders loke as “the fourteen planetary systems,” in which two types of puruṣas are famous.

The fallible or perishable (kṣara) puruṣa is the fallen soul deluded by material existence. This puruṣa is fallible because of its identification with the perishable material body. This sense of identity will not endure. According to Vaiṣṇava commentators other than Viśvanātha Cakravarti, the infallible (aṅkṣara) puruṣa is the liberated soul, who has transcended material existence. This soul identifies with itself, imperishable consciousness, and
is thus kūṭastha, unchanging. His position is fixed, unlike the fallible puruṣa whose position in identification with the material body is always changing. This understanding makes sense in the context of this chapter and in relation to the conclusion of the previous chapter, where the liberated and materially conditioned souls are contrasted.

Viśvanātha Cakravartī Thākura understands the aksara in this verse to be the Brahman feature of the Absolute. According to the Thākura, Kṛṣṇa says, “Because I am the knower of the Vedas, I will give you (Arjuna) the essence of the Vedas in three verses. In this world there are two puruṣas. One is the jīva soul, whose position in relation to matter is perishable, the other is Brahman, who is known throughout the Vedas by the word aksara, the imperishable.”

Viśvanātha Cakravartī’s interpretation is based on Kṛṣṇa’s statement in chapter 8 (Bg. 8.3), where he identifies aksara with Brahman. The Chāndogya Upaniṣad supports this as well. However, in this verse the word aksara is an adjective that qualifies one of the two kinds of puruṣas mentioned. Aksara is not the subject of the verse, puruṣa is. This puruṣa is further qualified as kūṭastha (unchanging). Thus, according to the Sanskrit grammar, the aksara puruṣa is the kūṭastha puruṣa. Furthermore, Brahman is generally not identified with the puruṣa because puruṣa indicates personal consciousness, whereas Brahman does not. Through this interpretation, Viśvanātha Cakravartī wants to point out that the Paramātmā feature of Godhead discussed in verse 17 is a more complete manifestation of the Absolute than its Brahman feature. According to Viśvanātha Cakravartī, while the aksara puruṣa mentioned in verse 16 is the Brahman feature of the Absolute, the Paramātmā discussed in verse 17 is a second aksara puruṣa. Following this line of reasoning, Viśvanātha Cakravartī in his commentary on verse 18 brings out the superiority of the Bhagavān feature of the Absolute over Brahman and Paramātmā. However, in this commentary he acknowledges that his interpretation of the present verse is controversial. Those who will find it to be controversial are the Adwaitins. To them Viśvanātha Cakravartī politely offers his obeisances thus: namo’stu kevala-vidbhyaḥ. At the same time, he stands firm in his explanation. While his explanation is controversial, it is not incorrect to conclude that Brahman, Paramātmā, and Bhagavān are all aksara. Furthermore, Brahman is a partial manifestation of the Supreme Person—his aura.

The fallible puruṣa mentioned in this verse is the class of souls that appear in the world as all living beings (sarva-bhūtāni). The status of the
souls in this class as puruṣas is perishable because when liberated these souls function as predominated aspects of reality. The word puruṣa, like iśvara, carries the sense of being the predominator, but jīva souls are predominators only in relation to matter. In their normal position in relation to God, the supreme puruṣa, they are predominated. Thus they are sometimes called para prakṛti rather than puruṣa. This is how they were introduced in the Gītā in chapter 7 (Bg. 7.5).

Text 17

However, there is another higher puruṣa called the Supreme Soul, who is the imperishable God that enters the world and supports it.

Here we find clarification of verses 12 through 15. He who maintains us is a personal being. Everything is ultimately directed by a conscious being. This is a refutation once again of Śaṅkhyā and its non-Vedic counterpart, Jainism, which see only a multiplicity of puruṣas, some of whom are bound by nature and others that are liberated. Here Kṛṣṇa refers to the Paramātmā feature of the Absolute. This feature is a more complete expression of the Godhead than Brahman, for in this feature the personality of the Godhead is more manifest. As Paramātmā, God enters the world and supports it. He is different from the materially conditioned living beings and the liberated souls.

Viśvanātha Cakravartī Ṭhākura says that “a flame, a lamp, and a big fire are all luminous objects and in this sense nondifferent. However, a big fire is more effective in removing the miseries of those suffering from cold. Superior to a big fire is the sun itself (the source of all illumination). Similarly, Bhagavān Śrī Kṛṣṇa is the topmost Absolute reality.” It could be said that Brahman is like a flame, Paramātmā a lamp, Bhagavān a big
Because I am transcendental to the fallible and am most excellent even when compared with the infallible, I am therefore celebrated in the world and the Vedas as the Supreme Person.

Kṛṣṇa is superior to both the illusioned and liberated soul. Furthermore, as Bhagavān himself he exhibits greater transcendental excellence than he does in his appearance as Paramātmā. Here he distinguishes himself from his Paramātmā feature, describing himself as Puruṣottama, the Supreme Person.

Kṛṣṇa has been explaining his position as the one who is to be known from study of the Vedas. Here he says that the position he ascribes to himself is declared with joy throughout the Vedas, as well as in the world by his blissful devotees.

Text 19

The highest person

Because I am transcendental to the fallible and am most excellent even when compared with the infallible, I am therefore celebrated in the world and the Vedas as the Supreme Person.
O descendant of Bharata, one who is undeluded knows me as the Supreme Person. He knows everything and thus worships me with his entire being.

That which follows a proper conceptual orientation to life (sambandha-tattva) is worship (abhidheya-tattva). Proper knowledge leads to devotion. In verses 16 through 18, Kṛṣṇa gave Arjuna knowledge of the interrelation between matter, consciousness, and God. Material manifestations are ephemeral, and thus souls identifying with them are considered fallible. However, in reality the soul is superior to matter. Thus liberated souls who have transcended identification with matter are considered infallible. Both materially illusory and liberated souls are subordinate to God. Furthermore, God has three features—Brahman, Paramātmā, and Bhagavān, in order of spiritual excellence. Those who know this are undeluded (asammūḍhah). They are not bewildered about who to worship among the many deities of the Vedas because they have understood the context in which these deities are mentioned and have thus realized the conclusion of the Vedas as to the ultimacy of bhakti and Bhagavān Śrī Kṛṣṇa.

Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa comments that Kṛṣṇa says in this verse, “One who knows me as I have described myself in the previous three verses, as the Supreme Person, is all-knowing (sarva-vit).” Viśvanātha Cakravartī clearly explains that such souls are all-knowing in the sense that they know the actual meaning and tattva of all the scriptures. They are not omniscient in every respect. Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa says further that those who do not know Kṛṣṇa in this way, even if they worship him, are not his devotees, and if they know everything else in the Vedas but do not understand this point they gain nothing.

Madhusūdana Sarasvatī comments that the undeluded are those who know that Kṛṣṇa is not merely a human being. They know that he is the Supreme Person himself. Such undeluded persons are all-knowing (sarva-vit) because they know Kṛṣṇa, who is all-pervasive and thus all-knowing. Madhusūdana Sarasvatī says that such persons adore Kṛṣṇa in every way through bhakti, which is characterized by love. Thus he sees this verse as a substantiation of the last two verses of the previous chapter. He concludes his commentary on this verse with the following advice: “O you who are conversant with good works, worship again and again the light which is by nature consciousness and bliss, which has the color of the rain cloud, which is the quintessence of the Vedic utterances, the necklace of the women of Vraja, the shore of the sea of the wise, and who repeatedly incarnates to
remove the burden of the earth!” The fruit of this worship (prayojana-tattva) is the subject of the concluding verse of this chapter.

Text 20

Thus I have taught you this most secret doctrine of the scripture, O sinless one. Understanding this, a person becomes wise and his actions know perfection.

One who understands the confidential doctrine of the Supreme Person detailed in this chapter becomes enlightened, and thus his actions in devotion bear the fruit of perfection in love of God (prayojana-tattva). Such persons have no duty to perform. They have fulfilled all obligations. Kṛṣṇa implies here that short of this, something remains to be accomplished for anyone on any other path.

Thus in the concluding five verses of this chapter Kṛṣṇa has discussed the three principal subjects of the Vedas: sambandha, abhidheya, and prayojana. He does this in the course of explaining how he is that which is to be known in the Vedas and the fact that he alone knows the Vedas, both of which he asserted in text 15.

In this verse Kṛṣṇa tells Arjuna that the knowledge and yoga of the Supreme Person is not for everyone. It is confidential, and only pure (anagha) persons can know its mystery. Such sinless persons can cut down the ephemeral aśvattha tree of this world with the ax of detachment and subsequent discrimination and thus become fit for devotion proper by which they can enter Kṛṣṇa’s abode.

The great Adwaitin, Madhusūdana Saraswati, concludes his commentary on this chapter with the following remark: “I do not know any other reality than Kṛṣṇa, whose hands are adorned with a flute, whose luster is like that
of a new rain cloud, who wears a yellow cloth, whose lips are reddish like the bimba fruit, whose face is beautiful like the full moon, and whose eyes are like lotuses. . . . Those fools who cannot tolerate the wonderful glory of Kṛṣṇa go to hell.”
Chapter Sixteen

Daivāsura-Sampada-yoga

YOGA OF DISCERNING GODLY AND UNGODLY NATURES

Texts 1–3

śrībhagavānuvac

अभयम सत्त्वसम्प्रदेश्योगवर्तिनि:।

dānam damaś ca yajñāsa ca svādhyāyas tapa ārjavam//

ahimsā satyam akrodhas tyāgah sāntir apaśunam/

dayā bhūtesv aloluptvam mārdavam hrir acāpalam//

tejah kṣamā dhṛtiḥ saucam adroho nāti-mānītā/

bhavanti sampada daivim abhijātasya bhārata//

śrī-bhagavān uvāca—The Lord of Śrī said; abhayam—fearlessness; sattva-samśuddhiḥ—purity of heart; jñāna—knowledge; yoga—yoga; vyavasthitih—consistency; dānam—charity; damah—sense control; ca—and; yajñah—sacrifice; ca—and; svādhyāyāḥ—study of scripture; tapaḥ—austerity; ārjavam—righteousness; ahimsā—nonviolence; satyam—truthfulness; akrodhaḥ—absence of anger; tyāgah—renunciation; sāntiḥ—peacefulness; apaśunam—aversion to criticizing; dayā—compassion; bhūtesu—toward beings; aloluptvam—freedom from covetousness; mārdavam—gentleness; hṛiḥ—modesty; acāpalam—freedom from restlessness; tejah—courage; kṣamā—forgiveness; dhṛtiḥ—fortitude; saucam—cleanliness; adrohaḥ—freedom from malice; na—not; ati-mānītā—excessive pride; bhavanti—they are;
The Lord of Śrī said: Fearlessness, purity of heart, consistency in knowledge and yoga, charity, sense control, sacrifice, study of the scripture, austerity, righteousness, nonviolence, truthfulness, absence of anger, renunciation, peacefulness, aversion to criticizing others, compassion, freedom from covetousness, gentleness, modesty, steadiness, courage, forgiveness, fortitude, cleanliness, freedom from malice, and pridelessness—those born of divine nature are endowed with these, O descendant of Bharata.

In the previous chapter Kṛṣṇa described the Supreme Person, knowing whom one becomes truly wise such that one’s actions know perfection. In this chapter he describes who is qualified to tread the path of perfection and who is not, the godly and ungodly natures. First one must ascertain the weight of an object, and only then can one decide who can lift it. Śrīdhara Svāmī, citing Kumarila Bhaṭṭa, sees this as the relationship between chapters 15 and 16.¹

Chapters 16 through 18 involve a shift in focus from the previous three chapters. While chapters 13, 14, and 15 deal with the metaphysics of the Gîtā in depth, the final three chapters focus more on the practical tenets of the text. From the metaphysics of the Supreme Person in the previous chapter, we shift in the present chapter to a discussion of socioreligious structure, scriptural adherence, and morality (good versus evil).

In the last five verses of the previous chapter, Kṛṣṇa explains precisely how he is that which is to be known from the study of the Vedas. In this chapter he explains how those eligible to know him must live in accordance with the Vedas. They are of a godly nature. Those who are ungodly are those who do not live their lives in this way. The underlying purpose of this discussion is to stress that the entire teaching of the Gîtā is reinforced by the scriptural canon.

This chapter begins with a list of the virtues that qualify one to pursue the godly path. As we shall see, this description implies that the godly have abiding faith in scripture, and thus the qualities Kṛṣṇa mentions here have been explained by both Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa and Madhusūdana.

¹ Kumarila Bhaṭṭa is a famous Mîmåµsaka.
Saraswati in relation to varnāśrama-dharma. This scripturally enjoined socioreligious structure consisting of four social and four religious orders has been mentioned earlier in chapter 4 (Bg. 4.13).

The first two lines of verse 1 describe the qualities of the renunciates (sannyāsīs). They extend fearlessness to all living beings by their own example, because they are not fearful as to where they will get their next meal or under which roof they will sleep at night. They know that God is maintaining them. Their minds are pure (sattva-saṃśuddhi). This purity results from knowledge and constant yoga practice (jñāna-yoga-vyavasthitiḥ). Madhusūdana Saraswati comments that since perfect purity is not possible without devotion to God, which is by far the best means, bhakti is implied in this verse. Indeed, he says that the godly nature itself is synonymous with devotion to God. Madhusūdana Saraswati supports his insight with a reference to the thirteenth verse of chapter 9, where Kṛṣṇa describes those of divine nature thus: “Those great souls who take refuge in the divine nature worship me with undeviated minds, knowing me to be the origin of all beings and imperishable.”

The second half of the first verse describes the godliness of the other religious orders of life: the householders (grhastras), celibate students (brahmaścārīs), and persons retired from family obligations (vānaprasthas). Householders should give in charity (dānam), for in the ideal society they alone have money and are thus expected to support others who are directly engaged in spiritual culture without the distractions of family life. The householders should also practice control of their senses (dama) especially the regulation of sex desire, which the other sectors abstain from. Their lives should involve sacrifice (yajña) and religious ritual such that their worldly orientation is brought in touch with spiritual pursuit. Celibate students should be engaged in study of the scriptures (svādhyāya). Śrīdhara Svāmī comments that this also refers to chanting God’s name. Austerity (tapah) is for those who are retired and are preparing to leave the world.

Following the description of the godly nature and activities of the four religious orders of society, Kṛṣṇa describes the godly nature of the four social/occupational divisions of society: the priests (brāhmaṇas), the warriors/administrators (kṣatriyas), the farmers/merchants (vaiśyas), and the laborers (śūdras). The qualities beginning with righteousness (ārjavam) and ending with absence of restlessness (acāpalam) belong to the godly nature of the priests. They must have these qualities. The warriors of godly nature exhibit courage and the other qualities up to and including fortitude (dhrtīḥ).
The godliness of the merchants involves freedom from malice, and for the laborers absence of pride.

Viśvanātha Cakravarti Ṭhākura considers this list of twenty-six godly qualities to indicate a sattvic disposition. He understands these godly qualities and the ungodly qualities described next to be the previously unmentioned fruits of the asvattha tree of material existence that introduced chapter 15.

**Text 4**

दन्ते दूषिष्ठमण्णिकृत क्रोधं पाषयेम् च।
अज्ञानं चाभिघातस्य पार्थ संपद्मामुसूगित।

*dambo darpo 'bhimānas ca krodhah pāruṣyam eva ca/
ajñānam cābhijātasya pārtha sampadam āsurīm//*

*dambha—hypocrisy; darpah—arrogance; abhimānah—conceit; ca—and; krodhah—anger; pāruṣyam—harshness; eva—certainly; ca—and; ajñānam—ignorance; ca—and; abhijātasya—of one who is born; pārtha—O son of Pṛthā; sampadam—endowment; āsurīm—ungodly.*

**Hypocrisy, arrogance, conceit, anger, harsh speech, and ignorance are the qualities of those born of ungodly natures.**

Ancient sages who spoke Sanskrit often used invented etymologies as didactic tools and mnemonic devices. While these etymologies are not the actual sources of a particular word’s formation, they are often instructive. An example of this practice is the idea that the word asura in this verse is derived from two the words, asu and ramate. Asu means life breath and ramate means to enjoy. To enjoy one’s life breath, one’s body, at the cost of spiritual emancipation is thus the preoccupation of an asura.

One’s nature, godly or ungodly, is a product of one’s karma. This is what is implied by the word abhijāta (born of).

**Text 5**

देवी समपातं विमोक्ष्याय निवंत्रभायासुरी मताः।
मा शुचजस्मि समपातं देवीभिजातो भिन्न पाण्डव॥५॥

*dāvī sampad vimokṣāya nibandhāyāsurī matā/
mā sucaḥ sampadaṁ dāvīm abhijāto 'si pāṇḍava//*

*dāvī—divine; sampat—quality; vimokṣāya—meant for liberation; nibandhāya—for bondage; āsurī—ungodly; matā—considered; mā—never; sucaḥ—*
you lament; sampadam—nature; daivim—divine; abhijatah—born; asi—you are; pandava—O son of Pându.

The divine nature is considered to lead to liberation, the ungodly nature to bondage. Do not lament, O son of Pându! You are born of the divine nature.

According to scripture the divine nature leads to liberation. The ungodly nature leads to bondage. The word matā (is considered) in this verse refers to the Vedas. The Vedas opine that the activities prescribed for the different religious and social sectors of society bear the fruit of liberation when they are performed in a spirit of duty and scriptural adherence without attachment to the results. As one moves through the religious stages of life arriving at sannyāsa, the qualities of fearlessness, constant practice of yoga, and the culture of knowledge and devotion lead one to liberation.

After describing the qualities of the ungodly to Arjuna, Kṛṣṇa assures his disciple that he should not worry (mā śucaḥ), for his nature is not ungodly. With these two words Kṛṣṇa sums up the Gītā’s entire message, mā śucaḥ: “don’t worry.” The spirit of this expression is that we should depend on Kṛṣṇa and not on our own strength, be it physical, mental, or intellectual. This is underscored in Kṛṣṇa’s concluding words to Arjuna, sarva-dharmān parityajya: “give up all separate endeavor,” and mokṣayissāmi mā śucaḥ, “depend on me, do not worry.” (Bg. 18.66) To depend on one’s own strength without acknowledging that it comes from God is ungodly.

Here Arjuna is concerned that he is of the ungodly nature. This is the spirit of the devotees. They do not think that they are godly. First Kṛṣṇa described the divine qualities to Arjuna. After hearing the demoniac qualities, such as arrogance, anger, and harshness, Arjuna naturally assumed that he was ungodly, for these are qualities that warriors often exhibit in battle. Kṛṣṇa’s assuring Arjuna otherwise is significant. It informs us that one may exhibit such qualities and not be ungodly. The converse is equally applicable. Outward displays of humility, self-control, sacrifice, modesty, cleanliness, study of the Vedas, austerity, renunciation, and the host of other divine qualities may be outer expressions of an inner ungodly spirit. Thus Kṛṣṇa implies that we must look beneath the surface in determining who is godly and who is ungodly. In his commentary on the previous verse, Viśvanātha Cakravartī Thākura says that hypocrites (dambhah) are those who present themselves as being religious while actually being irreligious.
The qualities that Arjuna is concerned with are appropriate for a warrior doing battle. That which is righteous is to some extent relative to the performer, time, and circumstance of any action. Had Arjuna been known for exhibiting arrogance, conceit, and speaking harshly off the battlefield, then this would have been indicative of an ungodly nature. However, he was a perfect gentleman off the battlefield. Indeed, he exhibited this in his reluctance to fight. Bhaktivedanta Swami Prabhupāda comments that Arjuna sincerely considered the pros and cons of the war and was thus not acting out of anger or arrogance in contemplating the battle.

Kṛṣṇa next elaborates on the ungodly nature to further allay Arjuna’s apprehension about himself. Thus he addresses Arjuna by referring to his saintly mother.

**Text 6**

\[ dvau bhūta-sargau loke 'smin daiva āsura eva ca/ \\ daivo vistarāsaḥ prokta āsuraṁ pārtha me śṛṇu/ \]

\[ dvau—two; bhūta-sargau—created beings; loke—in the world; asmin—this; daiva—godly; āsura—ungodly; eva—certainly; ca—and; daiva—godly; vistarāsaḥ—at length; proktah—said; āsuraṁ—ungodly; pārtha—O son of Pṛthā; me—from me; śṛṇu—listen. \]

*In this world there are two types of created beings, the godly and the ungodly. Thus far I have discussed the godly at length. Now, O son of Pṛthā, hear from me about the ungodly.*

Kṛṣṇa has discussed the qualities of the divine nature in earlier chapters. In chapter 2 he discusses those of steady intelligence (Bg. 2.55–71). In chapter 12 he describes qualities of devotees (Bg. 12.13–20). In chapter 13 he describes the qualities of those in knowledge (Bg. 13.8–12), and in chapter 14 he describes the godly qualities of those who have transcended the guṇas (Bg. 14.22–26). Other than a brief reference to the ungodly nature in chapter 9 (Bg. 9.12) and the first three verses of this chapter, Kṛṣṇa has not elaborated on it. He will do so for the bulk of this chapter, starting with this verse and continuing for the next twelve verses.
Here the words lokesmin refer to the earth, where we find both of these natures, not to heaven or hell where the godly and ungodly reside, respectively. Although previously in chapter 9 Kṛṣṇa mentioned two divisions of the ungodly (rākṣasim and āsurim), here he merges them into one category. The ungodly are those dominated by rajo-guna and tamo-guna, whereas the godly are influenced by sattva.

In this verse Kṛṣṇa tells Arjuna to hear from him about the ungodly nature so that he can avoid it. An elaboration on the disposition of the ungodly is essential. When one’s knowledge of this disposition is complete, only then can one fully reject it. Although this verse says that the godly and ungodly natures are found in two types of created beings (dvau bhūta-sargau), this does not imply that one has no choice in the matter of being godly or ungodly. Creation refers to our material birth, which is a product of our previous actions. While this predisposes us toward a godly or ungodly nature, it does not do away with our free will.

The doctrine of karma is not one of absolute determinism. It is not merely effect, but cause as well. The just, stern, moral law of karma rewards us with the fruits of the seeds we sow. Our past karma determines the bodily field of our present life. We in turn are obliged to make what we can of this life and in this way determine our future. While suffering may be the effect of our past life, how we react to that past—what we do about it—in this life is our privilege, our freedom to create our future. In this chapter Kṛṣṇa emphasizes choosing to change any ungodliness in our nature to godliness.

Text 7

pravṛttiḥ ca nivṛttiḥ ca janāḥ na vidur āsurāḥ/ na saucam nāpi cācāraḥ na satyam teṣu vidyate//91

pravṛttiḥ—action; ca—also; nivṛttiḥ—inaction; ca—and; janāḥ—persons; na—not; vidūḥ—they know; āsurāḥ—the ungodly; na—not; saucam—cleanliness; na—not; api—also; ca—and; ācāraḥ—behavior; na—not; satyam—truth; teṣu—in them; vidyate—there is.

The ungodly do not know when to act and when to refrain from action. Neither cleanliness, good behavior, nor truth is found in them.
The ungodly do not know what religion is and what irreligion is. They do not know what to do and what not to do because they do not follow scriptural directives for human society. To be truthful is to be concerned about the truth of the self. The ungodly are concerned only with their bodily demands.

At this point Arjuna wonders how one can be ignorant with regard to what is to be done and what is not to be done, when the scripture makes this abundantly clear and is well known for being of divine origin. In response Kṛṣṇa reveals further the thoughts of the ungodly with regard to scripture and God.

**Text 8**

असत्यम् अप्रतिष्ठितम् ते जगद अहुर अनिष्वरम्।
अपरार्पस्मृति किम सामहृ तम् किम अनुयत काम-हायुक्तम्॥८॥

*asatyam apratisṭhām te jagad āhur anīśvaram/
aparaspara-sambhūtam kim anyat kāma-haītukam//*

*asatyam—unreal; apratisṭhām—without basis; te—they; jagat—world; āhuh—they say; anīśvaram—without a God; aparasaṃpara—without cause (other than mutual union); sambhūtam—arisen; kim anyat—what else; kāma-haītukam—caused by sense desire.*

_They describe the world as being without truth, without a basis, without a God, brought about by mutual union—nothing more—caused by desire for sense gratification._

The ungodly do not acknowledge the scriptural canon to be truth. They attribute its authorship to ordinary persons. Thus they often conclude that the world has no moral basis and that there is no God who gives directives to human society or creates the world. They think that the world is spontaneously generated without any ultimate controller, and if anything, the cause of its manifestation is the union between the sexes that is a manifestation of sense desire.

Here the truth (*satya*) , basis (*pratiṣṭhā*) , and God himself (*iśvara*) that the ungodly do not acknowledge can be thought of in terms of the three levels of divine involvement in the world—Brahman, Paramātmana, and Bhagavān. Brahman is the truth (*sat*) of the world with which we are identified as units of consciousness. Paramātmana is the basis of the world,
from whom the world expands and by whom it is pervaded. Bhagavân is God himself, who appears in the world to enact his lilā and grace his creation. We are accustomed to hearing the argument that the religious do not accept the reality of the material world and thus manufacture another so-called spiritual one. Here Kṛṣṇa argues that unless one recognizes the different levels of divine involvement in the world—Brahman, Paramātmā, and Bhagavân—one does not live in the real world and is thus unaware of its deeper meaning and value.

Rāmānujaçārya comments that the words aparastara-sambhūtam in this verse can be understood to mean that the ungodly do not accept the fact that the world is a result of the combination of matter and consciousness (prakṛti and puruṣa) and erroneously conclude that it is a product of nothing other than the desire to satisfy one’s senses (kim anyat kāma-haitukam). This point of view of the ungodly should be rejected by those desirous of godly life, as Kṛṣṇa implies in the following verse.

Text 9

持此觀，這些渺小智者及兇暴行為者，便成為世界之敵人，導致此世界被破壞。

Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa comments that “destruction of the world” (ksayāya jagataḥ) means that which “leads people away from the spiritual purpose of life.”

While it may be true that in today’s world those who do not believe in God are sometimes nonviolent, peaceful, clean, and champions of moral life in general, this does not stand in contradiction to this section of the Gītā. Here Kṛṣṇa is speaking of those who are almost entirely dominated by rajo-guṇa and tamo-guṇa, with very little influence of sattva-guṇa. These
persons do not have a developed sense of morality and are thus considered immoral by most standards. Yet it is the influence of *sattva*, however slight, to which the honesty among thieves is indebted.

The extent to which a person is influenced by *sattva* determines his sense of the need for a moral life, even when that moral imperative is motivated by worldly desires. The influence of *sattva* may not be dominant enough to shed light on the reality of God, but it will nonetheless exert itself, resulting in a semblance of godly behavior. Thus humanistic morality is itself a product of *sattva*, whereas the humanist’s endeavor for material progress and atheism are products of *rajo-guna* and *tamo-guna*.

**Text 10**

कामभक्तितः दुःखोऽर्कम् तद्भभानभानितः।
भोहार्ग गुर्जायामेव प्रवर्तनेऽशुभितः॥१०॥

kāmam āśriya duspūram dambha-māna-madānvitāḥ/
mohād gṛhitvāsad-grāhān pravartante 'suci-vratāḥ//

*kāmam*—desire; āśriya—attached to; duspūram—insatiable; dambha—hypocrisy; māna—arrogance; mada-anvitāḥ—absorbed in; mohāt—by illusion; gṛhitvā—embracing; asat—false; grāhān—ideas; pravartante—they act; aśuci—unclean; vratāḥ—vows.

Attached to insatiable desires, vain, arrogant, proud, and embracing false ideas due to lack of discrimination, they adopt impure vows and act accordingly.

Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa understands impure vows (*aśuci-vratāḥ*) to refer to the “left-handed” tantric practices, all of which involve impure practices, often including liquor, flesh, and sex. His understanding is an elaboration on Śrīdharma Svāmī’s comments (*madya-maṁśādīni viṣayini)*.

**Texts 11–12**

चिन्ताम अपरिमेयाः च प्रलयांतं त्वपाश्रितः।
कामोपाभोगस्तत्तिनिन्दितः॥२॥

आशा योगशंक्तद्विः कामोपाभोगायणः।
ईहि स कामोपाभोगस्तत्तिनिन्दितसत्यात्॥२॥

cintām aparimeyāṁ ca pralayāntāṁ upāśritāḥ/
kāmopabhoga-paramā etāvad iti niścitāḥ//
Beset with worry beyond measure that ends only with death, engrossed in gratifying their desires, seeing this as the ultimate goal of life, convinced that this is all in all, bound by a network of hundreds of hopes, absorbed in lust and anger, they try to secure money by illegal means for the fulfillment of their desires.

Texts 13–15

idam adya mayā labdham imam prāpsyate manoratham/
idam astidam api me bhavisyate punar dhanam//
asau mayā hataḥ satruḥ hanisyate ca parān api/
īśvaro 'ham aham bhogi siddho 'ham balavān sukhi//
ādhyo 'bijananvān asmi ko 'nyo 'sti sadṛśo mayā/
yaksye dāsyāmi modisyā ity ajñāna-vimohitāh//

idam—this; adya—today; mayā—by me; labdham—gained; imam—this; prāpsyate—I shall gain; manah-ratham—desire; idam—this; asti—there is; idam—this; api—also; me—mine; bhavisyate—it will increase; punah—again; dhanam—wealth; asau—that; mayā—by me; hataḥ—slain; satruḥ—enemy; hanisyate—I shall slay; ca—also; aparān—others; api—certainly; īśvarah—lord; aham—I; aham—I; bhogi—enjoyer; siddhaḥ—successful; aham—I; balavān—powerful; sukhi—happy; ādhyāḥ—wealthy; abhijana-vān—aristocratic;
They think, “I have gained this today. This desire I shall attain fulfillment of next. This is mine, and it will increase in the future. That enemy has been slain by me, and I shall slay others as well. I am the enjoyer. I am successful, powerful, and happy. I am wealthy and of high birth. Who is equal to me? I shall sacrifice, give charity, and rejoice.” Thus they are deluded by ignorance.

Text 16

Bewildered by many thoughts as a result of being caught in a network of delusion and engrossed in enjoying objects they desire, they fall into an impure hell.

Text 17

Bewildered—self-conceited; stabdhah—stubborn; dhana-mana-madavitat—accompanied by the pride and arrogance of wealth; yajante—they perform sacrifice; nama—in name; yajna—with sacrifices; te—they; dambhena—hypocritically; avidhi-purvam—without following the injunctions.
Self-conceited, stubborn, full of pride and the intoxication of wealth, they hypocritically perform sacrifices in name only that are not in accordance with Vedic injunctions.

Text 18

अहंकार कल्प स्वयं क्रेश्च च सन्धिना:
माम अत्मा-पारा-देहेः क्रोधस्य चाभ्यसूयकोः

اهंकारम् बलम् कामम् क्रोधम् च सामस्तीताः/
मम अत्मा-पारा-देहेः प्रद्विषांतो 'भ्यसूययकाः//

ahankāram—egotism; balam—power; darpam—arrogance; kāmam—lust; krodham—anger; ca—also; sanskritāḥ—resorting to; mām—me; ātma—own; para—other; dehesu—in bodies; pradviṣāntah—hating; abhyasūyakāḥ—envious.

Resorting to egotism, power, arrogance, lust, and anger, such envious people hate me who am situated in their own bodies and the bodies of others.

What Kṛṣṇa means here when he says that the ungodly “hate me who am situated in their own bodies and the bodies of others” has been explained differently by commentators. Baladeva Vidyābhūṣāṇa says such persons hate God and the scripture that glorifies him. Viśvanātha Cakravartī says ātma-para refers to “devotees of the Paramātmā,” indicating that the ungodly vilify the saintly devotees. Madhusūdana Saratī offers three possible explanations for what Kṛṣṇa means here, the most interesting of which is “They hate me...on account of mistaking me for a human being.” He says the ungodly “hate Kṛṣṇa’s own body (ātma-deha) which is not a body in which a jīva soul resides, but is a body created through divine play and called Vāsudeva, etc.” He supports his interpretation by citing Kṛṣṇa’s words elsewhere in the Gītā (Bg. 7.24, 9.10–11). He also explains para-dehesu pradviṣanto ’bhyaśūyakāḥ (the envious who hate me in the bodies of others) as hating the bodies of devotees like Prahlāda where God is always present.

Text 19

तानह दिष्टत: कृरान संमारं भनाध्यायान।
क्षिपाम्यजसमयुभानासुविश्वेत योऽनिशु॥१९॥

The words of Kṛṣṇa are widely known and understood, as they are the source of one's spiritual knowledge. The wise one who engages in the study of spiritual knowledge is never confused or misled by the deceitful words of others.
I repeatedly cast those who are envious and cruel into the wombs of the ungodly life after life, for they are the worst of humanity.

Text 20

Having entered the wombs of the ungodly, the deluded, not attaining me birth after birth, O son of Kunti, go from there to the lowest destination.

Hearing of the fate of the demoniac, Arjuna considers that certainly on hearing this the ungodly will change their ways. This choice is possible with the help of good association. However, the ungodly do not care for the association of the godly, and they usually have no fear of God. Fear is the lowest level of motivation for serving him. Being devoid of this, there is little hope for them. Here Kṛṣṇa's strong words are an attempt to save human society from treading the ungodly course.

Viśvanātha Cakravarti says that Kṛṣṇa's words mām aprāpyaiva (not attaining me) imply that until the ungodly attain his association there is no salvation for them. It is possible to attain his association during the time of his earthly advent. This means that the appearance of Kṛṣṇa, as opposed to any of his avatāras, is particularly auspicious. In Kṛṣṇa-sandarbha, Jiva Gosvāmī demonstrates from scripture that only those ungodly souls who are killed by Kṛṣṇa himself during his appearance on earth attain salvation.
and not those slain by other avatāras. The learned Uddhava has prayed in Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam thus: “Alas, what sane person would take shelter of anyone other than Kṛṣṇa, who granted the position of mother (vātsalya-rasa) to a she-demon (Pūtanā), although she was unfaithful and she prepared deadly poison to be sucked from her breast?” In this verse we find a striking contrast that illustrates the extent of Kṛṣṇa’s compassion. The heinous she-demon Pūtanā, commissioned by Kaṁsa, disguised herself as a nurse, smeared poison on her breast, and attempted to kill infant Kṛṣṇa by offering her breast milk to him. Omniscient even in his apparent infanthood, Kṛṣṇa understood her purpose. Yet he sucked her breast nonetheless. Overlooking her demoniac intention, he accepted her as one of his mothers, and in slaying her by sucking her life air out of her body, he granted her the very special liberated status of vātsalya-rasa.

Otherwise, for the most part the salvation of the ungodly is the work of Kṛṣṇa’s devotees. They live in this world for him alone. In doing so, they interact with others who may unknowingly assist them. This unconscious act makes it possible for the ungodly to gradually reverse their course.

**Text 21**

> tri-vidham narakasyedam dvāram nāśanam ātmanah/
> kāmaḥ krodhas tathā lobhas tasmāt etat trayam tyajet//

*The three gates to hell that destroy the self are lust, anger, and greed. Therefore one should abandon these three.*

Among the vices described thus far, three are to be avoided above all others. Indeed, these three lead to all of the others, and thus even the godly should be on guard against them. They are the gates to hell.

**Text 22**

> tri-vidham—of three kinds; narakasya—of hell; idam—this; dvāram—gate; nāśanam—destructive; ātmanah—of the self; kāmaḥ—desire; krodhaḥ—anger; tathā—as well as; lobhaḥ—greed; tasmāt—therefore; etat—this; trayam—three; tyajet—one should abandon.
Released from these three doors to darkness, a person acts in his real self-interest, O son of Kunti, and thereby attains the highest goal.

Release from the gates to hell is possible only by spiritual practice and the grace of God. Such practice and the means to attain God’s grace are delineated in the scriptural canon. Thus Krsna turns Arjuna’s attention back to the scripture in the following verse as he concludes this chapter.

Text 23

One who acts out of impulse, ignoring scriptural injunctions, attains neither perfection, nor happiness, nor the ultimate goal of life.

Text 24

Therefore; scripture; evidence; your; to be done; not to be done; in determining;
Therefore the scripture is your authority in the matter of determining what is to be done and what is not to be done. Understanding the scriptural injunctions, you should act accordingly in this world.

In summary, this chapter describes the ungodly as those who are in intellectual denial of the existence of the soul and God, and as a result of this their practical activities bring misery to themselves and others. Arjuna is encouraged by Kṛṣṇa that he is of the godly nature by virtue of his past and corresponding present birth and association, yet he is to be vigilant to avoid the ungodly nature and activities that Kṛṣṇa details. In doing so, Arjuna's actions should be guided by scripture, which expounds not only the goal of life, but the practical steps to reach it as well. Kṛṣṇa stresses that faith and adherence to scriptural injunctions preface the entire pursuit of spiritual life, while an in-depth explanation of spiritual life constitutes the central theme of the entire Bhagavad-gitā.

Here Kṛṣṇa underscores the importance of the scripture. Thus a word about it may be appropriate. Ultimately, the scripture represents a body of knowledge in which the supreme goal of life is described along with the means of attaining this goal. However, the scripture also seeks to direct those who are not interested in the ultimate goal of life. To this end it provides knowledge of other possible goals that humanity might achieve and how humankind can best attain these lesser goals. The scripture contains laws that govern the realization of different ideals that arise in the human psyche, and it also offers an objective means of determining the hierarchy of human values. In doing so, it is not dogmatic. It invites the complete application of reason, leaving each individual to determine in conjunction with it what is relevant to him in terms of his particular ideal. Reason is also invited to participate in one’s understanding the conclusion of the Vedas, as well as in vindicating the scripture in the face of opposition from those who do not acknowledge its authority. The Vedānta-sūtra itself sets this example.
Chapter Seventeen

Sraddha-Traya-Vibhāga-yoga:

YOGA OF DISCERNING THREOFOLD FAITH

Text 1

Arjuna uvāca

ye śāstra-vidhim utsṛjya yajante śraddhayānvitāḥ/
teśāṁ niṣṭhā tu kā kṛṣṇa sattvam āho rajas tamah//

Arjuna said: O Kṛṣṇa, what is the status of those who ignore the scripture but nonetheless worship with faith? Is their worship in sattva, rajas, or tamas?

Krṣṇa concluded the previous chapter by distinguishing between the godly and ungodly in terms of their adherence to scripture. The godly adhere to the scripture, whereas the ungodly do not. However, here Arjuna wonders about the status of those who for whatever reason do not take the trouble to understand the import of the scripture, yet in accordance with local tradition nonetheless worship various gods and goddesses. Such people do not disregard the scripture, but they do not take the time to understand it. They fall between those who follow the scripture properly and those who have no regard for scripture whatsoever, being both similar and dissimilar to the godly and the ungodly. Arjuna asks about the quality of their faith
Is it in sattva, rajas, or tamas? Furthermore, he wants to know the relationship between faith and scriptural adherence. Is not faith alone sufficient for spiritual progress?

After discussing different kinds of faith in relation to the *gunas*, Kṛṣṇa goes on to discuss food, sacrifice, austerity, and charity in relation to them. He then concludes this chapter with emphasis on the *mantra oṁ tat sat*, indicating that when its utterance prefaces acts of sacrifice, austerity, and charity one’s faith can be transformed from material to spiritual.

**Text 2**

The Lord of Śrī said: The faith of embodied souls that is born of their materially acquired nature is of three types: sattvic, rajasic, or tamasic. Now hear about this.

The color of one’s faith is directly related to its cause. If the cause of one’s faith is saintly association and deliberation on the devotional import of scripture, one’s faith is enlightened, *nirguṇa-sraddhā*. Such enlightened faith is in turn the cause of one’s spiritual progress, and more so, the measure of one’s attainment. We live in a world of doubt, yet our highest prospect lies in entering the land of faith, all doubt removed.

Faith in general is of the nature of the material influence of *sattva*. Whatever one has faith in, that faith itself is a manifestation of *sattva*. It is the conviction behind sustained effort. Thus the sense of its being virtuous is universal. However, that in which a person places his faith is determined by the influence of his acquired nature. A person’s nature acquired at birth
(svabhāva-jā) is a product of his past *karma*. This nature is constituted of a combination of the three *gunas*, in which one of these three predominates. The predominating influence of *sattva*, *rajas*, or *tamas* determines the object of one’s faith and thus colors with shades of *rajas* and *tamas* that which is in and of itself *sattvic*.

The primary cause of one’s faith is one’s acquired nature. The material or secondary cause is the mind, to which Kṛṣṇa next turns Arjuna’s attention.

**Text 3**

sattvānurūpā sarvasya śraddhā bhavati bhārata/
śraddhā-mayo 'yam puruṣo yo yac-chraddhah sa eva saḥ/

*sattvānurūpā*—according to truth; *sarvasya*—of everyone; *śraddhā*—faith; *bhavati*—it is; *bhārata*—O son of Bharata; *śraddhā-mayaḥ*—made of faith; *ayam*—this; *puruṣaḥ*—person; *yāḥ*—who; *yat*—which; *śraddhāḥ*—faith; *saḥ*—this; *eva*—certainly; *saḥ*—he.

**One’s faith corresponds with one’s mind, O descendant of Bharata. A person is made of his faith. One is whatever his faith is.**

The mind is indicated here by the word *sattva*. It is of the nature of illumination. Mind is a transformation of the principle of egotism (*ahamkāra*) influenced by the *sattva-guna*. Here Kṛṣṇa says that one’s faith corresponds with one’s mind. Because the mind is a transformation of *sattva*, faith is intrinsically *sattvic*. However, every individual’s mind reflects his heart’s condition under the influence of the three *gunas*. Thus one’s nature reflected in the mind produces a particular quality of faith, be it *sattvic*, *rajasic*, or *tamasic*.

Changing one’s materially acquired nature is possible by deliberating on the import of the scripture and subsequently worshipping the Absolute. By this, one acquires knowledge, and through saintly association pure *sattva* takes precedence and brings about the illumination necessary for enlightened life. Otherwise, the dominant *guna’s* influence on the mind determines one’s faith. This is the position of those whose faith causes them to worship but who do not take the time to deliberate on the import of
The quality of their particular faith is revealed through the object of their veneration.

**Text 4**

यजन्ते सात्विकः देवान् यक्षरक्षसि राजसः।
प्रेतान् भूतग्रामवस्थाये यजन्ते तामसः जनाः॥४॥

yajante sāttvikā devān yakṣa-rakṣāṃsi rājasāḥ/
pṛetān bhūta-ganāṃś cāanye yajante tāmasā janāḥ//

*yajante*—they worship; *sāttvikā*—the sattvic; *devān*—gods; *yakṣa-rakṣāṃsi*—demonic spirits; *rājasāḥ*—the rajasic; *pṛetān*—nature spirits; *bhūta-ganāṃ*—ghosts; *ca*—and; *anye*—others; *yajante*—they worship; *tāmasā*—the tamasic; *janāḥ*—people.

The sattvic worship the gods; the rajasic worship demoniac spirits; others possessed of tamas worship nature spirits and ghosts.

The *Bhagavad-gītā* teaches that the religious persuasions in the world are a product of four kinds of faith: enlightened faith of pure *sattva*, sattvic faith, rajasic faith, and tamasic faith. Only the first of these has the power to change one’s nature from material to spiritual. The other three, however well-intended, cover the road of *samsāra* with varieties of religious pavement. If one is fortunate and by virtue of previous pious deeds one’s rajasic or tamasic faith becomes dominated by *sattva*, one can become eligible for spiritual discipline enjoined in the scripture, giving birth to enlightened faith. Otherwise, under the continued influence of *rajas* and *tamas*, faith produces only misery. This condition is addressed next in verses 5 and 6.

**Texts 5–6**

आस्त्राविहितं ग्होरं तपयन्ते ये तपो जनाः।
दम्भाहंकारसंयुक्तं कामाग्रामवासिनः॥५॥
कर्क्षयन्तः हस्तिस्थं भूतग्राममन्त्यसं।
पां चैवान्तःहस्तिस्थं तान् विद्वन्तामुनिन्निद्रयान्॥६॥

asāstra-vihitaṁ ghoraṁ tapyante ye tapo janāḥ/
dambhāhankaṁ sāmyuktāṁ kāma-grāma-balānvitāḥ//
karṣayantaḥ śarīra-stham bhūta-grāmam acetahāḥ/
māṁ caivaṁtaṁśarīra-stham tāṁ viddhy āsura-niścayān//
Those who completely identify with both hypocrisy and egotism, as well as lust and attachment, undergo terrible austerities that are not enjoined in the scriptures. Know that the nondiscriminating and those who torture the body, and thereby me who resides within the body, are of ungodly conviction.

The previous verse describes the activities of those whose faith is born of their acquired material nature, rather than from scripture. Because they are not against the scripture, there is the likelihood that they will rise to eligibility for spiritual discipline over time. Those described in verses 5 and 6, however, are the ungodly discussed in the previous chapter who have no regard for scripture. Kṛṣṇa mentions them here for the sake of contrast. The former class, who are the primary subject of this chapter, are further described over the next sixteen verses in terms of how the quality of their faith can be determined through external symptoms, such as the food they eat, their charity, and the type of sacrifices and austerities they perform.

Text 7

अहारस्वपि सर्वस्य जिविभो भवति प्रियः।
यज्ञस्तथात्तान तेषां भेदमिम शुष्कः॥७॥

āhāras tv api sarvasya tri-vidho bhavati priyah/
yajñas tapas tathā dānam teṣām bhedam imam śrṇu//

āhāraḥ—food; tu—but; api—also; sarvasya—of everyone; tri-vidhaḥ—of three kinds; bhavati—there is; priyah—preferred; yajñah—sacrifice; tapah—austerity; tathā—also; dānam—charity; teṣām—of them; bhedam—the difference; imam—this; śrṇu—hear.
Not only faith, but also the type of food preferred by all people is of three kinds, as are their sacrifices, austerities, and charity. Listen now to their classification.

The word *tu* (but) in this verse implies, “Not only faith but also…” It thus connects this verse to the preceding discussion of three types of faith. In accordance with the *guna* that predominates in their mental system and determines their faith, people choose their food, act charitably, perform sacrifice and austerity, and so on.

Text 8

ająha sattva-balāroga-sukha-prīti-vivardhanāḥ/  
rasyāḥ snigdhaḥ sthirāḥ hṛdyāḥ āhārāḥ sāttvika-priyāḥ//

*Foods that promote life, virtue, strength, health, happiness, and satisfaction, which are juicy, fatty, wholesome, and agreeable are dear to those in whom sattva predominates.*

Viśvanātha Cakravartī Thākura comments that the foods mentioned in this verse must be pure for them to be sattvic. He suggests that the adjective *pavitraḥ* should be added to further qualify foods preferred by sattvic people. By pure the *ācārya* means that they must be bought with money that was earned purely, cooked purely, and served in a pure place by pure people.

Foods that increase the duration of life, produce virtue, strength, health, happiness, and satisfaction refer to foods like those derived from the cow, as well as sugar, wheat, fruits, vegetables, and rice. *Sattva* in the first line of this verse refers to virtue, which brings about steadiness of mind enabling one to remain undisturbed in the face of sorrow. Agreeable (*hṛdyāḥ*) foods are those that are hearty and agreeable both to the stomach and the eye. *Snigdha* refers to foods that are not excessively fatty, but contain some oil.
Foods that are excessively bitter, sour, salty, hot, pungent, dry, and burning, and cause pain, sorrow, and disease are dear to those in whom rajas predominates.

The word ati in this verse qualifies all of the foods mentioned. They are rajasic when taken in excess (ati). Such excess brings the immediate effect of pain, the aftereffect of sorrow, and the long-term effect of disease.

Food that is stale, tasteless, putrid, rotten, left by others, and unfit for sacrifice is dear to those in whom tamas predominates.

Madhusūdana Saraswatī comments that the foods Kṛṣṇa describes as sattvic are diametrically opposed to those in rajas and tamas. While the foods in rajas oppose the sattvic foods on a perceptible level, the tamasic foods do so on an imperceptible level as well. By this he means that the unbenefficial
effects of rajasic food accrue in this life, whereas the unbeneficial effects of tamasic food appear in one's present life and follow one into the next life as well.

Here the word *ucchiṣṭam* does not refer to the remnants of saints.

**Text 11**

अफलाकाङ्क्षिबिध च विधिदिशा 
यज्ञवर्धिनि मनः स सात्त्विकः ॥ ११॥

*añīlākāṅkṣibhiḥ yajño vidhi-diśto ya ihyāt/
yāstavyam eveti manah samādhāya sa sāttvikah//*

*añīlā-kāṅkṣibhiḥ—by those not desiring to enjoy the result for themselves; yajñah—sacrifice; vidhi-diśtaḥ—according to scripture; yah—which; ihyāt—it is sacrificed; yāstavyam—to be sacrificed; eva—certainly; iti—thus; manah—mind; samādhāya—fixing; saḥ—it; sāttvikah—sattvic.*

**Sacrifice performed in accordance with the scriptures by those with no desire to enjoy the result for themselves, with the attitude that it is to be performed for its own sake, is sattvic.**

One's mental attitude is stressed more than any particular sacrifice. One who engages in scripturally enjoined acts of sacrifice because they should be performed and with a view to purify the mind is sattvic.

**Text 12**

अभिसंधाय तु पलन डम्भारथम अपि चाव यत/ 
iyāte bharata-śreṣṭhataṁ yaññam viddhi rājasam//

*abhisandhāya tu phalam dambhārtham api caiva yat/
iyāte bharata-śreṣṭhataṁ yaññam viddhi rājasam//*

*abhisandhāya—seeking; tu—but; phalam—result; dambha—hypocrisy; ar-tham—purpose; api—also; ca—and; eva—certainly; yat—which; iyāte—it is offered; bharata-śreṣṭha—O best of the Bhāratas; tam—that; yajñam—sacrifice; viddhi—know; rājasam—rajasic.*

**However, know that sacrifice offered with a view to enjoy the result and for an outer show of religiosity, O best of the descendants of Bharata, to be rajasic.**
They call that sacrifice tamasic which is contrary to scriptural injunction, in which no food is offered or distributed, which is performed without the appropriate mantras, in which there is no remuneration for the priests, and which is devoid of faith.

Purity, straightforwardness, celibacy, nonviolence, and worship of God, the brähmaṇas, the guru, and the wise ones—these are considered to be physical austerities.

Here Kṛṣṇa begins to speak about austerity. Other than the physical austerity mentioned in this verse, he will speak of austerity of speech and mind. These three are progressively more difficult to perform. After explaining these three types of austerities, Kṛṣṇa describes the attitude of the performer that makes austerities of body, speech, and mind sattvic, rajasic, or tamasic.
Text 15

anudvega-karam vākyam satyam priya-hitam ca yat/
svādhyāyābhyaasanam caiva vām-mayam tapa ucyate//

Speech that does not cause distress, which is truthful, agreeable, and beneficial, and which includes the practice of reciting the scripture—these are called austerities of speech.

Text 16

manah-prasādah saumyatvam maunam ātma-vinigrahaḥ/
bhāva-saṃsuddhir ity etat tapo mānasam ucyate//

Peace of mind, gentleness, silence, self-restraint, purity of heart—these are austerities of the mind.

Practicing peace of mind (manah-prasādah) means to practice keeping the mind free from contemplating sense objects. Gentleness (saumyatvam) involves always desiring the happiness of others. Silence (maunam) involves controlling the mind, which is the cause of controlling speech. It implies gravity of thought. Self-restraint (ātma-vinigrahaḥ) means complete (vi) control of the modifications of the mind. Purity of heart (bhāva-śuddhi) is qualified here by the prefix sam, which indicates completeness. Thus it refers to the freedom from and nonrecurrence of lust, anger, greed, and
so on. It also means freedom from duplicity in one’s dealings with others.

The three kinds of austerity appear within the three guṇas.

Text 17

This threefold austerity, when performed with the highest faith by disciplined persons who are not attached to the result, is called sattvic.

Text 18

That austerity which is undertaken hypocritically for praise, honor, and worship is called rajasic. Its results are worldly, temporary, and uncertain.

Text 19

That austerity which is undertaken hypocritically for praise, honor, and worship is called rajasic. Its results are worldly, temporary, and uncertain.
mūḍha-grāhaṇa—foolish intention; ātmanah—of one’s own self; yat—which; pīdayā—by torture; kriyate—it is performed; tapah—austerity; parasya—of another; utsādana-artham—for the sake of destroying; vā—or; tat—that; tāmasam—tamasic; udāḥṛtam—it is said to be.

Austerity undertaken with foolish intentions, causing pain to oneself or to others, is said to be tamasic.

The selfishness that characterizes rajo-guṇa indirectly causes pain to oneself and others, whereas tamo-guṇa involves deliberate acts of violence. Those influenced by tamo-guṇa take pleasure in these acts of violence.

Text 20

dātavyam iti yad dānam diyate ’nupakārine/
   deṣe kāle ca pātre ca tad dānam sāttvikam smṛtam/

dātavyam—to be given; iti—thus; yat—which; dānam—gift; diyate—it is given; anupakārine—to a person who gives nothing in return; deṣe—in place; kāle—in time; ca—also; pātre—to a suitable person; ca—and; tat—that; dānam—gift; sāttvikam—sattvic; smṛtam—known as.

That gift which is given at the proper time and place to a worthy person simply because it ought to be given and without expecting something in return is sattvic.

Text 21

yat tu pratyupakārārthaḥ phalam uddiśya vā punah/
   diyate ca parikliṣṭam tad dānam rājasam smṛtam/

yat—which; tu—but; prati-upakāra-artham—for the sake of getting some reward; phalam—result; uddiśya—aiming; vā—or; punah—again; diyate—it is given; ca—also; parikliṣṭam—begrudgingly; tat—that; dānam—gift; rājasam—rajasic; smṛtam—considered as.
On the other hand, that gift which is given with expectation of reward or with a desire to enjoy the result for oneself, as well as that which is given begrudgingly, is considered rajasic.

Text 22

अदेशाकाले यदानपातेनायथा दीयते।
असत्कृतमव्यात नतामसुदाहितम्॥२॥

adeśa-kāle yad dānam apātrebhyaḥ ca diyate/
asat-kṛtam avajñātaṁ tat tāmasam udāhṛtam//

That gift given at the wrong place and time to an unworthy person, without respect, or with contempt is considered tamasic.

The conclusion of this section is that in all of one’s undertakings one should cultivate sattva, avoiding rajas and tamas. However, the intrinsic sattvic and thus virtuous nature of faith is not to be ignored even when colored by rajas and tamas. It distinguishes those who have it from the ungodly, who have no regard for scripture whatsoever.

It has already been explained that persons of faith can by virtue of the mature result of previous pious acts become virtuous themselves and gradually qualify themselves for spiritual discipline. If they are fortunate to get the association of saints, their lives can also turn in the spiritual direction. Saints are those preoccupied with God. From their lips his holy name issues. From the scripture we also learn of the efficacy of the name of God, its spiritual power. It is this sacred utterance that Kṛṣṇa next turns Arjuna’s attention to.

The exercise of one’s faith that is not born of scriptural study and saintly association is defective. In order that a person might make the best of his faith and overcome the defects resulting from its being less than scripturally sound, Kṛṣṇa next introduces the sacred mantra om tat sat, stating that it should preface all acts of sacrifice, austerity, and charity. In doing so, he turns his elaboration on faith in the spiritual direction, implying that the chanting of God’s name through which all acts become an offering
unto him has the power to gradually elevate one from faith born of one's materially conditioned nature to the platform of enlightened faith. The following section implies that, should any defect in the execution of an auspicious act spoil its outcome, this can be counteracted by chanting *om tat sat*, the name of God.

**Text 23**

अन्त्यं तत्सदयते निर्देशः ब्रह्मण्यिनिविध: स्मृतः।
ब्राह्मण्येन वेदांश्च यज्ञांश्च विहिताः पुरः॥२३॥

*om tat sat iti nirdeśo brahmaṇaś tri-vidhah smṛtaḥ/
brāhmaṇaś tena vedāś ca yajñāś ca vihitāḥ purā/*

*om—om; tat—that; sat—eternal; iti—is; nirdeśaḥ—designation; brahmaṇaḥ—the Absolute; tri-vidhaḥ—threefold; smṛtaḥ—considered; brāhmaṇaḥ—the brāhmaṇas; tena—with that; vedāḥ—the Vedas; ca—also; yajñāḥ—sacrifices; ca—also; vihitāḥ—created; purā—formerly.*

The syllables *om tat sat* are the symbolic threefold representation of the Absolute that in ancient times gave rise to the brāhmaṇas, the Vedas, and sacrifices.

The sacred syllables *om tat sat* were integral to both the religious life of material goodness and spiritual pursuit in ancient times, and its importance is no less today. Thus Kṛṣṇa stresses it to Arjuna.

In this verse the word *brāhmaṇaḥ* refers to the priestly class that teaches both religious and spiritual values. Sacrifice is either religious when involving material assets or transcendental when involving the self. The *Vedas* deal primarily with religious life, although their conclusion is spiritual. Here Kṛṣṇa implies that the sacred syllables *om tat sat* pervade both religious and spiritual life. If uttered in pursuit of subreligious ideals, they can elevate one to religious ideals governed by the *sattva-guṇa*. When uttered from a sattvic orientation, they insure the attainment of religious ideals. If they are uttered as a preface to acts in pursuit of transcendence, they also assure success despite any discrepancy.

This sacred mantra is one, while consisting of three aspects. It is the name of God. *Oṁ* is well known as the name or sound of God. *Tat* is also a name of God, as we find in the *Upaniṣads*, *tat tvam asi*. *Sat* is God as the cause of the world. From *sat*, the real world and the unreal world of illusion
(asat) arise. Thus om, tat, and sat are names of God, the chanting of which insures all success in any endeavor. The name of God should be chanted before all undertakings, rendering them an offering unto God.

Text 24

तस्माद् तद्युद्धाह्न यज्ञानयःक्रिया:।
प्रवर्तने विधानाशः सन्तं ब्रह्मवादिनाम्॥२४॥

tasmād om ity udāhṛtya yajña-dāna-tapah-kriyāḥ/
pravartante vidhānoktāḥ satataṁ brahma-vādināṁ//

tasmāt—therefore; om—om; iti—thus; udāhṛtya—uttering; yajña—sacrifice; dāna—charity; tapah—austerity; kriyāḥ—acts; pravartante—they begin; vidhāna-uktāḥ—as prescribed in the scripture; satatam—always; brahma-vādinām—of the students of the Vedas.

Therefore, students of the Vedas always preface scripturally prescribed acts of sacrifice, austerity, and charity by uttering the syllable om.

Kṛṣṇa does not elaborate on the significance of the syllable om, as he does in the following verses on tat and sat. It is so well known that he takes for granted that Arjuna is familiar with its import. Furthermore, Kṛṣṇa has already spoken about om previously (Bg. 7.8, 8.13, 9.17, 10.25).

Om covers both religious and transcendent life in its reach. It is integral to Vedic utterances in pursuit of both, for it signifies the supreme reality, who all of the gods and goddess represent, and that which liberated life thrives in service to. Its full significance represents the supreme act of surrender to God that converts life from religious acknowledgment of God under the jurisdiction of sattva-guna into perpetual adoration of him in the transcendent nirguna reality. As Kṛṣṇa tells Arjuna next, these two aspects of the syllable om are individually represented in the syllables tat and sat.

Text 25

तद्युद्धाह्न यज्ञानयः-क्रिया: ।
दानक्रियायुक्ते विधि: क्रियये मोक्षकालिक: ॥२५॥

tad ity anabhisandhāya phalaṁ yajña-tapah-kriyāḥ/
dāna-kriyāḥ ca vividhāḥ kriyante mokṣa-kāṅśibhiḥ//
Those who desire liberation utter the syllable tat while performing acts of sacrifice, austerity, and charity of various sorts without desiring to enjoy the results for themselves.

The syllable tat is invoked for liberation in such aphorisms as tat tvam asi. It indicates the supreme transcendent reality. The words brahma-vàdinaḥ in the previous verse refer to all students of the Vedas, whereas here Kṛṣṇa speaks of those students interested in liberation. While om is uttered before all acts, be they religious in nature or aimed at liberation, tat is uttered exclusively with regard to liberation.

**Text 26**

sat-bhāve sat-bhāve ca sat ity etat prayujyate/
prasāste karma caiva tathā sac-chabdah pārtha yujyate//

Sat is used to indicate both reality and goodness. The word sat is similarly used in the performance of any praiseworthy act, O son of Ṛṣāṇa.

**Text 27**

yajñe tapasi dāne ca sthitih sad iti cocyate/
karma caiva tad-arthiyam sad ity evābhidhiyate//

yajñe—in sacrifice; tapasi—in austerity; dāne—in charity; ca—also; sthitih—conviction; sat—sat; iti—thus; ca—and; ucye—at it is pronounced; karma—
The word sat also refers to the conviction behind acts of sacrifice, austerity, and charity; acts with these purposes in mind are similarly designated as sat.

Kṛṣṇa says in verse 26 that the syllable sat signifies reality, God. However, he implies here that it represents God’s presence in pious acts of this world. It is goodness itself and auspicious acts in sattva-guṇa of a religious and philanthropic nature. It is also the virtue of one’s conviction in acts of sacrifice, austerity, and charity, as well as activities meant for assisting one in these acts. Thus its utterance in remembrance of God removes all discrepancy in the performance of pious acts.

As each of these two syllables are potent themselves with regard to making one’s life auspicious, how much more so is the utterance of all three, oṁ tat sat. The import of this section is that if those who do not take the trouble to study the scripture and ascertain its conclusion, but out of some faith nonetheless worship without being inimical to the scripture by uttering this sacred mantra and offering their acts to God, they will eventually know perfection. Thus Kṛṣṇa speaks of the power of God’s name.

Should one question the necessity of faith at all because of the power of the sacred syllables oṁ tat sat, Kṛṣṇa replies in the next verse.

Text 28

अश्रद्धया हुन दत्तं तपस्यं कृतं च यत ।
असदि तत्र पार्थ न च तत्रपर्यं नो हस ||२॥

aśraddhayā hutan dattaṁ tapas taptam kṛtam ca yat/
asad ity ucyate pārtha na ca tat pretya no iha//

aśraddhayā—without faith; hutan—sacrificed; dattaṁ—given; tapas—penance; taptam—executed; kṛtam—performed; ca—also; yat—which; asat—false; iti—thus; ucyate—it is said; pārtha—O son of Pṛthā; na—not; ca—also; tat—that; pretya—having died (gone); na u—nor; iha—in this world.

O son of Pṛthā, any action performed without faith—even sacrifice, charity, and austerity—is considered impious. Such acts are fruitful neither in this world nor the next.
Krṣṇa ends this chapter stressing the virtue of faith by condemning sacrifice (hutam), austerity (tapas), and charity (dattam), as well as other acts (kṛtam), such as glorification of worshippable persons, performed without it. Although the chanting of om tat sat is powerful, it manifests its power in the fertile ground of the faithful heart. Indeed, it is even said that the name of God should not be given to the faithless, and one who does so offends the holy name itself.
Arjuna’s threefold address in which he refers to Kṛṣṇa as Mahābaho, Hṛṣikeśa, and Kesi-niṣūdana implies great love on his part. At this point he has heard almost the entire gospel of the Gītā from the lotus lips of his dearmost friend, and he is experiencing extreme affection.

Mahā-bāho means “mighty-armed.” By addressing Kṛṣṇa in this way Arjuna expresses the security he feels after hearing Kṛṣṇa’s reassuring words. This epithet is also related to the next one, Kesi-niṣūdana. Kṛṣṇa of Vraja killed the horse demon Kesi by extending his mighty left arm into Kesi’s mouth. This demon represents the wild horse of doubts that spring as if out of nowhere to trouble the mind of the practitioner. Here Arjuna asks
Kṛṣṇa to slay one more doubt concerning the apparent difference between sannyāsa and renunciation (tyāga). He wants to know clearly what these two terms imply. Pure expressions of sannyāsa and tyāga involve internal control of the mind and senses. Thus Arjuna, desiring to know the truth about them, addresses Kṛṣṇa as Hṛṣīkeśa, he who has the power to remove internal disturbances.

Arjuna’s doubt arises from things that Kṛṣṇa said about sannyāsa and tyāga in the first six chapters of the Gītā.¹ There Kṛṣṇa spoke of both ceasing from action altogether (sannyāsa) and foregoing only the result of action (tyāga). This theme recurs throughout chapters 3 through 6. Here again Arjuna seeks clarification between jñāna-yoga, referred to in this verse as sannyāsa, and niṣkāma-karma-yoga, referred to as tyāga. Thus through his question Arjuna gives Kṛṣṇa the opportunity to begin his summary of the entire Gītā.

Text 2

śrī-bhagavān uvāca
kāmyāṇāṁ karmanāṁ nyāsāṁ sannyāsaṁ kavayo vidūḥ/
   sarva-karma-phala-tyāgam prāhus tyāgam vicaksanāḥ//
śrī-bhagavān uvāca—the Lord of Śrī said; kāmyāṇāṁ—with desire; karmanāṁ—of actions; nyāsāṁ—renunciation; sannyāsaṁ—sannyāsa; kavayaḥ—the learned; vidūḥ—they know; sarva—all; karma—action; phala—result; tyāgam—renunciation; prāhus—they call; tyāgam—tyāga; vicaksanāḥ—the wise.

The Lord of Śrī said: The learned understand giving up actions performed with a desire for reward to be sannyāsa. The wise call giving up the results of all work tyāga.

Before giving his own opinion beginning with verse 4, Kṛṣṇa mentions that of others—learned persons—in this verse and the following one. In doing so, he implies that Arjuna’s question is worthy, for even learned persons differ regarding the subtle meanings of sannyāsa and tyāga.

¹. See Bg. 4.20 and 5.13 for examples of Kṛṣṇa’s stress on tyāga and sannyāsa.
Here Kṛṣṇa says that some consider sannyāsa to be the renunciation of actions recommended in the scripture for fruitive gain, such as those that are aimed at acquiring a good child, a wife, and so on. Those of this opinion maintain that sannyāsa does, however, involve action that has no overt fruitive goal connected with it, actions that bear the fruit of purification and knowledge.

Others think that both fruitive and nonfruitive actions can be performed if one is not attached to the fruit of one’s work, and this they call tyāga. Those mentioned in this verse are of the opinion that sannyāsa and tyāga are different from one another. There are still other opinions concerning the meaning of tyāga.

**Text 3**

\text{त्याज्यम् दोषावधितन्येक कर्म प्राप्तमूनीनैषिणः। यज्ञानन्तप्रकर्म न त्याज्यमिन चापरे॥३॥}

\text{tyājyam—}to be given up; \text{doṣa-vat—}faulty; \text{iti—}thus; \text{ekat—}some; \text{karma—}action; \text{prāhur—}they say; \text{manīśinah—}the thoughtful; \text{yajña—}sacrifice; \text{dāna—}charity; \text{tapah—}austerity; \text{karma—}act; \text{na—not; tyājyam—}to be given up; \text{iti—}thus; \text{ca—and; apare—}others.

\text{Some learned persons say that action, being inherently faulty, should be abandoned altogether, and others say that acts of sacrifice, charity, and austerity should not be abandoned.}

The scholars who follow Kapila’s Sāṅkhya think that all activity is inherently flawed, and thus tyāga involves ceasing from all action, including acts of sacrifice, charity, and austerity. They consider even enjoined sacrifices, which sometimes involve some type of violence, to be undesirable. Others, the followers of Jaimini’s Karma-mīmāṁsā, differ. They recommend perpetual performance of sacrifice, charity, and austerity in spite of any perceived defect in them because these activities are enjoined in the scripture.

Having considered various opinions, Kṛṣṇa next offers his own definitive statement on the meaning of tyāga.
Text 4

O best of the descendants of Bharata, hear my conclusion on tyāga. O best of men, tyāga is declared to be of three kinds.

Kṛṣṇa’s opinion addresses the implication of Arjuna’s question that is carried forward from the previous chapter: although Kṛṣṇa connects renunciation with transcending the guṇas in chapter 2 (Bg. 2.45), Arjuna wonders if there is any relationship between some forms of renunciation and the three guṇas. In the course of addressing this question, Kṛṣṇa will reveal that both the terms, sannyāsa and tyāga, in essence mean the same thing and that only renunciation that is sattvic is desirable. Furthermore, it is the renunciation of the fruit of action, and not renunciation of action itself, that is at the heart of renunciation. Renunciation is an internal affair that has little to do with external actions. This is what Kṛṣṇa has stressed all along.

Text 5

Acts of sacrifice, charity, and austerity are not to be given up. Indeed, they should be performed, for sacrifice, charity, and austerity purify even those who are wise.
Here Kṛṣṇa says that not only are sacrifice, charity, and austerity not to be given up, one must engage in them. In doing so, even the wise, the jñānis, purify themselves. Kṛṣṇa next describes how these three should be performed. Thus he anticipates Arjuna’s doubt: are these activities not purifying in and of themselves and thus is there really any need to perform them without desiring their fruit?

**Text 6**

एतान्य अधिकारद्वयं तत्कार्यं त्यक्तं फलं च।
कर्तव्यानीति मे पार्थ निश्चितं मतमुत्तमम्॥ ॥

etāni—these; api—certainly; tu—however; karmāni—actions; saṅgam—association; tyaktvā—renouncing; phalāni—results; ca—and; kartavyānī—to be performed; iti—thus; me—my; pārtha—O son of Pṛthā; niscitam—without a doubt; matam—opinion; uttamam—highest.

*However, these actions are to be performed in the spirit of detachment from their results. Without a doubt this is my final opinion, O son of Pṛthā.*

Śrīdhara Swāmī comments that sacrifice, charity, and austerity should be performed as acts of worship of the Lord. They should be performed without attachment to enjoying the results for oneself, without attachment to the activity itself, and without identifying oneself as the performer of these acts. This is Kṛṣṇa's final opinion. This opinion overrides those of others mentioned earlier. It is supreme (uttamam), and it speaks to the heart of the spirit of renunciation.

Having established his own supreme opinion, which concurs with the opinion of those mentioned in verse 3 who advocate perpetual performance of sacrifice, charity, and austerity, Kṛṣṇa next refutes the opposite view that action itself is faulty and must be given up.

**Text 7**

नियतस्य तु निःपप्यायेऽविभेच॥
मोहात्तत्सम परिश्रमात्सम परिक्रियति॥ ॥

niyatasya tu sannyāsaḥ karmano nopapadyate/
mohāt tasya parityāgas tāmasah parikirttah//
niyatasya—of prescribed; tu—but; sannyāsā—renunciation; karmanāḥ—of activity; na—not; upapadyate—it is proper; mohāt—out of delusion; tasya—of it; parityāgah—renunciation; tāmasah—tamasic; parikirtitah—declared.

But renunciation of prescribed duties is improper. Abandoning them out of delusion is considered to be tamasic.

In this verse Kṛṣṇa equates tyāga and sannyāsa, using both words synonymously (sannyāsā/parityāgah). Thus he answers Arjuna’s question as to the difference between the two. He also addresses the opinion of those who advocate giving up all action in the name of renunciation. Such renunciation is tamasic. It is born of delusion because prescribed duties properly performed purify the soul.

Text 8

duḥkham ity eva yat karma kāya-kleṣa-bhayāt tyajet/
sa kṛtvā rājasam tyāgam naiva tyāga-phalam labhet/

duḥkham—difficult; iti—thus; eva—certainly; yat—which; karma—action; kāya—body; kleṣa—trouble; bhayāt—out of fear; tyajet—he abandons; saḥ—he; kṛtvā—doing; rājasam—rajasic; tyāgam—renunciation; na—not; eva—certainly; tyāga—renunciation; phalam—fruit; labhet—he obtains.

One who abandons an action because it is difficult or out of fear of bodily inconvenience engages in rajasic renunciation. Such a person does not obtain the true fruit of renunciation.

The real fruits of renunciation are knowledge and steadfastness in spiritual practice. These fruits are not attained by one who renounces worldly duties because he finds them irksome. Sannyāsa is not about getting away from the difficulties of everyday life, but rather looking at them as a means to purification.

Text 9

kārīmikānāc yaktāṁ nityataṁ kriyate-pūnān |
saṁśāna phāte chait m yāgaṁ saktivam mātṛ: ||9||
Arjuna, when obligatory work is performed because it should be done, while abandoning attachment for it and its fruit, such renunciation is sattvic.

Here Kṛṣṇa addresses his friend as Arjuna, which, as stated earlier, means “pure,” to indicate that he is pure and can thus understand the virtue of sattvic renunciation. This kind of renunciation is what is meant by sannyāsa and tyāga. Refusal to act is born of either delusion or fear of the hardships involved in performing one's duties. However, spiritual renunciation does not involve negation of activity. It involves full commitment to activity devoid of any egocentric attitude resulting from thinking oneself the doer or from personal attachment to action itself or its fruits. Renunciation belongs to the inner world, the consciousness behind action. It is freedom from self-centeredness and not freedom from work. The soul belongs to God and has duties in relation to him. Performing them dutifully eventually turns labor into love. Knowledge leading to the cessation of activity is not the goal. Love—with all of the trouble that accompanies it—is the goal of the Gītā.

Kṛṣṇa describes the symptoms of this kind of renunciation next.
The wise renunciate situated in sattva, who is free from doubt, does not dislike work that is disagreeable, nor is he attached to work that is agreeable.

Misery is a result of trying to be happy. How we react to misery is the key to becoming happy. A sattvic renunciate is neither attached to work that is pleasant, nor averse to that which is unpleasant.

Text 11

न हि देहभूता शक्यं नर्त्तुं कर्मान्यप्रेष्टतः।
यस्तु कर्मफलन्त्यागी स न्यागीन्यभिधीयते॥ ११॥

na hi deha-bhṛtā sakyam tyaktum karmāṇy aśeṣatah/
yas tu karma-phala-tyāgi sa tyāgity abhidhiyate//

na—not; hi—certainly; deha-bhṛtā—by the embodied; sakyam—possible; tyaktum—to give up; karmāṇi—actions; aśeṣataḥ—entirely; yah—who; tu—but; karma—action; phala—fruit; tyāgī—renouncer; saḥ—he; tyāgī—renunciate; iti—thus; abhidhiyate—he is called.

It is impossible for embodied beings to entirely give up actions. Thus one who gives up the fruit of action is called a renunciate.

Text 12

अनिष्टमि मिश्र च त्रिविधं कर्मणिः फलम्।
भवत्यात्यागिनं प्रेत्या न तु सन्यासिनं क्वचित्॥ १२॥

aniṣṭam iṣṭam miśram ca tri-vidham karmanāḥ phalam/
bhavaty atyāginām pretya na tu sannyāsānām kvacit//

aniṣṭam—undesired; iṣṭam—desired; miśram—mixed; ca—and; tri-vidham—of three kinds; karmanāḥ—of action; phalam—fruit; bhavati—it is; atyāginām—for those who are not renounced; pretya—after dying; na—not; tu—but; sannyāsānām—for the renunciates; kvacit—whatsoever.

When those who have not adopted renunciation die, they experience three kinds of fruits from their action: evil, good, and mixed. For renunciates, however, there is no fruit whatsoever.
One who renounces the fruit of action by offering it to God does not experience this fruit after death in the form of going to heaven or hell or again taking birth on earth, where there are both heavenly and hellish conditions. The renunciate offers the fruit of his work to God and identifies himself as the agent of God through whom that work is accomplished. He is attached to serving God for the pleasure of God, rather than attached to any particular type of work. Thus he is liberated from good, bad, and mixed results of his actions. He does not take birth in heaven, hell, or in human society. Appropriate renunciation nullifies the influence of *karma*.

Thus far Kṛṣṇa has reiterated his earlier emphasis on *nīskāma-karma-yoga,* which leads naturally to knowledge and devotion. In the first six chapters of the Gītā, Kṛṣṇa also discusses knowledge itself at some length, as he does more so in the final six chapters. In verses 13 through 17 of this summary chapter, Kṛṣṇa discusses the causes of action and how one can work without acquiring the fruit of work. In this section Kṛṣṇa reiterates the knowledge of Vedānta that the only real doer is God himself.

**Text 13**

पञ्चाकराणि निबोधा मे।
सांख्येन कृतात्त्व प्रोक्तानि सिद्धये सर्वकर्मणाम॥ १३॥

pañcaitiṇi mahā-bāho kāraṇāni nibodha me/
sānkhye kṛtānte proktāni siddhaye sarvā-karmaṇām//

pañca—five; etāni—these; mahā-bāho—O mighty-armed one; kāraṇāni—factors; nibodha—learn; me—from me; sānkhye—in the Vedānta; kṛta-ante—in the conclusion; proktāni—spoken; siddhaye—for the accomplishment; sarva—all; karmanām—of activities.

*Learn from me, O mighty-armed one, these five factors spoken of in the Vedānta by which all actions are accomplished.*

Here the words sānkhye kṛtānte mean analysis (sānkhya), the likes of which is found in the Vedānta, the conclusion (kṛtānte) of the Vedas. Because this subject is difficult to understand, Kṛṣṇa calls for Arjuna’s rapt attention by speaking emphatically, “Learn from me (nibodha me)!”

**Text 14–15**

अधिनानं तथा कर्त्ता करणं च चुंभविविधम्।
विविधश्च पृथकलेखा देव चेतात्व प्रज्ञम्॥ १४॥

abhinānam tathā kartā karanaḥ cha puṣṭavibhīdam।
vividah cha prthakalēka dēv cētaat prajñam॥ १४॥
The seat of action (the body), the performer of action, the senses, the various types of endeavors, and, last but not least, God, or fate, are the five causes of whatever action, appropriate or inappropriate, a person performs in body, speech, or mind.

The body is the seat (adhiṣṭhānam) of activity. The soul in material consciousness under the influence of ahamkāra is the performer (kartā) of any action. The sense organs are the means (karanam) to accomplish any action. The various types of endeavors (ceṣṭā) involve the movement of the life airs, or vital energies, within the body. These four are grouped together along with the influence of God (daivam), which is mentioned separately as “the fifth” (pañcamam) in order to distinguish it from the others. God’s influence is the ultimate factor in any action, the sanction necessary for any action to be carried out, which we sometimes refer to as fate or destiny. Here the word daivam refers more to the Paramātmā than it does to the influence of the gods who are under the Paramātmā’s control and preside over the functions of the senses. He is the source of the other four factors involved in any action. The ultimacy of the Paramātmā’s influence on all action is confirmed elsewhere in the Gītā (Bg. 15.15, 18.61). This is also supported by Vedānta-sūtra 2.3.41. Rāmānujacārya describes the Paramātmā as “the most important element in determining the results of any action.”
Actions in accordance with scripture are appropriate and those that are not are inappropriate. Body, speech, and mind represent the entirety of activity. Thus all action, whether good or bad, is a product of these five factors. Therefore, the soul itself in its pure identity is not involved in action. The pure soul is at best a relative doer, who acts instrumentally, having surrendered his will to God.

The apparent contradiction between God’s omnipotence and the free will of the individual soul is raised by Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa, Vallabha, and Rāmānuja Cārya in their commentaries on these verses. God provides the living being with a body, sense organs, and vital energies, all of which facilitate action. He also grants the power of initiative and thus inner moral freedom. Thus equipped, the soul expresses itself in material life. Its free will stands unimpaired, and its simultaneous dependence on God for that free will and its physical facility remains a metaphysical fact. Not a blade of grass moves without the will of God, and yet humanity is also free to act. God himself is responsible for humanity’s free will. He wills our free will, and thus we are dynamically free through him and dependent on him simultaneously. We are an expression of his will, and he is the primary factor behind every act. If the living being had no freedom in making choices, there would be no need for scriptures with proscribed and recommended activities.

In the next verse Kṛṣṇa turns his attention to those who after hearing about the ultimate agency of God—the source of both our free will and our facility for action—continue to think themselves independent in action.

Text 16

तत्रावियम् सति कर्तारम् अत्मानं केवलं तु यः।
पश्यति अकृत-बुद्धिवः ना स पश्यति दुर्मार्थिः॥ १६॥

tatra—there; evam—thus; sati—being; kartāram—doer; ātmānam—himself; kevalam—only; tu—but; yah—who; paśyati—he sees; akṛta-buddhivat—due to imperfect understanding; na—not; saḥ—he; paśyati—he sees; durmatih—foolish.

This being so, a person who sees himself as the only doer does not see things as they are. His imperfectly developed understanding renders him foolish.
One who has not deliberated properly on the import of the scripture or heard from realized souls about the nature of the self is invariably prone to imperfect understanding (akṛta-buddhitvāt). As scripture and saints are reliable sources of valid evidence, those who have heard from these sources yet reject them are considered fools.

Text 17

यस्य नाहंक्रोत भा�वो बुद्धिस्मय न लिप्यते।
हत्वपि सा इमान लोकम्य न हन्ति न निबद्ध्यते॥ १७॥

yasya nāhankṛto bhāvo buddhir yasya na lipyate/
hatvāpi sa imān lokāṁ na hanti na nibadhyate//

A person whose mind is free from egotism and whose intellect is pure is not bound even though he slays many people, for he does not truly slay.

In this world a madman is not held accountable for killing another because he is not involved consciously in the act of killing. A soldier in war who kills on behalf of his country and superior commander is also not held accountable for killing. One’s consciousness with regard to any action is the principal factor to be considered in determining accountability. Similarly, the realized soul is not bound by reaction to that which he does in the pure consciousness of being an agent of God. This pure consciousness is devoid of material egotism and intellect that has not been purified by scripture and saintly association.

The egoless action of pure intellect mentioned in this verse and how one becomes situated in it has been described at length throughout the Bhagavad-gitā. It is not easily attained, and it cannot be imitated. Thus abuse of this verse, which leads to antinomianism, is checked considerably by the standard of consciousness stipulated herein that one must attain before one can be considered free from karmic reactions.

While this verse returns us to the battlefield and the matter at hand, it also serves to underscore the exalted nature of the self and the God-realization that Kṛṣṇa wants Arjuna to attain. Here, just as in the first six
chapters, Kṛṣṇa encourages Arjuna to fight as his agent without concern for any karmic implications resulting from the slaying of Bhīṣma, Droṇa, and other warriors. Thus for the sake of emphasizing the purity of self-realization, the contrast is made here and in the Gītā in general between enlightenment and the unthinkable act of killing one’s relatives. Hypothetically, a person acting as a conscious agent of God in all of his actions can commit even such a heinous act yet not be held accountable for it.

Text 18

Knowledge, the object of knowledge, and the knower make up the threefold impetus underlying action. The instrument, the object, and the agent are the three constituents of action.

With this verse, Kṛṣṇa again takes up the subject of knowledge, adding a final word to the teachings he gave in the first and last six chapters of the Gītā. Knowledge, the object of knowledge, and the knower were elaborately discussed in chapter 13 (Bg. 13.7–18), particularly in terms of transcending the material modes of nature. There Kṛṣṇa described knowledge to be knowledge of himself, the soul, and the bodily field of activity. He identified the object of knowledge to be himself and the knower to be both himself and the enlightened soul. Here, however, Kṛṣṇa will speak of these three aspects of knowing as they are manifest within the guṇas. All actions have an impetus and here Kṛṣṇa divides this impetus into three categories: those arising from knowledge, those arising from the object of knowledge, and those arising from the knower himself. Similarly, every action has three components: the instruments used in any action, the objective of one’s work, and the agent who performs the work. Kṛṣṇa’s analysis is made in consideration of the three predominant grammatical cases: the nominative,
accusative, and instrumental, without which no action is complete. Most commentators have also pointed out that there is a correspondence between the impetuses for action and their components.

Knowledge (jñānam) is the understanding that is the means to accomplish action. It is the instrumental aspect of the impulse behind action. The object of knowledge (jñeyam) is the action itself, by which an objective is reached. It is the objective aspect of the impulse to act. The knower (parijñātā) is one who possesses specific knowledge with regard to action undertaken. The knower is the subjective aspect of the impulse underlying action. These three constitute the threefold impulse underlying action.

The three constituents of action include the instruments (karanam) of the senses which cause action to take place, the desired objective (karma), and the agent (kartā) of action. These three form the constituents of action (karma-saṅgrahaḥ) in its instrumental, objective, and subjective aspects, respectively.

Kṛṣṇa mentions the threefold impetus for action along with the three constituents of action to further illustrate that the self, being apart from the impetus for action, its constituents, and its fruit, is not directly involved in action. Accordingly, Kṛṣṇa next elaborates on the impulse to act and the constituents of action in relation to the guṇas.

Text 19

It is declared in the scripture dealing with the modes of nature (guṇas) that knowledge, action, and the doer are of three kinds in accordance with these modes. Hear now about these.

The words guṇa-sāṅkhyaṇe in this verse refer to that scripture wherein the science of classifying things in terms of the guṇas is fully (sam) taught
Although Kapila has done this in his doctrine of Sāñkhya, this verse need not be seen as a reference to his work, as other scriptures also deal with this subject. However, there is no harm in understanding Kṛṣṇa’s words as a reference to Kapila’s doctrine, for although his conclusions are not in harmony with Vedānta, they are correct in terms of classifying things according to the guṇas.

In the Gitā itself, the guṇas have been described from different angles in chapters 14 and 17. Here Kṛṣṇa further discusses them over the next twenty verses. In chapter 14 they are discussed in terms of how they bind the conditioned soul. In chapter 17 they are discussed to demonstrate the superiority of sattva and the need to strive for this guṇa and from there transcendence. Here in chapter 18 Kṛṣṇa discusses them again to stress the virtue of sattva and to shed light on the fact that the impetus underlying action, its constituents, and its fruit are categorically different from the self.

Text 20

sarva-bhūteṣu yenaikam bhāvam avyayam iksate/
avibhaktam vibhaktesu tat jñānam viddhi sāttvikam//

Know that knowledge to be sattvic in which one imperishable and unified spiritual principle is seen in all diverse beings.

Our knowledge is sattvic when we understand that, regardless of the diverse bodily circumstances souls find themselves in, all living beings are inherently spiritual and thus qualitatively the same. In this sense they are one. At the same time, they are categorically different from the bodies they inhabit.

Text 21

पृथक्तो तू ज्ञनान् नानाभावान् पृथक्गतिधान्।
वेत्ति सर्वे भूने ज्ञनानं विभि राजसम॥२१॥
prthaktvena tu yaj jñānam nānā-bhāvān prthag-vidhān/
vetti sarvesu bhūtesu taj jñānam viddhi rājasam//

prthaktvena—because of division; tu—but; yat—which; jñānam—knowledge; nānā-bhāvān—many existences; prthag-vidhān—different; vetti—he knows; sarvesu—in all; bhūtesu—in beings; tat—that; jñānam—knowledge; viddhi—understand; rājasam—in terms of passion.

But you should understand that knowledge to be rajasic in which one sees that in every body there is a different type of living entity.

Rajasic knowledge does not recognize the unified, eternal spiritual principle in all bodies. Under its influence, one thinks that there are different types of living beings, which gives rise to sectarianism, racism, and sexism.

Text 22

yat tu kṛtsna-vad ekasmin kārye saktam ahaitukam/
ataṭvārtha-vad alpaṃ ca tat tāmasam udāḥrtam//

yat—which; tu—but; kṛtsna-vat—as all-in-all; ekasmin—in one; kārye—in course of action; saktam—attached; ahaitukam—unreasonably; atatvārtha-vat—not concerned with truth; alpaṃ—trivial; ca—and; tat—that; tāmasam—tamasic; udāḥrtam—said to be.

However, that unreasonable knowledge which is not concerned with truth, which is trivial, and by which one is attached to one kind of physical work as though it were all-in-all is said to be tamasic.

Knowledge that is a product of tamo-guṇa is not at all helpful. Under its influence one does not recognize the eternal spiritual principle, thinking the body to be all-in-all.

Text 23

नियतं सत्त्वंत्मकं गुरूपदेशं कृतम।
अफलप्रेषणोऽर्थं यत्सत्त्वान्वितकमुच्ये॥२३॥

afalaprerpano arthaṃ yat tattvānvinākhumyate //23//

afalaprerpana arthaṃ yataḥ tattvānvinākhumyate //23//
That action which is regulated and detached, performed without desire or aversion, with no desire for its result is said to be sattvic.

Sattvic action is persistent and regulated. It is carried through to the finish. It also involves dedication and consistency with regard to the duties dictated by one’s vocation in life. Such ordained (regulated) action is what should be performed by those under the influence of egoism, which creates the sense of being the doer of an action and enjoyer of its fruits. Ordained action removes this egoism and is devoid of attachment (råga) and aversion (dveṣa).

Text 24

An act is said to be rajasic when it requires abundant effort, is performed with an eye to enjoy its results, and is furthermore done with the conviction that one is the doer.

B. R. Śrīdhara Deva Goswāmī renders the word bahulāyāsam in this verse as “ambitious.” When work is not a labor of love and involves the sense that one is doing something great, or work is performed with the ambition of being recognized for the effort, this work is under the influence of rajo-guṇa. To feel that we are ourselves accomplishing something great
by our efforts and that our sacrifice is considerable takes away from the sacrifice.

Text 25

That action undertaken out of delusion, without consideration of consequence, loss, harm, as well as one’s own ability, is said to be tamasic.

Rāmānuja defines the word pauruṣam in this verse as the ability to see an action through to the end. This is absent in actions influenced by tamo-guna. Unlike Rāmānuja, Viśvanātha Cakravartī does not associate pauruṣam with the verb anapekṣya, but rather with karma. Thus he defines pauruṣam as “being concerned with minimal human activities and nothing more,” vyavahārika-puruṣa-mātra-kartavyam. Śrīdhara Swāmī considers the word ksayam (loss) to involve loss of money. One who spends foolishly is influenced by tamo-guna. Viśvanātha Cakravartī defines the same word as loss of religious principles. Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa concurs, glossing ksayam as dharmādi-vināśam, “the destruction of one’s religious principles.”

Text 26

mukta-saṅgaḥ ‘naham-vādi dhṛty-utsāha-samanvitah/
   siddhy-asiddhyor nirvikāraḥ kartā sāttvika ucyate//

mukta-saṅgah—free from attachment; anaham-vādi—free from egotism; dhṛty-utsāha-samanvitah—full of fortitude and diligence; siddhi-asiddhyoh—in success and failure; nirvikāraḥ—unperturbed; kartā—doer; sāttvikah—sat-tvic; ucyate—it is said.
The doer who is free from attachment, free from egotism, full of patience and enthusiasm, and unchanged in success or failure is said to be sattvic.

Passionate, desiring the fruits of action, covetous, cruel-natured, impure, and moody—such a doer is said to be rajasic.

A doer who is undisciplined, vulgar, arrogant, deceitful, malicious, lazy, morose, and procrastinating is said to be tamasic.

With this verse Kṛṣṇa completes his classification of knowledge, action, and the doer according to the guṇas. Śrīdharā Swāmī comments that, in discussing the performer of action in verses 26 through 28 in relation to the guṇas, Kṛṣṇa has discussed the knower of action as well, which has not been analyzed separately here. This is so because, as we have seen earlier in verse
18, the knower and doer are one and the same, representing the subjective aspect of the impulse for action and its subjective component, respectively. Similarly, when analyzing action in verses 23 through 25, Kṛṣṇa has also described the object of knowledge. Thus Kṛṣṇa’s discussion of action also implies discussion of the knowable as well, which is the objective aspect of the threefold impetus underlying action.

Remaining to be discussed in relation to the guṇas is the intellect that constitutes the instrumental aspect of the impulse for action, which understanding and fortitude are functions of. Discussion of the instrumental aspect of the impulse for action includes indirectly discussing the instrumental aspect (the senses) of the components of action. Kṛṣṇa turns Arjuna’s attention to this next.

Text 29

Listen, O Dhanañjaya, as I now describe completely and distinctly the threefold classification of intellect and also fortitude in accordance with the guṇas.

Intellect (buddhi) is considered to be one of the fourfold elements of the internal organ (antahkāraṇa). It is characterized by the faculties of judgment and certainty. Fortitude is one of its functions. It is the firmness by which a person holds fast to his decision. Thus both intellect and fortitude are elements of the instrumental impulse to act, previously referred to as knowledge. Kṛṣṇa explains them completely by way of classifying them in accordance with the guṇas. The word prthaktvena implies that from his description it will be apparent which type of intellect and fortitude should be cultivated and which should be rejected.
Text 30

That intellect which knows when to act and when not to act, what is to be done and what is not to be done, what is to be feared and what is not to be feared, along with knowledge of the nature of bondage and liberation, O son of Prthä, is sattvic.

Intellect is that by which one knows. Here it is being spoken of as if it were itself the knower, rather than the instrument of knowing. Śrīdhara Śvāmī comments that Kṛṣṇa’s words should be understood in the way that one understands a statement like “the fire is cooking.” Kṛṣṇa’s particular use of words indicates just how closely the intellect is related to the knower/doer of action.

Text 31

The intellect that cannot correctly distinguish right from wrong and what should be done from what should not be done is rajasic, O son of Prthä.
Text 32

The intellect that regards what is wrong to be right and, enveloped in ignorance, understands everything backwards is tamasic, O son of Pṛthā.

Text 33

The unswerving fortitude by which one controls the functions of the mind, vital air, and senses through yoga, O son of Pṛthā, is sattvic fortitude.

Text 34

The intellect that regards what is wrong to be right and, enveloped in ignorance, understands everything backwards is tamasic, O son of Pṛthā.
prasaṅgena—with attachment; phala-ākāṅkṣī—desiring results; dhṛtiḥ—for
titude; sā—that; pārtha—O son of Pṛthā; rājasī—rajasic.

But that fortitude by which one maintains duty, wealth, and sense
pleasure with attachment and desire for the results of action is rajasic,
O son of Pṛthā.

Fortitude in rajo-guṇa is characterized by lack of interest in liberation. Duti-
ful life (dharma), wealth (artha), and sense pleasure (kāma) are the three
worldly goals. All of these hold the interest of those in rajo-guṇa.

Text 35

यया स्वप्नं भयं शोकं विशादं मदाम एवं का/ न विमुच्छति दुर्मेघा धृतिं सा पार्था तामसी ||३५||
yayā svapnam bhayanā sukam visādam madam eva ca/
na vimuñcati durmedhā dhṛtih sā pārtha tāmasī/
yayā—by which; svapnam—sleep; bhaya—fear; sukam—grief; visādam—
depression; madam—conceit; eva—certainly; ca—and; na—not; vimuñ-
cati—one gives up; durmedhā—unintelligent; dhṛtih—determination;
sā—that; pārtha—O son of Pṛthā; tāmasī—tamasic.

The fortitude of an unintelligent person who cannot overcome sleep, fear,
grief, depression, and conceit is tamasic, O son of Pṛthā.

Having described action and the instrument of action in terms of their
classification within the guṇas, Kṛṣṇa next addresses the result of action,
happiness, in relation to the guṇas.

Text 36–37

सुखं तिर्थानं त्रिविधं श्रुणे मे भस्तर्मभ /
अभ्यासमं रम्यने तत्र दुर्म्यालं न विन चर्चिति ||३६||
yat tad agree visam iva parināme 'mrtopamam/
tat sukhaṁ sāttvikam proktam ātma-buddhi-prasāda-jam//
sukhaṁ tv idānāṃ tri-vidhaṁ śrṇu me bharataraśaḥba/
abhyaśād ramate yatra duḥkhāntaṁ ca nigacchati//
yat tad agre visam iva parināme 'mrtopamam/
tat sukhaṁ sāttvikam proktam ātma-buddhi-prasāda-jam//
Now hear from me, O best of the Bhāratas, of three kinds of happiness. That happiness whose cultivation leads to the end of all suffering, which in the beginning is like poison but in the end like nectar—that happiness is said to be sattvic, being born from serenity of mind.

Sattvic happiness results from spiritual practice. It is not the immediate experience of sense pleasure that dissipates as quickly as it arises. Rather than being related to physical stimulus, it is related to the mind: it is serenity. It is purity that is unpleasant in the stage of purification and that ends suffering once and for all.

Text 38

That happiness which at first through contact between the senses and their objects is like nectar but in the end is like poison is said to be rajasic.

Immediate pleasure that does not endure is rajasic happiness. It does not concern the self. Indeed, it obscures its clear perception. Rajasic happiness does not require that a person restrain his mind or senses to experience it.
Thus it is easy to acquire, but it does not endure. It turns to unhappiness in the long run by keeping one in saṁsāra.

**Text 39**

\[\text{yad agre cānubandhe ca sukham mohanam ātmanah/} \\
\text{niḍrālasya-pramādottham tat tāmasam udāḥytaam//} \]

That happiness which is deluding both in the beginning and end, arising from sleep, indolence, and neglect, is said to be tamasic.

The pleasure of oversleeping is tamasic. It deludes the soul both in terms of the pursuit of itself and the pursuit of illusory material happiness. Tamasic happiness often involves merely dreaming about the happiness one will never attain, without realizing how unrealistic this is. Intoxication, the death wish, and any form of deliberate self-forgetfulness in ignorance all further characterize the happiness of tāmas.

**Text 40**

\[\text{na tad asti pṛthivyām vā divi devesu vā punah/} \\
\text{sattvam prakṛti-jaiṁ muktaṁ yad ebbie syāt tribhir guṇaiḥ//} \]

There is no being, either on earth or in heaven among the gods, that can exist independent of these three guṇas born of material nature.
Here Kṛṣṇa summarizes the previous section by stating that the entire world is under the influence of the guṇas. Not only that which has been described, but everything and everyone in the material world is influenced by the guṇas. If everything in this world is a product of the guṇas, one needs help from beyond the influence of the guṇas to transcend them. This help appears in the world but is not of it. Examples of this helping hand are the avatāras and jīvanmuktas, whom this verse does not refer to. Thus Kṛṣṇa turns Arjuna’s attention to the means of liberation—his grace, the essential liberating element in both action and knowledge that fully manifests in bhakti. This discussion makes up the balance of the chapter.

Text 41

O chastiser of enemies, the duties of the brāhmaṇas, kṣatriyas, vaiśyas, and śudras are classified in accordance with the guṇas, arising from their natures.

Śrīdharā Swāmī comments that Kṛṣṇa explains the duties of the four social orders of life to stress that living beings attain salvation and rise above the guṇas by the grace of God and his worship. Thus after describing these duties in the following three verses, Kṛṣṇa tells Arjuna that the social classes originate in God, and he instructs that the duties of these social classes are to be performed for his pleasure. Following this socioreligious system within the realm of karma, one gradually comes to niṣkāma-karma-yoga and attains knowledge and salvation leading to love of God. The essential element of grace that pervades this progression is the heart of bhakti, which itself grants knowledge, salvation, and love of God. Without bhakti there is no salvation, and unalloyed bhakti affords the highest form of salvation, the prema-dharma of Vraja. In this verse Kṛṣṇa begins his summary of socioreligious life. This discussion continues through verse 48.
The division of labor as stated here is determined by the guṇas. It is not arbitrary, but rather a product of different physio-psychological makeups. It is the duty and natural inclination of the four classes to cultivate the qualities mentioned in the following verses.

Text 42

Samo damas tapah saucam ksāntir ārjavam eva ca/
   jñānam vijnānam āstikyam brahma-karma svabhāva-jam/
śamaḥ—tranquillity; damah—self-control; tapah—austerity; saucam—purity; ksāntih—forgiveness; ārjavam—honesty; eva—certainly; ca—and; jñānam—knowledge; vijnānam—wisdom; āstikyam—piety; brahma—of a brāhmaṇa; karma—duty; svabhāva-jam—born of one’s own nature.

Tranquillity, self-control, austerity, purity, forgiveness, honesty, knowledge, wisdom, and faith in God are the natural qualities of the brāhmaṇas’ work.

Text 43

Sauryam tejo dhṛtir dāksyam yuddhe cāpy apalāyanam/
   dānam īṣvarabhāva ca ksātram karma svabhāva-jam/
śauryam—heroism; tejaḥ—power; dhṛtih—determination; dāksyam—resourcefulness; yuddhe—in battle; ca—and; api—also; apalāyanam—courage; dānam—generosity; īṣvara—leadership; bhāvah—nature; ca—and; ksātram—of a ksatriya; karma—duty; svabhāva-jam—born of one’s own nature.

Heroism, power, determination, resourcefulness, courage in battle, generosity, and leadership are the natural qualities of the ksatriyas’ work.

Text 44

Kṛṣṇagorakṣakāṇāṃ vrīḍyakarma svabhāva-jam/
   paryāśāmyaṃ karm śūdrasyāpi svabhāva-jam

The qualities of the Kṛṣṇagorakṣakāṇa, devoted to Kṛṣṇa, vary according to their own nature.
Farming, cowherding, and trade are the natural duties of the vaiśyas. Service is the natural duty of the śūdras.

The laborers (śūdras) serve by assisting the other classes. Thus the four social orders have been described in terms of the qualities and work they are to cultivate for the pleasure of God.

Text 45

Devoted to one’s own particular duty, one attains perfection. Listen as I explain how a person can find perfection in this way.

Text 46
A human being attains perfection by worshipping God through his work, for the duties of life emanate from God, who pervades all things.

The healthy heart of the social body is the pleasure of God. Thus all the duties of the four classes should be performed with God’s pleasure in mind. The duties are ordained by him in consideration of the guṇas. When performed for God’s sake they gradually make one eligible for nīṣkāma-karma-yoga leading to bhakti. Execution of one’s prescribed duty that corresponds with one’s nature frees one from evil. Kṛṣṇa next speaks of this immediate fruit of adhering to one’s duty for the satisfaction of God.

Text 47

śreyān svā-dharmo vigunah para-dharmāt sv-anuṣhitāt/
svabhāva-niyataṁ karma kurvan nāpnotī kilbiṣam//
śreyān—better; svā-dharmā—one’s own duty; vigunah—faulty; para-
 dharmāt—than another’s occupation; su-anuṣhitāt—well done; svabhāva-
niyataṁ—prescribed according to one’s nature; karma—duty; kurvan—
performing; na—not; āpnotī—one incurs; kilbiṣam—evil.

Performing one’s own duty even when it is faulty is better than performing the duty of another without fault. Performing one’s own prescribed duty in accordance with one’s nature, one does not incur evil.

Here we are reminded of chapter 3, verse 35. The duty of a warrior appeared faulty to Arjuna, for in performing it so many respectable and dear persons would be slain. Should Arjuna consider putting down his bow and collecting alms like a brāhmaṇa to avoid this apparent fault, he would be faulty nonetheless. Thus Kṛṣṇa advises him that he would be committing a greater fault, and such a precedent would lend to the destabilization of the socioreligious order ordained by God.

Text 48

saha-jam karma kaunteya sa-doṣam api na tyajet/
sarvārambhā hi doṣena dhūmenāgnir ivāvṛtāh//

saha-jaṁ karma kaunteya sa-doṣam api na tyajet/
sarvārambhā hi doṣena dhūmenāgnir ivāvṛtāḥ//
saha-jam—inborn; karma—work; kaunteya—O son of Kunti; sa-doṣam—with fault; api—although; na—not; tyajet—one should abandon; sarva-ārambhāḥ—all undertakings; hi—certainly; dosage—-with fault; dhūmena—with smoke; agnih—fire; iva—as; āvṛtāḥ—covered.

One should not abandon that work born of one’s nature. All work is covered by some defect, just as fire is covered by smoke.

One should not stop cooking because fire produces smoke along with heat. Similarly, one should not abandon the work born of one’s nature and detailed in the scripture simply because it has some defect. All work in this world is less than perfect, but if it is done with a view to satisfy God, it leads one in the direction of perfection, the criterion for which is the extent to which God is satisfied by it, samsiddhir hari toṣamam (ŚB. 1.2.13). As a law-abiding citizen pleases the government in a general way, so a person who acts in accordance with his nature, in terms of the duties prescribed in the scripture, pleases God. Any defect in the work is overcome to the extent that he performs his duty for duty’s sake, with detachment from the work itself as well as from its fruit.

Here Kṛṣṇa points out that all work is defective in some respect, yet he does so to stress the inherent value in all work. He is not concerned with restricting people to particular duties, but rather in seeing that people are engaged according to their natures and thus find value and fulfillment in their work. This enables them to think beyond their particular work to the greater scheme of life. Should their natures be mixed, as they are in today’s complex post-industrial society, people will only be engaged in accordance with their natures by engaging in a variety of duties. This inevitable crossover of duties in our complex society, as opposed to the clearly defined divisions of labor in a simple agrarian society, need not be seen as a violation of Kṛṣṇa’s instruction in this verse. Dharma is about understanding one’s nature and acting accordingly, with a view to know oneself more completely as one can do only by understanding oneself in relation to God.

After comprehensive inquiry into the nature of religious dharma, one is qualified to inquire into the nature of Brahman, athāto brahma-jijñāsā (Vs. 1.1.1). Thus Kṛṣṇa turns his summary of the means of deliverance in the direction of renunciation and the knowledge derived from selfless action.
A person who by exercise of his intelligence is detached at all times, self-controlled, and free from material desire attains through renunciation the supreme state of freedom from karma.

By acting without attachment to the action itself or its fruits, one attains knowledge and freedom from the bondage of *karma*. This is the platform of *jñāna-yoga*. From acting with detachment, one becomes purified and any defect in one’s action is overcome. On attaining knowledge of the self through such action, one attains freedom from *karma* altogether and is thus qualified to forgo karmic duties. In this way, the *jñāni* eventually attains Brahman by God’s grace. Here *sannyāsa* does not mean renouncing the fruits of action, but rather renouncing action that is not conducive to meditation. This is the *yogārūḍha* mentioned in chapter 6 (Bg. 6.3).

O son of Kunti, hear from me in brief how one who has achieved success in this attains Brahman, the supreme state of knowledge.
Disciplining oneself by purified intelligence, controlling the mind with determination, abandoning the sense objects such as sound, freeing oneself from likes and dislikes, resorting to a secluded place, eating little, controlling one’s speech, body, and mind, constantly devoting oneself to the yoga of contemplation, detached, forsaking egotism, force, arrogance, lust, anger, and possessions, unselfish, and peaceful, one is fit for Brahman realization.
Once such a person has realized Brahman, he becomes self-fulfilled and no longer laments or hankers. Equally disposed to all beings, he attains transcendental devotion to me.

Having attained Brahman, the fortunate jñāni attains devotion proper, post-liberated parā bhakti (mad bhaktim labhate parām). This has also been discussed in chapter 7, where it is stated that after many, many births the jñāni surrenders to Kṛṣṇa, knowing him to be all in all (Bg. 7.19). According to Visvanātha Cakravartī Ṭhākura, the element of devotion must be present to some extent in one’s religious practice from niskāma-karma-yoga to jñāna-yoga if one is to attain Brahman. This element of bhakti is a partial manifestation of devotion proper, which is a function of Kṛṣṇa’s primary sakti. However, because the jñāni’s goal is liberation, as opposed to prema-bhakti, the devotional element in his practice is not immediately perceptible. Just as small nuggets of gold are not immediately perceptible in a bag of mung dhal, but are perceptible at the bottom of the pot when the dhal is cooked; similarly, having reached the end of philosophical knowledge, the jñāni attains the gold of bhakti that was invisibly present all along. Thus this verse speaks of the knowledge born of sattva-guṇa (vidyā) that is retired with the full manifestation of bhakti. In his commentary on the following verse, Visvanātha Cakravartī explains that the word vidyā refers to the knowledge of sattva-guna, whereas the word jñāna sometimes refers to the knowledge of sattva-guna and at other times the knowledge inherent in bhakti.

In the opinion of Śrī Caitanya-caritāmṛta, this verse speaks of jñāna mixed with bhakti through which liberation and then pure bhakti are attained (Cc. Madhya 8.65–66). This verse also shows the necessity for even the jñāni jivanmukta to embrace bhakti to attain videha-mukti (Cc. Madhya 24.132) and how easily a jñāni attains liberation through bhakti (Cc. Madhya 25.155).

Here Kṛṣṇa begins to focus on the Gītā’s conclusion: devotion to himself is the supreme means to and end of spiritual life. Its status is post-liberated,
and thus any tinge of it appearing in the path of \textit{karma} or \textit{jñāna} is the liberating agent in that path, for only that which is itself spiritual can grant spiritual life. Only through this \textit{parā bhakti} can Kṛṣṇa be understood and his abode entered into.

**Text 55**

\begin{quote}
\begin{small}
\begin{h也不例外}{55}
bhaktyā mām abhijānāti yāvān yaś cāsmi tattvataḥ/
tato mām tattvato jñātvā viśate tad-anantaram//
\end{h也不例外}
\end{small}
\end{quote}

\begin{quote}
\begin{small}
bhaktyā—through devotion; mām—me; abhijānāti—one comes to experience; yāvān—as much as; yaḥ ca asmi—as I am; tattvataḥ—in truth; tataḥ—then; mām—me; tattvataḥ—in truth; jñātvā—knowing; viśate—he enters; tat-anantaram—thereafter.
\end{small}
\end{quote}

Through devotion to me he comes to know who I am in truth. Thereafter, having understood the truth about me, he enters my abode.

In earlier chapters Kṛṣṇa explained that Brahman is subordinate to himself (Bg. 13.13, 14.27). Here he tells Arjuna that the Brahman-realized \textit{jñāni} who engages in \textit{parā bhakti} attains the knowledge inherent in \textit{bhakti} and thus enters his abode. The fact that Kṛṣṇa is referring here to entrance into his abode, as opposed to \textit{sāyujya-mukti} in which one merges with Brahman, is brought out further in the next verse. Therein, Kṛṣṇa says, “By my grace they attain the eternal imperishable abode” (\textit{mat-prasādād avāpnoti sāśvatam padam avyayam}). Viśvanātha Cakravartī says in his comments to verse 56 that this refers to Kṛṣṇa’s supreme abode in one of its manifestations: Dwārakā, Mathurā, or Vṛndāvana. Regarding the word \textit{viśate} in this verse, Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa says, “This entrance is like that of a person who goes into a city; he does not become the city.” He notes further that Vedānta-sūtra (4.1.12) confirms that \textit{bhakti} exists even after liberation: “According to the \textit{sruti}, it is seen that even after coming to liberation, devotion remains.”

However, it should also be noted that those desiring to attain \textit{sāyujya-mukti} can do so only by the admixture of \textit{bhakti} in their spiritual practice. Without \textit{bhakti} the so-called liberated deceive themselves. This is confirmed in \textit{Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam} (10.2.32) thus: “O lotus-eyed Lord, although non-devotees who accept severe austerities and penance to achieve the highest
position may think themselves liberated, their intelligence is impure. They fall down from their position of imagined superiority because they have no regard for your lotus feet.”

Although some persons do take the circuitous route of passing through *karma* to *jñāna* before taking to *bhakti*, in doing so they neglect the generosity of *bhakti* and the true import of the *Gitā*, to which Kṛṣṇa now turns Arjuna’s attention as he comes to his final conclusion.

**Text 56**

Even though engaged in any kind of work, one who always takes refuge in me attains the eternal imperishable abode by my grace.

Kṛṣṇa speaks about acting within the realm of *karma* with an admixture of *bhakti* in verse 46 of this chapter. In verse 54 he talked about the influence of *bhakti* on the *jñāni*. In this verse, having glorified the post-liberated position of pure *bhakti* and its liberating effects, as well as its influence on the liberated soul, Kṛṣṇa speaks feelingly of devotion and his devotees who are not yet liberated.

Kṛṣṇa’s mention of devotion in verse 46 reiterates much of what was said in the first six chapters of the *Gitā*, and chapter 3 in particular. There he discusses *karma* mixed with *bhakti*. Here, however, the emphasis has shifted as he speaks of *bhakti* mixed with *karma*. He speaks of a person who constantly takes refuge in him alone, even though entangled in the realm of *karma*, as opposed to a person who focuses primarily on his prescribed duty offering only the result of his work to God. The strength of this approach is stressed by the use of the words *sarva-karmāṇi*. Regardless of a person’s shortcomings, if he has faith that taking shelter of Kṛṣṇa is the best possible course of action, this faith itself will deliver him in due course.
The word āśraya (vyapāśrayah) in this verse stems from the root śrī, which means to be radiant, bright, dazzling. Taking shelter of Kṛṣṇa, one becomes radiant and bright. As the dazzling, golden-completed Śrī (Rādhā) takes shelter of Kṛṣṇa, so too should we. She has no other shelter, not even Kṛṣṇa in any of his other forms, what to speak of other gods. If a person with faith in bhakti sees Kṛṣṇa as the only shelter in life, even though his devotion is imperfect owing to material desire indicated here by the prefix apa (not predominant), he will attain Kṛṣṇa’s abode. His position is special (vīśeṣa). This is the import of the word vyapāśraya according to Viśvanātha Cakravartī Ṭhākura. The word api in this verse indicates that he who Kṛṣṇa is describing is first and foremost his devotee, whereas secondarily (api) he is implicated in the realm of karma, be it proper action or even prohibited action. Although his devotion is not more prominent than his material desire, and thus his taking shelter of Kṛṣṇa is somewhat impaired (apia), he is a devotee of Kṛṣṇa and material desire has the upper hand in his life only temporarily. Indeed, his faith in Kṛṣṇa and his taking refuge in him in all of his successes and failures will eventually enable him to rise above material desire and be delivered.

Bhakti, being independent, can enter the heart of anyone, even the most sinful person. She is constituted of God’s primary sakti and is thus not dependent on knowledge or renunciation. Whereas knowledge requires the support of a pure heart, bhakti is self-supporting. Once she enters the heart, all impurities will gradually be removed by her grace. One whose heart she enters, by the desire of another whom she has so graced, need not be concerned with the details of religious duties, renunciation, or knowledge independently of bhakti. Paying attention to bhakti alone as one’s primary spiritual practice, however imperfectly, is more fruitful than strict adherence to any other discipline. Indeed, knowledge and renunciation follow in the wake of bhakti.

Although the position of devotion and that of the devotee may insult the sensibilities of learned and cultured persons who fail to appreciate the logic of forgoing renunciation and knowledge in the pursuit of spiritual life, Viśvanātha Cakravartī Ṭhākura replies, “such is the logic of bhakti.” She represents the inconceivable mercy (mat-prasādāt) of Kṛṣṇa, the logic of love. This message of the Gitā should give real hope to everyone, regardless of their disqualification for other spiritual practices. Indeed, careful study of the scriptural canon would result in a sense of hopelessness for anyone in this age, were it not for the generosity of bhakti. The implication of the
word avāpnoti (he attains/he does) is that in the final analysis it is bhakti that Kṛṣṇa recommends for everyone. The position of devotion being what it is, Kṛṣṇa mandates its progressive culture in the following verse.

Text 57

मेहर्नुस्त्र वादकमाणि मध्यस्य मन्यः।
वृद्धियोगमुपालङ्कित्व वृद्धिः सनन्तं भव॥३६॥

cetasā sarva-karmāni mayi sannyasya mat-parah/
buddhi-yogam upāsṛitya mac-cittah satatam bhava//

cetasā—mentally; sarva-karmāni—all actions; mayi—unto me; sannyasya—resigning; mat-parah—having me as the highest; buddhi-yogam—devotion; upāsṛitya—taking shelter of; mat-cittah—conscious of me; satatam—always; bhava—become.

Mentally resigning all actions unto me, holding me to be the supreme object of love in devotion, taking shelter of the power of spiritual insight, always think of me.

In this verse Kṛṣṇa stresses the chastity of intelligence (buddhi), mind (cetasā/mac-cittah), and body (sarva-karmāni) in devotion to himself. Kṛṣṇa uses the term buddhi-yoga, familiar to us from the second and tenth chapters (Bg. 2.39, 10.10), to instruct Arjuna to take refuge in the power of spiritual insight resulting from devotion. Kṛṣṇa supplies this insight (dadāmi buddhi-yogam) to the devotee who understands that he is the ultimate goal in life. Here the word bhava is in the imperative, indicating that it is Kṛṣṇa’s mandate to Arjuna that he always think of him, the result of which he describes next along with the result of failing to do so.

Text 58

मेहर्नुस्त्र वादकमाणि मन्यसादातिरिण्यसि।
अथ चन्द्रमहकारात्र श्रोण्यस्मि विनंत्यस्मि॥३७॥

mac-cittah sarva-durgāni mat-prasādāt tarisyasi/
atha cet tvam ahaṅkārān na śroṣyasi vināṅkṣyasi//

mat—of me; cittaḥ—conscious; sarva—all; durgāṇi—difficulties; mat-prasādāt—by my grace; tarisyasi—you will overcome; atha—but; cet—if; tvam—you; ahaṅkārāt—out of egotism; na śroṣyasi—you will not hear; vināṅkṣyasi—you will perish.
Fixing your mind on me, you will overcome all difficulties through my grace, but if you think you know better than I, you will perish.

Here Kṛṣṇa says that one will overcome all difficulties, such as lust and anger that are so difficult to conquer, simply by his grace. Madhusūdana Saraswati comments, “without any effort at all.” Thus the uplifting power of Kṛṣṇa’s grace is underscored in relation to those things that are most difficult to overcome.

Kṛṣṇa warns that should Arjuna not take shelter of him, thinking Kṛṣṇa is simply another learned person giving his own opinion, he will perish. It is not possible for Arjuna to disregard Kṛṣṇa’s advice, yet Kṛṣṇa gives him this warning nonetheless. Kṛṣṇa makes clear his desire that Arjuna fight, not because it is his duty as a warrior, as he argued earlier, but as an act of surrender to him in devotion. Hypothetically speaking, Kṛṣṇa next explains what he means when he says that Arjuna will perish (vinaṅkṣyasi) should he decide not to fight. Arjuna’s karmic warrior nature will force him to fight regardless of his present reluctance.

Text 59

If owing to egotism you think, “I shall not fight,” such a decision will be in vain, for your own material nature will compel you to do so.

In this verse Kṛṣṇa explains the meaning of vināṅkṣyasi (you will perish) found in the previous verse. A person who does not take shelter of Kṛṣṇa will spiritually perish under the influence of his lower nature. If a person resists serving God, he will be forced to serve the demands of his body and mind—his physio-psychological karmic nature. This is unavoidable.
Here Kṛṣṇa speaks forcefully to Arjuna, as if with anger at even the slightest mental reservation on Arjuna’s part. Viśvanātha Cakravartī Ṭhākura says that it is implied here that if Arjuna does not embrace Kṛṣṇa’s desire that he fight out of love for him, but later fights anyway by the force of his nature, Kṛṣṇa will mock him at that time. In other words, Kṛṣṇa will not approve of Arjuna’s fighting under these circumstances. This is an important footnote to the entire Bhagavad-gītā. Baladeva Vidyābhūṣāṇa comments that Kṛṣṇa implies any unwillingness on Arjuna’s part will result in Kṛṣṇa’s māyā in the form of rajo-guṇa forcing him to do so. Although Arjuna will fight in either instance, the result of this fighting will be categorically different. Fighting in devotion to Kṛṣṇa, Arjuna will flourish spiritually, whereas fighting under the influence of his lower nature, he will perish.

The use of the word vyavasāya in this verse indicates that the one-pointedness of mind (vyavasāyātmikā buddhi) advocated in chapter 2 (Bg. 2.41) can be influenced by rajas or tamas and thus be undesirable.

**Text 60**

svabhāva-jena kaunteya nibaddhaḥ svena karanāḥ/
kartum necchasi yan mohāt kariṣyasy avaço 'pi tat//

svabhāva-jena—by that which is born of your own nature; kaunteya—O son of Kuntī; nibaddhaḥ—bound; svena—by one’s own; karanāḥ—by karma; kartum—to do; na—not; icchasi—you want; yat—which; mohāt—out of delusion; kariṣyasi—you will do; avaṣah—unwillingly; api—even; tat—that.

*That which out of delusion you desire not to do, you will do anyway even against your will, being bound by the karma born of your own nature.*

In this verse Kṛṣṇa further explains the result of not doing his bidding. If Arjuna does not follow his instructions, he will fight anyway under the influence of his karmic nature. Jīva Goswāmī comments that although it appears at first that the Bhagavad-gītā is about Kṛṣṇa inciting Arjuna to fight, this verse reveals otherwise. Why would Kṛṣṇa labor to convince Arjuna to fight when this will happen anyway by the force of his warrior nature born of the guṇas? Thus Śrī Jīva concludes the Bhagavad-gītā is about doing the bidding of Kṛṣṇa (bhakti), as opposed to following one’s acquired nature on
the path of *karma*. Through it, Kṛṣṇa instructs everyone about the goal of life. This ultimate goal of life, Śrī Jīva says, is found in the sixty-fifth verse of this chapter.²

Having elaborated on the soul’s subservience to *prakṛti* in the form of its lower nature, Kṛṣṇa next elaborates on his position as the master of *prakṛti*, the Paramātma, whom we must serve to transcend our lower nature.

Text 61

**Śrī Kṛṣṇa**

O Arjuna, God resides in the hearts of all beings, directing their wanderings by the magical power of māyā, on which they are seated as if it were a machine.

Although in verse 58 Kṛṣṇa gave Arjuna the option of not following his advice, here he continues trying to convince him that he should. As in the previous verses, Kṛṣṇa speaks firmly, giving reasons why Arjuna should make the right choice. Arjuna’s decision in this matter—either doing as Kṛṣṇa wants him to do or fighting under the compulsion of his lower nature—depends on the sanction of Kṛṣṇa’s Paramātma manifestation, who is behind all the movements of matter. We cannot avoid serving God. We are given the choice of either serving him in full awareness and with his guidance or unknowingly under the control of his māyā.

Here Kṛṣṇa says that all beings in this world experience only the illusion of freedom. They are like puppets on a string made of his illusory potency, māyā. Kṛṣṇa himself as the Paramātma is the puppeteer whom they should take shelter of and thereby know real freedom. If we choose not to serve

². See Jiva Goswami’s *Kṛṣṇa-sandarbha*, *anuccheda* 82 and his corresponding comments on this section in his *Sarva-saṁvādini* for all references in this chapter to Śrī Jīva’s insights.
Kṛṣṇa, we must serve his māyā and remain in the bondage of sāṁsāra. If we choose to serve Kṛṣṇa, we can experience the freedom of love.

**Text 62**

तम् एवं सरस्यानम् गच्छन्ति सर्वभावन् भारत ।

तत्प्रसादंते परम्भान्ति सांतं ध्यानं प्राप्यसयिः सास्तवम् ||६.२||

tam eva saranaṁ gaccha sarva-bhāvena bhārata/ 
tat-prasādāt parāṁ sāntim sthānam prāpsyasi sāsvatam/

tam—him; eva—certainly; saranaṁ gaccha—take refuge; sarva-bhāvena—with all of your heart; bhārata—O descendant of Bharata; tat-prasādāt—by his grace; parāṁ—supreme; sāntim—peace; sthānam—abode; prāpsyasi—you will attain; sāsvatam—eternal.

*Take refuge in him alone with all of your heart, O descendant of Bharata. By his grace you will attain the supreme peace and eternal abode.*

From speaking sternly to Arjuna about his own majesty, here Kṛṣṇa speaks very sweetly in concluding his fervent appeal to Arjuna. He says with certainty, “Take refuge in him, he who is the master of māyā and is seated in everyone’s heart. That Supreme Person is me. Give your heart to me, and by my grace you will come to the end of all sorrow and attain my abode.”

Although technically Kṛṣṇa speaks about surrender in relation to his Paramātma feature in this and the previous verse, Viśvanātha Cakravartī Ṭhākura points out that the devotee’s object of surrender is Bhagavān. The devotee holds his most beloved Deity (iṣṭa-devatā) in his heart and surrenders to him alone. Baladeva Vidyābhūṣana comments that Kṛṣṇa has identified himself as the Lord of the heart in Bg. 15.15. Thus the devotee conceives of his chosen Deity residing in his heart, recognizing that Kṛṣṇa is behind the Paramātma feature, which is only his partial manifestation.

The following verse beginning with *iti* (thus) is Kṛṣṇa’s final instruction. With it Kṛṣṇa concludes his appeal to Arjuna for surrender. Thus the immortal *Bhagavad-gitā* ends. What remains is Kṛṣṇa’s afterthought, in which he reiterates the *Gitā*’s deepest import.

**Text 63**

इति ते ज्ञानमाल्यां गुहात्तर्गुहात्तरं मया ।

विमूर्त्तेत्रदोषे यथेष्ठौषि तथा कुम ||६.३||

*Thus he concludes his discourse with the following words.*
Thus I have explained to you knowledge that is more confidential than all that is confidential. Deliberate on it fully and do as you please.

Having said this, Kṛṣṇa pauses. His divine song has been sung. In this chapter he has explained general socioreligious knowledge, confidential knowledge of the self and Brahman, the means of realizing these two kinds of knowledge, and still more confidential knowledge of his Paramātmā feature.

Jīva Goswāmī comments that the word guhya means confidential knowledge of Brahman, whereas guhyatara speaks of more confidential knowledge, that of the Paramātmā. Reiteration of guhyatama, the most confidential of all knowledge is yet to come. The word guhyatama was used to introduce the ninth chapter, which concluded with the same words found in verse 65 of this chapter. Kṛṣṇa discussed this supreme knowledge therein, as well as in chapter 10, and briefly in chapter 12. It is the knowledge of his position as svayam bhagavān and the prema-dharma of Vraja.

Here Kṛṣṇa tells Arjuna to deliberate on all that he has explained thus far, imploring him to come to a decision on his own. The Gītā does not force us to surrender. However, the fact that we have the choice to do so, and that we are faced with this choice at every moment, is made clear. It is this choice that enables us to transcend the determinism of the guṇas. While we have the freedom to choose to follow Kṛṣṇa’s directives or to ignore them, should we choose to ignore them, the force of nature is not negotiable. While the Gītā invites critical inquiry, it does not present a multitude of truths to choose from. It presents one truth throughout. However, rather than impose a dogma that dictates what an individual is to believe or do, it implores us to realize ourselves. In doing so, it concludes that we will only realize ourselves fully when we understand ourselves in relation to God.

Although Kṛṣṇa has asked Arjuna to deliberate and come to a decision, he nonetheless cannot contain himself because of his great love for him. Thus Kṛṣṇa begins to speak again before Arjuna can respond with his choice in the matter. In doing so, he reiterates the most confidential knowledge
of all, thus making abundantly clear the ultimate conclusion and course of action that he recommends and expects Arjuna to arrive at.

Text 64

sarva-guhya-tamam bhūyah śrnu me paramam vacah/
iṣṭo 'si me dṛdham iti tato vakṣyāmi te hitam//

sarva-guhya-tamam—the most confidential of all; bhūyah—again; śrnu—listen; me—from me; paramam—supreme; vacah—instruction; iṣṭah asi—you are dear; me—to me; dṛdham—surely; iti—thus; tataḥ—therefore; vakṣyāmi—I shall say; te—of you; hitam—benefit.

Listen once again to my most important instruction, the most secret of all. You are dear to me; therefore, I shall say what is best for you.

Here Kṛṣṇa uses the words sarva-guhya-tamam, indicating that his next instruction will be the most confidential of all, more confidential than the most secret of secrets. It is his supreme instruction (paramam vacah). By use of the word bhūyah (again) Kṛṣṇa indicates that he has already given this instruction earlier. He did so in the concluding verse of the ninth chapter (Bg. 9.34), which he repeats practically verbatim in the following verse. Out of great love for Arjuna, Kṛṣṇa underscores and repeats this instruction for his benefit so that there can be no uncertainty about the conclusion of his teaching. This secret knowledge is the key to unlocking the mystical treasure of the Gītā, its message of divine love.

Text 65

man-manā bhava mad-bhakto mad-yājī mām namaskuru/
mām evaśyasi satyam te pratijāne priyo 'si me//

man-manā—thinking of me; bhava—become; mat-bhakto—my devotee; mat-yājī—sacrificing for me; mām—(to) me; namaskuru—offer obeisance; mām—(to) me; eva—certainly; evaśyasi—you will come; satyam—truly; te—to you; pratijāne—I promise; priyo—dear; asi—you are; me—to me.
At the end of chapter 9 Kṛṣṇa spoke feelingly about his devotees' love for him and the importance of cultivating this love. There he said, mām evaisyasi yuktvaivam ātmānāṁ mat-parāyanah: “Steadfast, with me as your aim, you shall come to me.” He said this in the context of telling Arjuna that which he repeats here: “Fix your mind on me. Be my devotee! Sacrifice for me. Offer obeisance unto me.” In this verse, however, Kṛṣṇa says, mām evaisyasi satyam te pratijane priyo 'si me: “In this way you will surely come to me. I promise you this because you are my very dear friend.”

Jīva Gosvāmī comments that while in chapter 9 Kṛṣṇa spoke of his devotees' love for him, here he speaks more of his love for his devotees. Out of intense love for Arjuna, Kṛṣṇa promises him, his dear friend, that he will attain him. Arjuna will attain Kṛṣṇa because Kṛṣṇa loves him, and here Kṛṣṇa begs Arjuna, “Please believe me!” Kṛṣṇa is very eager to impart the instruction in this verse to Arjuna, his eyes full of tears of love for his devotee. With folded hands, he instructs Arjuna, honestly pleading with him. By using the word mām, Kṛṣṇa tells Arjuna repeatedly that the promise he makes in the second half of this verse applies to those who worship him exclusively, not any other form of himself. This is his vow (satyaṁ te). He can be trusted.

Not only does Kṛṣṇa want Arjuna to know his love for him, he also wants him to believe that in spite of everything he has said, one can attain perfection by simply accepting his love. After all that Kṛṣṇa has said about spiritual practice and attainment, this may seem hard to believe. Thus Kṛṣṇa feels compelled to make a solemn promise. At this point, all of his other instructions are superseded.

When instructing a disciple in spiritual life, a guru cannot tell everything at once. Sometimes he must emphasize one instruction, and at a later date that very instruction may be superseded by another seemingly contradictory instruction. It is even said that the guru may sometimes appear to lie to his disciple in the course of instructing him in the highest truth. The scripture also claims to have a license to exaggerate. Great souls may deceive others.

3. “Those statements of scripture promising fruitive rewards do not prescribe the ultimate good for humanity but are merely enticements for executing religious duties. They are like promises of candy spoken to induce a child to take beneficial medicine.” (SB. 11.21.23)
in the course of enlightening them, just as a mother may cheat her son by falsely promising one thing to get him to do something that is in his higher interest. Materially speaking, it may appear that great souls cannot always be trusted. In Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam, Sañjaya tells Yudhiṣṭhira, muṣito ’smi mahātmabhiḥ: “I have been cheated by great souls.” (ŚB. 1.13.37) Bhaktivedanta Swami Prabhupāda comments, “Great souls cheat others for a great cause.” They can, however, be trusted to give us the ultimate truth as to the falsity of material existence and reality of love of God.

Viśvanātha Cakravartī Ṭhākura states that persons from Mathurā, the birthplace of Kṛṣṇa, are known for being deceptive. Indeed, the great and noble Vasudeva broke his word to Kaṁsa when he failed to deliver Kṛṣṇa into his hands. Kṛṣṇa himself is hardly an exception. In the greater context of the Bhagavad-gitā—the Mahābhārata—Kṛṣṇa even instructs the prince of dharma, Yudhiṣṭhira, to lie—and this in a book about dharma!

The expansion of Vraja Kṛṣṇa was born in Mathurā, and Vraja Kṛṣṇa himself is intimately connected with Mathurā, as those in a rural area are connected with the nearest city. Thus Arjuna wonders as Kṛṣṇa speaks if he can be trusted. Even in his childhood he is known for being untruthful and a thief. Of course, when he who is the proprietor of everything steals, this is merely play. It is this divine play, Kṛṣṇa līlā, that Kṛṣṇa encourages us to enter into in this verse. That land of Mathurā is beyond truth-seeking; it is where truth itself is folly and the crooked nature of love prevails. As Rūpa Goswāmī says, love, like a snake, does not move in a straight line: aher iva gatiḥ premnaḥ sva-bhāva-kuṭilā bhavet (Un., śṛṅgāra-bhedā-kathana 102). Sometimes lovers quarrel and appear not to be in love. Sometimes they say one thing while meaning something else. In the Gitā, Kṛṣṇa appears to sometimes advocate one path and at other times an opposite path, while in reality he has advocated only love, either directly or indirectly. Thus Kṛṣṇa’s message of love has woven its way through many religious conceptions only to fully manifest here at the conclusion of the Bhagavad-gitā.

Bhaktivedanta Swami Prabhupāda notes elsewhere that the transcendental position from which the activities of realized souls are enacted is called “Mathurā.”4 He writes, “Devotion to Kṛṣṇa, the son of Nanda Mahārāja, is the essence of all knowledge, and wherever such knowledge is manifested [that place] is called Mathurā. Also, when one establishes bhakti-yoga, excluding all other methods, one’s situation is called Mathurā.

4. See Bhaktivedanta Swami Prabhupāda’s purport to SB. 10.1.69.
Yatra nityam sannihito hariḥ: ‘The place where Hari, the Supreme Personality of Godhead, lives eternally is called Mathurā.’” (ŚB. 10.1.28). He cites the Gopāla-tāpāni Upaniṣad (2.63) in support of this: “The name Mathurā is given to the abode of Kṛṣṇa because the manifest essence of spiritual knowledge by which the entire universe has been churned appears there.”

The knowledge of Brahman is called matha, because it churns the entire universe, extracting its essence, the person of Gopāla Kṛṣṇa himself. This Gopāla conquers Cupid who is named man-matha, the one who churns or bewilders the mind of everyone. He is thus called manmatha-manmatha or Madana-gopāla, the transcendental Cupid who conquers mundane Cupid’s mind. Thus if Cupid churns the world, appearing to make it go around, then he who captivates him, the cowherd who appears in Mathurā-manḍala, must be the actual churner of the world. He churns away the lust of Cupid’s influence and reveals the love-butter of bhakti—the king of knowledge (rāja-vidyā). At the heart of our desire for worldly love is the soul’s yearning for real love, love of Kṛṣṇa. It is by this love that the world is perfectly understood and comes to an end with regard to the false love—the cheating—of Cupid’s influence.

In his commentary on Gopāla-tāpāni Upaniṣad, Prabhodānanda Sarasvatī says that in this verse describing the import of the word Mathurā, the word vā (or) indicates an alternate understanding of the verse that has not been clearly mentioned. It can be taken to mean that Mathurā is the place where spiritual knowledge and bhakti are revealed in their most complete manifestation. Thus the apparent cheating of Mathurā has to be considered in light of the fact that the lilā of Kṛṣṇa is eternally manifest there.

Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa comments that Kṛṣṇa tells Arjuna that although it is true that people from Mathurā cannot be trusted, it is also known that they will never deceive those they love. Here Kṛṣṇa says, “I love you, Arjuna. Trust me. Think of me always, but not like those who do so out of enmity, like Śiśupāla.⁵ Think of me favorably in love. Be my devotee—not only in word, but in action as well. Therefore, worship me with flowers, incense, and other such things mentioned in the scripture. Sacrifice your life for me and offer homage unto me with your whole body prostrated, and without a doubt you will live eternally with me. Perform this drama of love on the stage of surrender, about which I shall speak next.”

⁵. Śiśupāla thought constantly of Kṛṣṇa out of enmity. Although this led to a type of liberation, it is not bhakti.
For the attainment of freedom, all religious injunctions should be forsaken. Take refuge in Me, I shall deliver you from all sinful reactions. Do not fear.

This is perhaps the most frequently quoted verse of the Bhagavad-gîta. Together with the previous verse it constitutes Kṛṣṇa’s compelling and conclusive advice for all readers of this most sacred text. After all is said about religion and spiritual pursuit, Kṛṣṇa comes to this. One should engage in devotional service to Kṛṣṇa with one’s heart surrendered (çaraṇam). One should be a çaraṇagata, a surrendered soul. As a cow takes shelter of its herder, one should take shelter of Kṛṣṇa as if one has been bought and paid for.

In such circumstances, one need not worry for one’s sustenance or protection. Accepting that which is favorable for serving Kṛṣṇa, rejecting that which is not, and surrendering one’s pride in great humility, one should sacrifice oneself on the altar of loving Kṛṣṇa. This is the sixfold nature of surrender (çaraṇagati), by which all obstacles on the path to spiritual perfection are removed. The first of these six aspects of çaraṇagati is clearly indicated in the word parityajya. One should reject everything that is not favorable for bhakti. Accepting what is favorable, one should proceed to embrace the other four aspects of çaraṇagati as well.

How is it possible to follow Kṛṣṇa’s instruction in the previous verse? How will one overcome obstacles on the path of spiritual realization and become qualified to always think of Kṛṣṇa without any other duty? What of the reactions that will come from not doing one’s prescribed duties? In answer to these questions, Kṛṣṇa speaks this verse. He says, “I shall take care of any reactions that may accrue from abandoning one’s superficial religious duty. I have the power to do this. I am the source of all religious injunctions,
I am eminently qualified, and on the strength of my qualifications you too will become qualified.” This verse represents Kṛśna’s special love for his devotees that obliges him to cover for them. After thorough consideration of all that has been discussed, only a hard-hearted fool would turn away from the offer issuing from Kṛśna’s lotus mouth.

Jiva Goswami comments that some people think the Bhagavad-gitā suggests many different spiritual paths. To this Śrī Jiva replies that Kṛśna teaches higher and lower paths in the Gitā to help persons distinguish one from the other but that the concluding portion of a book represents its essence. Overcoming fear and becoming free from worry is the subject of the Gitā’s opening lines. Here Kṛśna says, “Don’t worry,” echoing his first words to Arjuna, where he admonished him and told him not to lament (Bg. 2.11).

In his concluding words, Kṛśna stresses exclusive worship in surrender unto himself. By this spiritual practice one will overcome all fear. One whose heart is saturated with faith in this instruction, and more, one who is eager to attain that which Kṛśna alludes to in this verse need not be concerned with religious duties, nor any other means of qualifying oneself for spiritual culture and attainment. One should not worry, being motivated by fear of reprisal for neglecting anything else in spiritual culture. Any such fear should be replaced with a sense of the love in Kṛśna’s voice as he speaks this verse. Trust in love requires no reasoning and vanquishes all fear.

Here Kṛśna’s mind drifts once and for all from the battlefield. Rejecting dharma and appearing to advise adharma, he speaks of prema-dharma. Thus as B. R. Śrīdhara Deva Goswami points out, the word vraja in this verse suggests its most common meaning: Vraja. Although here it is a verb in the imperative, meaning “take refuge, surrender!” it also brings Kṛśna’s homeland of Vraja to his mind. That homeland within the mañḍala of Mathurā is the refuge of all souls. It is that place in which we find “all things appropriate.” In Vraja, love resolves all contradictions, and all things are possible. Everything has its place when properly adjusted—centered on Kṛśna.

This realm exists because of the Kṛśna conception of the Absolute. He alone is akhila rasāmṛta-murtih (Brs. 1.1.1), the form of loving reciprocation in sacred aesthetic rapture. Under scrutiny, no other conception of the Absolute facilitates the extent of loving exchange that is possible when one’s notion of divinity is Kṛśna, the all-attractive irresistible Absolute.

6. This is the unique sense given to the word Vraja in Jiva Goswami’s Gopāla Campū.
There are many noble manifestations of Godhead, but Kṛṣṇa is the heart of divinity. Other manifestations of divinity are no doubt motivated by love, but Kṛṣṇa is the very act of love itself personified in selfless purity, giving himself like no other.

This verse is not merely about the renunciation (parityājya) of religious rites and duties and entering into monasticism to sit in silence forever. When Rāya Rāmānanda suggested to Śrī Caitanya that the goal of life is accomplished by giving up the duties of varṇāśrama-dharma, he cited this verse as evidence. Śrī Caitanya rejected this suggestion, considering it to be superficial. Mere acceptance of sannyāsa and forgoing one’s socioreligious duties is not the heart of life’s goal. Indeed, Kṛṣṇa would hardly recommend this to Arjuna when at the same time ordering him to fight. Nor is Kṛṣṇa speaking to Arjuna alone in this verse; he speaks to all gentle souls. His message is not that they must take sannyāsa and thereby attain salvation. They must give up any pursuit other than taking shelter of him. The full import of this verse is not what one should reject, but in whom one should take exclusive shelter.

The prefix pari in the word parityājya in this verse implies complete renunciation of religious injunctions (dharma) and any path mentioned thus far other than bhakti. In Vraja, the gopīs abandoned dharma and ran in the night toward the sound of Kṛṣṇa’s flute. Here in this verse Kṛṣṇa’s mind runs to the Vraja gopīs and their love for him. This is the clarion call of the Gitā, the flute sound of Kṛṣṇa calling all souls to join him in the eternal love that he himself is lost in and conquered by. This is the secret of the Gitā that Kṛṣṇa has confided in Arjuna, even though Arjuna himself is not suited for this kind of love. Although after hearing it Arjuna wants to run and tell it everywhere, Kṛṣṇa catches himself long enough to caution him, lest he be disappointed that everyone does not share his enthusiasm. While love seeks to share itself with everyone, in doing so it also realizes the necessity for secrecy, lest it be misunderstood.

Text 67

7. Cc. Madhya 8.63. This verse is also cited in Madhya 9.265 in reference to unalloyed devotion being transcendental to varṇāśrama. It is also cited in Madhya 22.94 in reference to rejecting varṇāśrama in favor of unalloyed devotion.
This should never be explained to one who is devoid of austerity, is not a devotee, does not wish to hear it, or is envious of me.

Kṛṣṇa has now ended the Gītā twice, after verse 63 and again in the previous verse. At this point his teaching is complete. However, with this verse Kṛṣṇa again resumes his speech, this time for the purpose of establishing guidelines with regard to the dissemination of his teaching.

This (idam) secret meaning of all the revealed scripture, known as the Bhagavad-gītā and spoken by the Supreme God himself, should not under any circumstances (kadācana) be taught to four types of people: those who practice no austerity in their lives, those who are not devoted to Kṛṣṇa, those who are not interested in this wondrous teaching, and those who are envious of Kṛṣṇa. Even if a person is austere, nonenvious of Kṛṣṇa, and interested in the message of the Gītā, he should not be given this teaching if he is not a devotee. A person who is a devotee of Kṛṣṇa is naturally austere, interested in the Gītā’s sublime message, and nonenvious. Those envious of Kṛṣṇa are known by their characteristics of considering him to be an ordinary mortal and finding fault in him.

One might ask what scope there is for innocent persons to become devotees, if explaining the Gītā to those who are nondevotees is prohibited. In answer to this, it can be said that this prohibition extends only to the most confidential knowledge mentioned in the Gītā’s conclusion. This is meant only for his devotees. Others who are not yet devotees can be taught the Bhagavad-gītā in general, as long as they are not devoid of devotion altogether, even though they are not yet devotees of Kṛṣṇa per se. They will become devotees of Kṛṣṇa by studying the Gītā under the direction of a qualified guru and thus qualifying themselves for understanding its deepest import. One cannot understand this import, nor can one draw it from the text, without being a devotee of Kṛṣṇa.
If one argues further that the most confidential knowledge of the Gitā is that one should become Kṛṣṇa's devotee (bhava mad bhaktah), and thus it is meaningless to say that its confidential message is reserved for Kṛṣṇa devotees, I reply as follows. The most confidential knowledge of the Gitā is not merely that one become Kṛṣṇa's devotee. Go back and read again. The most confidential knowledge of the Gitā is that one follow in the footsteps of the inhabitants of Vraja and become that kind of devotee.

Furthermore, although Kṛṣṇa has restricted the dissemination of this secret inner doctrine of the Gitā in this verse, in his appearance as Śrī Caitanya he has adjusted this stance, giving it to everyone, albeit in a gradual progression and not all at once. Only Kṛṣṇa himself has the power to over-ride his own instruction. The fact that he has done so is truly remarkable. It is no wonder that as Śrī Caitanya he is referred to as mahā-vadāṇya-avatāra, the most munificent incarnation of God.

It is not surprising that in Kṛṣṇa's encore appearance as Śrī Caitanya, Arjuna demonstrated that he had personally understood the most confidential message of the Gitā. Notably, a parallel of this conversation between Kṛṣṇa and Arjuna occurs within the lilā of Śrī Caitanya in the form of Rāmānanda Saṅvāda, Śrī Caitanya's conversation with Rāya Rāmānanda (Cc. Madhya 8), through whom Arjuna tasted the highest reach of Vraja bhakti. In this sacred conversation Kṛṣṇa tested Arjuna's understanding of the Gitā, making him the teacher and becoming the student himself. There the commonly accepted understanding of the Gitā's climactic verse is rejected by Śrī Caitanya. This understanding, by which one concludes the essence of the Gitā to be renunciation of dharma and acceptance of dry monasticism, is replaced with Vraja bhakti. Arjuna as Rāya Rāmānanda embraces Kṛṣṇa's submission to Śrī Rādhā as the zenith of spiritual culture.

Having described those to whom the confidential knowledge of the Gitā should not be disclosed, Kṛṣṇa goes on in two verses to discusses the fruit of teaching it to the devoted.

---

8. Śrī Caitanya teaches a progression of practice requiring that one attain eligibility before advancing from one step to the next. While the practitioner begins with bhakti, and thus dispenses with the Gitā's progression, within the culture of bhakti a similar progression is found. Beginners are not encouraged to meditate on Kṛṣṇa lilā day and night, as advanced devotees are expected to do. They are encouraged to chant God's name and engage in ritualistic worship with a view to attain eligibility for such meditation.

9. In Cc. Ādi 10.132, Śrī Caitanya says that Bhavānanda Rāya is an incarnation of Pāṇḍu and his five sons are the Pāṇḍavas. It is implied that the dearest among them, Rāmānanda Rāya, was Arjuna. This is confirmed in Gaura-ganoddesa-dipikā (120–24).
Text 68

One who explains this supreme secret to my devotees engages in the highest devotion to me. He will undoubtedly come to me.

Here the word abhidhāsyati implies a thorough explanation of the Gitā. Such an explanation involves establishing its purport in every way by analyzing its words and drawing out its deepest meaning. One who does this in devotion to Kṛṣṇa and then explains the Gitā in a way that it can be readily understood renders the highest service. As it was first spoken for the devotees, it should be explained to them, for only those with devotion can lend a receptive ear.

Explaining the Gitā should be undertaken as an act of devotion. It should be explained by one who, devoid of any ulterior motive, thinks, “I am doing this for the pleasure of Kṛṣṇa.” One who thinks like this and explains the secret of the Gitā to devoted persons will both overcome all doubts and undoubtedly attain Kṛṣṇa and Kṛṣṇa alone (mām eva). Such a person will not attain any other god by this practice, even though all the gods will be pleased with him. Kṛṣṇa will not allow a person who has endeared himself to him to go to anyone else.

Text 69

na ca tasmān manuṣyasya kaścin me priya-kṛttamaḥ/
   bhavitā na ca me tasmād anyah priyataro bhuvi//

na—not; ca—and; tasmāt—than he; manuṣyasya—among men; kaścit—anyone; me—to me; priya-kṛt-tamaḥ—more dear; bhavitā—he will become;
na—nor; ca—and; me—to me; tasmāt—than him; anyā—other; priya-
tarāḥ—dearer; bhuvi—in this world.

No one in this world is more dear to me than he is, nor will there ever
be anyone on earth more dear to me.

Text 70

नाथये यथ यह धर्मे सर्वदा सम्मवादम्।
ज्ञानयाज्ञन स्वाहाम इति मे मतिः।।

adhyeyate ca ya imam dharmyam samvādam āvayoh/
jñāna-yajñena tenāham īstah syām iti me matiḥ/

adhyeyate—he will study; ca—and; yah—who; imam—this; dharmyam—
sacred; samvādam—dialogue; āvayoh—of us two; jñāna—knowledge;
yajñena—by the sacrifice; tena—by him; aham—I; īstah—worshipped;
syām—might I be; iti—thus; me—my; matiḥ—opinion.

It is my conviction that whoever studies this sacred dialogue of ours
worships me by the sacrifice of intellect.

Madhusūdana Sarasvatī comments that adhyeyate (study) implies reading
the Gītā as though one is repeating a mantra. Thus from the mere repetition
of the text, even without understanding its meaning, one attains libera-
tion. How is this possible? Kṛṣṇa, hearing that someone is singing about
his glories, understands what he is saying and delivers him, even though
that person may be ignorant.

Text 71

श्रद्धायानन्मस्य धर्मसु जयादृष्टि यो नरः।
सेवित भवेन श्रुतप्रभावायुपन्यकर्मवाम्।।

śraddhāvān anasūyaḥ ca śrṇuyād api yo narah/
so 'pi muktah subhāl lokān prāpnuyāt punya-karmanām/

śraddhā-vān—faithful; anasūyaḥ—not envious; ca—and; śrṇuyāt—he
should hear; api—certainly; yah—who; narah—man; saḥ—he; api—also;
muktah—liberated; subhān—auspicious; lokān—worlds; prāpnuyāt—he
should attain; punya-karmanām—of the pious.
Even one who merely listens to this conversation with faith, free from envy, will become free and attain the auspicious worlds of the virtuous.

With this verse Kṛṣṇa concludes his description of the fruits of properly explaining the Gītā. He underscores the value of studying and disseminating the Gītā by mentioning the fruits of merely hearing it with faith, free of envy. If merely by hearing the Gītā faithfully one achieves wonderful results, how much more beneficial it is to study the Gītā and teach it.

Here the words muktaḥ and punya-karmanām can be taken as references to liberation and attainment of heaven, respectively. However, this rendering does not take into consideration the order in which they appear in the verse. Liberation normally occurs after attaining heaven, not before. In consideration of this, it is necessary to understand muktaḥ as referring to freedom from impiety, the result of which is attainment of heaven, which follows the sequence both of the words in the verse as well as the actual sequence involved in attaining heaven. However, this understanding limits the fruit of faithfully hearing the Gītā to material existence. If, however, we understand muktaḥ to refer to liberation from material existence and punya-karmanām as a reference to those of virtuous deeds who reside in the most auspicious (subhān), eternally liberated planets (lokān) of God known as Vaikuṇṭha that lie beyond material heaven, the word sequence concurs with the order of spiritual progress from liberation to Vaikuṇṭha and the fruit of merely hearing the transcendental message of the Gītā is itself transcendental.

In the following verse, Kṛṣṇa utters his last word, setting the appropriate example for the guru with regard to instructing his disciple.

Text 72

कःस्तिलच्छूः पार्थ त्येक्कारणेण चेतसा |
कःस्तिलज्ञानसम्मोहः प्रणालस्ते धनान्हजयाः ॥७२॥

kaccid etac chrutam pārtha tvayaikāgrena cetasā/
kaccid ajñāna-sammodah pranaṣtastas te dhanañjaya//

kaccit—whether; etat—this; srutam—heard; pārtha—O son of Prthū; tvayā—by you; eka-agrena—with full attention; cetasa—by the mind; kaccit—whether; ajñāna—ignorance; sammodah—delusion; pranaṣtah—dispelled; te—of you; dhanañjaya—O Dhanañjaya.

O Pārtha, have you listened to this with undivided attention? O Dhanañjaya, have your ignorance and delusion been removed?
The guru must be prepared to explain the spiritual reality to his disciple until he has understood, even if this involves repeating his instruction again and again. Although Kṛṣṇa is omniscient, he asks this question, setting an ideal example. Implied here is both Kṛṣṇa’s willingness to repeat the entire Gitā again should Arjuna not yet fully understand it, as well as the suggestion on Kṛṣṇa’s part that such repetition will not be necessary. Kṛṣṇa addresses Arjuna as both Pārtha, demonstrating his deep affection for Arjuna and willingness to speak further if necessary, and Dhanañjaya, indicating that he knows that his dear disciple is now filled with the wealth of spiritual understanding.

**Text 73**

Arjuna uvāca

naṣṭo mohah smṛtir labdhā tvat-prasādān mayācyuta/

sthito ’smi gata-sandehā kariṣye vacanam tava//

arjuna uvāca—Arjuna said; naṣṭah—destroyed; mohah—delusion; smṛthih—memory; labdhā—restored; tvat-prasādāt—by your grace; mayā—by me; acyuta—O Acyuta; sthitah—situated; asmi—I am; gata—removed; sandehah—doubt; kariṣye—I shall execute; vacanam—order; tava—your.

**Arjuna said: O Acyuta, my delusion is destroyed and my memory restored by your grace. I now stand free from doubt and shall do as you command.**

By Kṛṣṇa’s grace all ignorance can be destroyed. Now Arjuna’s delusion, which was created by Kṛṣṇa himself for the purpose of teaching the Bhagavad-gitā, stands removed. His memory restored and free from doubt, he is prepared to do as Kṛṣṇa wishes.

At this point in his manifest earthly līlā, Kṛṣṇa has returned to Vraja, and in his nearly complete pūrṇa-kalpa-prakāśa manifestation he has entered along with his Vraja devotees into the unmanifest eternal līlā, mitigating their pangs of separation from him. In his most complete pūrṇatama-prakāśa manifestation he has remained and does so perpetually in earthly Vraja, invisible to material eyes. In yet another plenary manifestation (pūrṇa-prakāśa), he mounted his chariot and returned alone to Dwārkā. Here in
Kuruksetra this Kṛṣṇa wants Arjuna to assist him in the final stage of removing the burden of impiety from the earth and thereby establishing dharma.

Remaining visible on earth in his pūrṇa-prakāśa expansion, the sober dhīra-praśānta Kṛṣṇa of Dwārakā, the chariot driver of Arjuna, focuses on his mission of establishing dharma. Yet remembering the Vraja lilā, Kṛṣṇa has lost heart for fighting and he turns to Arjuna, asking for his assistance. The principal purpose of Kṛṣṇa’s move to Dwārakā and the battles he engaged in was to protect the cowherds of Vraja. Otherwise, he would have never left the village life. Establishing dharma is a by-product of protecting his devotees. Now that the Vraja devotees are no longer in need of such protection, Kṛṣṇa’s principal impetus for slaying the enemies of dharma is removed. He has put down his weapons. His competent elder brother Balarāma has been dispatched to the south where he will slay Romaharṣana and Balvala, and Kṛṣṇa himself has sworn not to fight in the Battle of Kurukṣetra. Thus he must do so through Arjuna. Through Arjuna he will now establish religious principles of dharma, and through Arjuna he has made clear the ideal of prema-dharma that transcends religious law. At the same time, Arjuna’s willingness to surrender to Kṛṣṇa’s will and rise above religious dharma insures that dharma itself will also be established.

Thus the Bhagavad-gitā teaches that we should first understand the ideal of prema-dharma and hold it in our hearts as our ideal in life. By aspiring for this ideal through the proper means—the culture of unalloyed bhakti in spontaneous love—one will pass through and understand every other progressive stage taught in the Gitā. These stages include religious life, purification of the heart, knowledge of the self, and liberation itself. These are all by-products of the culture of unalloyed bhakti. As practitioners, we should look for these developments, considering them to be signs that our devotional culture is authentic. In time, the primary fruit of the culture of unalloyed bhakti, love of Kṛṣṇa, will manifest in our hearts. As this awakens, we will join Kṛṣṇa wherever he enacts his lilā in this world, pay our deepest respects to Arjuna, and then return with Kṛṣṇa and the Vraja devotees to the unmanifest eternal lilā once and for all. Tribute to Arjuna whose greatness lies in his surrender to the will of the infallible (acyuta)—Kṛṣṇa!

Text 74

सत्रूपयुजाचः
इन्यां वासुदेवस्य पार्श्वस्य च महामनः ||
संवादित्यमश्रीपतितं गोमहर्षणम् ||७४||
Sañjaya uvāca
Ity aham vāsudevasya pārthasya ca mahātmanah/

saṃvādam imam aśrauṣam adbhutam roma-harṣanam//

Sañjaya said: Thus I have heard this conversation between the son of Vāsudeva and that great soul, Pārtha. Wondrous, it causes one’s hair to stand on end.

Being wondrous and miraculous (adbhutam) in every respect, the sacred conversation between Kṛṣṇa and Arjuna, the immortal Bhagavad-gītā, causes Sañjaya, who merely heard it from a distance, to exhibit ecstatic symptoms such as horripilation (roma-harṣanam).

Text 75

vyāsa-prasādāc chrutavān etad guhyam aham param/
yogam yogēśvarāt kṛṣṇāt sāksāt kathayataḥ svayam//

By the grace of Vyāsa I have directly heard about this highest and most confidential yoga, which Kṛṣṇa, the master of yoga, has himself spoken of!

As mentioned in chapter 1, Sañjaya received the blessing of Vyāsa that he could know everything, even the minds of the assembled warriors on the battlefield of Kurukṣetra. Thus through mystic power he witnessed the conversation between Kṛṣṇa and Arjuna. In this conversation, Kṛṣṇa, the master of all mysticism (yogēśvara), has revealed the highest and most secret yoga of devotion. Having heard about the most secret and supreme
form of yoga from the greatest authority on the subject, Sañjaya rejoices here in this verse.

Text 76

rajan samsmrtya samsmrtya samvådam imam adbhutam/  
kesavårjunayoh punyam hṛṣyāmi ca munur muhuh//

rajan—O King; samsmrtya—remembering; samsmrtya—remembering;  
samvådam—conversation; imam—this; adbhutam—wonderful; kesava-  
arjunayoh—of Kesava and Arjuna; punyam—sacred; hṛṣyāmi—I rejoice;  
ca—and; munuh muhuh—repeatedly.

O King, recalling again and again this wonderful and sacred conversation between Keşava and Arjuna, I am thrilled at every moment.

Text 77

tac ca samsmrtya samsmrtya rüpam aty-adbhutam hareh/  
vismayo me mahån raja hṛṣyāmi ca punah punah//

tat—that; ca—and; samsmrtya—remembering; samsmrtya—remembering;  
rüpam—form; ati—greatly; adbhutam—amazing; hareh—of Kṛṣṇa;  
vismayah—wonder; me—my; mahån—great; raja—O King; hṛṣyāmi—I  
rejoice; ca—and; punah punah—again and again.

And remembering repeatedly that amazing form of Kṛṣṇa I am struck with wonder, and I rejoice again and again.

Text 78

yatra yogesvarah kṛṣṇo yatra pārtho dhanur-dharaḥ/  
tatra śrīr vijayo bhūtir dhruvā nitir matir mama//
Wherever Kṛṣṇa, the master of yoga, and the archer Pārtha are, there will always be good fortune, victory, wealth, well-being, and righteousness. This is my conviction.

Here Sañjaya advises the blind king Dhṛtarāṣṭra to give up any hope of his sons being victorious in battle. All that he might be concerned with—good fortune, victory, wealth, well-being, and righteousness—is on the side of the Pāṇḍavas, for on their side stand Kṛṣṇa and Arjuna. Thus Sañjaya encourages the king to take refuge of Kṛṣṇa, satisfy the Pāṇḍavas, and give everything to them. Only one blind to his real self-interest would refuse to do so.

Concluding words

On the auspicious advent day of Adwaita Ācārya in the year 2000, I end this commentary on the Bhagavad-gitā: Its Feeling and Philosophy. May he who mystically learned the devotional import to every verse of the Gitā from Śrī Caitanya himself be merciful to me.

He is Adwaita because he is nondifferent from Kṛṣṇa, being his incarnation, and he is known as Ācārya because he taught the bhāgavata prema-dharma inculcated in the Bhagavad-gitā. He is also known as Mahā-Viśnu because he is both Mahādeva (Śiva) and Viśnu combined. Thus he is the spark of the splendor of Śrī Kṛṣṇa from whom the entire world issues, and by his willful glance of compassionate love the multitude of souls gain the opportunity to meet their maker and know his love for them.

Adwaita Ācārya called Śrī Caitanya to this world, without whom the deepest import of Śrī Kṛṣṇa’s speech to Arjuna would not have been revealed. No one can fathom his glory, and he cannot fathom the glory of Śrī Caitanya, who is Kṛṣṇa himself in every way, imbued with the love of Rādhā.
**acintya-bhedābhedā**—the metaphysic of Gauḍīya Vedānta describing the energetic source of all existence (God/Kṛṣṇa) to be inconceivably, simultaneously one and different from his energy.

**aīśvarya**—“opulence”; the Godly manifestation of Kṛṣṇa as Viṣṇu/ Nārāyaṇa.

**avatāra**—God’s descent into human society.

**avyakta**—“unmanifest”; refers to the night of Brahmā at which time the material manifestation becomes partially unmanifest, as well as to Viṣṇu in whom the entire material manifestation rests at the end of Brahmā’s life.

**Bhagavān**—the personality of Godhead.

**bhakti-yoga**—discipline of love and devotion to God.

**bhāva**—spiritual emotion.

**Brahman**—all-pervasive manifestation of Godhead.

**dharma**—“righteousness”; the inherent characteristic of anything.

**dhīra-lalita**—the hero who is both sober and playful.

**dhīra-praśānta**—the hero who is sober and peaceful.

**dhyāna**—meditation.

**Dwārakā**—the place of Kṛṣṇa’s aristocratic līlā where reverence for him prevails over intimacy.

**gopī**—milkmaid of Kṛṣṇa.

**guṇa**—threefold influence of material nature: sattva, rajas, and tamas.

**jīva**—individual soul.

**jñāna-yoga**—discipline of culturing spiritual knowledge.

**Kali-yuga**—age of hypocrisy.

**karma**—reactionary work.
māyā—illusion.
nirvāṇa—cessation of material existence.
niṣkāma-karma-yoga—discipline of acting with detachment from the fruits of one's work with a view to attain self-realization and God-realization.
parā-prakṛti—individual souls.
Paramātma—indwelling manifestation of Godhead.
paramparā—succession of gurus.
prakṛti—material nature.
prārabdha-karma—reactions from previous lives that are now bearing fruit.
prema—love of God.
puruṣa—the Supreme Person; sometimes used to describe the individual soul.
rāgānuga—the path of spontaneous love following the ideal of Vraja bhakti.
rajas—passion, movement of matter.
rasa—sacred aesthetic rapture in which the individual soul unites with God in a transcendental relationship.
sakti—potency or energy of God.
sannyāsa—renounced order of life in which obligatory work is transcended.
sattva—goodness, clarity, intelligibility of matter.
sāṅskāra—a subtle impression made on the soul that impels it to act in a particular way.
sāṅkhya—analytical study of material nature.
Śaṅkhya—one of the six darśanas of Indian philosophy founded by sage Kapila.
śruti—the Upaniṣads.
**tamās**—ignorance, inertia.

**tātāstha**—potency of God of which the individual souls are constituted.

**tyāga**—renunciation of the fruits of one’s actions.

**varṇāśrama**—the socioreligious system in which persons are classified in terms of their psychosomatic nature and religious status and thus assigned corresponding duties.

**viśva-rūpa**—the form of the universe, a divine manifestation in which God is seen to pervade the entire universe.

**Vraja**—the intimate pastoral setting of Kṛṣṇa’s lilā with the gopīs.

**yuga**—cosmic time cycle.
INDEX OF VERSES

A
abhuyam sattva-samsūdhaḥ 16.1
abhisandhāya tu phalam 17.12
abhito brahma-nirvānam 5.26
abhyaśād namate yatra 18.36
abhyāsa-yoga-yuktena 8.8
abhyāsa-yogena tato 12.9
abhyāsena tu kaunteya 6.35
abhyāse ‘py asamartho ‘si 12.10
abhyutthānam adharmasya 4.7
ā-brahma-bhuvanāl lokāh 8.16
ācārty atmanāh sreyā 16.22
ācāryah pitarāḥ putrāḥ 1.33
ācāryam upasangāmya 1.2
ācāryān mātādān bhṛtān 1.26
ācāryopāsanaṁ saucam 13.8
acchedyo ‘yam adahyo 2.24
adesā-kāle yad dānām 17.22
adharmābhīhavāt kṛṣṇa 1.40
adharmān dharman 18.32
adhas ca mālān 15.2
adhas cordhvam prastās 15.2
adhībhatam ca kīṁ praktam 8.1
adhībhātām kṣero bhūtah 8.4
adhīśhāhām tathā kartā 18.14
adhīśhāya manas cāyam 15.9
adhiśayajñah katho ko ‘tra 8.2
adhiśayāno ‘ham evaṁ 8.4
adhiśatma-jñāna 13.12
adhiśeṣam-vidyā 10.32
adhyeyate ca ya imaṁ 18.70
adhīyo ‘bhijanavarān asmi 16.15
ādityānam āham visnūr 10.21
adrṣṭa-pārvam hrṣito 11.45
advēṣa sarva-bhūtānām 12.13
ādy-antarvāntah kaunteya 5.22
āgamāpāyino ‘nityās 2.14
aghāyur indriyārāmō 3.16
agnir jyotir āhah suklah 8.24
āham adīr hi devānām 10.2
āham adīs ca madhyam ca 10.20
āham atmanā gudākṣa 10.20
āham evākṣayaḥ kālo 10.33
āham hi sarva-yajñānam 9.24
āham kṛttāt āham yajñāh 9.16
āham kṛṣṇasya jagataḥ 7.6
āham sarvasya prabhāvho 10.8
āham tvaṁ sarva 18.66
āham vaivātānam bhūtvā 15.14
āhṛkāra ityām me 7.4
āhṛkāram balam darpam 16.18
āhṛkāram balam darpam 18.53
āhṛkāra-vimūḍhātmā 3.27
āhārā rājasasyeṣṭā 17.9
āhāras tv āpi sarvasya 17.7
ahimsā samatā tuṣṭis 10.5
ahimirā satyam akrodhas 16.2
aha bata mahat pāpaṁ 1.44
aha tvān rṣayāh sarve 10.13
aṅāvatam gajendraṁ 10.27
ajñanat mahīmanām 11.41
ajñānam cābhījātasya 16.4
ajñānenāryam jñānam 5.15
ājñās cās†vaddadhānas ca 4.40
ajo niyāh stāsvato ‘yam 2.20
ajo ‘pi sann avayātām 4.6
akarmanāsa ca bodhāyaṁ 4.17
ākhyāhi me ko bhavān 11.31
ākṛtim cāti bhūtāni 2.34
aṅkṣaram brahma paramām 8.3
aṅkṣarakāra a-kāro ‘smi 10.33
āmāṇīstvam adambhītvam 13.8
āmi ca tvāṁ dhīrtarāṣṭrasya 11.26
āmi hi tvāṁ sura-saṅghā 11.21
āmrām caiva mṛtyuṁ ca 9.19
ānādi-madhyantam ananta 11.19
anādi mat-param brahma 13.13
anādītvān nirgунatvāt 13.32
ananta deśeva jagān 11.37
anantaś cāsmi nāgānām 10.29
anvantāvijayam rājā 1.16
ananta-vīryāmita-vikramas 11.40
ananyā-cetāh satatām 8.14
ananyās cintayanto mām 9.22
ananyenaiva yogenā 12.6
anapekṣāḥ stēc doṣa 12.16
anārya-juṣṭam avargyam 2.2
anāsino ‘prameyasya 2.18
anāśritaḥ karma-phalam 6.1
anātmanas tu satute 6.6
aneka-bōhādāra-vaktra 11.16
aneka-cītta-vibhēntā 16.16
aneka-dīvēyābhāsanam 11.10
aneka-jamana-samsūdhaḥ 6.45
aneka-vaktra-nuyamam 11.10
anena prasaviśadhvam 3.10
anicchān api vārṇeṣyā 3.36
anukteḥ śhīrā-matir 12.19
anuṣṭam īṣṭam mūrmaṁ ca 18.12
anityam asukham lokam 9.33
annād bhavanti bhūtāni 3.14
anta-kāle ca mām eva 8.5
antavanta ime dehā 2.18
antavat tu phalam tesām 7.23
amudhandham kṣayam 18.25
anuvāja-karam vāyvam 17.15
anye ca bahavah stērā 1.9
anye sāṁkhyena yogena 13.25
bhagavad-gita

586

anye tv evam ajñanatah 13.26
apane jhuvati prāṇam 4.29
aparan bhavato janna 4.4

aparaspara-sambhūtān 16.8
apare nityatāhāraḥ 4.29
apareyam itas tv asyām 7.5
aparyātapād tadvamākam 1.10
apāya deva-devasya 11.13

aphalākāṃskārṇ yajñō 17.11
aphalākāṃskārṇ yuktāh 17.17
aphala-prēpsnāṁ kāma 18.23
api ced asi pāpabhyāḥ 4.36
api cet su-durācāro 9.30

api trayokṣya-rājāṣya 1.35
aprakāśa 'pravṛttiś ca 14.13
aprāpya māṁ nivarte tvā 9.3
aprāpya yog-a-sāmsiddhiṁ 6.37
apratiṣṭho mahā-bhāho 6.38

āprāyaṁaṁaṁ aca 2.70
ārto jñāśārthaarthiḥ 7.16
ārūṇakṣor mune yogam 6.3
asad ity ucyate pārthath 17.28
asakta-buddhiḥ sarvatra 18.49

asaktam sarva-bhṛc caiva 13.15
asaktir anabhisvāyāḥ 13.10
asakto hy ācaraṁ kāma 3.19
asamādīdhaṁ sa maṁtvam 10.3
asāsanvāyaṁ mahā-bhāho 6.35

asāsanvaṁ samagham maṁ 7.1
asaniyātāmamanī yogo 6.36
āā-aṁśa-satāṁ buddhiḥ 16.12
āāśāśā-viśhitam ghoram 17.5
asat-krtaṁ avajñātam 17.22

asatyam apratiṣṭhān te 16.8
asau mayā hataḥ sātṛn 16.14
āścaryav-pācaṁ caṁāṁ arhayah 2.29
āścaryav-vat pāsvati kāśicā 2.29
asito devalo vyāsah 10.13

asmākam tu viśīṣṭā ye 1.7
āśocāyām avasācosv tvam 2.11

āsraḍaladhiṁ स parśū 9.3
āsraḍdhāya hūtām dattam 17.28
āśētām sa hi yuktātmaṁ 7.18

āsūrim yonim āpanām 16.20
āśvasyāṁ āsa ca bhītam 11.50
āsavitōḥ sarva-vṛksānāṁ 10.26
āsavitāṁ vaṅkāraṁ ca 1.8
āsavitam enāṁ su-virūḍhaṁ 15.3

āsattvāṁśa-vaṁśa-vad alpaṁ ca 18.22
aha caṁāṁ niṭṭha-jātaṁ 2.26
aha cet tvam ahamkāraṁ 18.58
aha cet tvam imāṁ 2.33
aha caṁāṁ sāmādhiṁ 12.9

ātmaiva hy ātmāno bandhur 6.5
ātmany eva ca sāntuṣṭā 3.17
ātmany evatmanāṁ tuṣṭā 2.55
ātma-sambhāvitaṁ 16.17
ātma-saṁsthānam manah 6.25

ātma-saṁsthānam yogāṅgau 4.27
ātmaspamsyaṁ ca sarvatra 6.32
ātmanvāntam na karmāṁ 4.41
ātma-vāṣyāṁ vidheyāṁ 2.64
ato 'smi loke veda ca 15.18

ātra sūrā mahesu-āśā 1.4
ātite tath sarvam idam 8.28
āvacya-vādāṁ ca bhūṁ 2.36
āvajñānti māṁ mūḍhā 9.11
āvāpya bhūmāv asasatam 2.8

āvibhaktam ca bhūteṣu 13.17
āvibhaktam vibhakteṣu 18.20
āvināśī tu tad viddhi 2.17
āvṛtam ājñānam etena 3.39
āvadyāṁbhīṁ bhūteṣu 2.28

āvanyakād vyaktayah sarvāḥ 8.18
āvanyakāḥ hi gaitā dūkhāṁ 12.5

āvyaktaṁ vyakāṁ 7.24
āvyakta-nidhānāṁ eva 2.28
āvyakta 'ksara ity uktas 8.21

āvyakto 'yam acintyo 'yam 2.25
āvaneṣu ca sarveśu 1.11
āvayāvat prajñāṁī 18.31
āvatiḥ saṛdṛhayopetō 6.37
āvṛdhānāṁ ahāṁ vajram 10.28

āvyukta-kāma-kāreṇa 5.12
āvyukta prakṛtāḥ 18.28

bahavo jñāna-tapasā 4.10
bahir antas ca bhūtānāṁ 13.16
bāhūdaraṁ bahu-daṁstrā 11.23
bāhūnāṁ janaṁtanāṁ ante 7.19
bāhunī me vyatātāṁ 4.5

bāhunī adṛṣṭa-pārveṇī 11.6
bāhu-sākhā hy anantāḥ ca 2.41
bāhyā-sparśasya asaktāṁ 5.21
bālam balavatāṁ cāhaṁ 7.11
bandham mokṣam ca 18.30

bandhur atmātmānas tasya 6.6
bhajanty ananyo manaso 9.13
bhaktiṁ mayī parāṁ kṛtvā 18.68
bhaktō 'smi me sakhaḥ cetō 4.3
bhaktyā māṁ abhijnāṁ 18.55

bhaktō tu ananyayaṁ 11.54
bhavāṁ na cirāt pārthā 12.7
bhavāṁ bhūmas ca karaṇā ca 1.8
bhavantī bhāva bhūtānāṁ 10.5
bhavantī sāmādhiṁ 16.3

bhavāpyayau hi bhūtānāṁ 11.2
bhāva-sāmsiddhir ity etat 17.16
bhavatī acārayāṁ prayāya 18.12
bhavisyāṁ ca bhūteṣu 7.26
bhavitā na ca me tasmād 18.69

bhavyād rāṇād uparanāt 2.35
bhīṣma-drona-pramukhātaḥ 1.25
bhīṣmaṁ evābhiraṅkṣanto 1.11
etad buddhå buddhåmimàn 15.20
etat dhi durlabhåtaram 6.42
etat vedatam icchåmi 13.1
etat-yonini bhåtmå 7.6
etat yo vetti tam pråhuh 13.2
etair vîmohâyaty esa 3.40
etair vîmuktaḥ kaunteya 16.22
etaj jñånam iti proktam 13.12
etåm drśîm avaśåbhîya 16.9
etåm vibhiñjac iyoçågan ca 10.7
etåna me samsåayam krsåna 6.39
etåna na hantum icchåmi 1.34
etåny api tu kårinåni 18.6
etasyåham na pasåyåmi 6.33
etåta kṣetram samåsena 13.7
evam bahu-vîdhå yajñå 4.32
evam buddheh param 4.33
evam etat yathåthå tvam 11.3
evam jñåtvå kṛtram kårma 4.15
evam paramparå-pråptam 4.2
evam pravåritam cåkram 3.16
evam-råpaḥ sakyå aham 11.48
evam satåta-yuktà ye 12.1
evam trayå-dharmåm 9.21
evam uktå hṛṣikeså 1.24
evam uktvå hṛṣikesåm 2.9
evam uktvåbîjnånaḥ saṁkåya 1.46
evam uktvå tato råjån 11.9

G

gacchånty apunar-åvåttam 5.17
gåm åsåta ca bhåtåni 15.13
gandharvånåm cÇtnåråtåh 10.26
gandharvå-yakåśåsa 11.22
gåndåtvåm sramåsate hastå 1.29
gata-sångåsa mukåtåsa 4.23
gatåsåm agåtåśåm ca 2.11
gati bhârtå pråbhåhi såkå 9.18
gåhitvåtåmi sanyåtå 15.8
gåmå guneṣu vartanta 3.28
gåmå etåm atitya trån 14.20

gunå vartanta ity evam 14.23
gunebhåyas ca param vetti 14.19
gunå ahâtvå hi mahådâhåtvå 2.5

H

håntå te kåthåvisyaµi 10.19
hårsåmarça-bhåyoçågår 12.15
hårså-sokånvåtaḥ kartå 18.27
hato vå pråpsyåsi svårgåm 2.37
hatvåpi sa imå lokån 18.17

I

icchå dvesåh sukåm 13.7
icchå-dveså-saµstuthåna 7.27
idåm adya mayå labdhåm 16.13
idåm astådåm api me 16.13
idåm jñånam upåråtåyå 14.2

jñåna-vijñåna-tåþåtmå 14.11
jñånaµ yadå tadå vidyåd 1.1
jñånaµ vijñånam 18.19
jñånaµ labdhvå paråµ 18.37
jñånaµ jñeyaµ parijñåtå 13.18
jñånam åvåtya tu tamaµ 9.2
jñånaµ jñeyaµ paråµ 18.37
jñånaµ jñeyaµ parijñåtå 13.18
jñånaµ labdhvå paråµ 18.37
jñånaµ jñeyaµ parijñåtå 13.18
jñånaµ labdhvå paråµ 18.37
jñånaµ jñeyaµ parijñåtå 13.18
jñånaµ labdhvå paråµ 18.37
jñånaµ jñeyaµ parijñåtå 13.18
jñånaµ labdhvå paråµ 18.37

jñāna-yajñena tenāham 18.70
jñāna-yogena sānkhyaāānām 3.3
jñānera tu tad aṭjñānam 5.16
jñātaṁ draśtaṁ ca 11.54
jñātvā sāstrā-vidhiānoktaṁ 16.24
jñeyah sa nitya-sannyāsī 5.3
jñeyam yat tat 13.13
josayet sarva-kārmāṇi 3.26
jōyāsti cet kārmanas te 3.1
jyotiśam api taj jyotis 13.18

K
kaccid aṭjñāna 18.72
kaccid etac chūrama 18.72
kaccin nohaḥya-viśhratā 6.38
kair lingais trīn guṇān 14.21
kair meyā saha 1.22
kālo 'smi loka-kṣaya-kṛtaṁ 11.32
kalpa-ksaye priṇas tāni 9.7
kāma esa krodha esa 3.37
kāmāḥ krodhas tathā 16.21
kāmās tais tair hṛta-jñānāḥ 7.20
kāma-krodha-vimuktaṁ 5.26
kāma-krodhodbhavaṁ 5.23
kāmam āśritya duśprāmaṇi 16.10
kāma-rūpena kaṁteṣṭaṁ 3.39
kāmātmānaḥ svarga-parā 2.43
kāmopābhoga-paramā 16.11
kāmīyaṁ kārmanāṁ 18.2
kānkanātaṁ kārmanāṁ 4.12
kāraṇam guṇa-saṅga 'syā 13.22
kāraṇam kārma karteti 18.18
karma brahmadbhavam 3.15
karma caiva tad-arhaṁ 17.27
karma-jaṁ buddhi-yuktā hi 2.51
karma-jāṁ viddhi tāṁ 4.32
karmaṇāḥ suktasyaḥ 14.16
karmanāviaṁ hi santaśiddhim 3.20
karmanī pravibhaktāni 18.41
karmano hy api 4.17
karmany abhipravṛtto 'pi 4.20

karmany akarma yah 4.18
karmany evadiḥkāras te 2.47
karmendriyaḥ kārma-yogam 3.7
karmendriyaṁ samyāyaṁ 3.6
karmibhyās caḍhiko yogī 6.46
kāṛpāṇya-duśopahāra 2.7
kārṣayantah sarvā-sthaṁ 17.6
kārtavyāntī me pārtha 18.16
kārtum necchasi yan 18.60
kārṣya-kārana-kartrtrve 13.21
kāryam ity eva yat kārma 18.9
kāryate hy avasah kārma 3.5
kāsrās ca paramesv-āśāṁ 1.17
katham bhīṣmaṁ ahaṁ 2.4
katham etad vijñāyām 4.4
katham na jñeyam 1.38
katham sa puruṣāṁ pārtha 2.21
katham vidyām ahaṁ 10.17
kathayantac ca māṁ 10.9
kauṭ-ama-la-lanātya-usṇā 17.9
kauntya pratijñānī 9.31
kāvinaḥ purāṇam 8.9
kāvyena manasaḥ buddhyā 5.11
kecid vilagnam 27.5
kēvō ṣeṣu ca hāteṣu 10.17
kim acāraḥ katham 14.21
kim karma kim akarmetī 4.16
kim no rāyena govinda 1.32
kim paṁr brāhmaṇaḥ 9.33
kim tād brahma kim 8.1
kίrteḥ śrīr vāk ca nārīnāṁ 10.34
kīrtirnām gadinam cakra 11.46
kīrtirnām gadinam 11.17
klaityaṁ mā śma gamah 2.3
kleso 'dhikataras teṣām 12.5
kriyate vahukaṁ 18.24
kriyate tad tāḥ proktaṁ 17.18
kriyā-viśeṣa-bahulām 2.43

krodhāḥ bhavati sammohah 2.63
kṛpāyā parayāvīsto 1.27
kṛṣi-go-rakṣya-vāṇijyaṁ 18.44
ksaṁh sarvaṁ bhūtaṁ 15.16
kṣetra-jñam cāpi māṁ 13.3
kṣetra-kṣetrajñā-sanyogāt 13.27
kṣetra-kṣetrajñayor evam 13.35
kṣetra-kṣetrajñayor jñānām 13.3
kṣetram kṣetri tathā 13.34
kṣīpamy ajasarman aśabhān 16.19
kṣīpram bhavitai 9.31
kṣīpram hi mānaśe loke 4.12
kṣudram hṛdaya-ārthaḥ 2.3
kula-ksaya-kṛtam doṣam 1.38
kula-ksaya-kṛtaṁ doṣam 1.37
kula-ksayo pranayanti 1.39
kṣīyād vyāṃs tāthāsaktaṁ 3.25
ketas tvā kṣāmalam idam 2.2

L
labhante brahma-ñīrsvānaṁ 5.25
labhate ca tatāḥ kāmān 7.22
leśhyase grasāmanāṁ 11.30
lipyate na sa pāpena 5.10
lobhāḥ pravṛttir āraṃbhāḥ 14.12
loka-saṁghānam evāpi 3.20
loke 'smi dvi-viśhā niṣṭhā 3.3

M
mac-cittaṁ sarva-durgāṇi 18.58
mac-cittā mad-gata-prāṇā 10.9
mad-anugrahāya paramā 11.1
mad-arthaṁ api kārmanī 12.10
mad-bhakta etad vijñāya 13.19
mad-bhāvāṁ mānasā jātaṁ 10.6
madāhavah pāṇḍavas caiva 1.14
mahā-bhūtānāh ahaṅkāro 13.6
mahārasyaṁ saṁptā pārve 10.6
mahārṣaṁ nṛṛgar ahaṁ 10.25
mahāsāna mahā-pāṁśa 3.37
manu nam caiva √msi 10.38  na ca samnyasa √ad eva 3.4
maya √hyaksenā prakṛtih 9.10  na ca √teyo ‘nupasyāmi 1.31
maya hatāms tvam jahi 11.34  na cāstūgisavā vācyam 18.67
maya √ravate nihātah pārvam 11.33  na cāsya sarva-bhūtesu 3.18
māmakāḥ pānadvās caiva 1.1  na ca tasmān mamasyesu 18.69
mām aprāpyāvān 16.20  na cātā-svapna-silasya 6.16
mām ātma-para-dehesu 16.18  nādatte kasyacit pāpam 5.15
māma vartmānuvartante 3.23  na devī svapravartāni 14.22
māma vartmānuvartante 4.11  na devīṣty akusālam 18.10
māma yo nir mahā brahma 14.3  na hām prakāśas sarvasya 7.25
māma ca yo ‘yabhirācāreṇa 14.26  nāham vedāir na tapaṣā 11.53
mām evai eva satyaṁ yuktvaivaṁ 14.9  na hi deha-bhṛtya sākyaṁ 18.11
mām evai eva sattvaṁ te 18.65  na hi hi ātuṇa sa-drśam 4.38
mām evai eva √ukaevaṁ 9.34  na hā kyāyāna-krṣt caśīrā 6.40
māma eva ye √rapadyanta 7.14  na hi kāṣcit kṣayam apī 3.5
mām hi pārtha eva-pārśvyata 9.32  na hīnasty 13.29
mām utpetya tu maṁ ca 8.15  na hi √rapasyāṁ 2.8
mām utpetya tu kaunteya 8.16  na hi te bhagavan vyaktim 10.14
manah √rasādah 17.16  na hy asamyastra-sankalpa 6.2
manah samyamya macc 6.14  naimin chindaṁi śastraśi 2.23
manah-saṣṭhānindriyāni 15.7  naikṣayam-siddhiṁ 18.49
mānāmānānayaś tuṣyasā 14.25  naīte śrīṁ pārtha jānan 8.27
manasaivindriya-grāmām 6.24  naiva kīcita karotāmi 5.8
manatas tu pañā buddhā 3.42  naiva tasya kṛtenārtho 3.18
man-manā bhāva mad 9.34  nāyāte mriyate vā 2.20
man-manā bhāva mad 18.65  na kāṅkṣe viṣayam kṛṣyaṁ 1.31
mantrapamānayos tulaś 14.25  na karmanāṁ anārābhāṁ 3.4
manasaivindriya-grāmaṁ 6.24  na karma-phala-samyojana 5.14
manyase yadi tact chakyaṁ 11.4  na kartrtrvam na karmanī 5.14
manytaṁ maratam asmi 10.21  nakudal sahadevaś ca 1.16
māsānām mārga-sīrō 10.35  namah purastād atha 11.40
mā tu cauch samapadam 16.5  na mām dusktarino mūddāḥ 7.15
mā te vyāhā ma ca 11.49  na mām karmanī līmpantā 4.14
mat-karma-kṛṅ mat 11.55  namaskṛtvā bhūya evāha 11.35
mat-prasādaṁ avāṃpito 18.56  na cānakām klesayanty āpo 2.23
mātrā-sparśāṁ tu kaunteya 2.14  nāmasyaṁtaṁ ca māṁ 9.14
mat-sthāni sarva-bhūtanī 9.4  na me pārthāṁi kartavyam 3.22
matte eveti tāṁ viḍdhi 7.12  na me viduḥ sīrā-ganāh 10.2
matteh paṭrataṁ nānyat 7.7  namento namas te ‘stu sahaśa 11.39
matulāṁ svasaṁrah paurāḥ 1.34  nānāsāstra-praharanaṁ 1.9
matvaṁna caivaṁ āṣaṁ 1.30  nānavāptam avāptaṁyam 3.22
निर्माणो निरहुक्ते 2.45
निर्माण मनोहर 2.71
निर्माण मनोहर 12.13
निर्माण महो 15.5
निर्माण समझे 2.45
निर्माण समझे 2.71
निर्माण समझे 12.13
निर्माण समझे 15.5
निर्माण समझे 2.45
निर्माण समझे 2.71
निर्माण समझे 12.13
निर्माण समझे 15.5
निर्माण समझे 2.45
निर्माण समझे 2.71
निर्माण समझे 12.13
निर्माण समझे 15.5
निर्माण समझे 2.45
निर्माण समझे 2.71
निर्माण समझे 12.13
निर्माण समझे 15.5
निर्माण समझे 2.45
निर्माण समझे 2.71
निर्माण समझे 12.13
निर्माण समझे 15.5
निर्माण समझे 2.45
निर्माण समझे 2.71
निर्माण समझे 12.13
निर्माण समझे 15.5
निर्माण समझे 2.45
निर्माण समझे 2.71
निर्माण समझे 12.13
निर्माण समझे 15.5
निर्माण समझे 2.45
निर्माण समझे 2.71
निर्माण समझे 12.13
निर्माण समझे 15.5
निर्माण समझे 2.45
निर्माण समझे 2.71
निर्माण समझे 12.13
निर्माण समझे 15.5
निर्माण समझे 2.45
निर्माण समझे 2.71
निर्माण समझे 12.13
निर्माण समझे 15.5
निर्माण समझे 2.45
निर्माण समझे 2.71
निर्माण समझे 12.13
निर्माण समझे 15.5
निर्माण समझे 2.45
निर्माण समझे 2.71
निर्माण समझे 12.13
निर्माण समझे 15.5
निर्माण समझे 2.45
निर्माण समझे 2.71
निर्माण समझे 12.13
निर्माण समझे 15.5
निर्माण समझे 2.45
निर्माण समझे 2.71
निर्माण समझे 12.13
निर्माण समझे 15.5
निर्माण समझे 2.45
निर्माण समझे 2.71
निर्माण समझे 12.13
निर्माण समझे 15.5
निर्माण समझे 2.45
निर्माण समझे 2.71
निर्माण समझे 12.13
निर्माण समझे 15.5
निर्माण समझे 2.45
निर्माण समझे 2.71
निर्माण समझे 12.13
निर्माण समझे 15.5
निर्माण समझे 2.45
निर्माण समझे 2.71
निर्माण समझे 12.13
निर्माण समझे 15.5
निर्माण समझे 2.45
निर्माण समझे 2.71
निर्माण समझे 12.13
निर्माण समझे 15.5
निर्माण समझे 2.45
निर्माण समझे 2.71
निर्माण समझे 12.13
निर्माण समझे 15.5
निर्माण समझे 2.45
निर्माण समझे 2.71
निर्माण समझे 12.13
निर्माण समझे 15.5
निर्माण समझे 2.45
निर्माण समझे 2.71
निर्माण समझे 12.13
निर्माण समझे 15.5
निर्माण समझे 2.45
निर्माण समझे 2.71
निर्माण समझे 12.13
निर्माण समझे 15.5
निर्माण समझे 2.45
निर्माण समझे 2.71
निर्माण समझे 12.13
निर्माण समझे 15.5
निर्माण समझे 2.45
निर्माण समझे 2.71
निर्माण समझे 12.13
निर्माण समझे 15.5
निर्माण समझे 2.45
निर्माण समझे 2.71
निर्माण समझे 12.13
निर्माण समझे 15.5
निर्माण समझे 2.45
निर्माण समझे 2.71
निर्माण समझे 12.13
निर्माण समझे 15.5
निर्माण समझे 2.45
निर्माण समझे 2.71
निर्माण समझे 12.13
निर्माण समझे 15.5
निर्माण समझे 2.45
निर्माण समझे 2.71
निर्माण समझे 12.13
निर्माण समझे 15.5
निर्माण समझे 2.45
निर्माण समझे 2.71
निर्माण समझे 12.13
निर्माण समझे 15.5
निर्माण समझे 2.45
निर्माण समझे 2.71
निर्माण समझे 12.13
निर्माण समझे 15.5
निर्माण समझे 2.45
निर्माण समझे 2.71
निर्माण समझे 12.13
निर्माण समझे 15.5
निर्माण समझे 2.45
निर्माण समझे 2.71
निर्माण समझे 12.13
निर्माण समझे 15.5
निर्माण समझे 2.45
निर्माण समझे 2.71
निर्माण समझे 12.13
निर्माण समझे 15.5

इंडेक्स ऑफ वर्स्स 591
prāñānta-manasaḥ hy 6.27
prāṣāntātmā vṛgata-bhir 6.14
prāṣāte karmani tathā 17.26

pratyakṣāvagamam 9.2
pravartante vidhānoṅkāh 17.24
pravṛtte śastra-sampāte 1.20
pravṛttīm na nivṛttīm ca 16.7
pravṛttīm na nivṛttīm ca 18.30

prayāña-keśe ca katham 8.10
prayāña-keśe manasa-calaṇe 8.10
prayāña-keśa ‘pi ca mām 7.30
prayāṭā yānti tam kālām 8.23
prayatnād yatatmanās tu 6.45

pratāt bhūta-ganāṁṁ caṁye 17.4
prīyo hi jñānino ‘taryathm 7.17
procayamāṇam aśeṣāna 18.29
procayate gana-sankhyāyane 18.19
prayākatvena tu yaj jñānam 18.21

pantu gandhau prthivyān ca 7.9
parodhasām ca mukhyam 10.24
parujit kantibhojas ca 1.5
parusah prakṛti-sthoh 13.22
parusah sa parah pārtha 8.22

parusah sūkha 13.21
parusam sāsraṇam 10.12
pārśvabhyāsena tenavā 6.44
pūnaṁ ca causadhiḥ sarvāḥ 15.13

R
rāga-dveṣa-vimuktaṁ tu 2.64
rāgī karma-phala-prāpṇusāra 18.27
rajaḥ sattvam tamaḥ caiva 14.10
rajan sarṣiṁśrtya 18.76
rajasas tu phalena 14.16

rajasī pralayan gatuva 14.15
rajas tamaḥ caḥbhūtiṣya 14.10
rajas etatıḥ jayante 14.12
rāja-viśvaḥ rāja-guhyaḥ 9.2
rāja-rāgātmakan viddhi 14.7

raksāṁsi bhūtāṁ dīso 11.36
raksasim āśīrvin caiva 9.12
rasa-varjan raso ‘py asya 2.59
raso ‘ham apsa kaunteya 7.8
rasyaḥ snigdhaḥ sthirā 17.8

raṭrīṁ yuga-sahasrāntam 8.17
raṭrī-āgama pralayeṇe 8.18
raṭrī-āgama ‘vasah pārtha 8.19
ṛṣibhir bahadhā gitam 13.5
ṛte ‘pi tvām na bhavisyanti 11.32

ruddādityā vyāsavo ye ca 11.22
ruddrānaṁ sankaraś cāmaṁ 10.23
rāpam mahaḥ te bahu-vaktra 11.23

S
sabdādin visayāṁ tyaktvā 18.51
sabdādin visayāṁ anya 4.26
sa brahma-yoga-yuktaṁ 5.21
sa budhām manuṣyeṣu 4.18
sa ca yo yat-prabhaṁva ca 13.4

sād-bhāte sādhu-bhāve ca 17.26
sādhibhātuḥadiśaṁcavam mām 7.30
sādhur eva sa mantavyah 9.30
sādhuṣy api ca pāpeṣu 6.9
sādṛṣam caṣṭate svasayāḥ 3.33

sa evyāṁ mayā te ’dyā 4.3
sa ghoṣo dhāṛtaraśtriṁāna 1.19
sa gūmān samatiṣṭhyātān 14.26
saha-jaṁ karman ca karante 18.48
sahasāvibhāyaḥanyanta 1.13

sahasā-yauga-parayantam 8.17
saha-yajñāṁ prajāḥ sṛṣṭvā 3.10
sa kaleneha mahatā 4.2
saḥheti matvaḥ prasabhaṁ yad 11.41
saṁkotthaitvā yah sudhōm 5.23

sa krāe rājasam tyagam 18.8
saktaḥ karmanya avidhvalom 3.25
sakṣya evam-viḍha dṛṣṭvān 11.53
samāṭhikva acalā buddhis 2.53
sama-duhkha-sukhāḥ sva 14.24

sama-duhkha-sukham dīhan 2.15
samaḥ sarveṣu bhūteṣu 18.54
samaḥ śatrāu ca mitre ca 12.18

samaḥ siddhāv asiddhām ca 4.22
samaṁ kāya-sīro-grīvaṁ 6.13

samaṁ paśyam hi sarvatvā 13.29
samaṁ sarvesu bhūteṣu 13.28
samaṁ sarvesaṁ kaunteya 18.50
sambhavah sarva-bhūtanāṁ 14.3
sambhāvityas ca kātiṁ 2.34

samo dasaṁ tapaḥ saucam 18.42
samo ‘ham sarva-bhūteṣu 9.29
sampaṁsya nāśaṅkṣaṁ svam 6.13
sanvādām imam āraśuṁ 18.74
sanaṁ ṣanair uparam 6.25

saṅgamaṁ tyaktvā phalam caiva 18.9
saṅgāt saṁjñyate kāmāḥ 2.62
sa nīśacyena yokta-yev 6.24
saṁkālpa-prabhuvāṁ kāmāṁ 6.24
saṁkarasya ca kartā śyāṁ 3.24

saṅkaro narākāyaīva 1.41
saṅkhyā-yogau prthag bālāh 5.4
sāṁkhyā kr̥tante prakṛtiṁ 18.13
saṁniyamendriya-grāmām 12.4
saṁnyāsaṁ karmanāṁ kṛṣṇā 5.1

saṁnyāsas tu mahā-bāho 5.6
saṁnyāsasya mahā-bāho 18.1
saṁnyāsa-yoga-yuktaṁ 9.28
saṁnīṁ nirvāṇa-paraṁ 6.15

saṁnīṁ savatāṁ yogī 12.14
sargāṁ adṛś antasā ca 10.32
sarge ‘pi nopajñyante 14.2
saṁśīrṇām kevalāṁ karmā 4.21
saṁśīrṇaṁ yad avāpnoti 15.8

saṁruccione saṁraheṣyante 13.32
saṁruccione vān-manabhīr yat 18.15
saṁruccione yatreṣyaa ca te 3.8
sarva-bhūtāṁ ca kānteya 9.7
sarva-bhūtāṁ ca samsāram 7.27

sarva-bhūta-saṁjñāṁ ātmānām 6.29
sarva-bhūta-saṁjñaṁ yo mām 6.31
sarva-bhūtātmā-bhūtātmā 5.7
tad gantasi nirvedam 2.52
tad aham bhakty-upahram 9.26
tad-ertham karma kaunteya 3.9
tad asya harati prajñân 2.67
tad-buddhayas tad-ātmānas 5.17
tad ekam vada niścīrya 3.2
tad eva me därşaya 11.45
tad ity anabhâsandhâyâ 17.25
tadottama-vidâm lokân 14.14
tadvat kâmâ yam prâviṣânti 2.70
tad viddhi pranipâtena 4.34
taime 'vashità yuddha 1.33
tair dattân aprakâriyâhyo 3.12
tamas tv ajñâna-jañ viddhi 14.8
tamasy etâni jîyante 14.13
tam eva ca vistâram 13.31
tatâ padam tat 15.4
tatâ sankhâs ca bheryas ca 1.13
tatâ sa vismeyâviṣto 11.14
tatâ sva-dharmam 2.33
tatâ śvetair haryâs 1.14
tatâ sato niyamam 6.26
tatâ devânta-prâpit 2.13
tatâh nitya-yukta 11.29
tatyâhpi tvam mahâ-bhâ 2.26
tatâ hâ衍ôma 2.1
tatâ sanyâma 2.61
tatâ śrînâya sa kaunteyah 1.27
tatâ tâvâmi nara-loka 11.28
tatâ kîrtaṁ karmani 3.1

tapasya etâni jîyante 14.13
tapasvibhyyo 'dhiko yugi 6.46
tâsambhrama mahad yonir 14.4
tasmāc cēṣṭam pramânâm 16.24
tasmād ajñāna-sambhâtam 4.42
tasmād apanâhârye 'rthe 2.27
tasmād asakthâ satatām 3.19
tasmād evam vidhâvainām 2.25
tasmād on iti uddhâraya 17.24
tasmād uttisṭhâ kaunteya 2.37
tasmād yasya mahâ-bhâ 2.68
tasmād yogâya yujyayya 2.50
tasmān nîrâhâ vayam 1.36
tasmāt pranâmyam 11.44
tasmāt sâra-vâgataṁ 3.15
tasmāt sâra-vâni bhûtân 2.30
tasmāt sârvesu kâleśu 8.7
tasmāt sârvesu kâleśu 8.27
tasmāt tvam ândriyân 3.41
tasmāt tvam uttiṣṭhâ 11.33
tasyâham na prajñyâmi 6.30
tatâ evâvagacchha tvam 10.41
tatâ evâvagacchha tvam 10.41
tat te karma pravaksyâmi 4.16
tattava-va tvam mahâ-bhâ 3.28
tâvân sârvesu vedyo 2.46
tayor na vaśam âgacchêt 3.34
tasyâham nigrâham manye 6.34
tasyâham sudâbhah婆rthâ 8.14
tasya kartâram api mâm 4.13
tasya sahîjâyan karśaya 1.12
tasya tasyâcalam śrâddhâm 7.21
tatâ hâ衍ôma 2.33
tatâ śvetair haryâs 1.14
tatâ sato niyamam 6.26
tatâ devânta-prâpit 2.13
tatâh nitya-yukta 11.29
tatâhpi tvam mahâ-bhâ 2.26
tatâ śvetair haryâs 1.14
tatâ sato niyamam 6.26
tatâ devânta-prâpit 2.13
tatâh nitya-yukta 11.29
tatâhpi tvam mahâ-bhâ 2.26
tatâ prâpnuvanti mâm eva 12.4
tatâ prâpnuvanti mâm eva 12.4

BHAGAVAD-GITA

tatra tattvato jñâtvå 18.55
tat tattvato jñâtvå 18.55

tatra rukmîya-kâlå murdhâv 5.12
trai-guṇya-vîśayâ vedå 21.45
	te pravyam âsâdyam sharendra 9.20
	te pravyam âsâdyam sharendra 9.20

tatâ prâlînas tamas 14.15

tatâ prâlînas tamas 14.15

tatâ śrînâya sa kaunteyah 1.27

tatâ śrînâya sa kaunteyah 1.27

tatâh pradînas tamas 14.15

tatâh pradînas tamas 14.15

tatâhârâm bhûthâyâ 2.22

tatâhârâm bhûthâyâ 2.22

tatâh aham veda sarvâni 4.5

tatâh aham veda sarvâni 4.5

tatâh kûrjottam 1.27

tatâh kûrjottam 1.27

tatâh pradînas tamas 14.15

tatâ prâpnuvanti mâm eva 12.4
tatâ prâpnuvanti mâm eva 12.4

tatâ prâpnuvanti mâm eva 12.4

594
yāgasya ca hṛṣīkēsa 18.1
yāgī ṣattva-saṁātiṣṭo 18.10
yāgō hi purusā-yaṉghra 18.4
yājyaṁ dosa-vaḍ ity eke 18.3

yaktvā deham punar jamma 4.9
yaktvā karma 4.20

U
ubhau taṇu na viṇānto 2.19
ubhayaḥ api drśto 'ntas 2.16
uccāhṛtravasam āsvānam 10.27
uccīṣṭam api cāmedhyaṁ 17.10
udāraḥ sarva evaṁv 7.18

udaśana-vaḍ āśino 14.23
udaśana-vaḍ āśīnam 9.9
uddhaḥ ātmanātmanām 6.5
upadeṣyanti te jñānam 4.34
upādṛṣṭamamantā ca 13.23

upāti śaṅkā-rajassam 6.27
upāṭisāyane yuddhyād 6.12
ūrṇdhvam gacchanti sattva 14.18
ūrṇdhvam mūlam adhāh 15.1
utrāṃmantam sthitam vāpi 15.10

utsādyante jāti-dharmah 1.42
utsannam-kula-dharmānām 1.43
usīdevy īme lokā 3.24
uttamah puruṣas tv anyāh 15.17
uvāca pārtha paśyaitāṁ 1.25

V
vaktrāṁ te tvaramāṁ 11.27
vaktuṁ arhasy aśeṣena 10.16
vāsāṁsi jīrṇāṁ yathā 2.22
vaśe hi yasyendriyāṁ 2.61
vāsudevah sarvam iti 7.19

vāsānāṁ pāvakas cāśni 10.23
vāsūyaṁ cātva yataṁ 6.36
vāturyaṁ 'igni varṇaṁ 11.39
vedāhāṁ samattātuṁ 7.26
vedaś ca sarvair āham 15.15
vedānāṁ sāma-veda 'smi 10.22
veda-vāda-ratāḥ pārtha 2.42

vedāṇāṁ śaṁca-vedā 'smi 2.21
vedeṣu yaṉēṣu tapahsu 8.28
vedaye pravītraṁ omkāra 9.17

vēpaḥsu ca saṁtre me 1.29
vettāśi vedyam ca param 11.38
vettī sarvasuḥ bhūṣe 18.21
vettī yatra na caivaityām 6.21
v Bird-hiṇam āśyānām 17.13

vyādy-śinayā-sampanne 5.18
vyāgatec-bhaya-bhaya-krodham 5.28

vyāhya kāmān yaḥ sarvāṁ 2.71
vibhitām iĉchāni 11.31
vīkārāṁ ca gunāṁ caiva 13.20

vyāmṛṣyaatad aśeṣena 18.63
vyāmṛṣya ca nīruṃmatā śānto 18.53
vyāṃśād nāma-paśyantī 15.10
vīṇāśam avyasyasyāyaśa 2.17
vyāsaṁ avināśyanti 13.28

vyāsād dirgha-sātri ca 18.28
vyāsāya vinuvartante 2.59
vyāsāndriya-samyogādh 18.38
vyāṣdāntaṁ idam vākyam 2.1
vyāsmayo me mahān rājan 18.77

vyāṣrīya sa-saśram cāpaṁ 1.46
vyāṣṭībhyaḥdam idam 10.42
vyāṣṭīrṇātmano yodam 10.18
vyāṣṭra-bhaya-bhaya-krodham 10.41
vyāṣṭra-bhaya-krodham 2.56

vyāvasvān manave prāha 4.1
vyāvādhaḥ ca prthak caṣṭa 18.14
vyākṣa-dēsa-sesvātām 13.11
vyākṣa-sevi lāghe-aṣṭi 18.52
vyāsānāṁ vāsudevo 'smi 10.37

vyāmśreneva vāleṣyena 3.2
vyāpacēśh-bhīḥ pita-maḥāḥ 11.49
vyāsā-prasādāc cṛṇatāvaṁ 18.75
vyāvasāyātmikā buddhrī 2.41
vyāvasāyātmikā buddhrī 2.44
vyādhām druḍapa-putrenā 1.3

Y
yābhir vyāhātābhir lokān 10.16
yac candramasi yaḥ 15.12
yac cāpi sarva-bhūteṣāṁ 10.39
yac cāvahāśārtham asat 11.42
yac chreyah etavot ekaṁ 5.1

yacin śaṁ caiva 2.7
yadā bhātā-prthah 13.31
yad āditya-gataṁ tejo 15.12
yad agre caṁubandha ca 18.39
yad ahankāraṁ āśīryām 18.59

yādā hi nendriyārthāṁ 6.4
yad akṣaram veda-viḍo 8.11
yadā samharatē caśyam 2.58
yadā satte pravṛddhī te 14.14
yadā te moha-kalilam 2.52

yadā vinīyatam cittam 6.18
yadā hi dharmasya 4.7
yadā gatva na vīravartāṁ 15.6
yad bhāh sadṛṣī sā syād 11.12
yadā iĉchāṁ brahmacaryāṁ 8.11

yadi hy aham na varteyam 3.23
yadi māṁ apratikārāṁ 1.45
yadi rāja-sukha-lohena 1.44
yadṛccāḥ-lābha-saṁstūṣa 4.22
yadṛccchayā copāpannam 2.32

yad yad ācaraṁ śresṭhas 3.21
yad yad vyāhātām 10.41
yaday aṇy eṣe na paśyantī 1.37
yāṇe naṁ vetti kannāram 2.19
yāv evaṁ vetti pūrase 13.24

yāḥ paśyati tāthaṁnaṁ 13.30
yāḥ prayāti sa mad-bhāvanā 8.5
yāḥ prayāti tyājan dehaṁ 8.13
yāḥ sarvātmanahbhīṣesnaḥ 2.57
yāḥ sa sarvasuḥ bhūṣe 8.20

yāh śāstra-viḍhīm utṣṛṣya 16.23
yāḥ idam paramāṁ 18.68
yajante naṁya-yaḥāṁ te 16.17
yajante sāttvikā devāṁ 17.4
yaj jñātvā munayaṁ sarve 14.1
yatendra-rama-buddhir 5.28
yathā dīpo nivāta-sāho 6.19
yathādāhānam samiddho 4.37
yathākāśa-śhūto nityam 9.6
yathā nādirnām bhāvah 11.28
yathā prādāpam jvalanām 11.29
yathā prakāśayaty ekah 13.34
yathā sarvā-gatam 13.33
yathālombāñtāṁ garbhās 3.38
yat karosī yad āśāśi 9.27
yato yato niscaśati 6.26
yatra caiva-mānātmanām 6.20
yatra kāle tu anāśvṛtām 8.23
yatrah yogesvarāṁ kṛṣṇo 18.78
yatropāramate cittam 6.20
yatā sāṅkhyaiḥ prāpyate 5.5
yat tad agre viśam iva 18.37
yat tapasyaiś kaunteya 9.27
yat te 'ham priyamānāya 10.1
yat tu kāmēpssūna karma 18.24
yad uṣṇapāyam 2.42
yad labhāvā caśaram 6.21
yad prāpya na niśitarante 8.21
yad samyāśas iti prāhur 6.2
yad yam vāpi śīrām 8.6
yad uktā śāstra-viśēśa 'haṃ 17.22
yad tu kṛṣṇa-svad ekaśram 18.22
yad tu pratyaśa-kārārthān 17.21
yad tvēyoktam vacas tena 11.1
yāvad etān nirikṣe 'ham 1.21
yāvān artha udāpāne 2.46
yāvat saṅjñayaiḥ kācit 13.27
yāyā dhāmam adhāram 18.31
yāyā svāpaṃ bhāyam 18.35
yāyā tu dhārama 18.34
ye bhajanti tu mām 9.29
ye caiva śattvikaḥ bhāva 7.12
ye caśpy aksaram avyaktam 12.1
ye hi samprāpsa-jā bhogā 5.22
ye hi mātām idām niśyam 3.31
yena bhūtāna aśeṣāni 4.35
ye caiva vāntākā bhaṅgā 9.23
ye tu sarvanā karmāṇi 12.6
ye tu aṣṭaram aṁśadhyaya 12.3
ye tu etad abhyaśātmanā 3.32
ye tvā mahām prapadyante 4.11
yogam yogēśvarat kṛṣṇāh 18.75
yogārūḍhasya sayaśvāna 6.3
yoga-saṁsāsā-karmāṇa 4.41
yoga-sthāh kuru karmāṇi 2.48
yoga-yukto manir brahma 5.6
yoga-yukto visuddhātma 5.7
yogenaśya-bhāviśyate 18.33
yogesvārā tato me tvam 11.14
yogināṁ karaṇāṁ 5.11
yogināṁ api sārvesāṁ 6.47
yogino yatā-cittasya 6.19
yogī yaśūtā satatam 6.10
yo loka-trayam āvīśya 15.17
yo mām ājām anādīn 10.3
yo mām evam 15.19
yo mām paśyati sarvatra 6.30
yo na hṛṣyaśi na dveśī 12.17
yo 'ntaḥ-sūkho 'ntar 5.24
yotsyamāṇāṁ avekṣe 'ham 1.23
yo 'yam yogas tvāya 6.33
yo yo 'yam 'yam 7.21
yasmīṁ śhīto na durbhāva 6.22
yastasvāyam eveti manah 17.11
yastu karma-phalātyāgī 18.11
yastu ātma-ratir eva sād 3.17
yastu intrīyāṁ manasaḥ 3.7
yassvam śāhīto bhūtānām 2.69
yasya nāhāṅkṛto bhāvo 18.17
yasyāntah-saṅhārā bhūtānām 8.22
yasya saṅve samāmabhāḥ 4.19
yayaḥ pravṛttir bhūtānām 18.46
yasyāṁ śāhānti bhaṭāṇi 2.69
yasya nāhāṅkṛto bhāvo 18.17
yasyāntah-saṅhārā bhūtānām 8.22
yasya saṅve samāmabhāḥ 4.19
yayaḥ pravṛttir bhūtānām 18.46
yatantō 'py akṛtātmāno 15.11
yatantō yoginās caivaṁ 15.11
yatataṁ api siddhiṁ 7.3
yatate ca tato bhūyāḥ 6.43
yatato hy api kaunteya 2.60
yātā-yāmāṁ gata-sasāma 17.10
ye tu saṁvāṁ karmāṇi 12.6
ye tvā aṣṭaram aṁśadhyaya 12.3
ye tu etad abhyaśātmanā 3.32
ye tvā mahām prapadyante 4.11
yogam yogēśvarat kṛṣṇāh 18.75
yogārūḍhasya sayaśvāna 6.3
yoga-saṁsāśa-karmāṇa 4.41
yoga-sthāh kuru karmāṇi 2.48
yoga-yukto manir brahma 5.6
yoga-yukto visuddhātma 5.7
yogenaśya-bhāviśyate 18.33
yogesvārā tato me tvam 11.14
yogināṁ karaṇāṁ 5.11
yogināṁ api sārvesāṁ 6.47
yogino yatā-cittasya 6.19
yogī yaśūtā satatam 6.10
yo loka-trayam āvīśya 15.17
yo mām ājām anādīn 10.3
yo mām evam 15.19
yo mām paśyati sarvatra 6.30
yo na hṛṣyaśi na dveśī 12.17
yo 'ntaḥ-sūkho 'ntar 5.24
yotsyamāṇāṁ avekṣe 'ham 1.23
yo 'yam yogas tvāya 6.33
yo yo 'yam 'yam 7.21
yadhāmānayaś ca vikrāntā 1.6
yuktaḥāra-viḥārasya 6.17
yuktaḥ karma-phalām 5.12
yuktā iti ucyate yogī 6.8
yukta-svāpaṃvabodhasya 6.17
yujñāṇam evam sadātmāna 6.15
yujñāṇam evam sadātmāna 6.28
yuvādāhāno virātas ca 1.4
Index

abhidheya-tattva, 482–483
Absolute, the
Kṛṣṇa as the love life of, xv
as param brahman, 32
potencies of, 33
and sacred aesthetic rapture, 569–570
spiritual need of, 243
three features of, 425, 427
acintya-bhedābheda
reconciles contradictions, 289–290
as ultimate reality, 420–430
as Vedānta of Gauḍīya Vaiśnivism, 286
action
causes of, 529–534
and the guṇas, 534–540
renouncing, 169–170, 528
selfless, 170–171
and spirit of sacrifice, 153
See also karma
Acyuta (Kṛṣṇa addressed as), 17–18
adhiṣṭhāna
for approaching a guru, 37
of Arjuna, 69–71, 284, 344, 360
of less qualified persons, 345–346
and liberation, different paths to, 435
for nīskāma-karma-yoga, 71
in Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam, 71
truth revealed according to, 113–114
Adwaita Ācārya, 427, 580–581
āhimsā, 328
aparā prakṛti, 417–419
See also matter; māyā; māyā-sakti; nature; prakṛti
Arjuna
addressed as Bhārata, 46, 113
addressed as Dhanañjaya, 14, 72, 365, 576
addressed as Guḍākeśa, 19, 40, 345
addressed as Kamalā-patrākṣa, 359
addressed as Kaunteya, 46, 216, 261
addressed as Kṛiṣṭī, 378
addressed as Mahābhāho, 89
addressed as Parantapa, 133, 135
addressed as Pārtha, 109, 576
addressed as ŚvayamŚacīn, 377
adhikāra of, 69–71, 284, 344, 360
decision to fight, 559–560, 576–577
dharma as warrior, 57–65
doubts of, 17–18, 21–29
eagerness to hear, 344
ecstatic symptoms, 365, 378–379
godly nature, 501
as ideal person, 77–92
Kṛṣṇa establishes dharma through, 577
love for Kṛṣṇa of, xv–xvi, 358
name of, meaning, 33–34, 135, 527
offers obeisances to Kṛṣṇa, 381–387
and prāṇāyāma yoga, 214–215
relationship with Kṛṣṇa, 259, 261, 324, 379, 384–385, 390
trembling causes metrical irregularity, 357
as ungodly in his own estimation, 489
and universal form, vision of, 362–363
willingness to be God’s instrument, 377–378, 578
artha-āśāstra, 24, 57
aśvathā tree, 265–470, 488
ātmā, 257–258, 419
austerity, 511–514, 525
Avatāra
God enters the world as, for līlā, 292
and guru-paramparā, 130–132
surrender to, versus surrender to Kṛṣṇa, 238
and transcending the guṇas, 546
Baladeva Vidyābhūṣāṇa
on Arjuna
relationship with Kṛṣṇa, 384–385
reluctance to fight, 559
seeing the universal form, 374–375
Bhagavad-gītā commentary of, xix–xx
challenges Advaitin reading of ātmā, 419
on destruction of Bhīṣma and Droṇa, 374
on destruction of the world, 493
on Duryodhana’s army, 10–11
on fruits of activities, 150
gives example of king’s servant, 321
on glance of devotees, 252
Govinda-bhāṣya of, xvii–xviii
on impartiality of inner renunciation, 183
on impure vows, 494
on knowledge and action, 168
on knowledge and meditation, 408–409
on knowledge as gateway to devotion, 416
on Kṛṣṇa,
abode, 555
all-pervasiveness, 383
carries devotee’s burden, 308
freedom from partiality, 147
as gāyatrī, 353
as Lord of the heart, 562
punishment of unrighteous, 139
as sāgūra or nirguṇa, 232
as the Supreme Person, 482–483
on meanings of
“all things abiding in me,” 162
Bg. 18.25, 538
brahmaṇī in verse 5.10, 176–177
mad-bhāvam, 260, 459
Mathurā, 567
samādhi, 67
on pious persons, 242
on the plurality of jīvas as eternal, 443
on prārabdha-karma of devotee, 80
on pūrṇaṇas, two types of, 478–479
on rākṣasas, 296
on renunciation, 171, 196
on sattva’s influence, 453
on soul as one of several factors in action, 115
on soul’s union with nature as beginningless, 436
on soul’s union with nature as
Svetāsvatara Upaniṣad, cites, 140
on svabhāva, 257–258
on ungodly persons, 497
on Viṣṇu as progenitor, 101
on worshipping with honestly acquired goods, 100
on yoga, 130
banyan tree. See asvattha tree
Bhagavad-gītā
bhākta as essence of, 284, 310–322, 527, 556–557, 560, 564–570
commentaries on, xix–xx, xxii–xxiii
conclusive advice of, 568–571
disseminating teachings of, 571–573
“don’t worry” as message of, 489, 569
explaining, results of, xii, 573–575
four essential verses of, 330–338
Gauḍīyas’ writings on, xvii–xviii
generosity of bhākta as message of, 556–557
gopīs’ path as secret message of, 570
higher and lower paths in, 569
justification for this edition of, xv
and Mahābhārata, 1
metaphysics of, 486
meter in, 36–37
mystical treasure of, 564–570
parallelism between verse 18.66 and verse 2.11, 42
verse 3.35, 120–121
practical tenets of, 486
presents one truth, 563
and Rāmānanda Saṅvāda, 572
as song of God, 41
studying and hearing, 574–575
summary of, 31–92
and the Upaniṣads, xviii
Bhagavān, 33
and bhākta-yoga, 430
as feature of Godhead, 225–254
as joyful aspect of the Absolute, 426
līlā of, 226
and nirvīśa brahmaṇ, 32
opulence and sweetness of, 228
opulences, six, 33
as param brahmaṇ, 32
as partial to his devotees, 314
bhakti

Absolute rendered humanlike by, 276
benefit of, never lost, 65, 315–319
and dharma, 258
as eternal function of the soul, 120
as fruit of Vedas, 70
generosity of, 556–557
and hearing and chanting, 114
indirect advocacy of, 61, 120–121
as ingress of svarūpa-sakti, 297
and karma and yoga as a continuum, 62,
as king of knowledge, 284
loving Kṛṣṇa in, 262
mixed with karma, 556–557
and moral lapses of devotees, 315–319, 557
para bhakti as post-liberated form of,
553–554
practice of, as easy, 403
and prarabdha-karma, 79–80
pure heart is not a prerequisite for, 113–114
rāgānugā, 318, 577
as real meaning of the Bhagavad-gitā, 560
and śraddhā, 287
two glories of, 64, 313, 416
two types of, 404–405, 406
unalloyed, 577
union in love in, 314
as wise existence and wise love, 333
See also bhakti-yoga; devotion; devotional
service; prema-dharma of Vraja;
rāgānugā-bhakti; Vraja bhakti

Bhaktivedanta Swami Prabhupāda
on Arjuna, 490
on asvatatha tree, 466
on ātman referring to Kṛṣṇa himself, 210
on “beginningless Brahman,” 425–426
on Bg. 10.10, 335–336
on bodily suffering and distress, 180
on cheating of great souls, 566–567
on Kṛṣṇa’s descent, 139
on material nature, 230
on offering food to Kṛṣṇa, 103
on soul’s individuality, 43
on transcendental knowledge, 163
on the Vedas, 477–478
on writing books, xi–xiii

Bhaktivinoda Thākura
on bhakti and moral lapses of devotees,
318–319
and Gauḍīya tradition, revival of, xxii
on gopīs’ violation of socioreligious
codes, 318–319
on Kṛṣṇa’s name and revelation of one’s
spiritual form, 406–407
on philanthropic work, 400
bhakti-yoga, 395–414, 404–407
as both means and end, 64, 463
frees one from concern for acquisition
and comfort, 68–69
jivanmuktas on path of, 242–243
and karma-yoga and jñāna-yoga, 167, 358
and ladder of yoga, 64
love of Kṛṣṇa as result of, 143
three stages of, 226–227
as wavering or unwavering, 329–330
See also bhakti; devotion; devotional
service; prema-dharma of Vraja;
rāgānugā-bhakti; Vraja bhakti

bhāva
attaining, requires understanding of
tattva, 430
dawning of, 297
of Gauḍīya commentators on Gitā, xxii
nature of those possessing, 333
as product of grace, 295
See also prema-dharma of Vraja; rāgānugā-
bhakti
birth, 55, 137
body, 55, 114
cannot be maintained without action, 99
change of, 44, 51–52, 473
contrasted to the soul, 417
death of, 260–262
devotee’s, as transcendental, 80–81
ephemeral, 320–321
interaction with mind and soul, 473–474
nine gates of, 178, 266
as seat of activity, 530
Brahmā, 101, 269, 331
brahma-jijnāsā, 41, 161
Brahman
attaining, 552–553
"beginningless" in 13.13, 425–426
existential aspect of the Absolute, 426
as the halo of God, 76
infallible and supreme, 257
jīvas are of the nature of, 185
Kṛṣṇa superior to, 232, 330, 339, 396,
403, 425–426, 442, 463, 471, 481–482
realization, 400–402
saguna and nirguna, 232–233, 401–402
saktis of, as innumerable, 32–33
Śaṅkara’s view of Kṛṣṇa and, 396–398
seeing from the vantage point of, 438–439
and syllable tat, 140
and Vedas in verse 4.32, 157–158
brāhmaṇas, 327, 547
brahma-nirvāṇam. See nirvāṇa
Brahma-sūtras, 421
Brhad-āraṇyaka Upaniṣad, 163
B. R. Śrīdhara Deva Goswāmi
on actions and indwelling Lord, 117
on ambitious work as rajasic, 538
on “beginningless Brahman” in 13.13,
425–426
on bhakti as soul’s eternal function, 120
on jñāna of gopis and Bg. 10.10, 338
on Kṛṣṇa as the guru, 332–333
on worship of Śrī Caitanya, 333
Buddhism, 54, 91–92
See also nirvāṇa
buddhi-yoga, 85–86
as devotee’s power of discrimination,
335–337
as spiritual insight resulting from
devotion, 558
as wisdom in yoga, 62
Caitanya. See Śrī Caitanya
Caitanya Bhāgavata, 427
Caitanya-caritāmṛta
Bhagavad-gītā cited in, xviii
on descent of Kṛṣṇa as Śrī Caitanya,
108–109
on jñāna mixed with bhakti, 554
Carvaka Muni, materialism of, 49, 54
Chandogya Upaniṣad, 421
chanting, 333
efficacy of, 267, 515–520
as mahātmā’s principal expression of
devotion, 298–300
one’s spiritual form revealed by, 406–407
in vaidhi-bhakti leads to rāgānūga-bhakti,
406–407
and vulture story, 197–198
See also Kṛṣṇa: name of; mantra
charity, 514–516, 525
consciousness
and accountability for actions, 532–533
and attachment, 290–291
as foundation of existence, 35
interaction of, with matter, 436, 441
as “knower of the field,” 441
death
and birth as unavoidable, 55
remembering Kṛṣṇa at time of, 260–262
two paths taken by yogī at time of, 277–281
desire
conquering, 122–127
and karma, 468
living beings disposed to material
action by, 181
material, 98
and the self, 78
for sense objects, 188
soul is bound to the body by, 258
Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam cited on, 123
detachment, 469, 525
devotees
accompany Kṛṣṇa through birth in his
līlā, 268–269
aspire only to serve Kṛṣṇa, 403
chanting of, 212
as yoga, highest type of, 223, 395
See also bhakti; bhakti-yoga; devotional service; prema-dharma of Vraja; rāgānuga-bhakti; Vraja bhakti
devotional service, 108–109
See also bhakti; bhakti-yoga; devotion; prema-dharma of Vraja; rāgānuga-bhakti; Vraja bhakti
dharma, 4–5, 551
and bhakti, 258
everlasting, 463
gopīs cross over, 110–111, 212, 570
Kṛṣṇa descends to establish, xvi, 138–139, 577
Kṛṣṇa only secondarily concerned with, 378, 568–570, 577
and Kurukṣetra, 4–5
of love, 1
of one's own nature, 120–121
performance of, as purifying, 49
practice of, 60
righteousness of practicing, 57–65
service is, of the soul, 413–414
See also prema-dharma of Vraja
dharma-jñānasā, 41, 161
dharma-sāstra
carried with artha-sāstra, 24, 57
contravened by killing guru of elders, 24
refuted by Upaniṣads, 42
Dhṛtarāṣṭra, 1–2
dhyāna-yoga, 64, 191–192
in Gītā chapter six, 193–223
Kṛṣṇa as highest object of, 203–204
Duryodhana
army of, 9–11
and Drona, relationship, 6
name of, meaning, 2
on opposite side of Yudhiṣṭhira in battle, 2
elements, gross and subtle, 229–230, 422
evidence. See āramanā
faith
acquired nature as cause of, 504–505
and eligibility for bhakti, 252
and knowledge, 165–166
logical proof not required for, 140
mind as secondary cause of, 505–506
three types of, 504–509
of the ungodly, 507
yoga of, 503–520
family, 26–28, 110–112
Gaudiya Vedanta, xvi, 33
Gautama, Nyaya school of, 49
Gita. See Bhagavad-gita
God
as both just and merciful, 293
experiences world of the senses through
the jiva, 427
impregnates nature, 444
as Krsna gives himself to devotee, 295
is motivated by love, 449
as nirguna, 428
offending, 296–297
only real doer of action, 529–531
qualities of, 327
senses of living beings are manifested by, 427–428
See also Bhagavan; Krsna; purusa
Gopala-tapani Upanisad, 566–567
gopis
and Bg. 10.10, 336
saw fonder of Krsna in his absence, 3, 334
and juuna, 337–338
Krsna’s reciprocation with, 143–144
at Kuruksetra, 331–332
love of, for Krsna, 4–5, 110–111, 144,
211–212, 243–244, 332
violated socioreligious codes, 212, 318–319
as yogis, 212
Govardhana, xxi, 331, 358
Govinda (Krsna addressed as), 23, 40
gunas, 441–464
and action, 98, 114–116, 145–146,
534–540, 537–538
animals and persons in relation to, 184
austerities in relation to, 511–514
characteristics of action in each, 456–458, 537–538
charity in relation to, 514–516
determinism of, transcending, 563
duties in relation to, 547–551
faith in relation to, 504–509
food in relation to, 508–509
fortitude in, 543
God is above, 428
happiness in relation to, 544–545
intellect in relation to, 540–542
intelligence covered by, 123–124
knowledge manifest within, 533–540
means “rope” or “quality,” 45
mutually contradictory effects of, 452–453
perform all actions, 179
pradhana as unmanifest condition of, 422
and prakriti, 431
renunciation in, 526–527
sacrifice in relation to, 510–511
transcending, 238–239, 458–459
and transpersonal psychology, 447
types of worship in, 310, 503–504, 506
world is under the influence of, 546
See also rajo-guna; sattva-guna; tamo-guna
guru
approaching, 159–161
disciple’s relationship with, 41, 133,
565, 576
embracing practices given by, 216–217
instructing, 335
knowledge received from, 161–164
Krsna as, 160
paramparā, 130–132, 263
plurality of, 160–161
as representation of Radha, 333
happiness
and controlling the senses, 88
in relation to the guenas, 544–545
and virtue, 422
from within, 188–189
heaven, 305–307
hell, 500
Hrshikesa (Krsna addressed as), 16, 40, 379
awakens Arjuna from illusion, 19
as controller of the senses, 14
ignorance, 314
Indra, 305–306
intellect
and the guṇas, 540–542
and mind and senses, 88, 125–127
rajasic, 542
sattvic, 541
situated just beneath the soul, 271
tamasic, 542
Jaimini, Karma-mīmāṃsā of, 523
Jainism, 480
Janārdana (Kṛṣṇa addressed as), 25, 28
as caretaker and killer of everyone, 23–24
gives his friends painful orders, 94
is petitioned by all souls, 94
is prayed to by all people, 343–344
Jīva Goswāmī
on the Absolute, 327
acintya-bhedābheda terminology and, 286
on Advaitin reading of ātma, 419
on Bg. 2.11 and 18.66, 42
on Bhagavad-gitā, 569
on Bhagavān, 33
on bhakti
and moral lapses of devotees, 317–318
as real meaning of the Bhagavad-gitā, 560
what to avoid in cultivation of, 240
on dharma and bhakti, 258
on jīvas being of the nature of Brahman, 185
on knowledge, 563
on Kṛṣṇa
birth and activities, 140
first visit to Kurukṣetra, 3–4
as incarnation, 250
love for his devotees, 565
superiority over Paramātma, 253
on meanings of
“beginningless Brahman,” 425–426
prakṛti in verse 4.6, 136
soul as sarvā-gatah, 53
on offerings to the gods, 258
on rāgāṅgūga-bhakti, 318
on sārūpya-mukti, 258
on SB. 1.7.10 and Bg. 2.53, 75
on soul’s knowledge being covered, 180
on Śrīmad-Bhāgavatām and evidence, 132
on ungodly persons, 499
on Vāsudeva as Balarāma, 354
on Vraja, 569
jīvanmukta
characteristics of, 77–92, 81, 184–185,
210–211, 458–461
helps one transcend the guṇas, 546
prārddha-karma of, 164
and rati, 142
steady insight of, 77–92, 411–414
two types of, 242–243
See also devotees; jīvanmukta; mahātmā
jīvanmukta, 77
jīva-śakti, 230–231, 257
as intermediate potency of the Absolute, 33
See also jīvātmā; parā prakṛti; puruṣa
(qualified); self; soul
jīvātmā
does not mix with the body, 439–440
eternal individuality of, 472
as Kṛṣṇa’s eternal servant, 120, 258
as qualified puruṣa, 431
and self’s inherent nature, 257–258
as unit of will, 448
See also jīva-śakti; parā prakṛti; puruṣa
(qualified); self; soul
jñāna
associated with sāṅkhya, 62
and gopīs, 337–338
and vijñāna, 227–228, 394
See also jñāna-yoga; knowledge
jñāna-sāstra, 42
jñāna-yoga, 129
and devotion, 244–245, 553–554
and freedom from bondage of karma, 552
in Gītā chapter four, 129–168
jīvanmuktas on path of, 242–243, 554
and karma-yoga, 96–100
and niṣkāma-karma-yoga, 522
result of, 143, 398
as sannyāsa, 522
worshippers on path of, 300–301, 304
See also jñāna; knowledge
kalpas, 291–293
See also yugas
karma
and antinomianism, 533
and bhakti and yoga as continuum, 62
bhakti mixed with, 556–557
defects, always covered by, 550
demonstrates that God is just, 293
doctrine of, 491
gives birth to the world, 258
godly and ungodly natures as product of, 488
and guṇas, 114–116
human form of life perpetuates, 468
inaction within, 95
intricacies of, 149–152
liberation from, 312–313, 552
as religious sacrifice, 258
and renunciation, 529
soul takes on body according to, 432
stages of, 78–80
stored in seed form, 286
in Vedānta-sūtra, 180–181
See also action; prārabha-karma
Karma-mimāṁsā of Jaimini, 523
karma-yoga
and jñāna-yoga, 96–100
knowledge within, 171
performed by great persons, 108
practice and results of, 166–167
psychology of, 175–176
and purification, 97
and renunciation, 170, 174–178
and Vedic sacrifice, 153
warriors who attained success through, 107–108
worshippers on path of, 305–307
See also niskāma-karma-yoga
Katha Upaniṣad, 49, 50
Kesava (Kṛṣṇa addressed as)
as killer of Keśi demon, 21
as supreme over Brahmā and Śiva,
94, 340
knowledge, 422–429
of Bhagavān, 228
confidential and most confidential,
283, 563, 564–50, 571–573
and faith, 165–166
in the guṇas, 533–540
in karma-yoga, 171
of Kṛṣṇa, 141–142
nature of God and self revealed by, 182
as niṣkāma-karma-yoga's initial fruit, 415
object of, 425–430
practices leading to, 423–424
rajasic, 536
sattvic, 536, 554
of soul is covered by ignorance, 180
tamasic, 536–537
transcendental, 162–164, 337–338
as vidyā and jñāna, 554
See also jñāna; jñāna-yoga
Krṣṇa
and acintya-bhedābhedā, 289–291
on action versus renunciation, 525
all-pervasiveness of, 382–383
appearance of, 134–140, 325–326
attained only by devotion, 276
and Brahman, 339, 396–403, 463, 481–482
compassion for Pūтанā demon, 499
conch of, 15–16
and creation and destruction, 291–292
as Cupid, 567
detachment of, 147
devotees aspire for relationship with,
298–300
and devotees' love for him, 18, 307, 338
and devotees' sorrow, 21, 22
disappearance of, 577
of Dwārakā, xx–xxi, 3–4, 331–332, 577
eternity of, 136–137
everything rests on, 232–233, 304
as example for others, 109–112
as father and mother of universe, 303, 444
form of, 248, 265, 289
four-armed, 387
saguna and nirguna, 232–233, 396–398
and the guṇas, 236–237
as the guru, 332–333
heart of, stolen by love of his devotees, 311
as heart of divinity, 245–246
instruction of, to fix mind on him, 321–322, 558–559, 564–566
līlā of,
eating dirt as a child, 275–276
entering, 142, 566, 577–578
meditating on, 114
and living beings, 288–291, 475–478
as Lord of the world, 326–329
as master of all mysticism, 579
name of, 267
conquers the mind, 215–216
devotee’s faults removed by, 215–216
See also chanting; mantra
not attained by following varṇāsrama, 146
offerings to, 310–313
as oṁ, 233, 303
omniscience of, 135–136, 250, 340, 359–360
oneness with, in devotion, 242, 243–244
ontology of, 401
as origin of Kumāras and Manus, 328–329
and Paramātma, 356
as Paramesvara, 359–360
as partial and impartial, 293–294, 313–315
Rādhā has no shelter other than, 556
reciprocation of, 143–144
relationship with, aspiring for, 267–268
as reservoir of loving reciprocation, 332
and sacred aesthetic rapture, 569–570
as Sāma Veda, 346
subdues senses, 84
surrender to, persons who do not, 239–240
as svayam bhagavān, 144, 330–331
as true object of worship, 308–310
universal representations of, 233–236, 302–305, 344–356 See also universal form
as Vedic ritual and sacrifice, 302–303
Vraja līlā of, xvi–xvii
worship of, in pursuit of material goals, 247
worshippers of, 240–242
See also Bhagavān; Vraja Kṛṣṇa
Kṛṣṇadāsa Kavirāja Gosvāmī, 108, 335
ksatriyas, 548
Kurukṣetra
battle of, background to, 1–2
devotion to Rādhā at, 4–5
as dharma-ksetra, 5
Rādhā and Kṛṣṇa’s meeting at, xxi–xxii, 3–5, 331–332
sacredness of, 3
lamentation, 42, 54, 79
liberation
as fruit of hearing Bhagavad-gītā, 575
paths to, 435
prārddha-karma does not prevent, 435
qualities leading to, 489
renunciation is required for, 467
as sāyujya-mukti, 139, 443, 555
and syllable tat, 518
love
does not move in a straight line, 566
esoteric mystery of divine, 284
five expressions of devotional, xv
as goal of Bhagavad-gītā, 527
of the gopīs for Kṛṣṇa, 4–5, 211–212, 243–244, 332
jīvas can realize their potential for, 449
Kṛṣṇa as ultimate object of, 402
and sacrifice, 104, 321
transcends scripture, 236
Mādhava (Kṛṣṇa addressed as), 13, 25
Madhusūdana (Kṛṣṇa addressed as) and Aristidana, 35
as reinstater of the Vedic path, 24
as slayer of Arjuna’s doubts, 32
as slayer of the illusion of material happiness, 23
Madhusūdana Sarasvatī
on addressing Arjuna as Parantapa, 135
Bhagavad-gitā commentary of, xix–xx
on desire and motivation, 130
on Kṛṣṇa as saguṇa or nīrguṇa, 233
on Kṛṣṇa’s form, 238, 484, 497–498
on meanings of
Bg. 13.13, 425–426
name “Kṛṣṇa,” 21
prakṛti in verse 4.6, 136
on rati, 142
on samādhi and prārdayā-karma, 78
on those surrendered to Kṛṣṇa, 238–239
mahātmā
Arjuna addresses Kṛṣṇa as, 380
aspires for devotional union with God, 298
chanting of, 298–300
at death, 281
Kṛṣṇa reserves this term for his devotees, 211, 244–245, 268, 297–298
sees God everywhere, 211
See also devotees; jīvanmukta
Mahā-Viṣṇu, 291–292, 580
See also Viṣṇu
mantra
gāyatrī, 353
gopāla-mantra, 280
om, 266, 517
om tat sat, 516–520
See also chanting; Kṛṣṇa: name of
Mathurā
cheating of those from, 566–567
Kṛṣṇa’s return to, xx–xxi
matter, 436, 441
See also aparā prakṛti; māyā; māyā-śakti; nature; prakṛti
māyā
influence of, 249–251
jīvas deluded by, 250–251
meaning of, 49, 137, 249
See also aparā prakṛti; matter; māyā-śakti; nature; prakṛti
māyā-śakti, 229–230
Kṛṣṇa’s explanation of, 135
pradhāna represents totality of, 422
as prakṛti, 137
as secondary potency of the Absolute, 33
See also aparā-prakṛti; matter; māyā; nature; prakṛti
mind
of artificial renunciate, 98
austerities of, 512
and body and soul, 473–474
concentration of, and meditation, 202
and egotism, 532–533
and faith, 505–506
fixing, on Kṛṣṇa, 321–322, 558–559, 564–566
and intellect and senses, 88, 125–127
as jīva’s burden, 472
Kṛṣṇa’s name conquers, 215–216
one-pointedness of, 66, 560
practices to restrain, 217
as self’s friend and enemy, 197–198
small world of, 45–46
subduing, 215
symptoms of one who has controlled, 77–91
moderation, 205–206
Nārada, 340
nature
as creation’s agency, 292
as God’s womb, 433–434
personification of, 102
worship of, 301
See also aparā prakṛti; matter; māyā; māyā-śakti; prakṛti
nirvāṇa
brahma-nirvāṇa conception of Gītā, 92, 188–190, 204, 398
cessation of suffering as meaning of, 91–92
See also Buddhism
nirviśeṣa brahman
Adwaitin notion of ultimate reality, 425
as spiritual halo of Bhagavān, 32
See also Brahman
niskāma-karma-yoga
buddhi-yoga as, 336
distinguished from jñāna-yoga, 522
efficacy of, 94
eligibility for, 71
emphasis on, in relation to renunciation, 529
knowledge of Brahman as fruit of, 64, 415
Krṣṇa recommends, 117, 407
leads to bhakti, 64, 415
liberation as positive result of, 118
mature stage of, 63
purifies heart, 63, 97
referred to as ryāga, 522
as scripturally enjoined detached action, 97
selfless action as spirit of, 71
social activism as rudimentary form of, 99
and varnāśrama, 71, 549
See also action; karma; karma-yoga
niṣṭhā, 66, 96
Nyāya school of Gautama, 49
obeisances, 299–300
Padma Purāṇa
on namah, 299–300
on stages of karma, 79
pantheism, 300–305
Paramātma
and aṣṭāṅga-yogi, 198
and Brahman, 481
as cognitive aspect of the Absolute, 426
and dhyāna-yogi, 64
and guṇas, 439, 447
as impartial witness, 314
as indwelling guide, 76
jīvas are manifested by his love, 449
Kapiladeva on, 213
Krṣṇa superior to, 253–254, 345, 562
master of prakṛti and qualified puruṣa, 433
material world presided over by, 331
as plenary portion of Krṣṇa, 356
as puppeteer, 561
as sarva-loka maheśvaram, 192
as superior puruṣa, 433–434
as supersubjective reality, 417–420
as ultimate factor in any action, 531, 561
will of, 447–448
parā prakṛti, 431
as “knower of the field,” 417–419
as qualified puruṣa, 431, 433
See also jīva-śakti; jivātmā; self; soul
Prabhodānanda Sarasvatī, 567
prakṛti, 431–434
See also aparā prakṛti; matter; māyā; māyā-śakti; nature
pramāṇa, 82
prārabdhaka-rarma, 78–80
destroyed by knowledge, 163–164
distribution of, 80
expressed as lamentation, 42
and the guṇas, 453
liberation regardless of, 434
prayojana-tattva, 483–484
prema-bhakti, 287–288
prema-dharma of Vraja
as essence of dharma, 121
faith in, 286–289
as height of dharma, 4
and the Mahābhārata, 1
as most confidential knowledge, 563
rāgānugā-bhakti as means of attaining, 577
as secret of the Upaniṣads, xvii
transcends religious mandates, 318, 577
See also bhāva; rāgānugā-bhakti
puruṣa, 275
Paramātma as superior, 433–434
and prakṛti, 431–434
two types of, 478–481
See also Bhagavān; God; Krṣṇa
Puruṣa-bodhini Upaniṣad, 140
puruṣa (qualified), 432
as parā prakṛti, 431, 433
as predominated reality, 433
See also jīva-sakti; jīvātmā; parā prakṛti; self; soul
Puruṣottama (Krṣṇa addressed as), 256, 341
yoga of, 465–484
rāgānugā-bhakti
chanting in vāidhi-bhakti leads to, 406–407
culture of, 577
deepest import of, 337
devotees on path of, 318
Krṣṇa nāma reveals one’s spiritual form
path of, 333–334, 404–405
See also bhāva; prema-dharma of Vraja
rajo-guṇa
action in, 537–539
austerities in, 513
avarice born from, 457
charity in, 515
dying under influence of, 456
effects and symptoms of, 450–451, 453
as energetic essence of things, 445–446
faith and worship in, 506
fear in, 328
food in, 509
fortitude in, 543
Freud’s Eros and Thanatos comparable to, 446
happiness in, 545
increases material longing, 445
intellect in, 542
knowledge in, 536
lifestyles in, 457–458
and material progress, 494
renunciation in, 526–527
sacrifice in, 510
and Taoism, 446
work in, 456
Rāmānuja
on Adwaitin reading of ātmā, 419
Bhagavad-gītā commentary of, xix–xx
on Brahmaṇ, 396–398, 400
on karma-yoga and bhakti, 414
of action, 169–192
artificial, 98
discrimination as result of, 467
of fruit of action, 524–525
inner, 183
of prescribed duties, 526–527
purification required for, 97–98
See also sannyāsa
Rūpa Gosvāmī
on the Absolute as the perfect lover, xvii
on bhāva, 333
on dawning of bhāva, 297
on how love moves, 566
on Krṣṇa of Dwārakā, xxi
on niṣṭhā, 96
sacrifice
as heart of worship and basis of love, 321
with honestly acquired goods, 100
of inner attachments, 158–159
and inner wisdom, 158
and karma-yoga, 100–106
in modes of material nature, 510–511
not to be given up, 525
recommended, 100–106
religious versus transcendental, 516
results of, 157
types of, 153–156
and Vedas, 157–158
Viṣṇu as, 259
sādhana, 217
in bhakti-yoga, 226–227

on meaning of “beginningless Brahman,” 425–426
Bg. 18.25, 538
brahmaṇi in verse 5.10, 176–177
prakṛti in verse 4.6, 136
on Paramātmā, 531
on samādhi, 77
on ungodly view of world, 493
rāsa-lilā, 338
Rāya Rāmānanda, 570, 572
reality, 420–430
religious duty. See dharma
renunciation

of action, 169–192
artificial, 98
discrimination as result of, 467
of fruit of action, 524–525
inner, 183
of prescribed duties, 526–527
purification required for, 97–98
See also sannyāsa
and knowledge, 423–424
and sādhya, 159
śakti, 33
See also jīva-śakti; māyā-śakti;
svarūpa-śakti
samādhi, 67, 198–199, 208, 405
and begging for alms, 151–152
of Brahman realization, 77–92, 152–153, 188–189, 204
of Paramātmā realization, 198–199
practices to steady the mind in, 217
and ŚB. 1.7.10, 75
stages of, 77
sambandha-jñāna
as bhakti, 429, 441–442
as knowledge of tattva, 288–294
sambandha-tattva, 478–482
Sanātana Goswāmī, xxi, 80
Sañjaya, 2, 41, 578
Śaṅkara
on Brahman and Krṣṇa, 232–233, 396–398, 402
on goal of yoga, 130
sānkhya (analytical study), 62–63, 173, 530, 535
Śaṅkhya, Kapila’s doctrine of, 62, 115, 441, 480, 523
sannyāsa, 552
and jñāna-yoga, 522
not goal of life, 570
purification required for, 97
qualities of, 487
of Śaṅkara school, 175
and tyāga, 522–529
as understood by the learned, 522–523
of Vaiṣṇava school, 175
yoga of, 312
See also renunciation; tyāga
sattva-gūna, 327
action in, 537
austerities in, 513
charity in, 328, 514
dying under the influence of, 455
effects and symptoms of, 449–450, 453
faith in, 504–506
fame in, 328
fear in, 328
food in, 508
fortitude in, 543
happiness in, 544
humanistic morality as a result of, 494
intellect in, 541
as intelligible essence of things, 445–446
knowledge in, 98, 449–450, 457, 536
lifestyles in, 457–458
renunciation in, 527–528
sacrifice in, 510
and syllable sat, 519
and Taoism, 446
and varnāśrama, 447
work in, 456
scripture, 119
authority of, 501–502
license to exaggerate of, 565
See also Vedas
self
according to Carvaka Muni’s materialism, 49, 54
according to Nyāya school of Gautama, 49
distinguished from mental/emotional body, 45
as God’s eternal servant, 182
identifies with material objects, 48
of the nature of consciousness, 48
qualities of, 53
superior to senses, mind, and intelligence, 127
See also jīva-śakti; jivātmā; parā prakṛti;
puruṣa (qualified); self; soul
self-realization, 46
sense objects, 422
interaction with, by enlightened soul, 85
withdrawal from, 89–90
senses, 422
controlling, 84, 87–88, 284
jīva soul burdened by, 472
as means to accomplish action, 530–531
and mind and intellect, 88, 125–127

GENERAL INDEX

609
pleasures of, critiqued, 186–187
and sense objects, 85–86
serenity, 86–87
sincerity, 219–220
Śiva, 331
Skanda Purāṇa, 15
soul, 432
and body and senses, 473–474
as changeless, 50
creative power of, 258
enlightened, 89–92
as eternal fragment of God, 472
as eternal servant of Kṛṣṇa, 120
as fallible puruṣa, 480
free will of, 180–181, 531–533
and guṇas, 439
as indestructible, 47
individuality of, 43, 180
measurement of, 48–49
misidentification of, with the body,
257–258
nature of, 48–54
never materially tainted, 440
origin of, 448
as performer of action, 115, 530–531
reincarnation and transmigration of,
44, 433, 473–474
as self-satisfied, 106–107
service as dharma of, 413–414
See also jīva-sakti; jīvātmā; parā prakṛti;
puruṣa (qualified); self
spiritual life, experiential 83
in concluding portion of Vedas, 68
as fruit of faith in scripture, 69
and self-surrender of devotion, 68
in Upanisads, 42
and yoga, 63
sraddhā, 117–118, 287
Śrī, 32–33
Śrī Caitanya
on goal of life, 570
on jīva soul as eternal servant of Kṛṣṇa,
120, 258
as Kṛṣṇa himself, 108–109
magnanimity of, 287–288, 572
mind of, as Vṛndāvana, xxi
as Rādhā and Kṛṣṇa combined, 333
Śrīdhara Svāmī, 486
on action, 540
Bhagavad-gītā commentary of, xix
on moral lapses of devotees, 316
on brahmaṇis and chanting God’s
name, 487
on complete sensual withdrawal, 89
on detached action, 525
on liberation, 435
on meaning of
Bg. 18.25, 538
brahmaṇa in verse 5.10, 176–177
prakṛti in verse 4.6, 136
samādhi, 67
on rarity of knowing Kṛṣṇa in truth, 228
on sannyāsa, 552
on sārūpya-mukti, 443
on seeing God everywhere, 437
on the Supreme Person, 466
on work that pleases God, 550
Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam
on approaching Kṛṣṇa with desire for
wealth, 241
on being cheated by great souls, 565–566
on desire, 123
on spiritual quality of devotee’s body, 81
four essential verses of, 240, 330
on four Kumāras, 244
on great souls’ apparent character flaws, 36
on Kṛṣṇa
form of, 343
as the guru, 160
returning to Vraja, xx–xxi
on pantheism, 301
on pleasing God, 111
on sāyujya-mukti, 555
on scripture’s license to exaggerate, 565
opening stanza of, 325
Uddhava’s prayer in, 499
verse 1.7.10 of, and Gītā verse 2.53, 75
on virtue and eligibility, 71
sūdras, 548
suffering
  nirvāṇa as cessation of, 91–92
  three types of, 78
Śukadeva Goswāmī, 228–229
sukṛti, 241, 252
surrender, 568–571
svarūpa-sākāti
  ingress of, in the individual soul, 297
  and Kṛṣṇa’s abode, 471
  and Kṛṣṇa līlā, 260
  and prakṛti, 137
  as the primary potency of the Absolute, 33
  See also yoga-māya
Śvetāśvatara Upaniṣad, 48, 140, 418–419, 426, 427–428
Śvāmī B. R. Śrīdhara. See B. R. Śrīdhara Deva Goswāmī
Taittirīya Upaniṣad, xvii, 397
tamo-guṇa
  action in, 538
  atheism as a result of, 494
  austerities in, 514
  charity in, 515–516
  dying under the influence of, 456
  effects of, 451
  error, delusion, and ignorance are born from, 457
  faith and worship in, 506
  fear in, 328
  food in, 509
  fortitude in, 543
  happiness in, 545
  as immobility of matter, 445
  inertia of things as, 445–446
  intellect in, 542
  knowledge in, 536–537
  lifestyles in, 457–458
  renunciation in, 526
  sacrifice in, 510
  symptoms of, 454–455
  and Taoism, 446
  work in, 456
tatāstha-sākāti, 33
tat tvam asi
  knowledge and, 329
  meaning “you are his,” 225
  and om tat sat, 516–518
Ṭhākura Bhaktivinoda (See Bhaktivinoda Ṭhākura)
tolerance, 45–46
truth
  indicates Brahman, 140
  revealed in installments, 113, 121
tyāga, 524–525
  distinguished from sannyāsa, 522–529
  and niskāma-karma-yoga, 522
  as understood by the learned, 522–523
universal form, 360–375, 376–378
Upaniṣadic language
  tat tvam asi explained as, 225
  used by Kṛṣṇa, 47, 264–265, 418–419
Upaniṣads
  Bhagavad-gītā based on, 293
  on Bhagavān’s sākāti, 32–33, 41
  and language of aesthetics, xvii
  on measurement of the soul, 48–49
  prema-dharma of Vraja as secret of, xvii
  restrictions on the study of, 113
  and Vedānta-sūtra, 478
Vaikuṇṭha, 74
vaśyās, 548
vāṇāśrama, 145–146, 487–488, 547–551
  and eligibility for niskāma-karma-yoga, 549
  Kṛṣṇa created, 145–146
  as pleasing God in a general sense, 112
  and sattva, 447
  and social order today, 71, 111–112, 146, 551
  and well-adjusted persons, 447
  See also brāhmaṇas; ksatriyas; sūdras; vaśyās
Vedānta
  as conclusion of Vedas, 530
  qualification to hear, 41
Vedānta-sūtra
  on beginningless karma, 180–181
  on bhakti remaining after liberation, 555
cited, 202, 264, 397, 402, 420–421, 502, 531, 551
“I shall become many,” 447–448
and Upaniṣads, 478
Vedas, 69–70, 477–478
authority of, 501–502
and Brahmā as used in verse 4.32, 157–158
karma-kāṇḍa doctrine of, 75
letter of, not all in all, 67, 69–70
living in accordance with, 486
rituals of, 69, 467
sacrifice in accordance with, 153
Viśnū
as the progenitor, 101
See also Mahā-Viśnū
Visvanātha Cakravarti Thākura
on acintya-bhedābheda, 290–291
on Adwaitin reading of ātmā, 419
on Arjuna’s reluctance to fight, 559
on attainment in paths with and without bhakti, 241–242
on Bg. 5.18, 184
on Bg. 10.8–10.11, 330, 399
Bhagavad-gītā commentary of, xvii–xx
on Bhagavān, 228, 481, 562
on bhakti as fruit of knowledge and action, 416
on bhakti’s superiority over jñāna and karma, 68–69
on Brahmā as the progenitor, 101
on brahma-nirvāṇa, 190
on confidential knowledge, 324
on devotees
bodies as spiritual, 80–81
and fruitive workers and jñānis, 296
moral lapses, 316–317
response to erroneous understanding of God, 141
take shelter of Kṛṣṇa, 556–557
on devotion in lower religious practices, 554
on dharma and bhakti, 258
on direct experience of God, 83
on Durdyodhana’s army, 10–11
esoteric explanations of Kṛṣṇa’s lilās with gopīs, xviii
on form of God, 237, 297,
on generosity of bhakti, 556–557
on intelligence fixed in spiritual pursuit, 66
on jñāna and Bg. 10.10, 338
on karma-yoga, 175, 408–409, 414
on knowledge that is concomitant to bhakti, 429
on Kṛṣṇa
abode of, 471, 555
demonstrating universe in his mouth, 295
and gopīs, xviii
personal form of, 343, 399, 404
punishment of the unrighteous, 139
remaining invisibly in earthly Vraja, xxi as Supreme Person, 482–483
on liberation, 434, 443
on mahātma’s devotional union with God, 298
on Mathurā, 566
on meanings of
“all things abiding in me,” 162
Bg. 18.25, 538
brahmani in verse 5.10, 176–177
Janārdana (name of Kṛṣṇa), 94, 344
mad-bhāvam, 142, 459
sāṅkhya, 62
vidyā and jñāna, 554
on the mind, 215
on nīskāma-karma-yoga, 407
on paying homage in devotion, 299
on practices outlined by the guru, 216
on puruṣas, two types of, 479–480
on religious hypocrisy, 490
on samādhi, 208
on sattva, 453, 488
on sattvic foods, 508
on ungodly persons, 497, 499
on worship by Monists, 301
on yoga implying bhakti, 64
Vraja bhakti

aspirants for, 334
and Bg. 10.10, 338
and esoteric meaning of catuh-ślokā, 330–338
hearing and chanting on path of, 238
nature of, 288, 358
Śrī Caitanya’s descent and, 108–109

Vraja Kṛṣṇa

as acme of God’s incarnation, xvii
and dharma, 110–111, 570, 577
as Godhead and playful Casanova, 331
Godhood of, is concealed, 288
and Kṛṣṇa’s Dwārakā līlā, xxi
and Mathurā, 566
and rāsa dance, 211
as speaker of Gītā, xvi–xvii, xx, 110–111
Śyāmasundara form of, 399
unmanifest līlā of, xx–xxi, 577

Vyāsa, 478

worlds
creation and dissolution of, 443
as planes of experience, 269–273
worship, 310–311

of oneness, gods, and nature, 300–301, 304
on path of karma, 305–307
in unalloyed devotion, 307–308

Yamunā, xxi, 332, 337

yoga, 73

of breath control, 156, 214–215
and compassion, 213
devotion as highest type of, 195, 223, 276–268, 298, 395
eating and sleeping habits in, 205
eightfold mystic, 154–156
as equanimity of mind, 72
failure in, 218–222
of freedom, 521–581
grace and effort required for success in, 216
ladder of, 63–64
and māyā, overlap of meaning with, 249
mental planes in, 201
Paramātmā as object of meditation in, 192
of Patañjali, 62

as positive union, 62
and selflessness, 63, 194–195
sitting arrangements in, 200–203
sutras, 155, 175, 187
symptoms of attainment, 196–200, 213
techniques of, 191–192, 264–266
See also dhyāna-yoga

yoga-māyā, 249–251, 342
Yudhiṣṭhira, 2, 14, 566
yugas, 270–273
See also kalpas